

# Angular 2 Development with TypeScript

Yakov Fain  
Anton Moiseev



## *Angular 2 Development with TypeScript*



# *Angular 2 Development with TypeScript*

YAKOV FAIN  
ANTON MOISEEV



MANNING  
Shelter Island

For online information and ordering of this and other Manning books, please visit [www.manning.com](http://www.manning.com). The publisher offers discounts on this book when ordered in quantity. For more information, please contact

Special Sales Department  
Manning Publications Co.  
20 Baldwin Road  
PO Box 761  
Shelter Island, NY 11964  
Email: [orders@manning.com](mailto:orders@manning.com)

©2017 by Manning Publications Co. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, or otherwise, without prior written permission of the publisher.

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in the book, and Manning Publications was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been printed in initial caps or all caps.

- ② Recognizing the importance of preserving what has been written, it is Manning's policy to have the books we publish printed on acid-free paper, and we exert our best efforts to that end. Recognizing also our responsibility to conserve the resources of our planet, Manning books are printed on paper that is at least 15 percent recycled and processed without the use of elemental chlorine.



Manning Publications Co.  
20 Baldwin Road  
PO Box 761  
Shelter Island, NY 11964

Development editor: Cynthia Kane  
Review editor: Donna Clements  
Technical development editor: Alain M. Couniot  
Project editor: Kevin Sullivan  
Copyeditor: Andy Carroll  
Proofreader: Tiffany Taylor  
Technical proofreader: Cody Sand  
Typesetter: Gordan Salinovic  
Cover designer: Marija Tudor

ISBN 9781617293122

Printed in the United States of America

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 – EBM – 21 20 19 18 17 16

## *brief contents*

---

- 1 ■ Introducing Angular 2 1
- 2 ■ Getting started with Angular 23
- 3 ■ Navigation with the Angular router 64
- 4 ■ Dependency injection 108
- 5 ■ Bindings, observables, and pipes 139
- 6 ■ Implementing component communications 170
- 7 ■ Working with forms 206
- 8 ■ Interacting with servers using HTTP and WebSockets 237
- 9 ■ Unit-testing Angular applications 278
- 10 ■ Bundling and deploying applications with Webpack 310



# *contents*

---

*preface*   *xiii*  
*acknowledgments*   *xvi*  
*about this book*   *xvii*  
*about the cover illustration*   *xxi*

## **1** *Introducing Angular 2*   **1**

- 1.1 A sampler of JavaScript frameworks and libraries   2
  - Feature-complete frameworks*   2 ▪ *Lightweight frameworks*   2
  - Libraries*   3 ▪ *What is Node.js?*   4
- 1.2 High-level overview of AngularJS   5
- 1.3 High-level overview of Angular   8
  - Code simplification*   8 ▪ *Performance improvements*   14
- 1.4 An Angular developer's toolbox   15
- 1.5 How things are done in Angular   18
- 1.6 Introducing the online auction example   19
- 1.7 Summary   22

## **2** *Getting started with Angular*   **23**

- 2.1 A first Angular application   24
  - Hello World in TypeScript*   24 ▪ *Hello World in ES5*   28
  - Hello World in ES6*   29 ▪ *Launching applications*   31

2.2	The building blocks of an Angular application	32
	<i>Modules</i>	32
	<i>Components</i>	33
	<i>Directives</i>	35
	<i>A brief introduction to data binding</i>	36
2.3	The SystemJS universal module loader	36
	<i>An overview of module loaders</i>	36
	<i>Module loaders vs. &lt;script&gt; tags</i>	37
	<i>Getting started with SystemJS</i>	38
2.4	Selecting a package manager	43
	<i>Comparing npm and jspm</i>	45
	<i>Starting an Angular project with npm</i>	46
2.5	Hands-on: getting started with the online auction	52
	<i>Initial project setup</i>	53
	<i>Developing the home page</i>	54
	<i>Launching the online auction application</i>	62
2.6	Summary	63

## 3 Navigation with the Angular router 64

3.1	Routing basics	65
	<i>Location strategies</i>	66
	<i>The building blocks of client-side navigation</i>	68
	<i>Navigating to routes with navigate()</i>	75
3.2	Passing data to routes	76
	<i>Extracting parameters from ActivatedRoute</i>	77
	<i>Passing static data to a route</i>	79
3.3	Child routes	80
3.4	Guarding routes	87
3.5	Developing a SPA with multiple router outlets	91
3.6	Splitting an app into modules	95
3.7	Lazy-loading modules	97
3.8	Hands-on: adding navigation to the online auction	99
	<i>Creating ProductDetailComponent</i>	100
	<i>Creating HomeComponent and code refactoring</i>	101
	<i>Simplifying ApplicationComponent</i>	102
	<i>Adding a RouterLink to ProductItemComponent</i>	103
	<i>Modifying the root module to add routing</i>	105
	<i>Running the auction</i>	106
3.9	Summary	107

## 4 Dependency injection 108

4.1	The Dependency Injection and Inversion of Control patterns	109
	<i>The Dependency Injection pattern</i>	109
	<i>The Inversion of Control pattern</i>	110
	<i>Benefits of dependency injection</i>	110

4.2	Injectors and providers	112
	<i>How to declare a provider</i>	115
4.3	A sample application with Angular DI	116
	<i>Injecting a product service</i>	116
	<i>Injecting the Http service</i>	119
4.4	Switching injectables made easy	120
	<i>Declaring providers with useFactory and useValue</i>	123
	<i>UsingOpaqueToken</i>	126
4.5	The hierarchy of injectors	127
	<i>viewProviders</i>	129
4.6	Hands-on: using DI in the online auction application	130
	<i>Changing the code to pass the product ID as a parameter</i>	133
	<i>Modifying ProductDetailComponent</i>	133
4.7	Summary	138

## 5 Bindings, observables, and pipes 139

5.1	Data binding	140
	<i>Binding to events</i>	141
	<i>Binding to properties and attributes</i>	142
	<i>Binding in templates</i>	146
	<i>Two-way data binding</i>	149
5.2	Reactive programming and observables	152
	<i>What are observables and observers?</i>	152
	<i>Observable event streams</i>	154
	<i> Cancelling observables</i>	158
5.3	Pipes	162
	<i>Custom pipes</i>	163
5.4	Hands-on: filtering products in the online auction	165
5.5	Summary	168

## 6 Implementing component communications 170

6.1	Inter-component communication	171
	<i>Input and output properties</i>	171
	<i>The Mediator pattern</i>	178
	<i>Changing templates at runtime with ngContent</i>	182
6.2	Component lifecycle	187
	<i>Using ngOnChanges</i>	189
6.3	A high-level overview of change detection	194
6.4	Exposing a child component's API	196
6.5	Hands-on: adding a rating feature to the online auction	198
6.6	Summary	204

## 7 Working with forms 206

- 7.1 Overview of HTML forms 207
  - Standard browser features* 207 ▪ *Angular's Forms API* 209
- 7.2 Template-driven forms 210
  - Directives overview* 211 ▪ *Enriching the HTML form* 213
- 7.3 Reactive forms 215
  - Form model* 215 ▪ *Form directives* 216 ▪ *Refactoring the sample form* 220 ▪ *Using FormBuilder* 221
- 7.4 Form validation 222
  - Validating reactive forms* 222
- 7.5 Hands-on: adding validation to the search form 231
  - Modifying the root module to add Forms API support* 232
  - Adding a list of categories to SearchComponent* 232 ▪ *Creating a form model* 233 ▪ *Refactoring the template* 234 ▪ *Implementing the onSearch() method* 236 ▪ *Launching the online auction* 236
- 7.6 Summary 236

## 8 Interacting with servers using HTTP and WebSockets 237

- 8.1 A brief overview of the Http object's API 238
- 8.2 Creating a web server with Node and TypeScript 241
  - Creating a simple web server* 241 ▪ *Serving JSON* 243
  - Live TypeScript recompilation and code reload* 245 ▪ *Adding the RESTful API for serving products* 246
- 8.3 Bringing Angular and Node together 248
  - Static resources on the server* 248 ▪ *Making GET requests with the Http object* 251 ▪ *Unwrapping observables in templates with AsyncPipe* 252 ▪ *Injecting HTTP into a service* 254
- 8.4 Client-server communication via WebSockets 257
  - Pushing data from a Node server* 258 ▪ *Turning a WebSocket into an observable* 261
- 8.5 Hands-on: implementing product search and bid notifications 268
  - Implementing product search using HTTP* 269 ▪ *Broadcasting auction bids using WebSockets* 273
- 8.6 Summary 276

## 9 Unit-testing Angular applications 278

- 9.1 Getting to know Jasmine 279
  - What to test* 282 ▪ *How to install Jasmine* 282
- 9.2 What comes with Angular's testing library 283
  - Testing services* 285 ▪ *Testing navigation with the router* 285
  - Testing components* 286
- 9.3 Testing a sample weather application 287
  - Configuring SystemJS* 289 ▪ *Testing the weather router* 289
  - Testing the weather service* 292 ▪ *Testing the weather component* 295
- 9.4 Running tests with Karma 298
- 9.5 Hands-on: unit-testing the online auction 301
  - Testing ApplicationComponent* 303 ▪ *Testing ProductService* 304
  - Testing StarsComponent* 305 ▪ *Running the tests* 307
- 9.6 Summary 309

## 10 Bundling and deploying applications with Webpack 310

- 10.1 Getting to know Webpack 312
    - Hello World with Webpack* 313 ▪ *How to use loaders* 318
    - How to use plugins* 322
  - 10.2 Creating a basic Webpack configuration for Angular 322
    - npm run build* 325 ▪ *npm start* 327
  - 10.3 Creating development and production configurations 327
    - Development configuration* 328 ▪ *Production configuration* 329 ▪ *A custom type-definition file* 332
  - 10.4 What's Angular CLI? 334
    - Starting a new project with Angular CLI* 335 ▪ *CLI commands* 335
  - 10.5 Hands-on: deploying the online auction with Webpack 337
    - Starting the Node server* 338 ▪ *Starting the auction client* 339
    - Running tests with Karma* 342
  - 10.6 Summary 345
- appendix A An overview of ECMAScript 6* 347  
*appendix B TypeScript as a language for Angular applications* 388  
*index* 421



# ***preface***

---

Our quest for a good JavaScript framework started about four years ago. We were working on a platform for the insurance industry, and most of the UI for the system was written using the Apache Flex framework (formerly Adobe Flex). Flex is an excellent framework for developing web UIs, but it requires Flash Player, which wasn't in favor anymore.

After trying several pilot JavaScript projects, we noticed a substantial drop in our developers' productivity. A task that required one day in Flex would need three days in other JavaScript frameworks, including AngularJS. The main reasons were the lack of types in JavaScript, poor IDE support, and the absence of compiler support.

When we learned that Google had started development on the Angular 2 framework, with TypeScript as a recommended language for development, we became early adopters in the summer of 2015. At that time, there was very little information about Angular 2 other than several blogs and videos from the conference where the Angular team introduced the new framework. Our main source of knowledge was the framework's source code. But because we recognized great potential in Angular, we decided to start writing courseware for our company's training department. At the same time, Mike Stephens, Manning's associate publisher, was looking for authors who were interested in writing a book about Angular 2. That's how this book was born.

After a year of working with the Angular 2 / TypeScript duo, we can confirm that it offers the most productive way of developing mid- to large-size web applications that can run in any modern browser as well as on mobile platforms. These are the main

reasons we believe that Angular 2 and TypeScript are the right tools for developing web applications:

- *Clean separation of UI and app logic*—There's a clean separation between the code that renders the UI and the code that implements application logic. The UI doesn't have to be rendered in HTML, and there are already products that support native UI rendering for iOS and Android.
- *Modularization*—There's a simple mechanism for modularizing applications with support for the lazy loading of modules.
- *Navigation support*—The router supports complex navigation scenarios in single-page applications.
- *Loose coupling*—Dependency injection gives you a clean way to implement loose coupling between components and services. Binding and events allow you to create reusable and loosely coupled components.
- *Component lifecycle*—Each component goes through a well-defined lifecycle, and hooks for intercepting important component events are available for application developers.
- *Change detection*—An automatic (and fast) change-detection mechanism spares you from having to manually force UI updates while also providing a way to fine-tune this process.
- *No callback hell*—Angular 2 comes with the RxJS library, which allows you to arrange subscription-based processing of asynchronous data, eliminating the callback hell.
- *Forms and validation*—Support for forms and custom validation is well designed. You can create forms either by adding directives to form elements in the template or programmatically.
- *Testing*—Unit and end-to-end testing are well supported, and you can integrate tests into your automated build process.
- *Webpack bundling and optimization*—Bundling and optimizing the code with Webpack (and its various plugins) keeps deployed applications small.
- *Tooling*—The tooling support is as good as on the Java and .NET platforms. The TypeScript code analyzer warns you about errors as you type, and a scaffolding and deployment tool (Angular CLI) spares you from writing boilerplate code and configuration scripts.
- *Concise code*—Using TypeScript classes and interfaces makes your code more concise and easy to read and write.
- *Compilers*—The TypeScript compiler generates JavaScript that a human can read. The TypeScript code can be compiled into the ES3, ES5, or ES6 version of JavaScript. Ahead-of-time (AoT) compilation of Angular-specific code (not to be confused with the TypeScript compiler) eliminates the need to package the Angular compiler with your app, which further minimizes the overhead of the framework.

- *Server-side rendering*—Angular Universal turns your app into HTML in an offline build step that can be used for server-side rendering, which in turn greatly improves indexing by search engines and SEO.
- *Modern UI components*—A library of modern-looking UI components (Angular Material 2) is in the works.

As you can see from this list, Angular 2 comes with the batteries included.

From a management perspective, Angular 2 is appealing because there are already more than a million AngularJS developers, and most of them will switch to Angular 2. Angular 2.0 was released in September of 2016, and new major releases will be published semiannually. The Angular team spent two years developing Angular 2.0, and on its release date about half a million developers were already using it. We expect this number to double within the year. Having a large pool of workers with specific skills is an important consideration when you’re selecting a technology for new projects. Besides, there are more than 15 million Java and .NET developers combined, and many of them will find the syntax of TypeScript a lot more appealing than JavaScript because of its support for classes, interfaces, generics, annotations, class member variables, and private and public variables, not to mention its helpful compiler and solid support from familiar IDEs.

Creating a book about Angular 2 was difficult, because we started with early alpha versions of the framework, which changed through the beta and release candidate versions. But we like the final result, and we’ve already started developing real-world projects in Angular 2.

## *acknowledgments*

---

Both authors would like to thank Manning Publications, as well as Alain M. Couniot for his suggestions on the technical content, and Cody Sand for giving the chapters a full technical proofread. Several reviewers also contributed valuable feedback on the manuscript: Chris Coppenbarger, David Barkol, David DiMaria, Fredrik Engberg, Irach Ilish Ramos Hernandez, Jeremy Bryan, Kamal Raj, Lori Wilkins, Mauro Quercioli, Sébastien Nichèle, Polina Keselman, Subir Rastogi, Sven Lösekann, and Wisam Zaghal.

**Yakov** would like to thank his best friend Sammy for creating a warm and cozy environment while Yakov was working on this book. Unfortunately, Sammy can't talk, but he loves Yakov unconditionally. Sammy's breed is mini golden retriever.

**Anton** would like to thank Yakov Fain and Manning Publications for giving him the opportunity to coauthor this book and obtain invaluable writing experience. He's also grateful to his family for being patient while he spent numerous hours working on the book.

# *about this book*

---

Angular 2 applications can be developed in two flavors of JavaScript (ES5 and ES6), in Dart, or in TypeScript. The framework itself was developed in TypeScript, and in this book we use TypeScript for all the code examples. Appendix B has a section titled “Why write Angular apps in TypeScript?” where we explain our reasons for selecting this language.

Both of us are practitioners, and we wrote this book for practitioners. Not only do we explain the features of the framework using basic code samples, but we also gradually show you how to build a single-page online auction application over the course of the book.

While we were still writing and revising, we ran several training workshops using the code samples. This allowed us to get early (and overwhelmingly positive) feedback about the book’s content. We really hope that you’ll enjoy the process of learning Angular 2.

This book covers Angular 2.0.0 Final.

## **How to read this book**

Our early drafts of this book started with chapters on ECMAScript 6 and TypeScript. Several reviewers suggested we move this material to the appendixes, so readers could start learning about Angular sooner. We made this change, but if you aren’t already familiar with the syntax of ECMAScript 6 and TypeScript, looking through the appendices first will make it easier to follow the code samples in the chapters.

## Roadmap

This book consists of 10 chapters and 2 appendixes.

Chapter 1 provides a high-level overview of the Angular 2 architecture, gives a brief summary of popular JavaScript frameworks and libraries, and introduces the sample online auction application that you'll start to develop in chapter 2.

You'll be developing this sample application in TypeScript. Appendix B can get you up to speed with this excellent language, which is a superset of JavaScript. Not only will you learn how to write classes, interfaces, and generics, but you'll also learn how to compile TypeScript code into today's JavaScript (ECMAScript 5), which can be deployed in all web browsers. TypeScript implements most of the syntax of the latest ECMAScript 6 specification (covered in appendix A) and some syntax that should be included in the future releases of ECMAScript.

In chapter 2, you'll start developing simple Angular 2 applications, and you'll create your first Angular components. You'll learn how to work with the SystemJS module loader, and we'll offer you our version of the Angular seed project that will be used as a starting point for all the sample applications in the book. At the end of this chapter, you'll create the first version of the home page for the online auction.

Chapter 3 is about the Angular router, which offers a flexible way of arranging navigation in single-page applications. You'll learn how to configure routes in parent and child components, how to pass data from one route to another, and how to lazy-load modules. At the end of this chapter, you'll refactor the online auction into several components and add routing capabilities to it.

In chapter 4, you'll learn about the Dependency Injection design pattern and how Angular implements it. You'll get familiar with the concept of providers, which allow you to specify how injectable objects should be instantiated. In the new version of the online auction, you'll apply dependency injection to populate the Product Details view with data.

In chapter 5, we'll discuss different flavors of data binding, introduce reactive programming with observable data streams, and show you how to work with pipes. The chapter ends with a new version of the online auction that adds an observable event stream to filter featured products on the home page.

Chapter 6 is about developing components that can communicate with each other in a loosely coupled manner. We'll discuss components' input and output parameters, the Mediator design pattern, and a component's lifecycle. This chapter also includes a high-level overview of Angular's change-detection mechanism. The online auction gets a product-rating feature.

Chapter 7 is about handling forms in Angular. After covering the basics of the Forms API, we'll discuss form validation and implement it in the search component, in yet another version of the online auction.

Chapter 8 explains how an Angular client app can communicate with servers using the HTTP and WebSocket protocols, including examples. You'll create a server app using the Node.js and Express frameworks. Then you'll deploy Angular's portion of

the online auction in the Node server. The front end of the online auction starts communicating with the Node.js server via the HTTP and WebSocket protocols.

Chapter 9 is about unit testing. We'll cover the basics of Jasmine and the Angular testing library. You'll learn how to test services, components, and the router. You'll also learn how to configure and use Karma for running tests, and you'll implement several unit tests in the online auction.

Chapter 10 is about automating the build and deployment processes. You'll see how to use the Webpack bundler to minimize and package your code for deployment. You'll also see how to use Angular CLI for project generation and deployment. The size of the deployed version of the online auction will be decreased from 5.5 MB (in development) to 350 KB (in production).

Appendix A will get you familiar with the new syntax introduced in ECMAScript 2015 (a.k.a. ES6). Appendix B is an introduction to the TypeScript language.

### **Code conventions and downloads**

This book contains many examples of source code, both in numbered listings and in line with normal text. In both cases, source code is formatted in a fixed-width font like this to separate it from ordinary text. In many cases, the original source code has been reformatted; line breaks have been added and indentation reworked as necessary to accommodate the available page space in the book. In some cases, where this was not enough, the listings include line-continuation markers (→). Additionally, comments in the source code have often been removed from the listings when the code is described in the text. Code annotations accompany many of the listings, highlighting important concepts.

Source code for the examples in this book is available for download from the publisher's website at <https://www.manning.com/books/angular-2-development-with-typescript>.

The authors have also created a GitHub repository with the source code examples at <https://github.com/Farata/angular2typescript>. If future releases of Angular break any of the code examples from the book, you can open an issue there, and authors will address it.

### **Author Online**

Purchase of *Angular 2 Development with TypeScript* includes free access to a private web forum run by Manning Publications where you can make comments about the book, ask technical questions, and receive help from the authors and from other users. To access the forum and subscribe to it, point your web browser to <https://www.manning.com/books/angular-2-development-with-typescript>. This page provides information on how to get on the forum once you're registered, what kind of help is available, and the rules of conduct on the forum.

Manning's commitment to our readers is to provide a venue where a meaningful dialog between individual readers and between readers and the authors can take place. It is not a commitment to any specific amount of participation on the part of

the authors, whose contributions to the AO forum remain voluntary (and unpaid). We suggest you ask the authors challenging questions, lest their interest stray!

### About the authors



**Yakov Fain** is a cofounder of two companies: Farata Systems and SuranceBay. Farata Systems is an IT consulting boutique. Yakov runs the training department there and teaches Angular and Java workshops around the globe. SuranceBay is a product company that automates various workflows in the insurance industry in the United States, offering applications that use the software as a service (SaaS). Yakov manages various projects there.

Yakov is a Java Champion. He has authored multiple books on software development and written more than a thousand blog entries at [yakovfain.com](http://yakovfain.com). Although most of his books are printed, his *Java Programming for Kids, Parents and Grandparents* is available as a free download in several languages at <http://myflex.org/books/java4kids/java4kids.htm>. His Twitter handle is @yfain.



**Anton Moiseev** is a lead software developer at SuranceBay. He's been developing enterprise applications for 10 years with Java and .NET technologies. He has a solid background in developing rich internet applications using various platforms. Anton has a strong focus on web technologies, implementing best practices to make the front end work seamlessly with the back end. He has taught a number of training sessions on the AngularJS and Angular 2 frameworks.

Anton occasionally blogs at [antonmoiseev.com](http://antonmoiseev.com). His Twitter handle is @antonmoiseev.

## *about the cover illustration*

---

The illustration on the cover of *Angular 2 Development with TypeScript* is taken from the 1805 edition of Sylvain Maréchal's four-volume compendium of regional dress customs. This book was first published in Paris in 1788, one year before the French Revolution. Each illustration is colored by hand. This figure, captioned "Le Tuteur" or "The Tutor," is just one of many figures in Maréchal's collection. Their diversity speaks vividly of the uniqueness and individuality of the world's towns and regions just 200 years ago. This was a time when the dress codes of two regions separated by a few dozen miles identified people uniquely as belonging to one or the other. The collection brings to life a sense of the isolation and distance of that period and of every other historic period—except our own hyperkinetic present.

Dress codes have changed since then and the diversity by region, so rich at the time, has faded away. It is now often hard to tell the inhabitant of one continent from another. Perhaps we have traded cultural diversity for a more varied personal life—certainly for a more varied and fast-paced technological life.

We at Manning celebrate the inventiveness, the initiative, and the fun of the computer business with book covers based on the rich diversity of regional life two centuries ago, brought back to life by Maréchal's pictures.



# *Introducing Angular* 2



## **This chapter covers**

- A brief overview of JavaScript frameworks and libraries
- A high-level overview of Angular 1 and 2
- A toolbox for the Angular developer
- Introducing the sample application

Angular 2 is an open source JavaScript framework maintained by Google. It's a complete rewrite of its popular predecessor, AngularJS. Angular applications can be developed in JavaScript (using the syntax of ECMAScript 5 or 6), Dart, or TypeScript. In this book we'll use TypeScript; our reasons for this are explained in appendix B.

**PREREQUISITES** In this book, we don't expect you to have any experience with AngularJS. We do expect you to know the syntax of JavaScript and HTML and to understand what web applications consist of. We also assume that you know what CSS is and that you're familiar with the role of the DOM object in a browser.

We'll start this chapter with a very brief overview of some popular JavaScript frameworks. Then we'll review the architecture of the older AngularJS and the newer Angular 2, highlighting the improvements that the new version of this framework brings to the table. We'll also quickly run through the tools that Angular developers use. Finally, we'll introduce the sample application that we're going to build in this book.

**NOTE** This book is about the Angular 2 framework, and for brevity we'll call it Angular throughout. If we mention AngularJS, we're talking about the 1.x versions of this framework.

## 1.1 *A sampler of JavaScript frameworks and libraries*

Do you have to use frameworks? No, you can program the front end of web applications in pure JavaScript. In this case, there's nothing new to learn, because you already know JavaScript. The cons of not using a framework are the difficulties in maintaining cross-browser compatibility and longer development cycles. In contrast, frameworks can give you full control over the architecture, design patterns, and code styles in your application. Most modern web applications are written using some combination of frameworks and libraries.

Angular is one of many frameworks used for developing web apps, and this section will briefly cover some popular JavaScript frameworks and libraries. What's the difference between frameworks and libraries? *Frameworks* provide a structure for your code and force you to write the code in a certain way. *Libraries* usually offer a number of components and APIs that can be used à la carte in any code. In other words, frameworks are more opinionated than libraries about the design of your application.

### 1.1.1 *Feature-complete frameworks*

Feature-complete frameworks include everything you need to develop a web application. They impose a certain structure on your code and come with a library of UI components and tools for building and deploying the application.

For example, *Ext JS* is a mature, full-featured framework created and maintained by Sencha. It comes with an excellent set of rich UI components, including an advanced data grid and charts, which are crucial for developing back-office enterprise applications. Ext JS adds a substantial amount of code to your application, and you won't find an application built with Ext JS that's less than 1 MB in size. Ext JS is also intrusive—it's not easy to switch to a different framework if need be.

Sencha also has the Sencha Touch framework, which is used for creating web applications for mobile devices.

### 1.1.2 *Lightweight frameworks*

Lightweight frameworks add structure to your web application, offer a way to arrange navigation between different views, and typically split the application into layers implementing the Model-View-Controller (MVC) design pattern. There is also a group of lightweight frameworks specialized for testing applications written in JavaScript.

*Angular* is an open source framework for developing web applications. The framework makes it simpler to create custom components that can be added to HTML documents and to implement application logic. Angular uses data binding extensively, includes a dependency injection module, supports modularization, and offers a routing mechanism. Whereas AngularJS was MVC-based, Angular is not. This framework doesn't include UI components.

*Ember.js* is an open source MVC-based framework for developing web applications. It includes a routing mechanism and supports two-way data binding. This framework uses a lot of code conventions, which increases the productivity of software developers.

*Jasmine* is an open source framework for testing JavaScript code. Jasmine doesn't require a DOM object. It includes a set of functions that test whether certain parts of your application behave as expected. Jasmine is often used with Karma, which is a test runner that allows you to run tests in different browsers.

### 1.1.3 *Libraries*

The libraries discussed in this section serve different purposes and can be used in web applications with or without other frameworks.

*jQuery* is a popular JavaScript library. It's simple to use and doesn't require you to dramatically change the way you program for the web. jQuery helps in finding and manipulating DOM elements, processing browser events, and dealing with browser incompatibilities. jQuery is an extensible library, and thousands of plugins have been created by developers from around the world. If you can't find a plugin that fits your needs, you can create one yourself.

*Bootstrap* is an open source library of UI components developed by Twitter. The components are built using the responsive web design principles, which makes this library extremely valuable if your web application needs to automatically adjust its layout depending on the screen size of the user's device. In this book we'll use Bootstrap while developing a sample online auction application.

**NOTE** Google developed a library of UI components based on the set of guidelines called Material Design, which may become an alternative to Bootstrap. Material Design is optimized for cross-device use and comes with a set of nice-looking UI components. At the time of writing, only the AngularJS version of Material Design is ready. The Angular version of this library is called Angular Material, and it should be released shortly after this book is published.

*React* is an open source library by Facebook for building user interfaces. React represents the Vin MVC. It's nonintrusive and can be used with any other library or a framework. React creates its own virtual DOM object, minimizing access to the browser's DOM, which results in better performance. For content rendering, React introduces the JSX format, which is a JavaScript syntax extension that looks like XML. Using JSX is recommended but optional.

*Polymer* is a library created by Google for building custom components based on the Web Components standard. It comes with a set of nice-looking customizable UI components that can be included in HTML markup as tags. Polymer also includes components for applications that need to work offline, as well as components that use various Google APIs (such as calendar, maps, and others).

*RxJS* is a set of libraries for composing asynchronous and event-based programs using observable collections. It allows applications to work with asynchronous data streams, such as a server-side stream of stock price quotes or mouse move events. With RxJS, the data streams are represented as observable sequences. This library can be used with or without any other JavaScript framework. In chapters 5 and 8, you'll see examples of using observables in Angular.

To see statistics on which top websites use a particular JavaScript framework or library, you can visit the BuiltWith JavaScript Usage Statistics page: <http://trends.builtwith.com/javascript>.

### Moving from Flex to Angular

We work for a company, Farata Systems, that over the years developed pretty complex software using the Adobe Flex framework. Flex is a very productive framework built on top of the strongly typed, compiled ActionScript language, and the applications are deployed in the Flash Player browser plugin (a VM). When the web community started moving away from using plugins, we spent two years trying to find a replacement for Flex. We experimented with different JavaScript-based frameworks, but the productivity of our developers seriously suffered. Finally we saw a light at the end of the tunnel with a combination of the TypeScript language, the Angular 2 framework, and a UI library such as Angular Material.

#### 1.1.4 What is Node.js?

*Node.js* (or *Node*) isn't just a framework or a library, but a runtime environment as well. In most of this book, we'll use the Node runtime for running various utilities like Node Package Manager (npm). For example, to install TypeScript, you can use npm from a command line:

```
npm install typescript
```

The Node.js framework can be used to develop JavaScript programs that run outside the browser. You can develop the server-side layer of a web application in JavaScript or Typescript; you'll write a web server using Node in chapter 8. Google developed a high-performance V8 JavaScript engine for the Chrome browser, and it can be used to run code written using the Node.js API. The Node.js framework includes an API to work with the filesystem, access databases, listen to HTTP requests, and more.

Members of the JavaScript community have built lots of utilities that are useful for developing web applications, and with the help of Node's JavaScript engine, you can run them from a command line.

## 1.2 High-level overview of AngularJS

Let's now return to the main topic of this book: the Angular framework. This is the only section dedicated to AngularJS, the previous version of Angular.

Misko Hevery and Adam Abronsa started work on the AngularJS framework in 2009 as an effort to help web designers customize web pages, and AngularJS 1.0 was officially released in 2012. By 2015, several minor versions had been released, and at the time of writing the stable version of AngularJS is 1.5. Google continues to improve the functionality of AngularJS 1.x and address its issues while developing Angular 2 in parallel. Let's see what made AngularJS so popular:

- AngularJS has a mechanism for creating custom HTML tags and attributes using the concept of *directives*, which allow you to extend the set of HTML tags according to your application's needs.
- AngularJS is not too intrusive. You can add an `ng-app` attribute to any `<div>` tag, and only the content of this `<div>` will be controlled by AngularJS. The rest of the web page can be pure HTML and JavaScript.
- AngularJS allows you to bind data to views easily. Changing data results in automated updates of the corresponding view element and vice versa.
- AngularJS comes with a configurable router that allows you to map URL patterns to corresponding application components that change the view on the web page according to the mapping.
- The application data flow is defined in *controllers*, which are JavaScript objects containing properties and functions.
- AngularJS applications use a hierarchy of *scopes*, which are objects for storing data shared by controllers and views.
- AngularJS includes a dependency injection module that allows you to develop applications in a loosely coupled manner.

Whereas jQuery simplified DOM manipulations, AngularJS allowed developers to decouple the application logic from the UI by structuring the application according to the MVC design pattern. Figure 1.1 depicts a sample workflow of an AngularJS application that deals with products.

If you want AngularJS to control the entire web application, include the `ng-app` directive in the `<body>` HTML tag:

```
<body ng-app="ProductApp">
```

In figure 1.1, to get the product data, the user loads the application ① and enters the product ID ②. The view informs the controller ③, which updates the model ④ and makes an HTTP request ⑤ to a remote server via the `$http` service. AngularJS populates the properties of the model with the retrieved data ⑥, and the changes in the model are automatically reflected in the UI via a *binding expression* ⑦. The user then sees the data about the requested product ⑧.

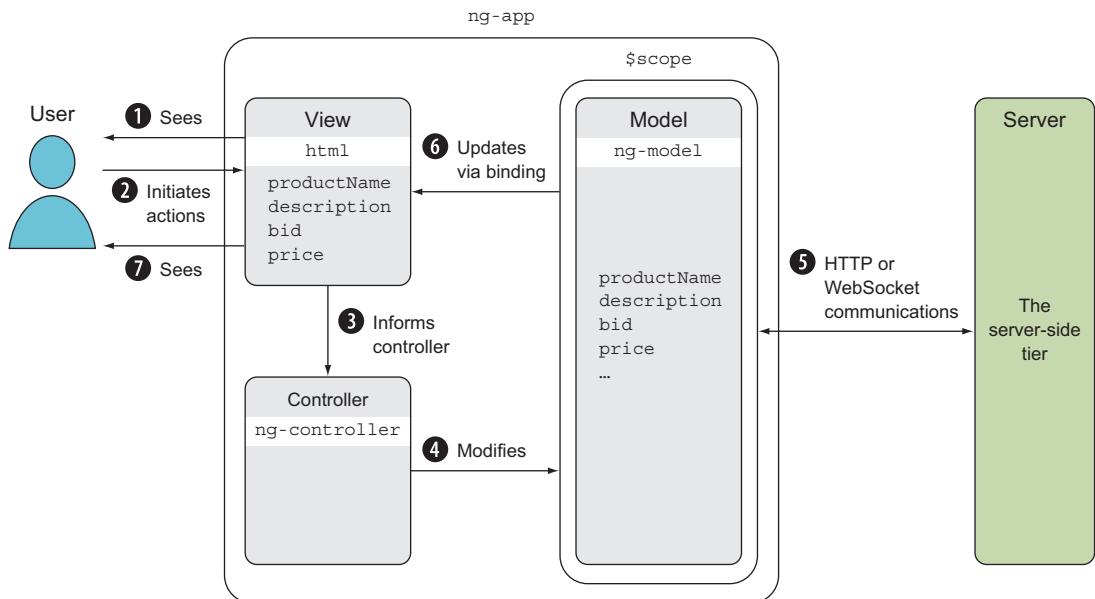


Figure 1.1 Sample architecture of an AngularJS app

AngularJS automatically updates the view when the data in the model changes. The changes in the UI are propagated to the model if the user modifies the data in the input controls in the view. This two-directional update mechanism is called *two-way data binding*, and it's illustrated in figure 1.2.

In AngularJS, the model and the view are tightly bound because the two-way binding means each automatically updates the other. It's nice to have these automatic view updates without writing much code, but it doesn't come for free.

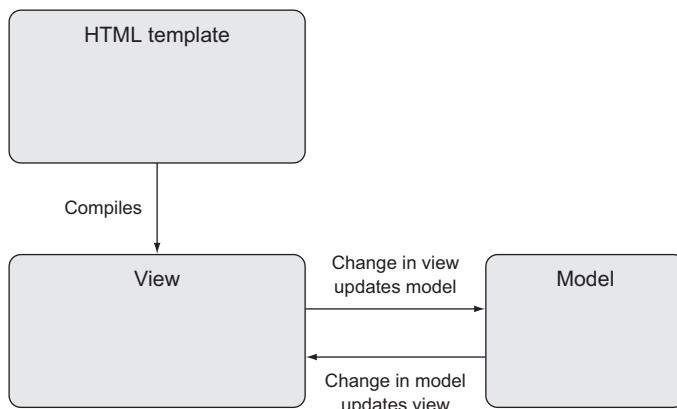


Figure 1.2 Two-way binding

Every time the model is updated, AngularJS runs a special \$digest loop that goes through the entire application, applying the data bindings and updating the DOM when needed. Cascading updates result in multiple runs of the \$digest cycle, which can affect performance in large applications that use multiple two-way bindings. Manipulating the browser's DOM object is the slowest operation—the less your application updates the DOM, the better it performs.

The model data exists in the context of a particular \$scope object, and AngularJS scopes form a hierarchy of objects. The \$rootScope is created for the entire application. Controllers and directives (custom components) have their own \$scope objects, and understanding how AngularJS scopes work can be challenging.

You can implement modularization by creating and loading module objects. When a particular module depends on other objects (such as controllers, modules, or services), the instances of these objects are created and *injected* by AngularJS's Dependency Injection mechanism. The following code snippet illustrates one of the ways AngularJS injects one object into another:

```
var SearchController = function ($scope) { ←
    //...
};

SearchController['$inject'] = ['$scope']; ←

angular.module('auction').controller('SearchController', SearchController); ←

Assigns the SearchController object to
be a controller on the auction module
```

Defines SearchController as a constructor function with the \$scope argument

Adds the \$inject property on the controller, asking to inject the \$scope object into the constructor function

In the preceding code snippet, the square brackets represent an array, and AngularJS can inject multiple objects as follows: ['\$scope', 'myCustomService'].

AngularJS is often used for creating single-page applications, where only certain portions of the page (sub-views) are updated as a result of the user's actions or data being sent from the server. A good example of these sub-views is a web application showing stock quotes: only the price element on the view is updated as the stock is traded.

Navigation between views in AngularJS is arranged by configuring the ng-route router component. You can specify a number of .when options to route the application to the appropriate view based on the URL pattern. The next code fragment instructs the router to use the markup from home.html and the controller HomeController unless the URL contains /search, in which case the view will render search.html and the SearchController object will be used as a controller:

```
angular.module('auction', ['ngRoute'])
.config(['$routeProvider', function ($routeProvider) {
    $routeProvider
        .when('/', {
            templateUrl: 'views/home.html',
            controller: 'HomeController' })
}])
```

```

.when('/search', {
  templateUrl: 'views/search.html',
  controller: 'SearchController' })
.otherwise({
  redirectTo: '/'
});
]);

```

The AngularJS router supports *deep linking*, which is the ability to bookmark not just an entire web page, but a certain state within the page.

Now that you've had a very high-level overview of AngularJS, let's see what Angular 2 brings to the table.

## 1.3 *High-level overview of Angular*

The Angular framework is better performing than AngularJS. It's easier to learn, the application architecture has been simplified, and the code is simpler to write and read. This section contains a high-level overview of Angular, highlighting the improvements made since AngularJS. For a more detailed architectural overview of Angular, see the product documentation at <https://angular.io/docs/ts/latest/guide/architecture.html>.

### 1.3.1 *Code simplification*

First of all, an Angular application consists of standard modules in ECMAScript 6 (ES6), Asynchronous Module Definition (AMD), and CommonJS formats. Typically, one module is one file. There's no need to use a framework-specific syntax for loading and using modules. Use the universal module loader SystemJS (covered in chapter 2), and add `import` statements to use functionality implemented in the loaded modules. You don't need to worry about the proper order of the `<script>` tags in your HTML files. If module A needs the functionality from module B, just import module B into module A.

The HTML file for your application's landing page includes Angular modules and their dependencies. Your application code is bootstrapped by loading the root module of your application. All required components and services will be loaded based on the declarations in the module and `import` statements.

The following snippet shows typical content for the `index.html` file of an Angular application, where you include the required framework modules. The script `systemjs.config.js` contains the configuration of the SystemJS loader. `System.import('app')` loads the top-level app component configured in `systemjs.config.js` (shown in chapter 2). The custom tag `<app>` is a value defined in the `selector` property of the root component:

```

<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
  <title>Angular seed project</title>
  <meta charset="UTF-8">
  <meta name="viewport" content="width=device-width, initial-scale=1">

```

```

<script src="node_modules/core-js/client/shim.min.js"></script>
<script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/zone.js"></script>

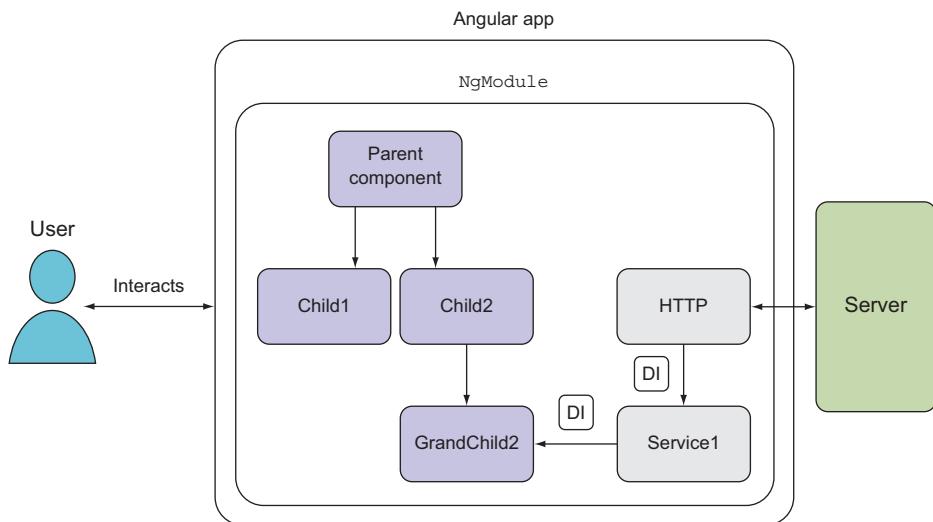
<script src="node_modules/typescript/lib/typescript.js"></script>
<script src="node_modules/systemjs/dist/system.src.js"></script>
<script src="node_modules/rxjs/bundles/Rx.js"></script>
<script src="systemjs.config.js"></script>
<script>
  System.import('app').catch(function(err){ console.error(err); });
</script>
</head>

<body>
<app>Loading...</app>
</body>
</html>

```

The HTML fragment of each application component is inlined either inside the component (the `template` property) or in the file referenced from the component using the `templateURL` property. The latter option allows designers to work on the UI of your application without the need to learn Angular.

The Angular component is the centerpiece of the new architecture. Figure 1.3 shows a high-level diagram of a sample Angular application that consists of four components and two services; all of them are packaged inside a module. Angular's Dependency Injection (DI) module injects the `Http` service into `Service1`, which in turn is injected into the `GrandChild2` component. This diagram is quite different from figure 1.1, which illustrated AngularJS.



**Figure 1.3** Sample architecture of an Angular app

The simplest way of declaring a component is to write a class in TypeScript (you can use ES5, ES6, or Dart as well). In appendix B, we'll give you a brief introduction to how to write Angular components in TypeScript, followed by the sample code. See if you can understand the code with minimum explanation.

A TypeScript class prepended with a `@NgModule` metadata annotation represents a module. A TypeScript class prepended with a `@Component` metadata annotation represents a component. The `@Component` annotation (a.k.a. decorator) contains the `template` property that declares an HTML fragment to be rendered by the browser. Metadata annotations allow you to modify the properties of the component during design time. The HTML template may include the data-binding expressions, which are surrounded by double curly braces. References to event handlers are placed in the `template` property of the `@Component` annotation and are implemented as methods of the class. Another example of a metadata annotation is `@Injectable`, which allows you to mark a component to be handled by the DI module.

The `@Component` annotation also contains a selector declaring the name of the custom tag to be used in the HTML document. When Angular sees an HTML element whose name matches the selector, it knows which component implements it. The following HTML fragment illustrates the `<auction-application>` parent component with one child component, `<search-product>`:

```
<body>
  <auction-application>
    <search-product [productID] = "123"></search-product>
  </auction-application>
</body>
```

A parent component sends data to its child components using bindings to the input properties of the child (note the square brackets in the preceding code), and children communicate with their parents by emitting events via their output properties. At the end of the chapter, figure 1.7 shows the main page (the parent component) with its child components surrounded with thick borders.

The following code snippet shows a `SearchComponent`. You can include it in an HTML document as `<search-product>` because its declaration includes the `selector` property with the same name:

```
@Component({
  selector: 'search-product',
  template:
    `<form>
      <div>
        <input id="prodToFind" #prod>
        <button (click)="findProduct(prod.value)">Find Product</button>
        Product name: {{product.name}}
      </div>
    </form>
`)
```

```
class SearchComponent {
  @Input() productId: number;

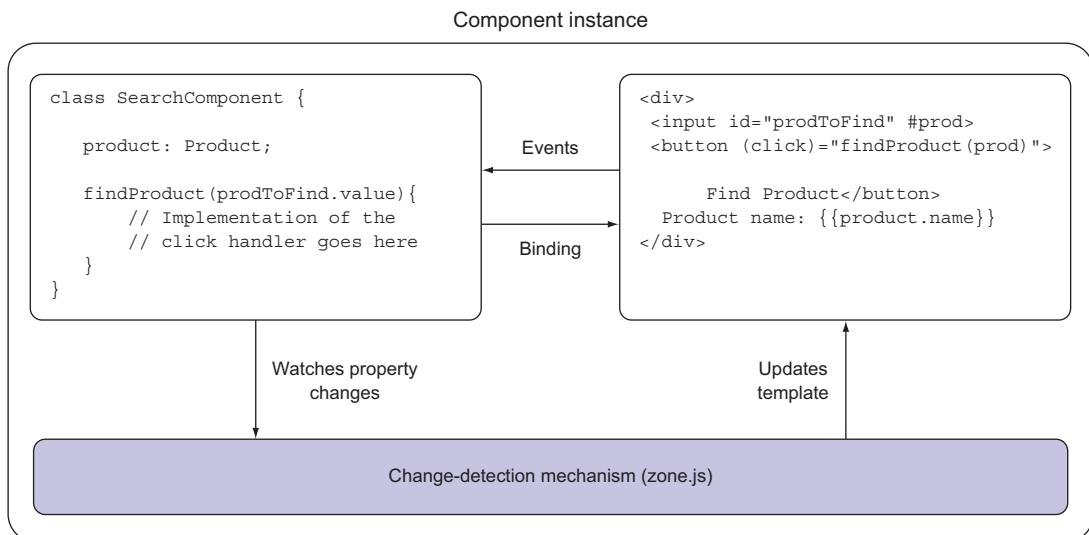
  product: Product; // code of the Product class is omitted

  findProduct(prodName: string) {
    // Implementation of the click handler goes here
  }
  // Other code can go here
}
```

If you're familiar with any object-oriented language that has classes, you should understand most of the preceding code. The annotated class `SearchComponent` declares a `product` variable, which may represent an object with multiple properties, one of which (`name`) is bound to the view (`{{product.name}}`). The template local variable `#prod` will have a reference to the hosting `<input>` element, so you don't need to query the DOM to get the entered value.

The `(click)` notation represents a click event. The event handler function gets the argument value from the `productId` input parameter that will be populated by the parent component via binding.

This was just a quick look at the sample component. We'll provide a detailed description of what components are made up of starting in the next chapter. If you've never worked with classes before, no worries. They're covered in appendixes A and B. Figure 1.4 illustrates the inner working of a sample component that searches for some products.



**Figure 1.4 Component internals**

A component renders the product data from the service represented by a class. In TypeScript, the `Product` class could look like this:

```
class Product{
  id: number,
  name: string;
  description: string;
  bid: number;
  price: number;

  // constructor and other methods go here
}
```

Note that TypeScript allows you to declare class variables with types. To let the UI component `SearchComponent` know about its data, you can declare a class variable, such as `product`:

```
@Component({ /* code omitted for brevity */ })
class SearchComponent {
  product: Product;

  findProduct(productId) {
    // The implementation of the click handler
    // for the Find Components button goes here
  }
}
```

If the search component may return multiple products, you can declare an array to store them:

```
products: Array<Product>;
```

The *generics* notation is explained in appendix B. In the preceding code snippet, `<Product>` tells the TypeScript compiler that only objects of the type `Product` are allowed to be stored in this array.

Angular is not an MVC-based framework, and your app won't have separate controllers (the *C* in the MVC pattern). The component and injected services (if need be) include all required code. In our example, the `SearchProduct` class would contain the code that performs the controller's responsibilities in addition to the code required for a UI component on the HTML view. For a cleaner separation of TypeScript and HTML, the content of the template section of the `@Component` annotation can be stored in a separate file by using `templateUrl` instead of `template`, but that's a matter of preference.

Now let's look at how the design of Angular is simpler than that of AngularJS. In AngularJS, all directives were loaded to the global scope, whereas in Angular you specify the required directives on the module level, providing better encapsulation.

You don't have to deal with the hierarchy of scope objects as in AngularJS. Angular is component-based, and the properties are created on the `this` object, which becomes the component's scope.

One way of creating object instances is by using the `new` operator. If object A depends on object B, in the code of object A you can write `let myB = new B();`. Dependency Injection is a design pattern that inverts the way of creating objects your code depends on. Instead of explicitly creating object instances (such as with `new`), the framework will create and inject them into your code. Angular comes with a DI module, and we'll cover that topic in chapter 4.

In AngularJS there were several ways of registering dependencies, which could be confusing at times. In Angular, you can only inject dependencies into the component via its constructor. The following TypeScript code fragment shows how you'd inject the `ProductService` component into `SearchComponent`. You just need to specify a provider and declare the constructor argument with the type that matches provider's type:

```
@Component({
  selector: 'search-product',
  providers: [ProductService],
  template: `<div>...</div>`
})
class SearchComponent {
  products: Array<Product> = [];

  constructor(productService: ProductService) {
    this.products = productService.getProducts();
  }
}
```

This code doesn't use the `new` operator—Angular will instantiate the `ProductService` and provide its reference to the `SearchComponent`.

To summarize, Angular is simpler than AngularJS for several reasons:

- Each building block of your app is a component with the well-encapsulated functionality of a view, controller, and auto-generated change detector.
- Components can be programmed as annotated classes.
- You don't have to deal with scope hierarchies.
- Dependent components are injected via the component's constructor.
- Two-way binding is turned off by default.
- The change-detection mechanism was rewritten and works faster.

The concepts of Angular are easy to understand for Java, C#, and C++ programmers, which represent the majority of enterprise software developers. Like it or not, a framework becomes popular when it's adopted by enterprises. AngularJS has been widely adopted by enterprises, and AngularJS skills are in demand. Because developing applications with Angular is easier than with AngularJS, this trend should continue.

### 1.3.2 Performance improvements

The Repaint Rate Challenge website (<http://mathieuancelin.github.io/js-repaint-perfs>) compares the rendering performance of various frameworks. You can compare the performance of AngularJS with Angular 2—Angular shows serious performance improvements.

The rendering improvements mainly result from the internal redesign of the Angular framework. The UI rendering and application API were separated into two layers, which allows you to run the non-UI related code in a separate web worker thread. In addition to being able to run the code of these layers concurrently, web browsers allocate different CPU cores to these threads when possible. You can find a detailed description of the new rendering architecture in the document on Google Docs titled “Angular 2 Rendering Architecture” available at <http://mng.bz/K403>.

Creating a separate layer for rendering has an additional important benefit: you can use different renderers for different devices. Every component includes the `@Component` annotation that contains an HTML template defining the look of the component. If you want to create a `<stock-price>` component to display stock prices in the web browser, its UI portion might look like this:

```
@Component({
  selector: 'stock-price',
  template: '<div>The price of an IBM share is $165.50</div>'
})
class StockPriceComponent {
...
}
```

Angular’s rendering engine is a separate module, which allows third-party vendors to replace the default DOM renderer with one that targets non-browser-based platforms. For example, this allows you to reuse the TypeScript code across devices with third-party UI renderers for mobile devices that render native components. The TypeScript portion of the components remains the same, but the content of the `template` property of the `@Component` decorator may contain XML or another language for rendering native components.

One such custom Angular 2 renderer is already implemented in the NativeScript framework, which serves as a bridge between JavaScript and native iOS and Android UI components. With NativeScript you can reuse the component’s code by just replacing the HTML in the template with XML. Another custom UI renderer allows you to use Angular 2 with React Native, which is an alternative way of creating native (not hybrid) UIs for iOS and Android.

A new and improved change-detection mechanism is another contributor to Angular’s better performance. Angular doesn’t use two-way binding unless you manually program it. One-way binding simplifies the detection of changes in an application that may have lots of interdependent bindings. You can now mark a component to be excluded from the change-detection workflow, so it won’t be checked when a change is detected in another component.

**NOTE** Although Angular is a complete redesign of AngularJS, if you use AngularJS you can start writing code in Angular style by using `ng-forward` (see <https://github.com/ngUpgraders/ng-forward>). The other approach (`ng-upgrade`) is to gradually switch to a newer version of this framework by running Angular and AngularJS in the same application (see <https://angular.io/docs/ts/latest/guide/upgrade.html>), but this will increase the size of the application.

## 1.4 An Angular developer's toolbox

Say you need to hire a web developer experienced with Angular. What would you expect the developer to know? They'd need to understand the architecture, components, and concepts of Angular applications mentioned in the previous sections, but that's not enough. The following rather long list identifies languages and tools that professional Angular developers use. Not all of them are needed for developing and deploying any given application. We'll use only half of them in this book:

- JavaScript is a de facto standard programming language for the front end of web applications. ES6 is the latest standardized specification for scripting languages, and JavaScript is its most popular implementation.
- TypeScript is a superset of JavaScript that makes developers more productive. TypeScript supports most of the features of ES6 and adds optional types, interfaces, metadata annotations, and more.
- The TypeScript code analyzer uses type-definition files for code that's not originally written in TypeScript. DefinitelyTyped is a popular collection of such files describing the APIs of hundreds of JavaScript libraries and frameworks. Using type-definition files allows the IDEs to provide context-sensitive help and highlight errors. You'll be installing type-definition files from the `@types` organization of npmjs.org (see appendix B).
- Because most web browsers support only ECMAScript 5 (ES5) syntax, you'll need to *transpile* (convert from one language to another) the code written in TypeScript or ES6 to ES5 for deployment. Angular developers may use Babel, Traceur, and the TypeScript compiler for code transpiling (see appendixes A and B for details).
- SystemJS is a universal module loader that loads modules created in ES6, AMD, and CommonJS standards.
- Angular CLI is a code generator that allows you to generate new Angular projects, components, services, and routes, as well as build the application for deployment.
- Node.js is a platform built on Chrome's JavaScript engine. Node includes both a framework and a runtime environment for running JavaScript code outside of the browser. You won't be using the Node.js framework in this book, but you'll use its runtime to install the required tools for developing Angular applications.

- npm is a package manager that allows you to download tools as well as JavaScript libraries and frameworks. This package manager has a repository of thousands of items, and you'll use it for installing pretty much everything from developer tools (such as the TypeScript compiler) to application dependencies (such as Angular 2, jQuery, and others). npm can also be used for running scripts, and you'll use this feature to start HTTP servers as well as for build automation.
- Bower used to be a popular package manager for resolving application dependencies (such as for Angular 2 and jQuery). We don't use Bower any longer because everything we need can be downloaded using npm.
- jspm is yet another package manager. Why do we need another one if npm can take care of all dependencies? Modern web applications consist of loadable modules, and jspm integrates SystemJS, which makes loading modules a breeze. In chapter 2, we'll give you a brief comparison of npm and jspm.
- Grunt is a task runner. Lots of steps need to be performed between developing and deploying the code, and all these steps must be automated. You may need to transpile code written in TypeScript or ES6 into widely supported ES5 syntax, and the code, images, and CSS files need to be minimized. You may also want to include the tasks that will check the code quality and unit-test your application. With Grunt, you can configure all the tasks and their dependencies in a JSON file so the process is 100% automated.
- Gulp is yet another task runner. It can automate tasks just as Grunt does, but instead of configuring the process in JSON, you program it in JavaScript. This allows you to debug it if need be.
- JSLint and ESLint are code analyzers that look for problematic patterns in JavaScript programs or JSON-formatted documents. These are code-quality tools. Running a JavaScript program through JSLint or ESLint results in a number of warning messages suggesting how you can improve the code quality of the program.
- TSLint is a code-quality tool for TypeScript. It has a collection of extendable rules to enforce the recommended coding style and patterns.
- Minifiers, like UglifyJS, make files smaller. In JavaScript they remove code comments and line breaks, and they make variable names shorter. Minification can also be applied to HTML, CSS, and image files.
- Bundlers, such as Webpack, combine multiple files and their dependencies into a single file.
- Because JavaScript syntax is very forgiving, the application code requires testing, so you'll need to pick one of the testing frameworks. In this book, you'll use the Jasmine framework and the test runner called Karma.

- Both JavaScript and TypeScript are well supported by modern IDEs and text editors such as WebStorm, Visual Studio, Visual Studio Code, Sublime Text, Atom, and others.
- All major web browsers come with developer tools that allow you to debug your programs right inside the browser. Even if the program was written in TypeScript and deployed in JavaScript, you can debug the original source code using source maps. We use Chrome Developer Tools.
- Web applications should be usable on mobile devices. You should use UI components that internally support a responsive web design approach to ensure that the UI layout automatically changes depending on the screen size of the user's device.<sup>1</sup>

This list may look intimidating, but you don't have to use each and every tool mentioned. In this book, you'll use the following tools:

- npm for configuring applications, installing utilities, and dependencies. You'll use npm scripts for starting web servers and as task runners in build automation.
- Node.js as a runtime environment for running utilities and as a framework for writing a web server (chapter 8).
- SystemJS for loading the application code and transpiling TypeScript on the fly in the browser.
- The command-line TypeScript compiler tsc for running examples from appendix B and programming a Node application in chapter 8.
- Jasmine for programming unit tests, and Karma for running them (chapter 9).
- Webpack for minimizing and bundling applications for deployment (chapter 10).

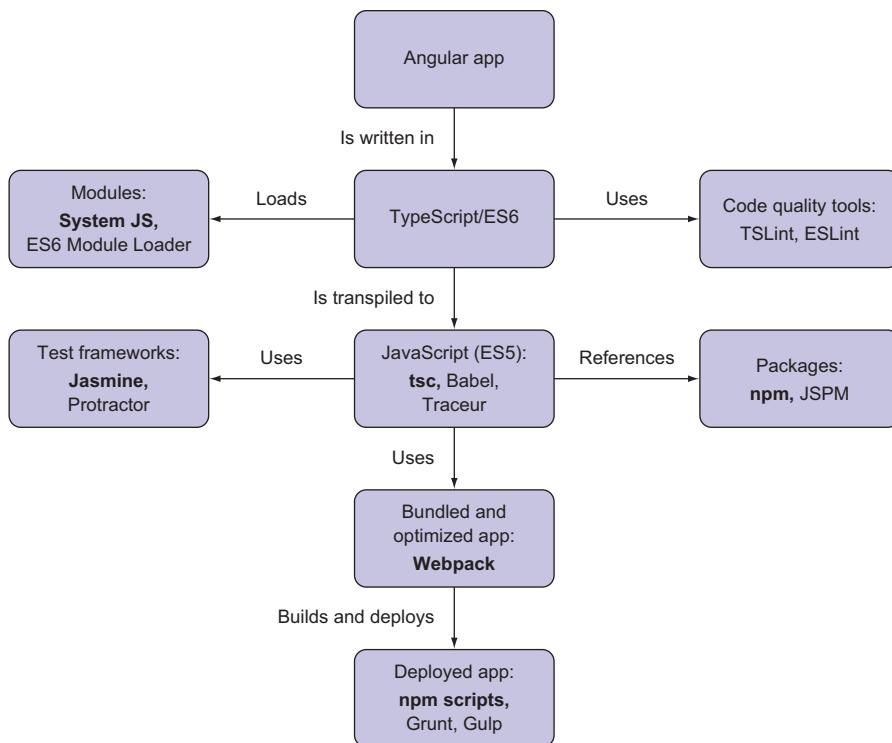
**NOTE** Programming in Angular is much simpler than in AngularJS, but the initial setup of the application is more involved because you'll be using transpilers and module loaders, which were not required for developing with JavaScript and AngularJS. In general, the introduction of ES6 modules changes the way applications will be loaded to the browser in the future, and we'll use the new approach in this book.

Figure 1.5 illustrates how tools can be applied at different stages of the development and deployment processes. The tools you'll use in this book are shown in bold.

Programming in Angular is easier than in AngularJS, but the initial environment setup must be done right so you can really enjoy the development process. In the next chapter, we'll discuss the initial project setup and tooling in greater detail.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Wikipedia for an explanation of responsive web design: [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Responsive\\_web\\_design](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Responsive_web_design).

**Figure 1.5** Using tools

## 1.5 How things are done in Angular

To give you a taste of how things are done in Angular, we came up with table 1.1, which lists the tasks that you may want to do (the left column) and what the Angular/TypeScript combo offers to accomplish each task (the right column). This is not a complete list of tasks that you can do, and we show you just fragments of the syntax, but it gives you the general idea. All these features will be explained in the book.

**Table 1.1** How things are done in Angular

Task	How
Implement business logic.	Create a class, and Angular will instantiate and inject it into your component. You can also use the new operator.
Implement a component with UI.	Create a class annotated with @Component.
Specify the HTML template to be rendered by a component.	Either inline the HTML code in the @Component annotation using its template property, or specify the name of the HTML file in templateUrl.

**Table 1.1 How things are done in Angular (continued)**

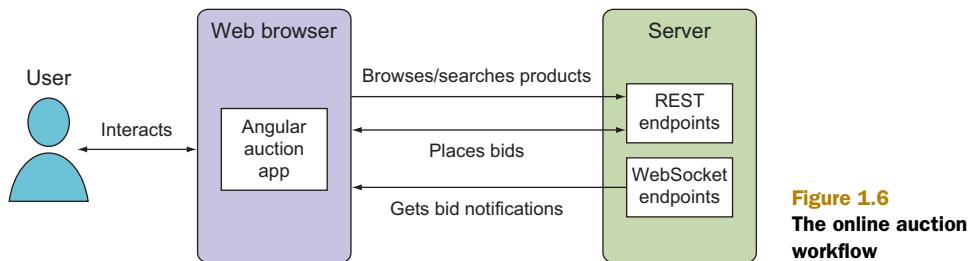
Task	How
Manipulate HTML.	Use one of the structural directives ( <code>*ngIf</code> , <code>*ngFor</code> ), or create a custom class annotated with <code>@Directive</code> .
Refer to the class variable on the current object.	Use the <code>this</code> keyword: <code>this.userName="Mary"</code> ;
Arrange navigation on a single-page app.	Configure the component-based router, mapping components to URL segments, and add the <code>&lt;router-outlet&gt;</code> tag to the template where you want the component to be rendered.
Display a value of a component's property on the UI.	Place the variables inside double curly brackets on the template: <code>{ {customerName} }</code> .
Bind a component property to the UI.	Use property binding with square brackets: <code>&lt;input [value] = "greeting" &gt;</code> .
Handle UI events.	Surround the event name with parentheses, and specify the handler: <code>&lt;button (click)="onClickEvent()"&gt;Get Products&lt;/button&gt;</code> .
Use two-way binding.	Use the <code>[()</code> ] notation: <code>&lt;input [(ngModel)] = "myComponentProperty" &gt;</code> .
Pass data to a component.	Annotate component properties as <code>@Input</code> , and bind the values to it .
Pass data from a component.	Annotate component properties as <code>@Output</code> , and use <code>EventEmitter</code> to emit events.
Make an HTTP request.	Inject the <code>Http</code> object into a component, and invoke one of the HTTP methods: <code>this.http.get('/products')</code> .
Handle HTTP responses.	Use the <code>subscribe()</code> method on the result that arrives as an observable stream: <code>this.http.get('/products').subscribe(...);</code>
Pass an HTML fragment to a child component.	Use <code>&lt;ng-content&gt;</code> in the child's template.
Intercept modifications of components.	Use the component's lifecycle hooks.
Deploy.	Use third-party bundlers like Webpack to package the application files and frameworks into JavaScript bundles.

## 1.6 *Introducing the online auction example*

To make this book more practical, we'll start every chapter by showing you small applications that illustrate Angular syntax or techniques. At the end of each chapter, you'll use the new concepts and see how components and services are combined into a working application.

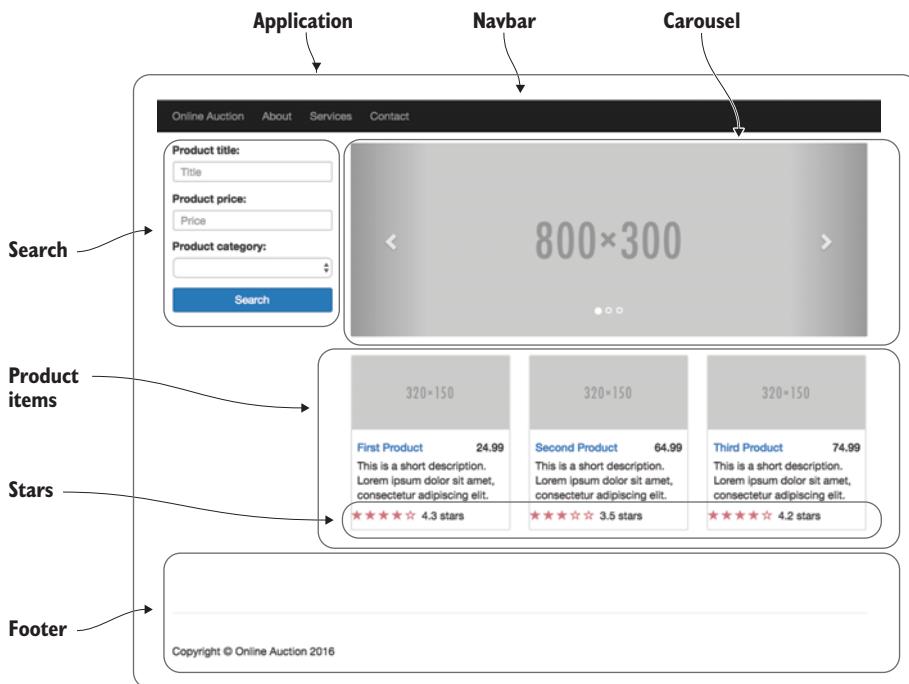
Imagine an online auction where people can browse and search products. When the results are displayed, the user can select a product and bid on it. Each new bid will be validated on the server and will be either accepted or rejected. The information on the latest bids will be pushed by the server to all users subscribed to such notifications.

The functionality of browsing, searching, and placing bids will be implemented by making requests to the server's RESTful endpoints, implemented in the server developed with Node.js. The server will use WebSockets to push notifications about the user's bid acceptance or rejection and about bids placed by other users. Figure 1.6 depicts sample workflows for the online auction.



**Figure 1.6**  
**The online auction workflow**

Figure 1.7 shows how the auction home page will be rendered on desktop computers. Initially you'll use gray placeholders instead of product images.



**Figure 1.7** The online auction home page with highlighted components

You'll use responsive UI components, so on smartphones the home page will be rendered as in figure 1.8.

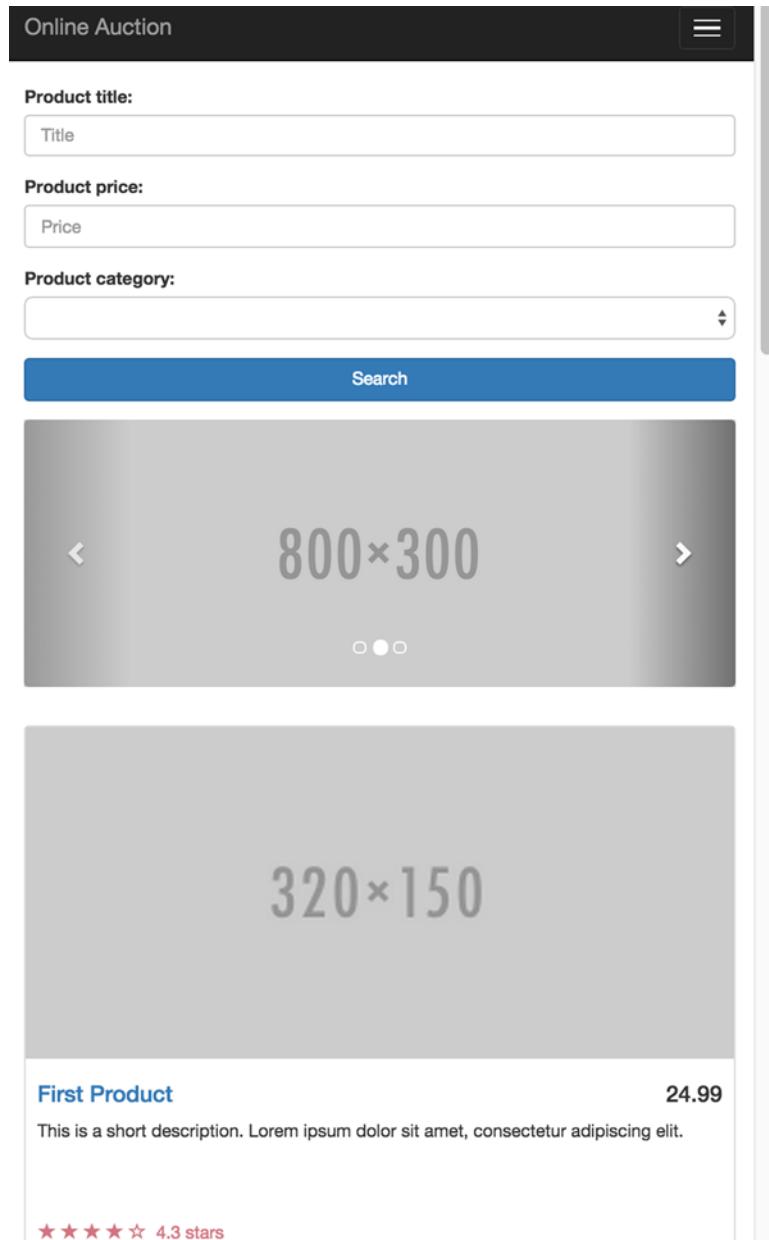


Figure 1.8 The online auction home page on a smartphone

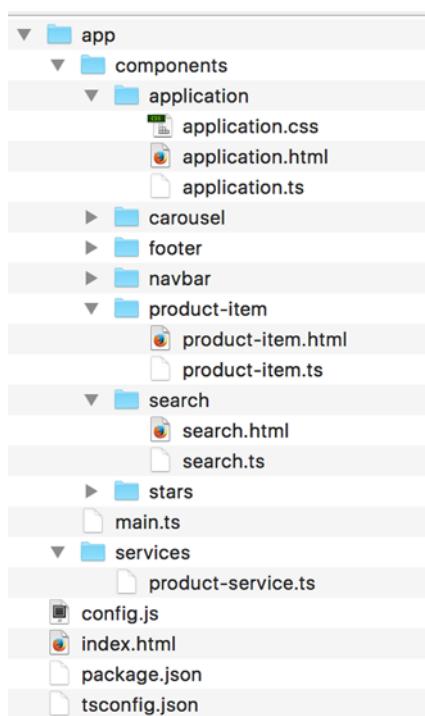
The development of an Angular application comes down to creating and composing components. The code of the online auction will be written in TypeScript, and the view portion of the components will be developed as HTML templates with data binding. Figure 1.9 shows the initial project structure for the online auction app.

The index.html file will just load the main application component represented by two files: application.html and application.ts. The application component will include other components like product, search, and so on. All dependencies of the application component will be loaded automatically.

## 1.7 Summary

In this chapter we took a high-level look at the Angular 2 framework in comparison with its previous version, AngularJS. We also introduced a sample online auction application that you'll be developing throughout this book.

- The architecture of Angular is simpler than that of AngularJS.
- Angular applications can be developed in TypeScript or JavaScript.
- The source code has to be transpiled into JavaScript before deployment.
- The Angular developer has to be familiar with multiple tools.
- Angular is a component-based framework.
- Good frameworks allow application developers to write less code, and Angular is a good one.



**Figure 1.9** The initial project structure for the online auction app



# *Getting started with Angular*

## **This chapter covers**

- Writing your first Angular application
- Getting familiar with the SystemJS universal module loader
- The role of package managers
- The first version of the online auction application

In this chapter, we'll start discussing how you develop Angular applications using modern tools and web technologies like annotations, ES6 modules, and module loaders. Angular changes the way you'll develop JavaScript applications. You'll write three versions of a Hello World application, and we'll briefly discuss package managers and the SystemJS universal module loader.

After that, we'll create a small project that can serve as boilerplate for creating your own Angular projects. Then we'll discuss the main building blocks of Angular applications, such as components and views, and we'll briefly cover dependency

injection and data binding. At the end of the chapter, we'll go over the online auction application that you'll be developing throughout the book.

**NOTE** All code samples in this book are based on the Angular 2.0.0 Final version. If the API of future releases of Angular changes, we'll update the code samples at <https://github.com/Farata/angular2typescript> accordingly.

**TIP** If you're not familiar with the syntax of TypeScript and ECMAScript 6, we suggest you read appendixes A and B first, and then start reading from this chapter on.

## 2.1 A first Angular application

In this section we'll show you three versions of the Hello World application written in TypeScript, ES5, and ES6. This will be the only section where you'll see Angular applications written in ES5 and ES6—all other code samples will be written in TypeScript.

### 2.1.1 Hello World in TypeScript

This first application will be quite minimalistic to get you quickly started programming with Angular. This application will consist of two files:

```
└── index.html
└── main.ts
```

Both files are located in the hello-world-ts directory in the downloadable code for the book. The index.html file is the entry point for the application. It will contain references to the Angular framework, its dependencies, and the main.ts file, which contains the code to bootstrap your application. Some of these references can be located in the configuration file of the module loader (you'll use the SystemJS and Webpack loaders in this book).

#### LOADING ANGULAR IN THE HTML FILE

The code of the Angular framework consists of modules (one file per module), which are combined into libraries, which are logically grouped into packages, such as @angular/core, @angular/common, and so on. Your application has to load required packages before the application code.

Let's create an index.html file, which will start by loading the required Angular scripts, the TypeScript compiler, and the SystemJS module loader. The following code loads these scripts from the [unpkg.com](https://unpkg.com) content delivery network (CDN).

#### Listing 2.1 TypeScript index.html

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/zone.js@0.6.12"></script>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/typescript@2.0.0"></script>
```

Zone.js is a library that  
powers the change-  
detection mechanism.

The TypeScript  
compiler transpiles  
your source code  
into JavaScript right  
in the browser.

```

    Configures SystemJS loader
    for loading and transpiling
    TypeScript code
    <script src="//unpkg.com/systemjs@0.19.37/dist/system.src.js"></script>
    <script src="//unpkg.com/core-js/client/shim.min.js"></script>
    <script>
        System.config({
            transpiler: 'typescript',
            typescriptOptions: {emitDecoratorMetadata: true},
            map: {
                'rxjs': 'https://unpkg.com/rxjs@5.0.0-beta.12',
                '@angular/core':
                    core@2.0.0',
                '@angular/common':
                    common@2.0.0',
                '@angular/compiler':
                    compiler@2.0.0',
                '@angular/platform-browser':
                    platform-browser@2.0.0',
                '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic':
                    platform-browser-dynamic@2.0.0'
            },
            packages: {
                '@angular/core':
                    main: 'index.js',
                '@angular/common':
                    main: 'index.js',
                '@angular/compiler':
                    main: 'index.js',
                '@angular/platform-browser':
                    main: 'index.js',
                '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic':
                    main: 'index.js'
            }
        });
        System.import('main.ts');
    </script>
</head>
<body>
    <hello-world></hello-world>
</body>
</html>

```

The SystemJS library dynamically loads the application code into the browser. We'll discuss SystemJS later in this chapter.

Specifies the main script for each Angular module

Maps the names of the Angular modules to their CDN locations

Instructs SystemJS to load the main module from the main.ts file

The <hello-world></hello-world> custom HTML element represents the component that's implemented in main.ts.

When the application is launched, the <hello-world> tag will be replaced with the content of the template from the @Component annotation shown in listing 2.2.

**TIP** If you use Internet Explorer, you may need to add the additional script system-polyfills.js.

### Content delivery networks (CDNs)

unpkg (<https://unpkg.com>) is a CDN for packages published to the npm (<https://www.npmjs.com/>) package manager's registry. Check [npmjs.com](https://www.npmjs.com) to find the latest version of a particular package. If you want to see which other versions of the package are available, run the `npm info packagename` command.

**(continued)**

Generated files aren't committed into a version control system, and Angular 2 doesn't include ready-to-use bundles in its Git repository. They're generated on the fly and published along with the npm package (<https://www.npmjs.com/~angular>), so you can use unpkg to directly reference production-ready bundles in HTML files. Instead, we prefer using a local install of Angular and its dependencies, so you'll install them using npm in section 2.4.2. Everything that's installed by npm will be stored in the node\_modules directory in each project.

### THE TYPESCRIPT FILE

Now let's create a main.ts file, which has the TypeScript/Angular code and three parts:

- 1 Declare the Hello World component.
- 2 Wrap it into a module.
- 3 Load the module.

Later in this chapter, you'll implement these parts in three separate files, but here, for simplicity, you'll keep all the code of this tiny app in one file.

**Listing 2.2** TypeScript main.ts

```
Imports the bootstrap method and the @Component annotation from the corresponding Angular packages, making them available for the application's code
import { Component } from '@angular/core';
import { NgModule }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-
➥ browser-dynamic';

// Component
@Component({
  selector: 'hello-world',
  template: '<h1>Hello {{ name }}!</h1>'
})
class HelloWorldComponent {
  name: string;

  constructor() {
    this.name = 'Angular';
  }
}

// Module
@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
  declarations: [ HelloWorldComponent ],
  bootstrap:   [ HelloWorldComponent ]
})
```

The diagram shows several annotations pointing to specific parts of the code:

- An annotation above the imports states: "Imports the bootstrap method and the @Component annotation from the corresponding Angular packages, making them available for the application's code".
- An annotation on the left side of the class definition states: "The template property defines the HTML markup for rendering this component." It points to the template property in the @Component annotation.
- An annotation on the right side of the class definition states: "The @Component annotation placed above the HelloWorldComponent class turns it into an Angular component." It points to the @Component annotation itself.
- An annotation on the left side of the constructor states: "The name property is used in the data-binding expression on the component's template." It points to the {{ name }} placeholder in the template.
- An annotation on the right side of the constructor states: "Inside the constructor, you initialize the name property with the value Angular 2 bound to the template." It points to the this.name = 'Angular' assignment.
- An annotation at the bottom right states: "Declares the content of the module" and points to the NgModule block.

```
export class AppModule { }      ← Declares the class representing the module  
Loads the module → // App bootstrap  
                           platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);
```

We'll introduce the annotations `@Component` and `@NgModule` in section 2.2.

### What's metadata?

In general, metadata is additional information about data. For example, in an MP3 file, the audio is the data, but the name of the artist, the song title, and the album cover are metadata. The MP3 player includes a metadata processor that reads the metadata and displays some of it while playing the song.

In the case of classes, metadata is additional information about the class. For example, the `@Component` decorator (a.k.a annotation) tells Angular (the metadata processor) that this is not a regular class, but a component. Angular generates additional JavaScript code based on the information provided in the properties of the `@Component` decorator.

In the case of class properties, the `@Input` decorator tells Angular that this class property should support binding and be able to receive data from the parent component.

You can also think of a decorator as a function that attaches some data to the decorated element. The `@Component` decorator doesn't change the decorated class but adds some data describing the class so the Angular compiler can properly generate the final code of the component, either in the browser's memory (dynamic compilation) or in the file on disk (static compilation).

Any app component can be included in an HTML file (or a template of another component) by using the tag that matches the component's name in the `selector` property of the `@Component` annotation. Component selectors are similar to CSS selectors, so given the '`hello-world`' selector, you'd render this component in an HTML page with an element named `<hello-world>`. Angular will convert this line into `document.querySelectorAll(selector)`.

Notice how in listing 2.2 the entire template is wrapped in backticks to turn the template into a string. That way, you can use single and double quotes inside the template and break it into multiple lines for better formatting. The template contains the data-binding expression `{{ name }}`, and at runtime Angular will find the `name` property on your component and replace the data-binding expression in curly braces with a concrete value.

You'll use TypeScript for all the code examples in this book except for the two versions of Hello World shown next. One example will show an ES5 version, and the other is written in ES6.

## 2.1.2 Hello World in ES5

To create applications with ES5, you should use a special Angular bundle distributed in Universal Module Definition (UMD) format (note the *umd* in the URLs). It publishes all Angular APIs on the global `ng` object. The HTML file of the ES5 Angular Hello World application might look like the following (see the `hello-world-es5` folder).

### Listing 2.3 ES5 index.html

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/zone.js@0.6.12/dist/zone.js"></script>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/rxjs@5.0.0-beta.11/bundles/Rx.umd.js"></script>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/core-js/client/shim.min.js"></script>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/@angular/core@2.0.0/bundles/core.umd.js"></script>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/@angular/common@2.0.0/bundles/common.umd.js">
    </script>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/@angular/compiler@2.0.0/bundles/
    compiler.umd.js"></script>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/@angular/platform-browser@2.0.0/bundles/
    platform-browser.umd.js"></script>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/@angular/platform-browser-dynamic@2.0.0/
bundles/platform-browser-dynamic.umd.js"></script>
</head>
<body>
<hello-world></hello-world>
<script src="main.js"></script>
</body>
</html>
```

Because ES5 doesn't support the annotations syntax and has no native module system, the `main.js` file should be written differently from its TypeScript version.

### Listing 2.4 ES5 main.js

```
// Component
(function(app) {
  app.HelloWorldComponent =
    ng.core.Component({
      selector: 'hello-world',
      template: '<h1>Hello {{name}}!</h1>'
    })
    .Class({
      constructor: function() {
        this.name = 'Angular 2';
      }
    });
})(window.app || (window.app = {}));
```

```
// Module
(function(app) {
  app.AppModule =
    ng.core.NgModule({
      imports: [ ng.platformBrowser.BrowserModule ],
      declarations: [ app.HelloWorldComponent ],
      bootstrap: [ app.HelloWorldComponent ]
    })
    .Class({
      constructor: function() {}
    });
}) (window.app || (window.app = {}));

// App bootstrap
(function(app) {
  document.addEventListener('DOMContentLoaded', function() {
    ng.platformBrowserDynamic
      .platformBrowserDynamic()
      .bootstrapModule(app.AppModule);
  });
}) (window.app || (window.app = {}));
```

The first immediately invoked function expression (IIFE) invokes the `Component()` and `Class` methods on the global Angular core namespace `ng.core`. You define the `HelloWorldComponent` object, and the `Component` method attaches the metadata defining its selector and template. By doing this, you turn the JavaScript object into a visual component.

The business logic of the component is coded inside the `Class` method. In this case, you declare and initialize the `name` property that's bound to the component's template.

The second IIFE invokes the `NgModule` method to create a module that declares `HelloWorldComponent` and specifies it as a root component by assigning its name to the `bootstrap` property. Finally, the third IIFE launches the app by invoking `bootstrapModule()`, which loads the module, instantiates `HelloWorldComponent`, and attaches it to the browser's DOM.

### 2.1.3 Hello World in ES6

The ES6 version of the Hello World application looks very similar to the TypeScript version, but it uses Traceur as the transpiler for SystemJS. The `index.html` file looks like this.

#### **Listing 2.5 ES6 index.html**

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/zone.js@0.6.21"></script>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/reflect-metadata@0.1.3"></script>
```

```

<script src="//unpkg.com/traceur@0.0.111/bin/traceur.js"></script>
<script src="//unpkg.com/systemjs@0.19.37/dist/system.src.js"></script>
<script>
  System.config({
    transpiler: 'traceur',
    traceurOptions: {annotations: true},
    map: {
      'rxjs': 'https://unpkg.com/rxjs@5.0.0-beta.12',
      '@angular/core' : 'https://unpkg.com/@angular/
        ↳ core@2.0.0',
      '@angular/common' : 'https://unpkg.com/@angular/
        ↳ common@2.0.0',
      '@angular/compiler' : 'https://unpkg.com/@angular/
        ↳ compiler@2.0.0',
      '@angular/platform-browser' : 'https://unpkg.com/@angular/
        ↳ platform-browser@2.0.0',
      '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic': 'https://unpkg.com/@angular/
        ↳ platform-browser-dynamic@2.0.0'
    },
    packages: {
      '@angular/core' : {main: 'index.js'},
      '@angular/common' : {main: 'index.js'},
      '@angular/compiler' : {main: 'index.js'},
      '@angular/platform-browser' : {main: 'index.js'},
      '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic': {main: 'index.js'}
    }
  });
  System.import('main.js');
</script>
</head>
<body>
  <hello-world></hello-world>
</body>
</html>

```

← ES6 isn't fully supported across browsers, and you use Traceur to transpile (in the browser) ES6 code into an ES5 version.

← The extension of the script file is .js now.

The only difference between the ES6 main.js file compared to the TypeScript main.ts file is that now you don't have the predeclared name class member:

#### Listing 2.6 ES6 main.js

```

import {Component} from '@angular/core';
import { NgModule }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';

// Component
@Component({
  selector: 'hello-world',
  template: '<h1>Hello {{ name }}!</h1>'
})

```

```
class HelloWorldComponent {  
  constructor() {  
    this.name = 'Angular 2';  
  }  
}  
  
// Module  
@NgModule({  
  imports: [ BrowserModule ],  
  declarations: [ HelloWorldComponent ],  
  bootstrap: [ HelloWorldComponent ]  
})  
export class AppModule {}  
  
// App bootstrap  
platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);
```

#### 2.1.4 Launching applications

To run any web application, you'll need a basic HTTP server, such as http-server or live-server. The latter performs live reloads of the web page as soon as you modify the code and save the file of the running application.

To install http-server, use the following npm command:

```
npm install http-server -g
```

To start the server from the command line in the project root directory, use this command:

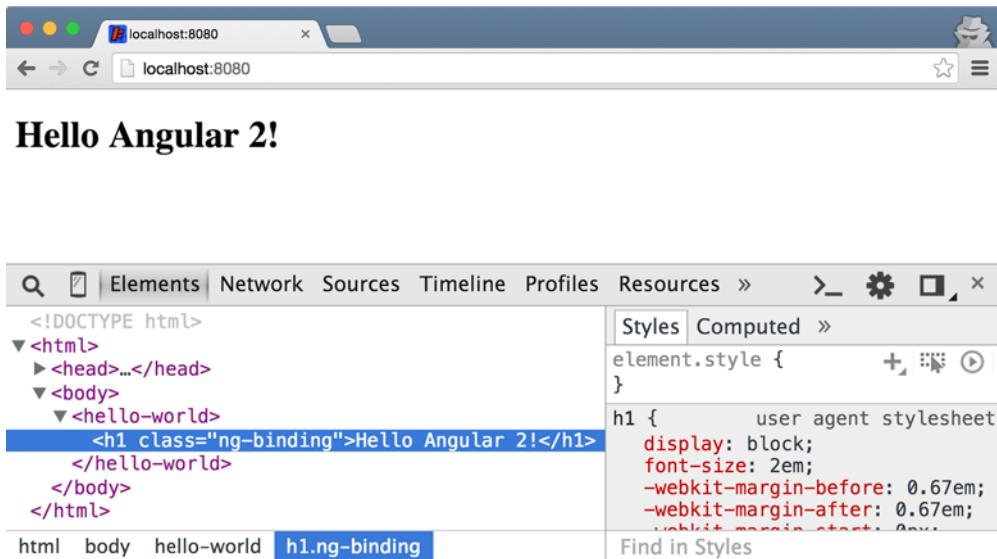
```
http-server
```

We prefer to see live reloads in the browser, so install and start live-server using a similar routine:

```
npm install live-server -g  
  
live-server
```

If you use http-server, you'll need to manually open the web browser and enter the URL `http://localhost:8080`, whereas live-server will open the browser for you.

To run the Hello World application, launch live-server in the root directory of the project; it will load `index.html` in your web browser. You should see “Hello Angular 2!” rendered on the page (see figure 2.1). In the browser’s Developer Tools panel, you can see that the template you specified for `HelloWorldComponent` becomes the content of the `<hello-world>` element, and the data-binding expression is replaced with the actual value you used to initialize the `name` property in the constructor of the component.



**Figure 2.1** Running Hello World

## 2.2 The building blocks of an Angular application

In this section, we'll give you a high-level overview of the main building blocks of an Angular application so that you can read and understand Angular code. We'll discuss each of these topics in detail in future chapters.

### 2.2.1 Modules

An Angular module is a container for a group of related components, services, directives, and so on. You can think of a module as a library of components and services that implements certain functionality from the business domain of your application, such as a shipping module or a billing module. All elements of a small application can be located in one module (the root module), whereas larger apps may have more than one module (feature modules). All apps must have at least a root module that is bootstrapped during the app launch.

**NOTE** ES6 modules just offer you a way to hide and protect functions or variables and create loadable scripts. Angular modules, in contrast, are used for packaging related application functionality.

From the syntax perspective, a module is a class annotated with the `NgModule` decorator and that can include other resources. In section 2.1 you already used a module, which looked like this:

**Declares that HelloWorldComponent belongs to the AppModule. Each module member must be listed here.**

```
@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
  declarations: [ HelloWorldComponent ],
  bootstrap:   [ HelloWorldComponent ]
})
export class AppModule { }
```

Every browser app must import BrowserModule and can import other modules (such as FormsModule) if need be.

During app launch, the module renders the root component that's assigned to the bootstrap property of @NgModule.

Importing BrowserModule is a must in the root module, but if your app will consist of the root and feature modules, the latter will need to import CommonModule instead. Members of all imported modules (such as FormsModule and RouterModule) are available to all components of the module.

To load and compile a module on application startup, you need to invoke the bootstrapModule module:

```
platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);
```

Your app modules can be loaded either immediately (eagerly), as in the preceding code snippet, or lazily (as needed) by the router (see chapter 3). You'll use @NgModule in every chapter of this book, so you'll have a chance to see how to declare modules with multiple members. For a detailed description of Angular modules, read the documentation at <https://angular.io/docs/ts/latest/guide/ngmodule.html>.

## 2.2.2 Components

The main building block of an Angular application is the *component*. Each component consists of two parts: a view that defines the user interface (UI) and a class that implements the logic behind the view.

Any Angular application represents a hierarchy of components packaged in modules. An app must have at least one module and one component, which is called the *root component*. There's nothing special about the root component compared to other components. Any component assigned to the bootstrap property of the module becomes the root component.

To create a component, declare a class and attach the @Component annotation to it:

```
@Component({
  selector: 'app-component',
  template: '<h1>Hello !</h1>'
})
class HelloComponent {}
```

Each @Component annotation must define selector and template (or templateUrl) properties, which determine how the component should be discovered and rendered on the page.

The selector property is similar to a CSS selector. Each HTML element that matches the selector is rendered as an Angular component. You can think of the @Component decorator as a configuration function that complements the class. If you look at the transpiled code of the main.ts file from listing 2.2, you'll see what the Angular compiler did with the @Component decorator:

```
var core_1;
var HelloWorldComponent;

HelloWorldComponent = (function () {
  function HelloWorldComponent() {
    this.name = 'Angular 2';
  }
  HelloWorldComponent = __decorate([
    core_1.Component({
      selector: 'hello-world',
      template: '<h1>Hello {{ name }}!</h1>'
    }),
    __metadata('design:paramtypes', [])
  ], HelloWorldComponent);
  return HelloWorldComponent;
})
```

Each component must define a view, which is specified in either a template or a templateUrl property of the @Component decorator:

```
@Component({
  selector: 'app-component',
  template: '<h1>App Component</h1>' })
class AppComponent {}
```

For web applications, a template contains HTML markup. You can also use another markup language for rendering native mobile applications provided by third-party frameworks. If the markup consists of a couple of dozen lines or less, we keep it inline using the template property. We didn't use backticks in the preceding example because it's a single line of markup and doesn't contain single or double quotes. Larger HTML markup should be located in a separate HTML file referred to in templateUrl.

Components are styled with regular CSS. You can use the styles property for inline CSS and styleUrls for an external file with styles. External files allow web designers to work on the styles without modifying the application code. Ultimately, the decision of where to keep the HTML or CSS is yours.

You can think of a view as the result of merging UI layout with data. The code snippet for AppComponent has no data to merge, but the TypeScript version of Hello World (see the main.ts file in listing 2.2) would merge the HTML markup with the value of the name variable to produce the view.

**NOTE** In Angular, the view rendering is decoupled from components, so the template can represent a platform-specific native UI, such as NativeScript (<https://www.nativescript.org>) or React Native (<https://facebook.github.io/react-native>).

### 2.2.3 Directives

The `@Directive` decorator allows you to attach custom behavior to an HTML element (for example, you can add an autocomplete feature to an `<input>` element). Each component is basically a directive with an associated view, but unlike a component, a directive doesn't have its own view.

The following example shows a directive that can be attached to an input element in order to log the input's value to the browser's console as soon as the value is changed:

```
@Directive({
  selector: 'input [log-directive]',
  host: {
    '(input)': 'onInput($event)'
  }
})
class LogDirective {
  onInput(event) {
    console.log(event.target.value);
  }
}
```

This selector requires the target HTML element to have an `input` element and the `log-directive` attribute.

The host element is the one you attach your directive to.

The handler for the `<input>` element logs its value to the console.

To bind events to event handlers, enclose the event name in parentheses. When the `input` event occurs on the host element, the `onInput()` event handler is invoked and the event object is passed to this method as an argument.

Here's an example of how you can attach the directive to an HTML element:

```
<input type="text" log-directive/>
```

The next example shows a directive that changes the background of the attached element to blue:

```
import { Directive, ElementRef, Renderer } from '@angular/core';

@Directive({ selector: '[highlight]' })

export class HighlightDirective {
  constructor(renderer: Renderer, el: ElementRef) {
    renderer.setStyle(el.nativeElement, 'backgroundColor', 'blue');
  }
}
```

This directive can be attached to various HTML elements, and the constructor of this directive gets the references to the renderer and the UI element injected by Angular. Here's how this directive can be attached to the `<h1>` HTML element:

```
<h1 highlight>Hello World</h1>
```

All directives that are used in the module need to be added to the declaration property of the `@NgModule` decorator, as in this example:

```
@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
  declarations: [ HelloWorldComponent,
                  HighlightDirective ],
  bootstrap:   [ HelloWorldComponent ]
})
```

## 2.2.4 A brief introduction to data binding

Angular has a mechanism called *data binding* that allows you to keep a component's properties in sync with the view. This mechanism is quite sophisticated, and we'll cover data binding in detail in chapter 5. In this section we'll just cover the most common forms of data-binding syntax.

To display a value as a string in the template, use double curly braces:

```
<h1>Hello {{ name }}!</h1>
```

Use square brackets to bind an HTML element's property to a value:

```
<span [hidden]="isValid">The field is required</span>
```

To bind an event handler for an element's event, use parentheses:

```
<button (click)="placeBid()">Place Bid</button>
```

If you want to reference a DOM object's property within the template, add a local template variable (its name must start with #) that will automatically store a reference to the corresponding DOM object, and use dot notation:

```
<input #title type="text" />
<span>{{ title.value }}</span>
```

Now that you know how to write a simple Angular application, let's see how the code can be loaded into the browser with the SystemJS library.

## 2.3 The SystemJS universal module loader

Most existing web applications load JavaScript files into an HTML page using `<script>` tags. Although it's possible to add Angular code to a page the same way, the recommended way is to load code using the SystemJS library. Angular also uses SystemJS internally.

In this section, we'll give you a brief overview of SystemJS so you can get started developing Angular applications. For a detailed tutorial on SystemJS, see the SystemJS page on GitHub: <https://github.com/systemjs/systemjs>.

### 2.3.1 An overview of module loaders

The final ES6 specification introduces modules and covers their syntax and semantics (<http://mng.bz/ri01>). The early specification drafts included a definition of the global `System` object responsible for loading modules into the execution environment, whether that's a web browser or a standalone process. But the definition of the `System`

object was removed from the final version of the ES6 spec and is currently tracked by the Web Hypertext Application Technology Working Group (see <http://whatwg.github.io/loader>). The `System` object may become a part of the ES8 specification.

The ES6 Module Loader polyfill (<https://github.com/ModuleLoader/es6-module-loader>) offers one way to use the `System` object today (without waiting for future EcmaScript specifications). It strives to match the future standard, but this polyfill supports only ES6 modules.

Because ES6 is fairly new, most third-party packages hosted on the NPM registry don't use ES6 modules yet. The first nine chapters of this book use SystemJS, which not only includes the ES6 Module Loader but also allows you to load modules written in AMD, CommonJS, UMD, and global module formats. The support for these formats is completely transparent for the SystemJS user, because it automatically figures out what module format the target script uses. In chapter 10, you'll use another module loader called Webpack.

### 2.3.2 **Module loaders vs. `<script>` tags**

Why even use module loaders as opposed to loading JavaScript with a `<script>` tag? The `<script>` tags have several issues:

- A developer is responsible for maintaining `<script>` tags in the HTML file. Some of them can become redundant over time, but if you forget to clean them up, they will still be loaded by the browser, increasing the load time and wasting network bandwidth.
- Often the order in which scripts are loaded matters. Browsers can only guarantee the execution order of scripts if you place the `<script>` tags in the `<head>` section of the HTML document. But it's considered bad practice to put all your scripts in `<head>`, because it prevents the page from being rendered until all the scripts are downloaded.

Let's consider the benefits of using module loaders both during development and while preparing a production version of your application:

- In development environments, the code is usually split into multiple files, and each file represents a module. Whenever you import a module in your code, the loader will match the module name to a corresponding file, download it into the browser, and then execute the rest of the code. Modules allow you to keep projects well organized; the module loader automatically assembles everything together in the browser when you launch the application. If a module has dependencies on other modules, all of them will be loaded.
- When you're preparing a production version of an application, a module loader takes the main file, traverses the tree of all modules reachable from it, and combines all of them into a single bundle. This way, the bundle contains only the code that's actually used by the application. It also solves the problem with script loading order and cyclic references.

These benefits apply not only to your application's code but also to third-party packages (such as Angular).

**NOTE** In this book, we use the terms *module* and *file* interchangeably. A module can't span multiple files. A bundle is usually represented by a single file and contains multiple modules registered in it. When the difference between *module* and *file* is important, we'll explicitly mention it.

### 2.3.3 Getting started with SystemJS

When you use SystemJS in an HTML page, this library becomes available as a global `System` object that has a number of static methods. The two primary methods you'll use are `System.import()` and `System.config()`.

To load a module, use `System.import()`, which accepts the module name as an argument. A module name can be either a path to the file or a logical name mapped to the file path:

```
System.import('./my-module.js');           ← A path to the file
System.import('@angular2/core');           ← A logical name
```

If the module name starts with `./` it's a path to the file even when the name extension is omitted. SystemJS first tries to match the module name against the configured mapping provided either as an argument to the method `System.config()` or in a file (such as `systemjs.config.js`). If the mapping for the name isn't found, it's considered to be a path to a file.

**NOTE** In this book, we'll use both the prefix `./` as well as the mapping configuration to find out which file will be loaded. If you see `System.import('app')` and can't find the file named `app.ts`, check the mapping configuration of your project.

The `System.import()` method immediately returns a `Promise` object (see appendix A). When the promise is resolved with a module object, the `then()` callback is invoked when the module is loaded. If the promise is rejected, the errors are handled in the `catch()` method.

An ES6 module object contains a property for each exported value in the loaded module. The following code snippet from two files shows how you can export a variable in the module and use it in another script:

```
// lib.js
export let foo = 'foo';

// main.js
System.import('./lib.js').then(libModule => {
  libModule.foo === 'foo'; // true
});
```

Here you use the `then()` method to specify the callback function to be invoked when `lib.js` is loaded. The loaded object is passed as an argument to the fat arrow expression.

In ES5 scripts, you use the `System.import()` method to load the code either eagerly or lazily (dynamically). For example, if an anonymous user browses your website, you may not need a module that implements the user profile functionality. But as soon as the user logs in, you can dynamically load the profile module. This way, you decrease initial page load size and time.

But what about the ES6 `import` statements? In your first Angular application, you used `System.import()` in the `index.html` file to load the root application module, `main.ts`. In turn, the `main.ts` script imports Angular's modules using its own `import` statement.

When SystemJS loads `main.ts`, it automatically transpiles it into ES5-compatible code, so there are no `import` statements in the code that browsers execute. In the future, when ES6 modules are natively supported by major browsers, this step won't be required and `import` statements will work similarly to `System.import()`, except they won't control the moment when the module is loaded.

**NOTE** When SystemJS transpiles files, it automatically generates the source map for each `.js` file, which allows you to debug the TypeScript code in the browser.

#### A DEMO APPLICATION

Let's consider an application that needs to load both ES5 and ES6 scripts. This application will consist of three files (see the `systemjs-demo` folder):

```
└── index.html
└── es6module.js
└── es5module.js
```

In a typical web application, the `index.html` file would contain the `<script>` tags referencing both `es6module.js` and `es5module.js`. Each of these files would be automatically loaded and executed by the browser. But this approach has several issues that we discussed in section 2.3.2. Let's see how you can address these issues with SystemJS in the demo application.

You use the ES6 `export` statement to make the `es6module.js` module's name available from outside of the script. The presence of the `export` statement automatically turns the file into an ES6 module:

```
export let name = 'ES6';

console.log('ES6 module is loaded');
```

The es5module.js file doesn't include any ES6 syntax and uses the CommonJS module format to export the name of the module. Basically, you attach to the exports object the variables you want to be visible outside of the module:

```
exports.name = 'ES5';

console.log('ES5 module is loaded');
```

The following index.html file seamlessly imports both CommonJS and ES6 modules with the help of SystemJS.

### Listing 2.7 index.html with SystemJS

**The ES6 Promise.all() method returns a Promise object that resolves (or rejects) when all iterable arguments are complete.**

You don't use the ES6 arrow function here because the index.html file itself isn't processed by SystemJS, so the code wouldn't be transpiled and wouldn't work in all browsers.

After the arguments of Promise.all() are loaded, they're given to the then() method as the modules array.

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/es6-promise@3.0.2/dist/es6-promise.js">
    </script>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/traceur@0.0.111/bin/traceur.js">
    </script>
  <script src="//unpkg.com/systemjs@0.19.37/dist/system.src.js">
    </script>
  <script>

    Promise.all([
      System.import('./es6module.js'),
      System.import('./es5module.js')
    ]).then(function (modules) {
      var moduleNames = modules
        .map(function (m) { return m.name; })
        .join(', ');

      console.log('The following modules are loaded: ' + moduleNames);
    });
  </script>
</head>
<body></body>
</html>
```

Here you use the relative path to the file es6module.js that uses the ES6 module syntax.

Load es5module.js similar to the previous one, but this time SystemJS uses the CommonJS format.

The method join() combines all module names into a comma-separated string.

This map() method invokes the function that transforms the result by extracting the name property exported from each module.

Because System.import() returns a Promise object, you can start loading multiple modules at once and execute some other code when all modules are loaded.

When the application is launched, the following result is printed to the browser's console (keep the Developer Tools panel open to see it):

```
Live reload enabled.
ES6 module is loaded
ES5 module is loaded
The following modules are loaded: ES6, ES5
```

The first line comes from the live-server, not from the app. As soon as one of the modules is loaded, it immediately prints its log message. When all modules are loaded, the callback function is executed and the last log message is printed.

#### CONFIGURING SYSTEMJS

You've used a default SystemJS configuration so far, but you can configure almost any aspect of its work using the `System.config()` method, which accepts a configuration object as an argument. `System.config()` can be invoked multiple times with different configuration objects. If the same option is set more than once, the latest value is applied. You can either inline the script with `System.config()` in the HTML file using the `<script>` tag (see section 2.1) or store the code for `System.config()` in a separate file (such as `systemjs.config.js`) and include it into the HTML file using the `<script>` tag.

The complete list of configuration options for SystemJS is available on GitHub (<http://mng.bz/8N60>). We'll just briefly discuss some of the configuration options used in this book.

#### BASEURL

All modules are loaded relative to this URL unless the module name represents an absolute or a relative URL:

```
System.config({ baseURL: '/app' });
System.import('es6module.js'); // GET /app/es6module.js
System.import('./es6module.js'); // GET /es6module.js
System.import('http://example.com/es6module.js'); // GET http://example.com/
➥ es6module.js
```

#### DEFAULTJSEXTENSIONS

If `defaultJSExtensions` is `true`, the `.js` extension will be automatically added to all file paths. If a module name already has an extension other than `.js`, the `.js` will be appended anyway:

```
System.config({ defaultJSExtensions: true });
System.import('./es6module'); // GET /es6module.js
System.import('./es6module.js'); // GET /es6module.js
System.import('./es6module.ts'); // GET /es6module.ts.js
```

**WARNING** The `defaultJSExtensions` property exists for backward compatibility and will be deprecated in future versions of SystemJS.

#### MAP

The `map` option allows you to create an alias for a module name. When you import a module, the module name is replaced with an associated value, unless the original

module name represents any kind of path (absolute or relative). The `map` parameter is applied before `baseURL`:

```
System.config({ map: { 'es6module.js': 'esSixModule.js' } });
System.import('es6module.js'); // GET /esSixModule.js
System.import('../es6module.js'); // GET /es6Module.js
```

Here's another `map` example:

```
System.config({
  baseURL: '/app',
  map: { 'es6module': 'esSixModule.js' }
});
System.import('es6module'); // GET /app/esSixModule.js
```

## PACKAGES

Packages provide a convenient way to set metadata and a map configuration that's specific to a common path. For example, the following fragment instructs SystemJS that `System.import('app')` should load the module located in the `main_router_sample.ts` file by providing just the name of the file and the default extension `ts` for TypeScript:

```
System.config({
  packages: {
    app: {
      defaultExtension: "ts",
      main: "main_router_sample"
    }
  }
});
System.import('app');
```

## PATHS

The `paths` option is similar to `map`, but it supports wildcards. It's applied after `map` but before `baseURL` (see listing 2.6). You can use both `map` and `paths`, but remember that `paths` is part of the Loader specification (see <http://whatwg.github.io/loader>) and the ES6 Module Loader implementation (see <https://github.com/ModuleLoader/es-module-loader>), but `map` is only recognizable by SystemJS:

```
System.config({
  baseURL: '/app',
  map: { 'es6module': 'esSixModule.js' },
  paths: { '*': 'lib/*' }
});

System.import('es6module'); // GET /app/lib/esSixModule.js
```

In many code examples in this book, you'll find `System.import('app')`, which opens a file with a different name (that is, not `app`) because the `map` or `packages` property

was configured. When you see something like `import {Component} from '@angular/core';`, the `@angular` refers to the name mapped to the actual directory where the Angular framework is located. `core` is a subdirectory, and the main file in that subdirectory is specified in the SystemJS configuration, as in this example:

```
packages: {
  '@angular/core' : {main: 'index.js'}
}
```

#### TRANSPILER

The `transpiler` option allows you to specify the name of the transpiler module that should be used while loading application modules. If a file doesn't contain at least one `import` or `export` statement, it won't be transpiled. The `transpiler` option can contain one of the following values: `typescript`, `traceur`, and `babel`:

```
System.config({
  transpiler: 'traceur',
  map: {
    traceur: '//unpkg.com/traceur@0.0.108/bin/traceur.js'
  }
});
```

#### TYPESCRIPTOPTIONS

The `typescriptOptions` option allows you to set the TypeScript compiler options. The list of all available options can be found in the TypeScript documentation: <http://mng.bz/rf14>.

## 2.4 Selecting a package manager

It's very unlikely that you'll be writing a web application without using any libraries. This book uses several in the code samples. You'll use the Angular framework for most of the code samples, and for the online auction app you'll also use Twitter's library called Bootstrap, which has jQuery as a dependency. Your application may require specific versions of these dependencies.

The loading of libraries, frameworks, and their dependencies is managed by a package manager, and you need to decide which of several popular ones to choose. JavaScript developers may be overwhelmed by the variety of package managers available: npm, Bower, jspm, Jam, and Duo, to name a few.

A typical project includes a configuration file that lists the names and versions of the required libraries and frameworks. Here's a fragment from the `package.json` npm configuration, which you'll use for the online auction application:

```
"scripts": {
  "start": "live-server"
},
"dependencies": {
  "@angular/common": "2.0.0",
  "@angular/compiler": "2.0.0",
```

```

"@angular/core": "2.0.0",
"@angular/forms": "2.0.0",
"@angular/http": "2.0.0",
"@angular/platform-browser": "2.0.0",
"@angular/platform-browser-dynamic": "2.0.0",
"@angular/router": "3.0.0",

"core-js": "^2.4.0",
"rxjs": "5.0.0-beta.12",
"systemjs": "0.19.37",
"zone.js": "0.6.21",

"bootstrap": "^3.3.6",
"jquery": "^2.2.2"
},
"devDependencies": {
  "live-server": "0.8.2",
  "typescript": "^2.0.0"
}
}

```

The scripts section specifies the command to run if you enter `npm start` on the command line. In this case, you'll want to start the live-server. The dependencies section lists all the third-party libraries and tools required for the runtime environment where the application is deployed.

The devDependencies section adds the tools that must be present on your computer. For example, you won't be using live-server in production as it's a pretty simple server that suffices for development only. The preceding configuration also states that the TypeScript compiler is needed only during development, and you can guess that during deployment all TypeScript code will be transpiled into JavaScript.

The preceding configuration includes version numbers as well. If you see a `^` sign in front of the version number, it indicates that the project requires either the specified or any newer minor version of this library or package. When we used the beta version of Angular, and we wanted to specify the exact package version because newer ones might have some breaking changes.

When we started working with Angular, we knew that we'd use the SystemJS module loader. Then we learned that the author of SystemJS (Guy Bedford) has also created a jspm package manager that uses SystemJS internally, so we decided to use jspm. For some time we've been using npm for installing tools and jspm for application dependencies. This setup worked, but with jspm a web browser was making 400+ requests to the server to show the first page of a rather simple application. Waiting for 3.5 seconds just to start the app on a local machine is a little too long.

We decided to try using npm for dependency management during development. The results were much better: only 30 server requests and 1.5 seconds to start the same app.

We'll still give you a brief overview of both package managers and will show you how to start a new project with each of them. jspm is pretty young and may improve over time, but we decided to use npm for our Angular projects.

### 2.4.1 Comparing npm and jspm

npm is a package manager for Node.js. It was originally created to manage Node.js modules, which are written in the CommonJS format. CommonJS wasn't designed for web applications, because modules were supposed to be loaded synchronously. Consider the following code snippet:

```
var x = require('module1');
var y = require('module2');
var z = require('module3');
```

The loading of `module2` won't start until `module1` is loaded, and the loading of `module3` will wait for `module2`. This is OK for desktop applications written in Node.js because the loading is done from the local computer, but such a synchronous loading process would slow the downloading of applications.

Another weak point of npm was that it historically used *nested* dependencies. If packages A and B depended on package C, each of them would keep a copy of C in its directory because A and B might depend on different versions of C. Although this was OK for Node.js applications, it didn't work well for applications loaded into a web browser. Even loading the same version of a library twice in a browser can cause issues. If two different versions are loaded, the chances of breaking the app are even higher.

The nested dependencies issue was addressed in npm 3, but the problem is only partially solved. By default, npm attempts to install package C in the same directory as A and B, so a single copy of C is shared between A and B. But if A and B require conflicting versions of C, npm falls back to the nested dependencies approach. Libraries created for client-side applications usually include built versions (single-file bundles) in their npm packages. The bundles don't contain third-party dependencies, so you should manually load them on the page. This helps avoid the nested dependencies issue.

jspm is a package manager created with ES6 modules and module loaders in mind. jspm doesn't host packages itself. It has a concept of registries, which allow you to create custom source locations for packages. Out of the box, jspm lets you install packages either from the npm registry or directly from the GitHub repositories.

It's designed to work together with SystemJS. When you initialize a new project or install a package with jspm, it automatically creates a configuration for SystemJS to load modules. Unlike npm, it uses the *flat* dependencies approach, so there's always only one copy of a library in a project. This allows you to use `import` statements to load even third-party code. It solves the issue with the loading order of scripts and makes sure the application loads only those modules that it actually uses.

jspm packages usually don't include bundles. Instead they preserve the original project structure and files, so each module can be loaded individually. Although having the original version of a file might improve the debugging experience, it doesn't pay off in practice. Importing each module individually leads to loading hundreds of files into the browser before starting the app. This slows down development and doesn't suit production deployment.

Another weak point of jspm is that you can't necessarily use any npm package or GitHub repository as a jspm package right away. They may require additional configuration so jspm can properly set up SystemJS to load the modules from the package. At the time of writing, there are fewer than 500 packages in the jspm registry that are SystemJS-ready, compared with 250,000 packages hosted by npm.

#### **2.4.2 Starting an Angular project with npm**

To start a new project managed by npm, create a new directory (such as angular-seed) and open it in the command window. Then run the `npm init -y` command, which will create the initial version of the `package.json` configuration file. Normally `npm init` asks several questions while creating the file, but the `-y` flag makes it accept the default values for all options. The following example shows this command running in the empty angular-seed directory.

```
$ npm init -y
Wrote to /Users/username/angular-seed/package.json:
```

```
{
  "name": "angular-seed",
  "version": "1.0.0",
  "description": "",
  "main": "index.js",
  "scripts": {
    "test": "echo \\"Error: no test specified\\" && exit 1"
  },
  "keywords": [],
  "author": "",
  "license": "ISC"
}
```

Most of the generated configuration is needed either for publishing the project into the npm registry or while installing the package as a dependency for another project. You'll use npm only for managing project dependencies and automating development and build processes.

Because you're not going to publish it into the npm registry, you should remove all of the properties except `name`, `description`, and `scripts`. Also, add a `"private": true` property because it's not created by default. It will prevent the package from being accidentally published to the npm registry. The `package.json` file should look like this.

#### **Listing 2.8 package.json**

```
{
  "name": "angular-seed",
  "description": "An initial npm-managed project for Chapter 2",
  "private": true,
  "scripts": {
    "test": "echo \\"Error: no test specified\\" && exit 1"
  }
}
```

The `scripts` configuration allows you to specify commands that you can run in the command window. By default, `npm init` creates the `test` command, which can be run like this: `npm test`. Let's replace it with the `start` command that you'll use to launch the live-server that you installed in section 2.4.1. Here's the configuration of the `scripts` property:

```
{  
  ...  
  "scripts": {  
    "start": "live-server"  
  }  
}
```

You can run any `npm` command from the `scripts` section using the `npm run mycommand` syntax, such as `npm run start`. You can also use the shorthand `npm start` command instead of `npm run start`. The shorthand syntax is available only for predefined `npm` scripts (see the `npm` documentation at <https://docs.npmjs.com/misc/scripts>).

Now you want `npm` to download Angular to this project as a dependency. In the TypeScript version of the Hello World application, you used the Angular code located at unpkg CDN server, but here you want it to be downloaded to your project directory. You also want local versions of SystemJS, live-server, and the TypeScript compiler.

`npm` packages often consist of bundles optimized for production use that don't include the source code of the libraries. Let's add the section to the `package.json` file that uses the source code (not the optimized bundles) of specific packages. Add this section right after the license line (update the versions of the dependencies so you're current).

#### Listing 2.9 Using package source code in `package.json`

```
"dependencies": {  
  "@angular/common": "2.0.0",  
  "@angular/compiler": "2.0.0",  
  "@angular/core": "2.0.0",  
  "@angular/forms": "2.0.0",  
  "@angular/http": "2.0.0",  
  "@angular/platform-browser": "2.0.0",  
  "@angular/platform-browser-dynamic": "2.0.0",  
  "@angular/router": "3.0.0",  
  
  "core-js": "^2.4.0",  
  "rxjs": "5.0.0-beta.12",  
  "systemjs": "0.19.37",  
  "zone.js": "0.6.21"  
},  
"devDependencies": {  
  "live-server": "0.8.2",  
  "typescript": "^2.0.0"  
}
```

Now run the `npm install` command on the command line from the directory where your `package.json` is located, and npm will start downloading the preceding packages and their dependencies into the `node_modules` folder. After this process is complete, you'll see dozens of subdirectories in `node_modules`, including `@angular`, `systemjs`, `live-server`, and `typescript`:

```
angular-seed
├── index.html
├── package.json
└── app
    ├── app.ts
└── node_modules
    ├── @angular
    ├── systemjs
    ├── typescript
    ├── live-server
    └── ...
```

In the `angular-seed` folder, let's create a slightly modified version of `index.html` with the following content.

#### **Listing 2.10 index.html**

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <title>Angular seed project</title>
    <meta charset="UTF-8">
    <meta name="viewport" content="width=device-width, initial-scale=1">

    <script src="node_modules/typescript/lib/typescript.js"></script>
    <script src="node_modules/core-js/client/shim.min.js"></script>
    <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/zone.js"></script>
    <script src="node_modules/systemjs/dist/system.src.js"></script>
    <script src="systemjs.config.js"></script>
    <script>
        System.import('app').catch(function(err) { console.error(err); });
    </script>
</head>

<body>
<app>Loading...</app>
</body>
</html>
```

Note that the `script` tags now load the required dependencies from the local directory `node_modules`. The same applies to the SystemJS configuration file `systemjs.config.js` shown here.

**Listing 2.11 systemjs.config.js**

```
System.config({
  transpiler: 'typescript',
  typescriptOptions: {emitDecoratorMetadata: true},
  map: {
    '@angular': 'node_modules/@angular',
    'rxjs' : 'node_modules/rxjs'
  },
  paths: {
    'node_modules/@angular/*': 'node_modules/@angular/*/bundles'
  },
  meta: {
    '@angular/*': {'format': 'cjs'}
  },
  packages: {
    'app' : {main: 'main', defaultExtension:
      ↵ 'ts'},
    'rxjs' : {main: 'Rx'},
    '@angular/core' : {main: 'core.umd.min.js'},
    '@angular/common' : {main: 'common.umd.min.js'},
    '@angular/compiler' : {main: 'compiler.umd.min.js'},
    '@angular/platform-browser' : {main: 'platform-
      ↵ browser.umd.min.js'},
    '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic': {main: 'platform-browser-
      ↵ dynamic.umd.min.js'}
  }
});
```

The preceding SystemJS configuration is a little different than the one shown in listing 2.1. This time you don't use the source code of Angular packages; you use their bundled and minimized versions instead. This will minimize the number of network requests required to load the Angular framework, and this version of the framework is smaller. Each Angular package comes with a directory called bundles that contains the minimized code. In the packages section of the SystemJS config file, you map the name app to the main script located in main.ts, so when you write `System.import(app)` in index.html, it'll load main.ts.

Add one more config file in the root of the project, where you'll specify the tsc compiler's options.

**Listing 2.12 tsconfig.json**

```
{
  "compilerOptions": {
    "target": "ES5",
    "module": "commonjs",
    "experimentalDecorators": true,
    "noImplicitAny": true
  }
}
```

If you're new to TypeScript, read appendix B, which explains that in order to run TypeScript code it must first be transpiled to JavaScript with the TypeScript compiler `tsc`. The code samples in chapters 1–7 work without explicitly running `tsc` because SystemJS uses `tsc` internally to transpile TypeScript to JavaScript on the fly as it loads a script file. But you'll still keep the `tsconfig.json` file in the project root because some IDEs rely on it.

**NOTE** If the Angular code is dynamically compiled in the browser (not to be confused with transpiling), this is called *just-in-time* (JIT) compilation. If the code is precompiled with a special `ngc` compiler, it's called *ahead-of-time* (AoT) compilation. In this chapter, we'll describe the app with JIT compilation.

The app code will consist of three files:

- `app.component.ts`—The one and only component of your app
- `app.module.ts`—The declaration of the module that will include your component
- `main.ts`—The bootstrap of the module

In section 2.3.3, you mapped the name `app` to `main.ts`, so let's create a directory called `app` containing an `app.component.ts` file with the following content.

#### Listing 2.13 app.component.ts

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `<h1>Hello {{ name }}!</h1>`
})
export class AppComponent {
  name: string;

  constructor() {
    this.name = 'Angular 2';
  }
}
```

Now you need to create a module that will contain `AppComponent`. Place this code in the `app.module.ts` file.

#### Listing 2.14 app.module.ts

```
import { NgModule }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { AppComponent }  from './app.component';

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
export class AppModule { }
```

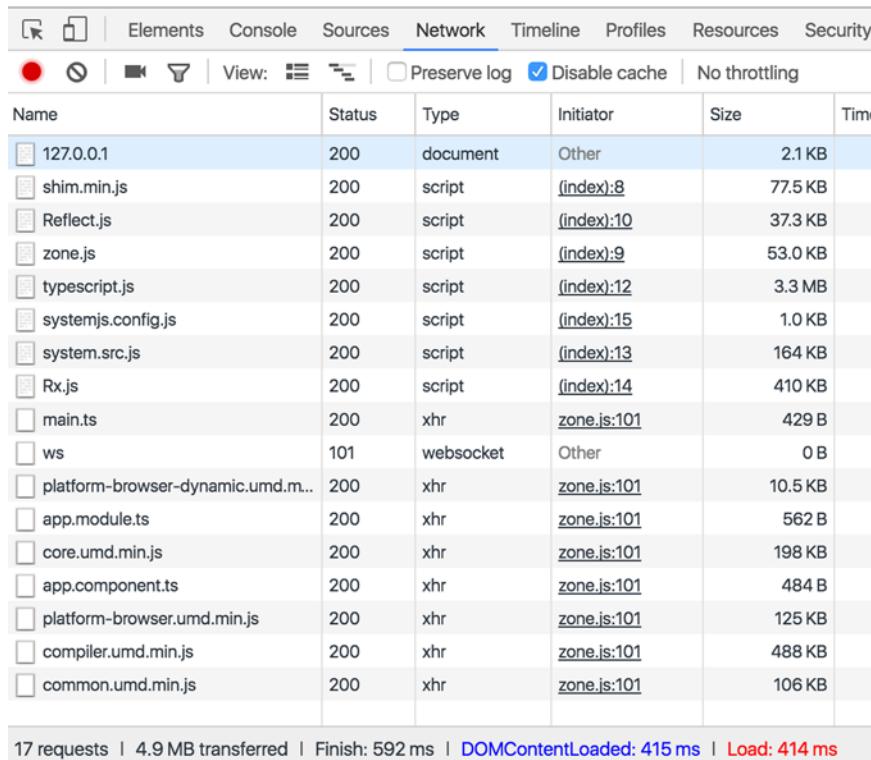
This file just contains the definition of the Angular module. The class is annotated with `@NgModule`, which includes the `BrowserModule` that every browser must import. Because the module contains only one class, you need to list it in the `declarations` property and list it as the bootstrap class:

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { AppModule } from './app.module';

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);
```

Start the application by executing the `npm start` command from the `angular-seed` directory, and it'll open your browser and show the message “Loading...” for a split second, followed by “Hello Angular 2!” Figure 2.2 shows what this application looks like in the Chrome browser. The figure shows the browser with its Developer Tools panel opened in the Network tab, so you can see a fragment of what's been downloaded by the browser and how long it took.

Don't be scared by the size of the download; you'll optimize it in chapter 10. Because you're using live-server, as soon as you modify and save the code of this application, it'll reload the page in the browser with the latest code version. Now let's apply what you've learned to an application that's more complex than Hello World.



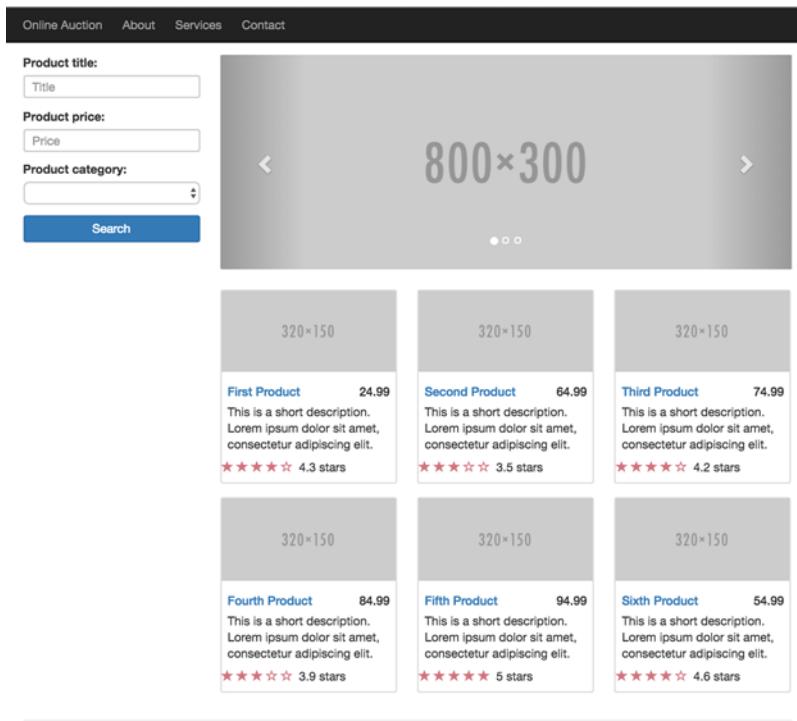
**Figure 2.2** Running the app from the npm-managed project

## 2.5 Hands-on: getting started with the online auction

Every chapter from here on will end with a hands-on section containing instructions for developing a certain aspect of the online auction, where people can see a list of featured products, view details for a specific product, perform a product search, and monitor bidding by other users. You'll gradually add code to this application to practice what you'll learn in each chapter. The source code that comes with this book includes the completed version of each chapter's hands-on section in the auction folder, but we encourage you to try these exercises on your own.

In this exercise, you'll set up the development environment and create the initial auction project layout. You'll create the home page, split it into Angular components, and create a service to fetch products. If you follow all the instructions in this section, the auction's home page should look like what you see in figure 2.3.

You'll use gray rectangles provided by the convenient Placehold.it service (<http://placehold.it>), which generates placeholders of specified sizes. To see these generated images, you'll have to be connected to the internet while running this application. The following sections contain the instructions that you should follow to complete this hands-on exercise.



Copyright © Online Auction 2016

**Figure 2.3** The online auction home page

**NOTE** If you prefer to just read the code of the working version of the online auction, use the code for the auction directory that comes with this chapter. To run the provided code, switch to the auction directory, run `npm install` to install all the required dependencies in the `node_modules` directory, and start the application by running the `npm start` command.

### 2.5.1 Initial project setup

To set up the project, first copy the contents of the angular-seed directory into a separate location and rename it “auction”. Next, modify the name and description fields in the `package.json` file. Open a command window, and switch to the newly created auction directory. Run the command `npm install`, which will create the `node_modules` directory with dependencies specified in `package.json`.

In this project, you’ll use Twitter Bootstrap as a CSS framework, and the UI library of responsive components. Responsive web design is an approach that allows you to create sites that change layout based on the width of the user’s device viewport. The term *responsive components* means that the components’ layout can adapt to the screen size.

Because the Bootstrap library is built on top of jQuery, you need to run the following commands to install them:

```
npm install bootstrap --save
npm install jquery --save
```

Install Bootstrap. The `--save` option will add this dependency to the `package.json` file.

The Bootstrap package doesn’t specify jQuery as a dependency, so you have to install it separately. Such dependencies are also known as peer dependencies.

**TIP** We recommend you use an IDE like WebStorm or Visual Studio Code. Most of the steps required to complete this hands-on project can be performed inside the IDE. WebStorm even allows you to open the Terminal window inside the IDE.

Now create a `systemjs.config.js` file to store the SystemJS configuration. You’ll include this file in the `<script>` tag in `index.html`.

**Listing 2.15 systemjs.config.js file**

```
System.config({
  transpiler: 'typescript',
  typescriptOptions: {emitDecoratorMetadata: true,
    target: "ES5",
    module: "commonjs"},

    map: {
      '@angular': 'node_modules/@angular',
      'rxjs' : 'node_modules/rxjs'
    },
    paths: {
      'node_modules/@angular/*': 'node_modules/@angular/*/bundles'}
```

Instructs the TypeScript compiler of SystemJS to preserve decorators metadata in the transpiled code, because Angular relies on annotations to discover and register components

Transpiles the code into the ES5 syntax

Uses CommonJS module format

```

},
meta: {
  '@angular/*': {'format': 'cjs'}
},
packages: {
  'app':
    {defaultExtension: 'ts'},
  'rxjs',
  '@angular/core',
  '@angular/common',
  '@angular/compiler',
  '@angular/platform-browser'
    {browser.umd.min.js'},
  '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic': {main: 'platform-
    browser.umd.min.js'}
}
);
}
}

```

You'll keep your application code in the app directory, and the code to launch the auction application will be located in the main.ts file.

The systemjs.config.js file has to be included in index.html as shown in the next section in listing 2.9. This configuration of the package app allows you to use the line `<script>System.import ('app')</script>` in index.html, which will load the content of app/main.ts.

This completes the configuration of the development environment for the auction project. You're now ready to start writing the application code.

**NOTE** At the time of writing, the Angular team is developing Angular Material components for Angular (see <https://material.angular.io>), which you may want to use instead of Twitter Bootstrap when it's ready.

### 2.5.2 Developing the home page

In this exercise, you'll create a home page that will be split into several Angular components. This makes the code easier to maintain and allows you to reuse components in other views. In figure 2.4, you can see the home page with all the components highlighted.

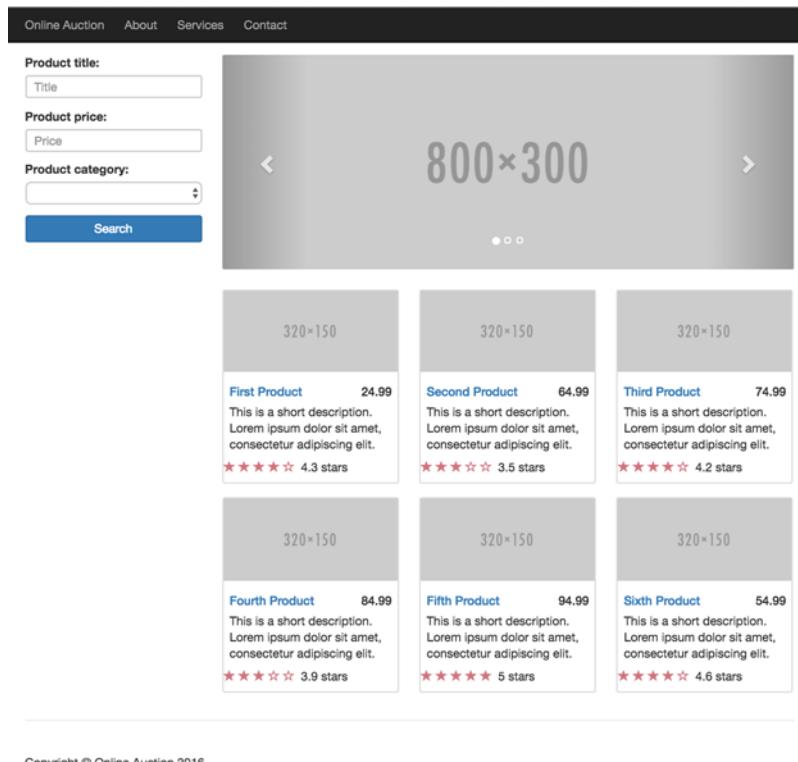
You'll need to create directories for storing all the components and services of the application, as follows:

```

app
└── components
    ├── application
    ├── carousel
    ├── footer
    ├── navbar
    ├── product-item
    ├── search
    └── stars
└── services

```

Each directory inside the components directory has code for the corresponding component. This allows you to keep all files related to a single component together. Most



**Figure 2.4** The online auction home page with highlighted components

of the components consist of two files—an HTML file and a TypeScript file. But sometimes you may want to add a CSS file with component-specific styling. The services directory will contain the file with classes that serve data to the application.

The first version of the home page consists of seven components. In this exercise, we'll discuss and you'll create the three the most interesting components, located in the application, product-item, and stars directories. This will give you a chance to write some code, and at the end of this exercise you can copy the rest of the components into your project directory.

**NOTE** In the hands-on section in chapter 3, you'll refactor the code to integrate the carousel and products into HomeComponent.

The entry point of the application is index.html. You've copied this file from the angular-seed directory, and now you'll need to modify it. The index.html file is rather small, and it won't grow much because most of your dependencies will be loaded by SystemJS, and the entire UI is represented by a single Angular root (top level) component that will internally use child components.

**Listing 2.16 index.html****Adds the Bootstrap CSS**

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <title>CH2: Online Auction</title>
    <link rel="stylesheet" href="node_modules/bootstrap/dist/css/
    bootstrap.css">

    <script src="node_modules/jquery/dist/jquery.min.js"></script>
    <script src="node_modules/bootstrap/dist/js/bootstrap.min.js"></script> ←

    <script src="node_modules/core-js/client/shim.min.js"></script>
    <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/zone.js"></script>

    <script src="node_modules/typescript/lib/typescript.js"></script>
    <script src="node_modules/systemjs/dist/system.src.js"></script>
    <script src="systemjs.config.js"></script>

    <script>
        System.import('app').catch(function (err) { console.error(err); });
    </script>
</head>
<body>
<auction-application></auction-application>
</body>
</html>
```

**Adds Bootstrap and jQuery to support the carousel component****Loads main.ts according to the configuration in systemjs.config.js**

The content of the main.ts file in the app directory remains the same as it was in the angular-seed project:

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { AppModule } from './app.module';
platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);
```

Let's update the app.module.ts file to declare all the components and services that you'll use in the auction app.

**Listing 2.17 Updated app.module.ts**

```
import { NgModule } from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import ApplicationComponent from './components/application/application';
import CarouselComponent from "./components/carousel/carousel";
import FooterComponent from "./components/footer/footer";
import NavbarComponent from "./components/navbar/navbar";
import ProductItemComponent from "./components/product-item/product-item";
import SearchComponent from "./components/search/search";
import StarsComponent from "./components/stars/stars";
import { ProductService } from "./services/product-service";
```

```

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent,
                  CarouselComponent,
                  FooterComponent,
                  NavbarComponent,
                  ProductItemComponent,
                  SearchComponent,
                  StarsComponent],
  providers:    [ ProductService ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
export class AppModule { }

```

Declares all components that your module will use

Declares the provider for the ProductService that you'll inject into the ApplicationComponent a bit later

In this module, you declare all the components and the provider for one service that you're about to create. Declaring a provider for a service is required by the dependency injection mechanism. We'll talk about providers and injection in chapter 4.

#### THE APPLICATION COMPONENT

The application component is the root component of the auction and is declared as such in the `AppModule`. It serves as a host for all the other components. The component's source code consists of three files: `application.ts`, `application.html`, and `application.css`. We'll assume you know the basics of CSS, so we won't be going into that file here. We'll go through the first two files.

Let's create `ApplicationComponent` and save it in the `application.ts` file located in the `app/components/application` directory. The content of this file is shown here.

**Listing 2.18 application.ts**

```

  Turns the Application-Component class into an Angular component by annotating it with the @Component decorator
  The HTML template will be located in the application.html file.
  Uses generics (see appendix B) to ensure that the products array contains only objects of type Product

  Imports the classes that implement the product service. These classes will serve you data.

  import {Component, ViewEncapsulation} from '@angular/core';
  import {Product, ProductService} from '../../../../../services/
  ↪ product-service';

  @Component({
    selector: 'auction-application', ← Selector defines the name of the
    templateUrl: 'app/components/application/application.html', ← custom HTML tag used in index.html.
    styleUrls: ['app/components/application/application.css'], ←
    encapsulation: ViewEncapsulation.None
  })
  CSS is located in the application.css file.

  export default class ApplicationComponent {
    ↪ products: Array<Product> = [];
  }

  Exports the ApplicationComponent because it's used in another class: AppModule

```

Turns the Application-Component class into an Angular component by annotating it with the `@Component` decorator

The HTML template will be located in the `application.html` file.

Uses generics (see appendix B) to ensure that the products array contains only objects of type Product

Imports the classes that implement the product service. These classes will serve you data.

Selector defines the name of the custom HTML tag used in `index.html`.

CSS is located in the `application.css` file.

Exports the ApplicationComponent because it's used in another class: `AppModule`

```

    constructor(private productService: ProductService) {
        this.products = this.productService.getProducts();
    }
}

Gets a list of products and assigns them to the products property. All of a component's properties become available in the view template via data binding.

```

**In TypeScript you can ask Angular to inject required objects (such as `ProductService`) via constructor arguments.**

Just declaring the constructor's arguments with a type will instruct Angular to instantiate and inject this object (`ProductService`). Injectable objects need to be configured with providers, and you declared one in the `AppModule` earlier. The `private` qualifier will turn `productService` into a member variable of the class, so you'll access it as `this.productService`.

**NOTE** Listing 2.18 uses the view encapsulation strategy `ViewEncapsulation.None` to apply the styles from `application.css` not only to the `ApplicationComponent`, but to the entire application. We'll discuss different view encapsulation strategies in chapter 6.

Create the `application.html` file with the following content.

#### Listing 2.19 application.html

```

<auction-navbar></auction-navbar>

<div class="container">
    <div class="row">

        <div class="col-md-3">
            <auction-search></auction-search>
        </div>

        <div class="col-md-9">
            <div class="row carousel-holder">
                <div class="col-md-12">
                    <auction-carousel></auction-carousel>
                </div>
            </div>
            <div class="row">
                <div *ngFor="let prod of products" class="col-sm-4 col-lg-4 col-md-4">
                    <auction-product-item [product]="prod"></auction-product-item>
                </div>
            </div>
        </div>
    </div>
</div>

<auction-footer></auction-footer>

```

You'll be using multiple custom HTML elements that represent your components: `<auction-navbar>`, `<auction-search>`, `<auction-carousel>`, `<auction-product-item>`, and `<auction-footer>`. You'll add them the same way as `<auction-application>` in `index.html`.

The most interesting part in this file is how you can display the list of products. Each product will be represented by the same HTML fragment on the web page. Because there are multiple products, you need to render the same HTML multiple times. The `NgFor` directive is used inside a component's template to loop through the list of items in the data collection and render HTML markup for each item. You can use the shorthand syntax `*ngFor` to represent the `NgFor` directive.

```
<div *ngFor="let prod of products" class="col-sm-4 col-lg-4 col-md-4">
  <auction-product-item [product]="prod"></auction-product-item>
</div>
```

Because `*ngFor` is in `<div>`, each loop iteration will render a `<div>` with the content of the corresponding `<auction-product-item>` inside. To pass an instance of a product to `ProductComponent`, you use the square brackets for property binding: `[product] = "prod"`, where `[product]` refers to the property-named product inside the component represented by `<auction-product-item>`, and `prod` is a local template variable declared on the fly in the `*ngFor` directive as `let prod`. We'll discuss property bindings in detail in chapter 5.

The `col-sm-4 col-lg-4 col-md-4` styles come from Twitter's Bootstrap library, where the window's width is divided into 12 invisible columns. In this example, you want to allocate 4 columns (one third of the `<div>`'s width) if a device has small (`sm` means 768 pixels or more), large (`lg` is for 1200 px or more), and medium (`md` is for 992 px or more) screen sizes.

Because this doesn't specify any columns for extra-small devices (`xs` is for screens under 768 px), the entire width of a `<div>` will be allocated for a single `<auction-product>`. To see how the page layout changes for different screen sizes, narrow your browser's window to make it less than 768 pixels wide. You can read more about the Bootstrap grid system in the Bootstrap documentation at <http://getbootstrap.com/css/#grid>.

**NOTE** `ApplicationComponent` relies on the existence of other components (such as `ProductItemComponent`) that you'll create in the subsequent steps. If you try to run the auction now, you'll see errors in the Developer Console of your browser.

#### THE PRODUCT ITEM COMPONENT

In the `product-item` directory, create a `product-item.ts` file that declares a `ProductItemComponent` representing a single product item from the auction. The source code of `product-item.ts` is structured much like the code of `application.ts`: the `import` statements go on top, and then comes the component class declaration annotated with `@Component`.

**Listing 2.20 product-item.ts**

```
import {Component, Input} from '@angular/core';
import StarsComponent from 'app/components/stars/stars';
import {Product} from 'app/services/product-service';

@Component({
  selector: 'auction-product-item',
  templateUrl: 'app/components/product-item/product-item.html'
})
export default class ProductItemComponent {
  @Input() product: Product;
}
```

The component's product property is annotated with `@Input()`. This means the value for this property will be exposed to the parent component, which can bind a value to it. We'll discuss input properties in detail in chapter 6.

Create a `product-item.html` file to contain the following template of the product component (which will be represented by its price, title, and description).

**Listing 2.21 product-item.html**

```
<div class="thumbnail">
  
  <div class="caption">
    <h4 class="pull-right">{{ product.price }}</h4>
    <h4><a>{{ product.title }}</a></h4>
    <p>{{ product.description }}</p>
  </div>
  <div>
    <auction-stars [rating]="product.rating"></auction-stars>
  </div>
</div>
```

Here you use another type of data binding: an expression within double curly braces. Angular evaluates the value of the expression within the braces, turns the result into a string, and replaces this expression in the template with the resulting string. Internally this process is implemented using string interpolation.

Note the `<auction-stars>` tag that represents the `StarsComponent` and was declared in `AppModule`. You bind the value of `product.rating` to the `rating` property of the `StarsComponent`. For this to work, `rating` must be declared as an input property in the `StarsComponent` that you'll create next.

**THE STARS COMPONENT**

The stars component will display the rating of a product. In figure 2.5, you can see that it displays an average rating number of 4.3 as well as star icons representing the rating.

 4.3 stars

**Figure 2.5 Stars component**

Angular provides component lifecycle hooks (see chapter 6) that allow you to define the callback methods that will be invoked at certain moments of the component's lifecycle. In this component, you'll use the `ngOnInit()` callback, which will be invoked as soon as an instance of the component is created and its properties are initialized. Create the `stars.ts` file in the `stars` directory with the following content.

### Listing 2.22 stars.ts

```
import {Component, Input, OnInit} from '@angular/core';           ←

Marks rating and
count as inputs
so that other
components
can assign values
to them via
data-binding
expressions | @Component({
  templateUrl: 'app/components/stars/stars.html',
  styles: [` .starrating { color: #d17581; } `],
  selector: 'auction-stars'
})
export default class StarsComponent implements OnInit {
  @Input() count: number = 5;
  @Input() rating: number = 0;
  stars: boolean[] = [];
}

ngOnInit() {
  for (let i = 1; i <= this.count; i++) {
    this.stars.push(i > this.rating);
  }
}
```

Imports the interface `OnInit`, where `ngOnInit()` is declared

Each element of the array represents a single star to be rendered.

Initializes stars based on the value provided by the parent component

The `count` property specifies the total number of stars to be rendered. If this property isn't initialized by the parent, the component renders five stars by default.

The `rating` property stores the average rating that determines how many stars should be filled with the color and how many should remain empty. In the `stars` array, the elements with the `false` value represent empty stars, and those with `true` represent stars filled with color.

You initialize the `stars` array in the `ngOnInit()` lifecycle callback, which will be used in the template to render stars. `ngOnInit()` is called only once, right after the component's data-bound properties have been checked for the first time, and before any of its children have been checked. When `ngOnInit()` is invoked, all properties passed from the parent view are already initialized, so you can use the `rating` value to compute the values in the `stars` array.

Alternatively, you could turn `stars` into a getter to compute it on the fly, but the getter would be invoked each time Angular synchronizes the model with the view. Exactly the same array would be computed multiple times.

Create the template of the `StarsComponent` in the `stars.html` file, as shown next.

**Listing 2.23 stars.html**

```
<p>
  <span *ngFor="let star of stars"
    class="starrating glyphicon glyphicon-star"
    [class.glyphicon-star-empty]="star">
  </span>
  <span>{{ rating }} stars</span>
</p>
```

You already used the `NgFor` directive and curly braces data-binding expression in `ApplicationComponent`. Here you bind a CSS class name to an expression: `[class.glyphicon-star-empty]="star"`. If an expression within the double quotes on the right evaluates to `true`, the `glyphicon-star-empty` CSS class will be added to the `class` attribute of the `<span>` element.

**COPYING THE REST OF THE CODE**

To finish this project, copy the missing components from the `chapter2/auction` directory to the corresponding directories of your project:

- The services directory contains the `product-service.ts` file that declares two classes: `Product` and `ProductService`. This is where the data for the auction comes from. We'll provide more details about the content of this file in the hands-on section of chapter 3.
- The navbar directory contains the code for the top navigation bar.
- The footer directory contains the code for the footer of the page.
- The search directory contains the initial code for the `SearchComponent`, which is a form that you'll develop in chapter 7.
- The carousel directory contains the code that implements a Bootstrap slider in the top portion of the home page.

**2.5.3 Launching the online auction application**

To launch the auction application, open a command window and start live-server in your project directory. You can do it by running the `npm start` command, which is configured in the `package.json` file to start the live-server. It'll open the browser, and you should be able to see the home page as shown in figure 2.4. The product details page isn't implemented yet, so the product title links won't work.

We recommend that you use the Chrome browser for development, because it has the best tools for debugging your code. Keep the Developer Tools panel open while running all code samples. If you see unexpected results, check the Console tab for error messages.

Also, there's a great Chrome browser extension called Augury, which is a convenient debugging tool for Angular apps. After installing this extension, you'll see an additional Augury tab in the Chrome development tools panel (see figure 2.6), which allows you to see and modify the values of your app components at runtime.

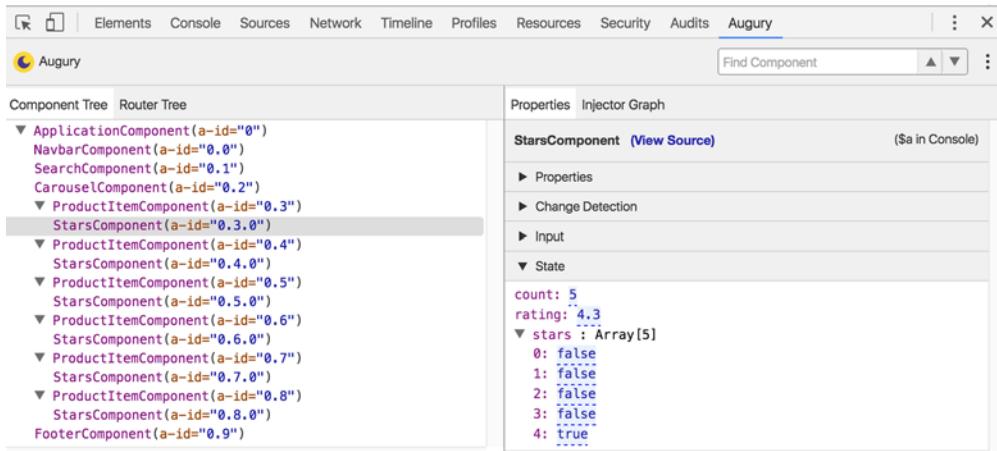


Figure 2.6 The Augury panel

## 2.6 Summary

In this chapter, you've had your first experience writing an Angular application. We briefly covered the main principles and most important building blocks of an Angular application. In future chapters, we'll discuss them in detail. You've also created an initial version of the online auction application. This has shown you how to set up a development environment and structure an Angular project.

- An Angular application is represented by a hierarchy of components that are packaged into modules.
- Each Angular component contains a template for the UI rendering and an annotated class implementing this component's functionality.
- Templates and styles can be either inlined or stored in separate files.
- The SystemJS module loader allows you to split the application into ES6 modules and dynamically assembles everything together at runtime.
- Configuration parameters for SystemJS can be specified in a separate configuration file.
- Using npm for managing dependencies is the simplest way of configuring a new Angular project.

# *Navigation with the Angular router*

---

## **This chapter covers**

- Configuring routes
- Passing data while navigating from one route to another
- Having more than one area for navigation (a.k.a. outlet) on the same page using auxiliary routes
- Lazy-loading modules with the router

In chapter 2, you built the home page of the online auction with the intent to create a single-page application (SPA): the main page won't be reloaded, but its parts may change. You now want to add navigation to this application so it'll change the content area of the page (we'll define that a bit later) based on the user's actions. Imagine that the user needs to be able to see product details, bid on products, and chat with sellers. The Angular router allows you to configure and implement such navigation without performing a page reload.

Not only do you want to be able to change the view inside the page, but you may also want to bookmark its URL so you can get to specific product details faster. To do this, you need to assign a unique URL for each view.

In general, you can think of a router as an object responsible for the view state of the application. Every application has one router, and you need to configure the router to make it work.

We'll first cover the main features of the router, and then you'll add a second view (Product Details) to the online auction so that if the user clicks a particular product on the home page, the page's content will change to display the details of the selected product.

### 3.1 Routing basics

You can think of a SPA as a collection of states, such as Home state, Product Details state, and Shipping state. Each state represents a different view of the same SPA. So far, the online auction has only one view state: the home page.

The online auction (see figure 2.4) has a navigation bar (a component) on top, a search form (another component) on the left, and a footer (yet another component) at the bottom, and you want these components to remain visible all the time. The rest of the page consists of a content area that displays the `<auction-carousel>` and several `<auction-product>` components. You'll reuse this content area (the *outlet*) for displaying different views based on the user's actions.

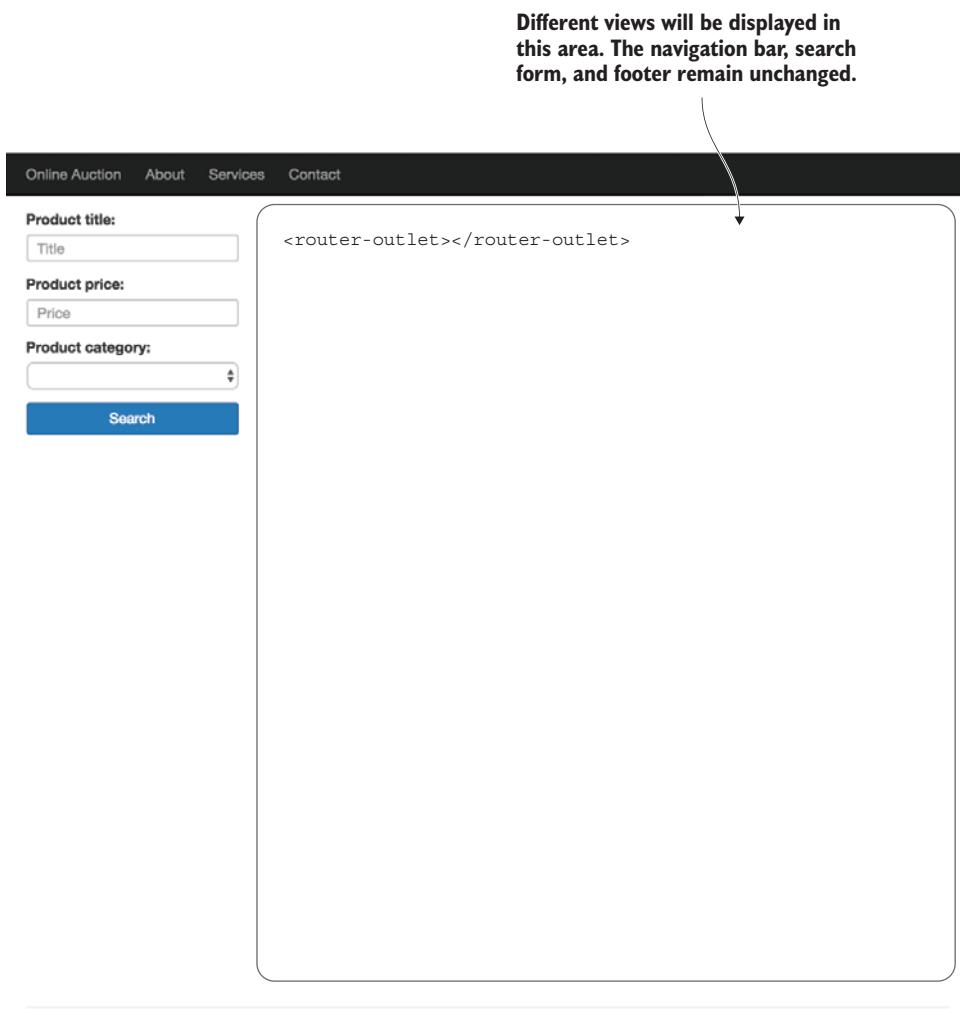
To do this, you'll need to configure the router so it can display different views in the outlet, *replacing one view with another*. This content area is represented by the tag `<router-outlet>`. Figure 3.1 shows the area you'll use for displaying different views.

**NOTE** There can be more than one outlet on the page. We'll cover that in section 3.5.

You'll be assigning a component for each view that you want to display in this area. In chapter 2, you didn't create a parent component that would encapsulate the carousel and auction products, but by the end of this chapter you'll refactor the code to create a `HomeComponent` to serve as a parent for the carousel and products. You'll also create `ProductDetailComponent` to represent each product's details. At any given time, the user will see either `HomeComponent` or `ProductDetailComponent` in the `<router-outlet>` area.

The router is responsible for managing client-side navigation, and in section 3.1.2 we'll provide a high-level overview of what the router is made up of. In the non-SPA world, site navigation is implemented as a series of requests to a server, which refreshes the entire page by sending the appropriate HTML documents to the browser. With SPA, the code for rendering components is already on the client (except for the lazy-loading scenarios), and you just need to replace one view with another.

As the user navigates the application, it can still make requests to the server to retrieve or send data. Sometimes a view (the combination of the UI code and the



Copyright © Online Auction 2016

**Figure 3.1 Allocating the area for changing views**

data) has everything it needs already downloaded to the browser, but other times a view will communicate with the server by issuing AJAX requests or via WebSockets. Each view will have a unique URL shown in the location bar of the browser, and we'll discuss that next.

### 3.1.1 *Location strategies*

At any given time, the browser's location bar displays the URL of the current view. A URL can contain different parts (segments). It starts with a protocol followed by a

domain name, and it may include a port number. Parameters that need to be passed to the server may follow a question mark (this is true for HTTP GET requests), like this:

`http://mysite.com:8080/auction?someParam=123`

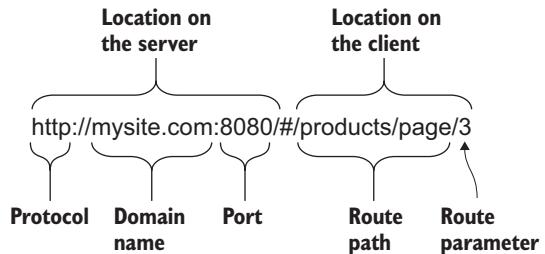
Changing any character in the preceding URL results in a new request to the server.

In SPAs, you need the ability to modify the URL without making a server-side request so the application can locate the proper view on the client. Angular offers two location strategies for implementing client-side navigation:

- **HashLocationStrategy**—A hash sign (#) is added to the URL, and the URL segment after the hash uniquely identifies the route to be used as a web page fragment. This strategy works with all browsers, including the old ones.
- **PathLocationStrategy**—This History API-based strategy is supported only in browsers that support HTML5. This is the default location strategy in Angular.

#### HASH-BASED NAVIGATION

A sample URL that uses hash-based navigation is shown in figure 3.2. Changing any character to the right of the hash sign doesn't cause a direct server-side request, but navigates to the view represented by the path (with or without parameters) after the hash. The hash sign serves as a separator between the base URL and the client-side locations of the required content.



**Figure 3.2** Dissecting the URL

Try to navigate a SPA like Gmail, and watch the URL. For the Inbox, it looks like this: `https://mail.google.com/mail/u/0/#inbox`. Now go to the Sent folder, and the hash portion of the URL will change from `inbox` to `sent`. The client-side JavaScript code invokes the necessary functions to display the Sent view.

But why does the Gmail app still shows you the “Loading...” message when you switch to the Sent box? The JavaScript code of the Sent view can still make AJAX requests to the server to get the new data, but it doesn't load any additional code, markup, or CSS from the server.

In this book, we'll use hash-based navigation, and `@NgModule` will include the following providers value (providers are explained in chapter 4):

```
providers: [{provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy}]
```

#### HISTORY API-BASED NAVIGATION

The browser's History API allows you to move back and forth through the user's navigation history as well as programmatically manipulate the history stack (see “Manipulating the browser history” in the Mozilla Developer Network, <http://mng.bz/i64G>).

In particular, the `pushState()` method is used to attach a segment to the base URL as the user navigates your SPA.

Consider the following URL: `http://mysite.com:8080/products/page/3`. The `products/page/3` URL segment can be pushed (attached) to the base URL programmatically without using the hash tag. If the user navigates from page 3 to 4, the application's code will push `products/page/4`, saving the previous `products/page/3` state in the browser history.

Angular spares you from invoking `pushState()` explicitly—you just need to configure the URL segments and map them to the corresponding components. With the History API-based location strategy, you need to tell Angular what to use as a base URL in your application so it can properly append the client-side URL segments. You can do it in one of two ways:

- Add the `<base>` tag to the header of `index.html`, such as `<base href="/">`.
- Assign a value for the `APP_BASE_HREF` Angular constant in the root module, and use it as the providers value. The following code snippet uses `/` as a base URL, but it can be any URL segment that denotes the end of the base URL:

```
import { APP_BASE_HREF } from '@angular/common';
...
@NgModule({
...
  providers: [{provide: APP_BASE_HREF, useValue: '/' }]
})
class AppModule { }
```

### 3.1.2 *The building blocks of client-side navigation*

Let's get familiar with the main concepts of implementing client-side navigation using the Angular framework. In the Angular framework, the implementation of routing functionality is implemented in a separate `RouterModule` module. If your application needs routing, make sure your `package.json` file includes the dependency `@angular/router`. Our `package.json` includes the following line: `"@angular/router": "3.0.0"`.

Remember, the goal of this chapter is to explain how to navigate between the different views of a SPA, so the first thing we need to focus on is how to configure the router and add it to the module declaration.

Angular offers the following main players for implementing routing in your application:

- Router—An object that represents the router in the runtime. You can use its `navigate()` and `navigateByUrl()` methods to navigate to a route either by the configured route path or by the URL segment, respectively.
- RouterOutlet—A directive that serves as a placeholder within your web page (`<router-outlet>`) where the router should render the component.
- Routes—An array of routes that map URLs to components to be rendered inside the `<router-outlet>`.

- `RouterLink`—A directive for declaring a link to a route if the navigation is done using HTML anchor tags. `RouterLink` may contain parameters to be passed to the route's component.
- `ActivatedRoute`—An object that represents the route or routes that are currently active.

You configure routes in a separate array of objects of type `Route`. Here's an example:

```
const routes: Routes = [
  {path: '', component: HomeComponent},
  {path: 'product', component: ProductDetailComponent}
];
```

Because route configuration is done on the module level, you need to import routes in the `@NgModule` decorator. If you declare routes for the root modules, you should use the `forRoot()` method, like this:

```
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { RouterModule } from '@angular/router';
...
@NgModule({
  imports: [ BrowserModule, RouterModule.forRoot(routes)],
  ...
})
```

If you're configuring routes for a feature module (not for the root one), use the `forChild()` method:

```
import { CommonModule } from '@angular/common';
import { RouterModule } from '@angular/router';
...
@NgModule({
  imports: [ CommonModule, RouterModule.forChild(routes)],
  ...
})
```

Note that in feature modules you import `CommonModule` instead of `BrowserModule`.

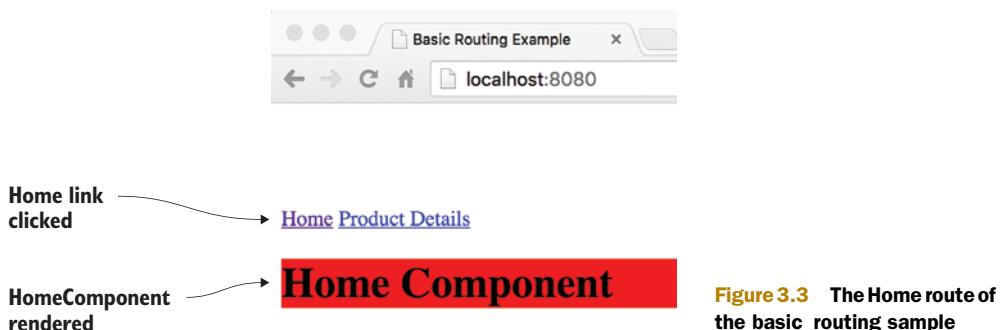
In a typical scenario, you'll be implementing navigation by performing the following steps:

- 1 Configure your app routes to map the URL segments to the corresponding components, and pass the configuration object to either `RouterModule.forRoot()` or `RouterModule.forChild()` as an argument. If some of the components expect to receive input values, you can use route parameters.
- 2 Import the returned value of `forRoot()` or `forChild()` in the `@NgModule` decorator.
- 3 Define the outlet where the router will render components by using the `<router-outlet>` tag.

- 4 Add HTML anchor tags with bounded [routerLink] properties (square brackets denote property binding), so that when the user clicks the link, the router will render the corresponding component. Think of a [routerLink] as a client-side replacement for the href attribute of the HTML anchor tag.

Invoking the router's navigate() method is an alternative to using [routerLink] for navigating to a route. In either case, the router will find a match to the provided path, will create (or find) the instance of the specified component, and will update the URL accordingly.

Let's illustrate these steps in a sample application (see the router\_samples folder in the code samples). Say you want to create a root component that has two links, Home and Product Details, at the top of the page. The application should render either HomeComponent or ProductDetailComponent, depending on which link the user clicks. HomeComponent will render the text "Home Component" on a red background, and ProductDetailComponent will render "Product Details Component" on cyan. Initially the web page should display HomeComponent, as shown in figure 3.3. After the user clicks the Product Details link, the router should display ProductDetailComponent, as shown in figure 3.4.



The main goal of this exercise is to get familiar with the router, so the components will be very simple. Here is the code of HomeComponent.

#### Listing 3.1 HomeComponent

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';

@Component({
  selector: 'home',
  template: '<h1 class="home">Home Component</h1>',
  styles: ['.home {background: red;}'])
export class HomeComponent {}
```

The code of ProductDetailComponent looks similar, but instead of red it uses a cyan background.

#### Listing 3.2 ProductDetailComponent

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';

@Component({
  selector: 'product',
  template: '<h1 class="product">Product Details Component</h1>',
  styles: ['.product {background: cyan;}'])
export class ProductDetailComponent {}
```

Configure the routes in a separate file called app.routing.ts.

#### Listing 3.3 app.routing.ts

If there are no URL segments after the base URL, renders the HomeComponent in the router outlet

Exports the router configuration so it can be imported by the root module

#### Imports Routes and RouterModule

```
import { Routes, RouterModule } from '@angular/router';
import { HomeComponent } from './home';
import { ProductDetailComponent } from './product';

const routes: Routes = [
  {path: '', component: HomeComponent},
  {path: 'product', component: ProductDetailComponent}
];

export const routing = RouterModule.forRoot(routes);
```

If the URL has the “product” segment after the base URL, renders ProductDetailComponent in the router outlet

HomeComponent is mapped to a path containing an empty string, which implicitly makes it a default route.

The Routes type is just a collection of the objects with properties declared in the Route interface, as shown here:

```
export interface Route {
  path?: string;
  pathMatch?: string;
  component?: Type | string;
  redirectTo?: string;
  outlet?: string;
  canActivate?: any[];
  canActivateChild?: any[];
  canDeactivate?: any[];
  canLoad?: any[];
  data?: Data;
  resolve?: ResolveData;
  children?: Route[];
  loadChildren?: string;
}
```

TypeScript interfaces are described in appendix B, but we'd like to remind you that the question mark after the property name means that this property is optional. You can pass to the function `forRoot()` or `forChild()` a configuration object that only has a couple of properties filled in. In the basic app, you use just two properties of `Route`: `path` and `component`.

The next step is to create a root component that will contain the links for navigating between the Home and Product Details views. The root `AppComponent` will be located in the `app.component.ts` file.

#### **Listing 3.4** `app.component.ts`

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';
@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `
    <a [routerLink]=["/'"]>Home</a>
    <a [routerLink]=["'/product"]>Product Details</a>
    <router-outlet></router-outlet>
  `
})
export class AppComponent {}
```

Note the use of brackets in the `<a>` tags. The square brackets around `routerLink` denote property binding, and the brackets on the right represent an array with one element (for example, `[('/')]`). We'll show you examples of an array with two or more elements later in this chapter. The second anchor tag has the `routerLink` property bound to the component configured for the `/product` path. The matched components will be rendered in the area marked with `<router-outlet>`, which in this app is located below the anchor tags.

None of the components are aware of the router configuration, because it's the module's business. Let's declare and bootstrap the root module. For simplicity, implement these two actions in the same main.ts file.

### Listing 3.5 main.ts

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule } from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { AppComponent } from './components/app.component';
import { HomeComponent } from './components/home';
import { ProductDetailComponent } from './components/product';
import { LocationStrategy, HashLocationStrategy } from '@angular/common';
import { routing } from './components/app.routing';           ← Imports the routes configuration

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule,
                  routing ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent,
                  HomeComponent,
                  ProductDetailComponent ],
  providers: [{provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy}],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]                         ← Adds the routes configuration to @NgModule
})                                         ← Lets the dependency injection mechanism know that you want HashLocationStrategy
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);          ← Loads the app
```

The module's providers property is an array of registered providers (there's just one in this example) for dependency injection, which will be covered in chapter 4. At this point, you just need to know that although the default location strategy is PathLocationStrategy, you want Angular to use the HashLocationStrategy class for routing (note the hash sign in the URL in figure 3.4).

**NOTE** Angular removes trailing slashes from URLs. You can see how the URLs for these routes look in figures 3.3 and 3.4. Child components may have their own route configurations, as we'll discuss later in this chapter.

### Running the sample applications in this book

Typically the code that comes with each chapter has several sample applications. To run a particular application, you'll need to make a one-line change in the configuration file of SystemJS to specify the name of the main script that you want to run.

To run this application using the code that comes with the book, make sure that the main script that bootstraps your root module is properly mapped in systemjs.config.js. For example, this is how to specify that the main script is located in the main-param.ts file:

```
packages: {
  'app': {main: 'main-param', defaultExtension: 'ts'}
}
```

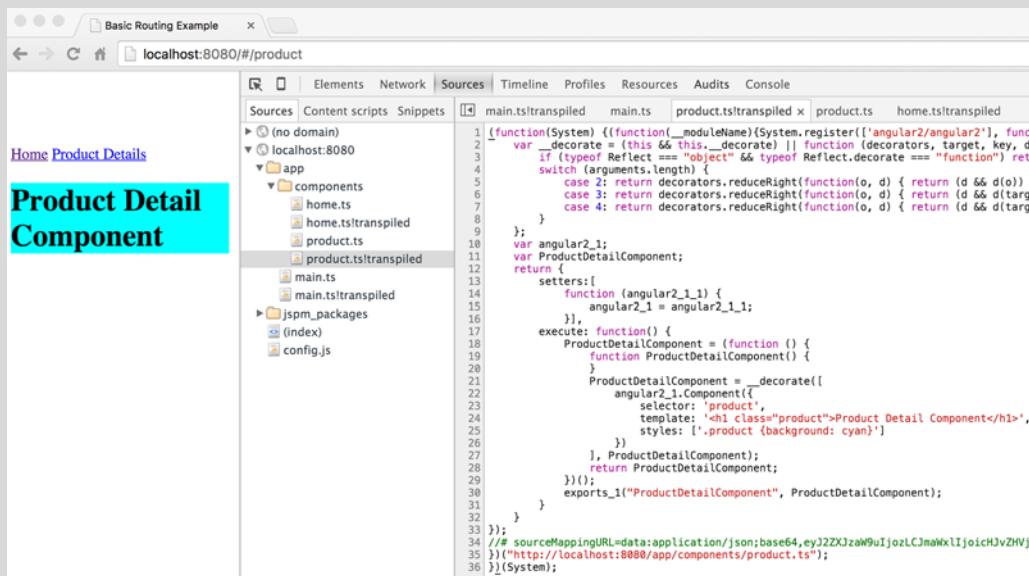
The same applies to the other sample applications in this and other chapters.

The main script of this application is located in the main.ts file in the directory samples. To run this app, make sure that the systemjs.config.js file lists main.ts in the app package, and then start the live-server from the project root directory.

## SystemJS and on-the-fly transpiling

TypeScript offers an elegant declarative syntax for implementing many Angular features, including routing. We use SystemJS in our code samples, and the transpiling of TypeScript into JavaScript is done on the fly when the application code is loaded into the browser.

But what if the application doesn't work as expected? If you open the Developer Tools panel in your browser, you'll see that each file with the extension .ts has a corresponding .ts!transpiled file. This is a transpiled version of the code that may be handy if you need to see the actual JavaScript code that runs in the browser. The following figure shows the Chrome Developer Tools panel with the source code of product.ts!transpiled.



The screenshot shows the Chrome Developer Tools interface with the 'Sources' tab selected. The URL in the address bar is 'localhost:8080/#/product'. The left sidebar shows the project structure with files like 'main.ts', 'home.ts', 'product.ts', and their transpiled counterparts ('main.ts!transpiled', 'home.ts!transpiled', 'product.ts!transpiled'). The right pane displays the transpiled JavaScript code for 'product.ts!transpiled'. The code includes imports for 'System.register', 'Reflect', and 'decorators', and defines a class 'ProductDetailComponent' with properties 'selector', 'template', and 'styles'.

```

1 (function(System) {
2     var __decorate = (this && this._decorate) || function(decorators, target, key, d) {
3         if (typeof Reflect === "object" && typeof Reflect.decorate === "function") {
4             return Reflect.decorate(decorators, target, key, d);
5         }
6         switch (d.defType) {
7             case 2: return decorators.reduceRight(function(o, d) { return (d && d(o)) ? d : o; });
8             case 3: return decorators.reduceRight(function(o, d) { return (d && d.target) ? d : o; });
9             case 4: return decorators.reduceRight(function(o, d) { return (d && d.target) ? d : o; });
10        }
11    };
12    var angular2_1;
13    var ProductDetailComponent;
14    return {
15        setters:[
16            function (angular2_1_1) {
17                angular2_1 = angular2_1_1;
18            },
19            execute: function() {
20                ProductDetailComponent = (function () {
21                    function ProductDetailComponent() {
22                    }
23                    ProductDetailComponent.prototype.ngOnChanges = function(changes) {
24                        changes['product'].next(this.product);
25                    };
26                    ProductDetailComponent = __decorate([
27                        { selector: 'product',
28                            template: '

# Product Detail Component</h1>', 29 styles: ['.product {background: cyan;}'] 30 }) 31 }, ProductDetailComponent); 32 return ProductDetailComponent; 33 })(); 34 exports_1("ProductDetailComponent", ProductDetailComponent); 35 } 36 } 37 }); 38 // sourceMappingURL=data:application/json;base64,eyJ2ZXJzaW9uIjoiLCJmaWxlIjoiHjVZHViIiwiZmFtaWxpdG9yIjoiMSIsInN1YnNwYWNlIjoiMSIsImVtYWlsIjoiZ29pcG9pbnkub3B0aC5jb2RlLmNvbSIsImxvY2FsZSI6Imh0dHA6Ly9sb2dpbi8vY29tcG9uZW50L2RvbWFpbi5tsC!transpiled 39 })(System);


```

**Monitoring the SystemJS-transpiled code**

**NOTE** Angular comes with a Location class that allows you to navigate to an absolute URL by invoking its go(), forward(), and back() methods, along with some others. Location should be used only if you need to interact with the URL outside of the Angular router. You'll see an example of using Location in chapter 9, where you'll write scripts for unit testing.

### 3.1.3 Navigating to routes with navigate()

In the basic\_routing code example in the previous section, you arranged the navigation using routerLink in HTML anchor tags. But what if you need to arrange navigation programmatically without asking the user to click a link? Let's modify that code sample to navigate by using the navigate() method. You'll add a button that will also navigate to the ProductDetailComponent, but this time no HTML anchors will be used.

Listing 3.6 (main-navigate.ts) will invoke the navigate() method on the Router instance that will be injected into the RootComponent via its constructor. For simplicity, you place the module and routes declaration, the bootstrap, and the AppComponent in the same file, but in real-world projects you should keep them separate as you did in the previous section.

**Listing 3.6 main-navigate.ts**

```
import { Component } from '@angular/core';
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { LocationStrategy, HashLocationStrategy } from '@angular/common';
import { Router, Routes, RouterModule } from '@angular/router';
import { HomeComponent } from './components/home';
import { ProductDetailComponent } from './components/product';

const routes: Routes = [
  {path: '', component: HomeComponent},
  {path: 'product', component: ProductDetailComponent}
];

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `
    <a [routerLink]="'/'>Home</a>
    <a [routerLink]="/product">Product Details!!!</a>
    <input type="button" value="Product Details"
      (click)="navigateToProductDetail()" /> ← Clicking this button invokes
    <router-outlet></router-outlet> the navigateToProductDetail()
    method.
  `})
class AppComponent {

  constructor(private _router: Router) {} ← Angular will inject the instance of
  navigateToProductDetail() { Router into the router variable.
    this._router.navigate(['/product']);
  }
}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule, RouterModule.forRoot(routes)],
  declarations: [ AppComponent, HomeComponent, ProductDetailComponent],
})
```

```

    providers: [{provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy}],
    bootstrap: [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

This example uses a button to navigate to the product route, but this can be done programmatically without requiring user actions. Just invoke the `navigate()` method (or `navigateByUrl()`) from your application code when necessary. You'll see another example of using this API in chapter 9, where we'll explain how to unit-test the router.

**TIP** Having a reference to the `Router` instance allows you to check if a particular route is active by calling `isRouteActive()`.

### Handling 404 errors

If the user enters a nonexistent URL in your application, the router won't be able to find a matching route and will print an error message on the browser's console, leaving the user to wonder why no navigation is happening. Consider creating an application component that will be displayed whenever the application can't find the matching component.

For example, you could create a component named `_404Component` and configure it with the wildcard path `**`:

```
[
  {path: '', component: HomeComponent},
  {path: 'product', component: ProductDetailComponent},
  {path: '**', component: _404Component}
])
```

Now whenever the router can't match the URL to any component, it'll render the content of `_404Component` instead. You can see it in action by running the application `main-with-404.ts` that comes with the book. Just enter a nonexistent URL in the browser, such as `http://localhost:8080/#/wrong`.

The wildcard route configuration has to be the last element in the array of routes. The router always treats the wildcard route as a match, so any routes listed after the wildcard one won't be considered.

## 3.2 Passing data to routes

The basic routing application showed how you can display different components in a predefined outlet on the window, but you often need not only to display a component, but also to pass some data to it. For example, if you navigate from the Home to the Product Details route, you need to pass the product ID to the component that represents the destination route, such as `ProductDetailComponent`.

The component that represents the destination route can receive passed parameters via its constructor argument of type `ActivatedRoute`. Besides the passed parameters, `ActivatedRoute` stores the route's URL segment, the outlet. We'll show you how to extract route parameters from an `ActivatedRoute` object in this section.

### 3.2.1 Extracting parameters from `ActivatedRoute`

When the user navigates to the Product Details route, you need to pass the product ID to this route to display details for the particular product. Let's modify the code of the application in the previous section so `RootComponent` can pass the product ID to `ProductDetailComponent`.

The new version of this component will be called `ProductDetailComponentParam`, and Angular will inject an object of type `ActivatedRoute` into it. The `ActivatedRoute` object will contain the information about the component loaded into the outlet.

**Listing 3.7 `ProductDetailComponentParam`**

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';
import {ActivatedRoute} from '@angular/router';

@Component({
  selector: 'product',
  template: `<h1 class="product">Product Details for Product:
  ↪ {{productID}}</h1>`,
  styles: ['.product {background: cyan;}']
})
export class ProductDetailComponentParam {
  productID: string;

  constructor(route: ActivatedRoute) {
    this.productID = route.snapshot.params['id'];
  }
}
```

Annotations for Listing 3.7:

- A callout points to the line `style: ['.product {background: cyan;}']` with the text "Displays the received product ID using binding".
- A callout points to the line `constructor(route: ActivatedRoute)` with the text "The constructor of this component asks Angular to inject the ActivatedRoute object".
- A callout points to the line `this.productID = route.snapshot.params['id'];` with the text "Gets the value of the parameter named id and assigns it to the productID class variable, which is used in the template via binding".

The `ActivatedRoute` object will contain all the parameters that are being passed to the component. You just need to declare the constructor's argument, specifying its type, and Angular will know how to instantiate and inject this object. We'll cover dependency injection in detail in chapter 4.

In listing 3.8, you'll change the configuration of the product route and `routerLink` to ensure that the value of the product ID will be passed to the `ProductDetailComponentParam` component if the user chooses to go this route. The new version of the app is called `main-param.ts`.

**Listing 3.8 `main-param.ts`**

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule }      from '@angular/core';
```

```

import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { LocationStrategy, HashLocationStrategy } from '@angular/common';
import { Routes, RouterModule } from '@angular/router';
import { HomeComponent } from './components/home';
import { ProductDetailComponentParam } from './components/product-param';

const routes: Routes = [
  {path: '', component: HomeComponent},
  {path: 'product/:id', component: ProductDetailComponentParam} ←
];
}

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `
    <a [routerLink]="'[' / ']">Home</a>
    <a [routerLink]="'[ / product', 1234]">Product Details</a> ←
    <router-outlet></router-outlet>
  `
})
class AppComponent {}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule, RouterModule.forRoot(routes)],
  declarations: [ AppComponent, HomeComponent, ProductDetailComponentParam],
  providers:   [{provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy}],
  bootstrap:    [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule {}

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

The path property has an additional URL segment, /:id.

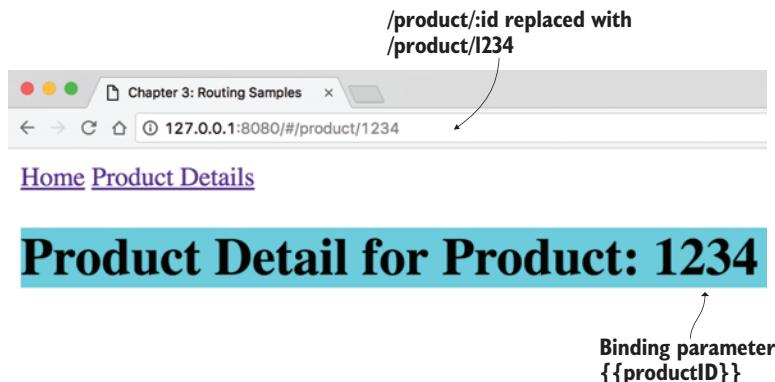
This time there are two elements in the array given to routerLink: the path that the route starts with, and the number that represents the product ID.

The routerLink property for the Product Details link is initialized with a two-element array. The elements of the array build up the path specified in the routes configuration given to the `RouterModule.forRoot()` method. The first element of the array represents the static part of the route's path: `product`. The second element represents the variable part of the path: `/:id`.

For simplicity, you hardcode the ID to be 1234, but if the `RootComponent` class had a `productID` variable pointing at the appropriate object, you could write `{ productID }` instead of 1234. For the Product Details route, Angular will construct the URL segment `/product/1234`. Figure 3.5 shows how the Product Details view will be rendered in the browser. Note the URL: the router replaced the `product/:id` path with `/product/1234`.

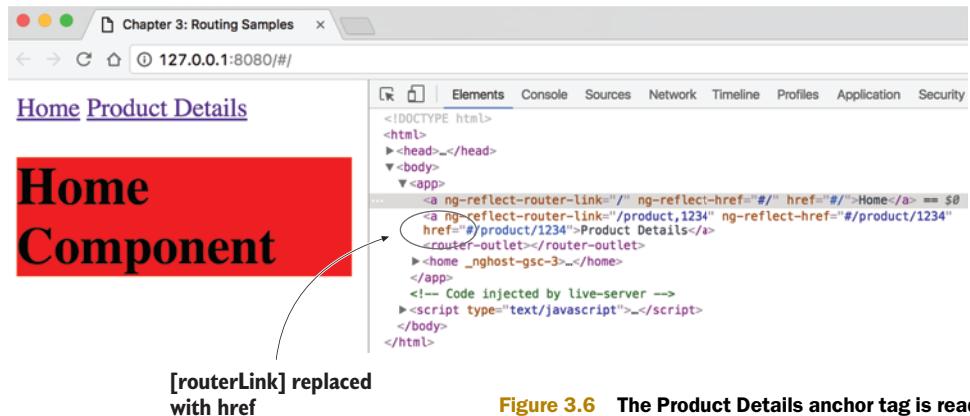
Let's review the steps that Angular performed under the hood to render the main page of the application:

- 1 Check the content of each `routerLink` to find the corresponding route configurations.
- 2 Parse the URLs, and replace the parameter names with actual values where specified.
- 3 Build the `<a href="">` tags that the browser understands.



**Figure 3.5** The Product Details route received the product ID 1234.

Figure 3.6 shows a snapshot of the home page of the application with the Chrome Developer Tools panel open. Because the path property of the configured Home route had an empty string, Angular didn't add anything to the base URL of the page. But the anchor under the Product Details link has already been converted into a regular HTML tag. When the user clicks the Product Details link, the router will attach a hash sign and add /product/1234 to the base URL so that the absolute URL of the Product Details view will become <http://localhost:8080/#/product/1234>.



**Figure 3.6** The Product Details anchor tag is ready.

### 3.2.2 Passing static data to a route

Parent components will usually pass data to their children, but Angular also offers a mechanism to pass arbitrary data to components at the time of route configuration. For example, besides dynamic data like a product ID, you may need to pass a flag indicating whether the application is running in a production environment. This can be done by using the `data` property of your route configuration.

The route for the product details can be configured as follows:

```
{path: 'product/:id', component: ProductDetailComponentParam , data:
  ↪ [{isProd: true}]}
```

The data property can contain an array of arbitrary key-value pairs. When the router opens `ProductDetailComponentParam`, the data value will be located in the data property of the `ActivatedRoute.snapshot`:

```
export class ProductDetailComponentParam {
  productID: string;
  isProdEnvironment: string;

  constructor(route: ActivatedRoute) {
    this.productID = route.snapshot.params['id'];

    this.isProdEnvironment = route.snapshot.data[0]['isProd'];
    console.log("this.isProdEnvironment = " + this.isProdEnvironment);
  }
}
```

Passing data to a route via the data property isn't an alternative to configuring parameters in the path property, as in `path: 'product/:id'`, but it can come in handy when you need to pass some data to a route during the configuration phase, such as whether it's a production or QA environment. The application that implements this functionality is located in the `main-param-data.ts` file.

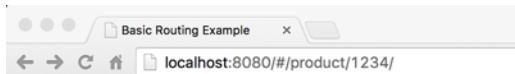
### 3.3 Child routes

An Angular application is a tree of components that have parent-child relations. Each component is well encapsulated, and you have full control over what you expose to the rest of the application's scripts and what you keep private within the component. Any component can have its own styles that won't mix with the parent's styles. A component can also have its own dependency injectors. A child component can have its own routes, but all routes are configured outside of any component.

In the previous section, you configured the routes to show the content of either `HomeComponent` or `ProductDetailComponent` in the `router-outlet` of `AppComponent`. Imagine now that you want to enable `ProductDetailComponent` (the child) to show either the product description or the seller's info.

This means that you want to add the configuration of child routes for `ProductDetailComponent`. You'll use the `children` property of the `Route` interface for this:

```
[ {path: '', component: HomeComponent},
  {path: 'product/:id', component: ProductDetailComponent,
    children: [
      {path: '', component: ProductDescriptionComponent},
      {path: 'seller/:id', component: SellerInfoComponent}
    ]
}
```



[Home](#) [Product Details](#)

## Product Detail for Product: 1234

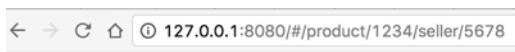
This is a great product!

[Seller Info](#)

**Figure 3.7** The Product Description route

Figure 3.7 shows how the application will look once the user clicks the Product Details link on the root component, which renders `ProductDetailComponent` (the child) showing `ProductDescription`. This is the default route of the child, because its path property has an empty string.

Figure 3.8 shows the application after the user clicks the Product Details link and then on Seller Info.



[Home](#) [Product Details](#)

## Product Detail for Product: 1234

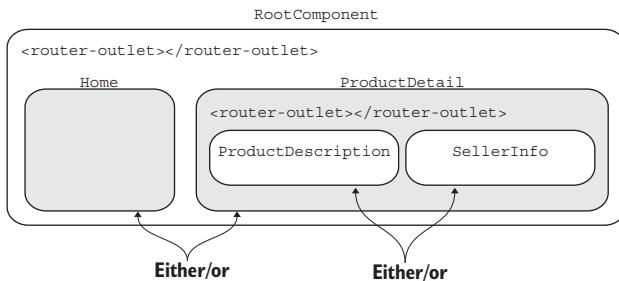
The seller of this product is Mary Lou (98%)

[Seller Info](#)

**Figure 3.8** The child route renders `SellerInfo`.

**NOTE** If you read the electronic version of this book, you'll see that the seller's info is shown on a yellow background. We did this on purpose to discuss the styling of components a bit later in this chapter.

To implement the views shown in figures 3.7 and 3.8, you'll modify `ProductDetailComponent` so it also has two children, `SellerInfoComponent` and `ProductDescriptionComponent`, and its own `<router-outlet>`. Figure 3.9 shows the hierarchy of components that you're going to implement.



**Figure 3.9** The routes hierarchy in the `basic_routing` app

The entire code of this example with the child routes is located in main-child.ts, shown next.

**Listing 3.9 main-child.ts**

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import {LocationStrategy, HashLocationStrategy} from '@angular/common';
import { Routes, RouterModule } from '@angular/router';
import { HomeComponent } from './components/home';
import {ProductDetailComponent} from './components/product-child';
import {ProductDescriptionComponent} from './components/product-description';
import {SellerInfoComponent} from './components/seller';

const routes: Routes = [
  {path: '', component: HomeComponent},
  {path: 'product/:id', component: ProductDetailComponent,
    children: [
      {path: '', component: ProductDescriptionComponent},
      {path: 'seller/:id', component: SellerInfoComponent}
    ]
  }
];

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `
    <a [routerLink]="'/'>Home</a>
    <a [routerLink]="'/product', 1234">Product Details</a>
    <router-outlet></router-outlet>
  `
})
class AppComponent { }

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule, RouterModule.forRoot(routes)],
  declarations: [ AppComponent, HomeComponent, ProductDetailComponent,
    ProductDescriptionComponent, SellerInfoComponent],
  providers: [{provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy}],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);
```

Take another look at the URL in figure 3.8. When the user clicks the Product Details link, the product/1234 segment is added to the URL. The router finds a match to this path in the configuration object and renders ProductDetailComponent in the outlet.

The new version of ProductDetailComponent (product-child.ts) has its own outlet, where it can display either ProductDescriptionComponent (the default) or SellerInfoComponent.

### Listing 3.10 ProductDetailComponent

```

import {Component} from '@angular/core';
import {ActivatedRoute} from '@angular/router';

@Component({
  selector: 'product',
  styles: ['.product {background: cyan}'],
  template: `
    <div class="product">
      <h1>Product Details for Product: {{productID}}</h1>
      <router-outlet></router-outlet>
      <p><a [routerLink]="'./seller', 5678">Seller Info</a></p>
    </div>
  `
})
export class ProductDetailComponent {
  productID: string;

  constructor(route: ActivatedRoute) {
    this.productID = route.snapshot.params['id'];
  }
}

```

**ProductDetailComponent has its own router-outlet to render its child components one at a time.**

**When the user clicks this link, Angular adds the /seller/5678 segment to the existing URL and renders SellerInfoComponent.**

**NOTE** Child components don't need to be imported. Neither `ProductDescriptionComponent` nor `SellerInfoComponent` is explicitly mentioned in the template of `ProductDetailComponent`, and there's no need to list them in the `directives` property. They're included in `AppModule`.

By looking at the route configuration for `SellerInfoComponent`, you'll see that it expects to receive the seller's ID as a parameter. You'll be passing a hard-coded value of 5678 as the seller's ID.

When the user clicks the Seller Info link, the URL will include the `product/1234/seller/5678` segment (see figure 3.8). The router will find a match in the configuration object and will display `SellerInfoComponent`.

**NOTE** This version of `ProductDetailComponent` has only one link to open the seller's info. To navigate from the seller route back to `/product`, the user can just click the web browser's Back button.

`ProductDescriptionComponent` is trivial.

### Listing 3.11 ProductDescriptionComponent

```

import {Component} from '@angular/core';

@Component({
  selector: 'product-description',
  template: '<p>This is a great product!</p>'
})
export class ProductDescriptionComponent {}

```

Because SellerInfoComponent expects to receive the seller's ID, its constructor needs an argument of type ActivatedRoute to get the seller ID, as you did in ProductDetailComponent.

#### Listing 3.12 SellerInfoComponent

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';
import {ActivatedRoute} from '@angular/router';

@Component({
  selector: 'seller',
  template: 'The seller of this product is Mary Lou (98%)',
  styles: [':host {background: yellow}']
})
export class SellerInfoComponent {
  sellerID: string;

  constructor(route: ActivatedRoute) {
    this.sellerID = route.snapshot.params['id'];
    console.log(`The SellerInfoComponent got the seller id ${this.sellerID}`);
  }
}
```

You use a pseudoclass :host to display the content of this component on a yellow background. This will serve as a good segue to a brief discussion of Shadow DOM.

The :host pseudoclass selector can be used with elements that are created using Shadow DOM, which provides better encapsulation for components (see the “Shadow DOM Support in Angular” sidebar). Although not all web browsers support Shadow DOM yet, Angular emulates Shadow DOM by default and creates a shadow root. The HTML element associated with this shadow root is called the shadow host.

In listing 3.12, you use :host to apply the yellow background color to SellerInfoComponent, which serves as a shadow host. Shadow DOM styles of the components aren't merged with the styles of the global DOM, and the IDs of the component's HTML tags won't overlap with the IDs of the DOM.

### Deep linking

*Deep linking* is the ability to create a link to specific content inside a web page rather than to the entire page. In the basic routing applications, you've seen examples of deep linking:

- The URL `http://localhost:8080/#/product/1234` links not just to the Product Details page, but to a specific view representing the product with an ID of 1234.
- The URL `http://localhost:8080/#/product/1234/seller/5678` links even deeper. It shows the information about the seller with an ID of 5678 who sells the product whose ID is 1234.

You can easily see deep linking in action by copying the link `http://localhost:8080/#/product/1234/seller/5678` from the application running in Chrome and pasting it into Firefox or Safari.

## Shadow DOM support in Angular

Shadow DOM is a part of the Web Components standards. Every web page is represented by a tree of DOM objects, but Shadow DOM allows you to encapsulate a subtree of HTML elements to create a boundary between one component and another. Such a subtree is rendered as part of the HTML document, but its elements aren't attached to the main DOM tree. In other words, the Shadow DOM places a wall between the DOM content and the internals of the HTML component.

When you add a custom tag to a web page, it includes an HTML fragment, and with Shadow DOM this fragment is scoped to the component without merging with the DOM of the web page. With Shadow DOM, the CSS styles of the custom component won't be merged with the main DOM CSS, preventing possible conflicts in rendering styles.

Open any YouTube video in the Chrome browser, which natively supports Shadow DOM. At the time of this writing, the video player is represented by the tag `video`, which you can find by opening the Developer Tools and browsing the content under the Elements tab as shown in the following figure.

```
<video class="video-stream html5-main-video" style="width: 640px; height: 360px; background-color: #caedbe13-d34a-400c-adb1-82a713307b24">
  #shadow-root (user-agent)
    <div pseudo="-webkit-media-controls">
      <div pseudo="-webkit-media-controls-overlay-enclosure">
        <input type="button" style="display: none;">
          #shadow-root (user-agent)
            ...
            </input>
          </div>
        <div pseudo="-webkit-media-controls-enclosure">...</div>
      </div>
    </video>
```

### The <video> tag on a YouTube page

Although the video player consists of the content area and a toolbar with a dozen controls (the Play button, the audio slider, and so on), they're all encapsulated inside the shadow root. From the main DOM perspective, this page contains a “Lego block” `<video>`. To peek inside of this tag, you'd need to select the Show User Agent Shadow DOM option in the Developer Tools settings.

In Angular components, you specify the HTML markup in the template or template-Url property of the @Component annotation. If a web browser supports Shadow DOM natively, or you requested that Angular should emulate it, the component's HTML isn't merged with the global DOM object of the web page. In Angular, you can specify Shadow DOM mode by setting the encapsulation property in the @Component annotation to one of the following values:

- `ViewEncapsulation.Emulated`—Emulates encapsulation of Shadow DOM (the default). This instructs Angular to generate unique attributes for the styles of the component and won't merge its styles with the styles of the web page's DOM. For example, if you open Developer Tools in Chrome while navigating to `SellerInfoComponent`, its HTML markup will look like this:

*(continued)*

```
<head>
...
<style>[_ngcontent-yls-7] {background: yellow;}</style>
</head>
...
<seller _ngcontent-yls-7="" _ngcontent-yls-6="">
<p _ngcontent-yls-7=""></p>
The seller of this product is Mary Lou (98% positive feedback)
</seller>
```

- `ViewEncapsulation.Native`—Uses the Shadow DOM that's natively supported by the browser. The HTML and styles aren't merged with the DOM of the web page. You should use this option only if you're sure that the user's browser supports Shadow DOM; otherwise an error is thrown. In this mode, the styles of `SellerInfoComponent` won't be added to the `<head>` section of the page, but all styles of the component and its parents will be encapsulated inside the component.

```
▼<seller _ngcontent-jme-8>
  ▼#shadow-root
    <style>:host {background: yellow}</style>
    <p></p>
    "The seller of this product is Mary Lou (98% positive feedback) "
    <style>.home[_ngcontent-jme-3] {
      background: red;
    }</style>
    <style>.product[_ngcontent-jme-5] {
      background: cyan;
    }</style>
  </seller>
```

**The shadow root encapsulates all styles.**

- `ViewEncapsulation.None`—Doesn't use Shadow DOM encapsulation. All the markup and styles will be integrated into the global web page DOM. The `:host` selector won't work in this mode, because there won't be any shadow host. You can still style the `SellerInfoComponent`, referring to the component by its selector:

```
import {Component, ViewEncapsulation} from '@angular/core';

@Component({
  selector: 'seller',
  template: 'The seller of this product is Mary Lou (98%)',
  styles: ['seller {background: yellow;}'],
  encapsulation: ViewEncapsulation.None
})
export class SellerInfoComponent {}
```

(continued)

Angular won't generate any additional style attributes and will add the following line to the `<head>` section of the page:

```
<style>seller {background: yellow}</style>
```

In section 6.2.3, you'll see how ViewEncapsulation affects the UI rendering with and without Shadow DOM.

### 3.4 Guarding routes

Now that you know how to arrange basic navigation using the router, let's consider some scenarios that require validation to be performed to decide if the user (or a program) is allowed to navigate to or leave the route:

- Open the route only if the user is authenticated and authorized to do so.
- Display a multipart form that consists of several components, and the user is allowed to navigate to the next section of the form only if the data entered in the current section is valid.
- Remind the user about unsaved changes if they try to navigate from the route.

The router has hooks that give you more control over the navigation to and from a route. You can use these hooks to implement any of preceding scenarios to *guard* the routes.

**NOTE** Angular includes a number of component lifecycle hooks that allow you to handle important events in the life of a component. We'll cover them in chapter 6.

In section 3.1, we mentioned that the `Routes` type is an array of items that conforms to the `Route` interface, shown here:

```
export interface Route {  
  path?: string;  
  pathMatch?: string;  
  component?: Type | string;  
  redirectTo?: string;  
  outlet?: string;  
  canActivate?: any[];  
  canActivateChild?: any[];  
  canDeactivate?: any[];  
  canLoad?: any[];  
  data?: Data;  
  resolve?: ResolveData;  
  children?: Route[];  
  loadChildren?: string;  
}
```

While configuring the previous routes, you used three properties from this interface: path, component, and data. Now let's get familiar with the canActivate and canDeactivate properties, which allow you to hook up the routes with guards. Basically, you need to write a function implementing the validating logic that will return either true or false, and assign it to one of these properties. If canActivate() of the guard returns true, the user can navigate to the route. If canDeactivate() returns true, the user can navigate away from the route. Because both the canActivate and canDeactivate properties of Route accept an array as a value, you can assign multiple functions (guards) if you need to check more than one condition to allow or forbid the navigation.

Let's update the example from section 3.1.2 (the one with the Home and Product Details links) to illustrate how you can protect the product route from users who aren't logged in. To keep the example simple, you won't use an actual login service but will generate the login status randomly.

You'll create a guard class that implements the interface CanActivate, which declares only one function to implement: canActivate(). This function should contain application logic that returns true or false. If the function returns false (the user isn't logged in), the application won't navigate to the route and will print an error message on the console.

### **Listing 3.13 LoginGuard class**

```
import {CanActivate} from "@angular/router";
import {Injectable} from "@angular/core";

@Injectable()
export class LoginGuard implements CanActivate{

  canActivate() {
    return this.checkIfLoggedIn();
  }

  private checkIfLoggedIn(): boolean{

    // A call to the actual login service would go here
    // For now we'll just randomly return true or false

    let loggedIn:boolean = Math.random() <0.5;

    if(!loggedIn){
      console.log("LoginGuard:
        ↪ The user is not logged in and can't navigate product details");
    }

    return loggedIn;
  }
}
```

As you can see, this implementation of the canActivate() function will randomly return true or false, emulating the user's logged-in status.

The next step is to update the router configuration so it uses your guard. The following code snippet shows how the routes could be configured for an app that has Home and Product Details routes. The latter is protected by LoginGuard:

```
[  
  {path: '', component: HomeComponent},  
  {path: 'product', component: ProductDetailComponent, canActivate:  
    [LoginGuard]}  
]
```

Adding one or more guards to the array given to the canActivate property will automatically invoke all the guards, one after the other. If any of the guards returns false, navigating to the route will be prohibited.

But who will instantiate the LoginGuard class? Angular will do it for you using its dependency injection mechanism (described in chapter 4), but you have to mention this class in the list of providers that are needed for injection to work. Add the name LoginGuard to the list of providers in @NgModule:

```
@NgModule({  
  imports: [ BrowserModule, RouterModule.forRoot(routes) ],  
  declarations: [ AppComponent, HomeComponent, ProductDetailComponent ],  
  providers: [{provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy}  
    LoginGuard],  
  bootstrap: [ AppComponent ]  
})
```

The complete code of the main app script (main-with-guard.ts) follows.

#### Listing 3.14 main-with-guard.ts

```
import { Component } from '@angular/core';  
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';  
import { NgModule } from '@angular/core';  
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';  
import { LocationStrategy, HashLocationStrategy } from '@angular/common';  
import { Routes, RouterModule } from '@angular/router';  
import { HomeComponent } from './components/home';  
import { ProductDetailComponent } from './components/product';  
import { LoginGuard } from './guards/login.guard';  
  
const routes: Routes = [  
  {path: '', component: HomeComponent},  
  {path: 'product', component: ProductDetailComponent,  
    canActivate: [LoginGuard]}  
];  
  
@Component({  
  selector: 'app',  
  template: `
```

```

<a [routerLink]="'/'>Home</a>
<a [routerLink]="'/product'">Product Details</a>
<router-outlet></router-outlet>

})

class AppComponent {}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule, RouterModule.forRoot(routes)],
  declarations: [ AppComponent, HomeComponent, ProductDetailComponent],
  providers: [{provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy},
    LoginGuard],
  bootstrap:    [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

If you run this app and click the Product Details link, it'll either navigate to this route or print the error message on the browser console, depending on the randomly generated value in `LoginGuard`. Figure 3.10 shows a screenshot taken after the user clicked the Product Details link but `LoginGuards` decided that the user wasn't logged in.

In this example, you implemented the `canActivate()` method without providing any arguments to it. But this method can be used with the following signature:

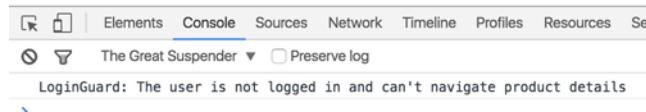
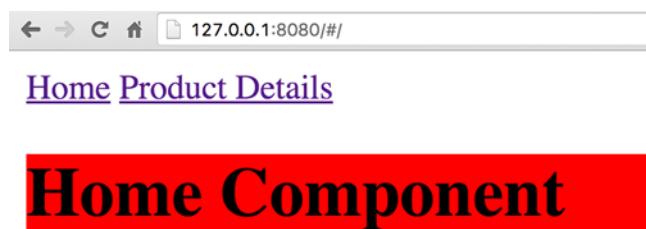
```
canActivate(destination: ActivatedRouteSnapshot, state: RouterStateSnapshot)
```

The values of `ActivatedRouteSnapshot` and `RouterStateSnapshot` will be injected by Angular automatically, and this may be quite handy if you want to analyze the current state of the router. For example, if you'd like to know the name of the route the user tried to navigate to, this is how you can do it:

```

canActivate(destination: ActivatedRouteSnapshot, state: RouterStateSnapshot)
{
  ...
  console.log(destination.component.name);
}

```



**Figure 3.10** Clicking the Product Details link is guarded.

**TIP** If you want to wait for some async data to arrive before navigating to a route, use the `resolve` property while configuring the route. There you can specify a class that implements the `Resolve` interface with the function `resolve()`. The router won't instantiate the configured component until this function returns.

Implementing the `CanDeactivate` interface that controls the process of navigating from a route works similarly. Just create a guard class that implements the method `canDeactivate()`, like this:

```
import {CanDeactivate, Router} from "@angular/router";
import {Injectable} from "@angular/core";

@Injectable()
export class UnsavedChangesGuard implements CanDeactivate{

    constructor(private _router:Router) {}

    canDeactivate(){
        return window.confirm("You have unsaved changes.
            ↗ Still want to leave?");
    }
}
```

Don't forget to add the `canDeactivate` property to the route configuration, and to include the new guard in the providers list in the module:

```
@NgModule({
    imports:      [ BrowserModule, RouterModule.forRoot(routes)],
    declarations: [ AppComponent, HomeComponent, ProductDetailComponent],
    providers:   [{provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy},
                  LoginGuard, UnsavedChangesGuard],
    bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
```

**TIP** For a fancier way of displaying alerts and confirmation dialogs, use the `MdDialog` component from the Material Design 2 library (<https://github.com/angular/material2>).

For more details about the component lifecycle hooks applicable to navigation, refer to the `@angular/router` section in the Angular API documentation (<https://angular.io/docs/ts/latest/api/>). We'll discuss component lifecycles in chapter 6.

### 3.5 *Developing a SPA with multiple router outlets*

In the previous section you learned that a child route is represented by a URL consisting of parent and child segments. Your single-page app had a single tag, `<router-outlet>`, where Angular would render the component configured for either the parent or the

child. Now we'll discuss how to configure and render sibling routes, meaning routes that are rendered in separate outlets at the same time. Let's see some use cases:

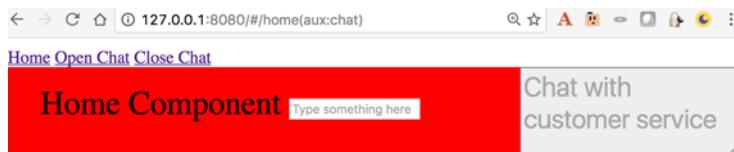
- Suppose a Gmail web client displays the list of emails in your inbox, and you decide to compose a new email. The new view will be displayed on the right side of the window, and you'll be able to switch between the inbox and the draft of the new email without closing either view.
- Imagine a dashboard-like SPA that has several dedicated areas (outlets), and each area can render more than one component (but one at a time). Outlet A can display your stock portfolio either as a table or as a chart, while outlet B shows either the latest news or an advertisement.
- Say you want to add a chat area to a SPA so the user can communicate with a customer service representative while keeping the current route active as well. Basically, you want to add an independent chat route allowing the user to use both routes at the same time and to switch from one route to another.

In Angular, you can implement any of these scenarios by having not only a *primary* outlet, but also named *auxiliary* outlets, which are displayed at the same time as the primary one.

To separate the rendering of components for primary and auxiliary routes, you'll need to add yet another `<router-outlet>` tag, but this outlet must have a name. For example, the following code snippet defines primary and chat outlets:

```
<router-outlet></router-outlet>
<router-outlet name="chat"></router-outlet>
```

Let's add a named route for a chat to the sample application. Figure 3.11 illustrates two routes opened at the same time after the user clicked the Home link and then the Open Chat link. The left side shows the rendering of `HomeComponent` in the primary outlet, and the right side shows `ChatComponent` rendered in a named outlet. Clicking the Close Chat link will remove the content of the named outlet. (We added an HTML `<input>` field to `HomeComponent` and a `<textarea>` to `ChatComponent` so it's easier to see which component has the focus when the user switches between the Home and Chat routes.)



**Figure 3.11**  
Rendering a chat view with an auxiliary route

Note the parentheses in the URL of the auxiliary route, `http://localhost:8080/#home/(chat)`. Whereas a child route is separated from the parent using the forward slash, an auxiliary route is represented as a URL segment in parentheses. This URL tells you that home and chat are sibling routes.

The code that implements this sample is located in the main\_aux.ts file, and it's shown in listing 3.15. We've kept all the required components in the same file for simplicity. Both HomeComponent and ChatComponent have inlined styles to place them next to each other in the window. HomeComponent is styled to get 70% of the available viewport width, and ChatComponent will get the remaining 30%.

**Listing 3.15 main\_aux.ts**

```

import { Component } from '@angular/core';
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { LocationStrategy, HashLocationStrategy } from '@angular/common';
import { Routes, RouterModule } from '@angular/router';

@Component({
  selector: 'home',
  template: `<div class="home">Home Component
    <input type="text" placeholder="Type something here"/>
  </div>`,
  styles: [`.home {background: red; padding: 15px 0 0 30px; height: 80px;
  width:70%; font-size: 30px; float:left; box-sizing:border-box;}`])
export class HomeComponent {}

@Component({
  selector: 'chat',
  template: `<textarea placeholder="Chat with customer service"
    class="chat"></textarea>`,
  styles: [`.chat {background: #eee; height: 80px; width:30%;
  font-size: 24px;
  float:left; display:block; box-sizing:border-box;}`])
export class ChatComponent {}

const routes: Routes = [
  {path: '', redirectTo: 'home', pathMatch: 'full'},
  {path: 'home', component: HomeComponent},
  {path: 'chat', component: ChatComponent, outlet:"aux"}]

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `
    <a [routerLink]="['']">Home</a>
    <a [routerLink]="{{outlets: {primary: 'home', aux: 'chat'}}}">
      Open Chat</a>
    <a [routerLink]="{{outlets: {aux: null}}}">Close Chat</a>
    <br/>
  `}

Renders the Home
component in the
primary outlet and Chat
in the outlet called aux
  
```

**Configures the route for the Home component. Because no outlet is specified, the component will be rendered in the primary one.**

**Configures the route for the Chat component to be rendered in the outlet named aux**

**To remove the named outlet with its content, give it a null value.**

```

        <router-outlet></router-outlet>
        <router-outlet name="aux"></router-outlet>
    }

class AppComponent {}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule, RouterModule.forRoot(routes)],
  declarations: [ AppComponent, HomeComponent, ChatComponent],
  providers:   [{provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy}],
  bootstrap:    [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

**Declares the primary outlet**

**Declares an additional named outlet, <router-outlet>. Here you name it aux.**

**NOTE** Because class declarations aren't hoisted (hoisting is explained in appendix A), make sure you declare your components before using them with routerLink.

If you want to navigate to (or close) the named outlets programmatically, use the Router.navigate() method, as explained in section 3.1.3. Here's an example:

```
navigate([{outlets: {aux: 'chat'}}]);
```

Let's take a breather and recap what we've covered so far in this chapter:

- Routes are configured on the module level.
- Each route has a path mapped to a component.
- The area where the route content is rendered is defined by the placement of the <router-outlet> area in the component's template.
- The routerLink can be used for navigating to a named route.
- The navigate() method can be used for navigating to a named route.
- If a route requires a parameter, you have to configure it in the path property of the route configuration and pass its value in routerLink or in the navigate() method.
- If a route expects a parameter, the underlying component must have a constructor with an argument of type ActivatedRoute.
- If a child component has its own route configuration, it's called a child route, and it's configured using the children property defined in the Route interface.
- An application can show more than one route at the same time using named routes.

We're almost done covering the router. We'll discuss one more topic: how to implement lazy loading of components for rarely used routes. This is an important technique that will allow you to minimize the amount of code loaded for the landing page of your app. After that, you'll implement routing in the online auction.

### 3.6 Splitting an app into modules

Angular modules allow you to split an application into more than one module, where each module implements certain functionality. As a matter of fact, each of the code samples in this chapter already has more than one module, such as `AppModule`, `BrowserModule`, and `RouterModule`. `AppModule` is the root module of an application, but `BrowserModule` and `RouterModule` are feature modules. Note the main difference between them: the root module is bootstrapped, whereas feature modules are imported, as shown in the following code snippet:

```
@NgModule({
  imports: [ BrowserModule,
    RouterModule.forRoot(routes)],
  ...
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);
```

Each module can expose and hide certain functionality, and all modules are executed in the same context, so they can share objects if need be. `RootModule` and `BrowserModule` were created by the Angular team, but you can split your application into modules too.

In a feature module, the `@NgModule` decorator has to import `CommonModule` instead of `BrowserModule`. Let's take the app with two links—Home and Product Details—and add one more: Luxury Items. Imagine that luxury items have to be processed differently than regular products, and you want to separate this functionality into a feature module called `LuxuryModule`, which will have one component called `LuxuryComponent`. It's recommended that a feature module and its supporting components, services, and other resources be placed in a separate directory. In the sample app, it'll be a directory named `luxury`.

The code of `LuxuryModule` is located in the `luxury.module.ts` file, shown next.

**Listing 3.16 luxury.module.ts**

```
Imports CommonModule as required for feature modules
import { NgModule }      from '@angular/core';
import { CommonModule } from '@angular/common';
import { RouterModule } from '@angular/router';
import { LuxuryComponent } from './luxury.component';

@ NgModule({
  imports:      [ CommonModule,
    RouterModule.forChild([
      {path: 'luxury', component: LuxuryComponent}
    ]),
    declarations: [ LuxuryComponent ]
  }
)
export class LuxuryModule { }
```

This module will have just one component.

Configures the route for this module using the `forChild()` method

When the URL has the `luxury` segment, renders `LuxuryComponent`.

When you configure the root module, use the `forRoot` method, and for feature modules use `forChild()`.

The code of `LuxuryComponent` will just display the text “Luxury Component” on a yellow (for gold) background:

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';

@Component({
  selector: 'luxury',
  template: `<h1 class="gold">Luxury Component</h1>`,
  styles: ['.gold {background: yellow;}']
})
export class LuxuryComponent {}
```

Note that you’re exporting `LuxuryComponent` to make it available to other members of the root module. The code of `AppComponent`, `AppModule`, and the bootstrap function is located in the `main-luxury.ts` file.

#### **Listing 3.17 main-luxury.ts**

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component } from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { LocationStrategy, HashLocationStrategy } from '@angular/common';
import { RouterModule } from "@angular/router";
import { HomeComponent } from "./components/home";
import { ProductDetailComponent } from "./components/product";
import { LuxuryModule } from "./components/luxury/luxury.module";

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `
    <a [routerLink]="'/'">Home</a>
    <a [routerLink]="'/product'">Product Details</a>
    <a [routerLink]="'/luxury'">Luxury Items</a>
    <router-outlet></router-outlet>
  `
})
export class AppComponent {}

@NgModule({
  imports: [ BrowserModule,
            LuxuryModule,
            RouterModule.forRoot([
              {path: '', component: HomeComponent},
              {path: 'product', component: ProductDetailComponent}
            ]),
            declarations: [ AppComponent, HomeComponent, ProductDetailComponent],
            providers:[{provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy}],
            bootstrap: [ AppComponent ]
})
```

**Annotations for Listing 3.17 main-luxury.ts:**

- Configures the route for the root module**: Points to the `RouterModule.forRoot()` call.
- Declares the feature module**: Points to the `LuxuryModule` import.
- Adds the link to the main app to navigate to the luxury path**: Points to the first three `<a>` tags in the template.

```
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);
```

Note that the root module doesn't know about the internals of LuxuryModule, and it doesn't even mention LuxuryComponent. When the router parses the routes configuration from both root and feature modules, it'll properly map the luxury path to the LuxuryComponent that's exported by LuxuryModule. If you run this application and click the Luxury Items link, you'll see the window shown in figure 3.12.

This was an example of splitting a chunk of functionality into a module. Should you decide to stop selling luxury items, you'll only need to remove the references to LuxuryModule from the root module and one link from AppComponent. This is pretty easy refactoring, compared to the process of removing functionality from a monolithic single-module app.

Moving a feature module from one app to another becomes easier as well. Not that every app needs to be able to sell luxury items, but many apps in a commercial portal may need, say, a payment module that can be reused across apps with minimal effort.

This is all good, but keep in mind that even though you encapsulated some functionality into a separate module, the code of this module is loaded on the application's launch. Do you really want to load the luxury module code into the browser when the application starts? Let's discuss this next.

### 3.7 Lazy-loading modules

In large applications, you want to minimize the amount of code that needs to be downloaded to render the landing page of your application. The less code your app initially downloads, the faster the user will see it. This is especially important for mobile apps when they're used in a poor connection area. If your application has modules that are rarely used, you can make them downloadable on demand, or *lazy-loaded*.

Angular allows you to easily split your app into modules: one root module and one or more feature modules. The latter can be loaded either eagerly, as you did in the previous section, or lazily.

After implementing the functionality for luxury items, suppose you realize that most users rarely click the Luxury Items link. Why load the code that handles luxury items on the initial bootstrap of the app? Let's refactor the app to load the luxury module on demand.

Listing 3.18 implements lazy loading of the module. This sample will look a lot like listing 3.17, but you'll make a small change in the main module and change the way LuxuryModule is exported. This code is located in the main-luxury-lazy.ts file.



**Figure 3.12** Rendering LuxuryModule

**Listing 3.18 main-luxury-lazy.ts**

```

import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { LocationStrategy, HashLocationStrategy} from '@angular/common';
import { RouterModule} from "@angular/router";
import { HomeComponent} from "./components/home";
import {ProductDetailComponent} from "./components/product";

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `
    <a [routerLink]="'/'>Home</a>
    <a [routerLink]="/product">Product Details</a>
    <a [routerLink]="/luxury">Luxury Items</a>
    <router-outlet></router-outlet>
  `
})
export class AppComponent {}

@NgModule({
  imports: [ BrowserModule,
    RouterModule.forRoot([
      {path: '', component: HomeComponent},
      {path: 'product', component: ProductDetailComponent},
      {path: 'luxury', loadChildren:
        'app/components/luxury/luxury.lazy.module'}
    ]),
    declarations: [ AppComponent, HomeComponent, ProductDetailComponent],
    providers:[{provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy}],
    bootstrap:    [ AppComponent ]
  }
)
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

Note that this time you aren't explicitly importing LuxuryModule. Also, you changed the route configuration for the luxury path, which now looks like this:

```
{path: 'luxury', loadChildren: 'app/components/luxury/luxury.lazy.module'}
```

Instead of mapping the path to a component, you use the loadChildren property, providing the path to the module to be loaded. Note that the value of loadChildren isn't a typed module name, but a string. The root module doesn't know about the LuxuryModule type; but when the user clicks the Luxury Items link, the module loader will parse this string and load LuxuryModule from the luxury.lazy.module.ts file, which looks a little different than the version presented in the previous section.

**Listing 3.19 luxury.lazy.module.ts**

```
import { NgModule }      from '@angular/core';
import { CommonModule } from '@angular/common';
import { RouterModule } from '@angular/router';
import { LuxuryComponent } from './luxury.component';

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ CommonModule,
    RouterModule.forChild([
      {path: '', component: LuxuryComponent}
    ]),
  declarations: [ LuxuryComponent ]
})

export default class LuxuryModule { }
```

Here you configure an empty path to be used as a default route. Because this module will be lazy-loaded, and you didn't declare the `LuxuryModule` type in the root module, you have to use the `default` keyword while exporting this class. When the user clicks the Luxury Items link in the root module, the loader will load the content of the `luxury.lazy.module.ts` file and will figure out that `LuxuryModule` is a default entry point to the script from this file.

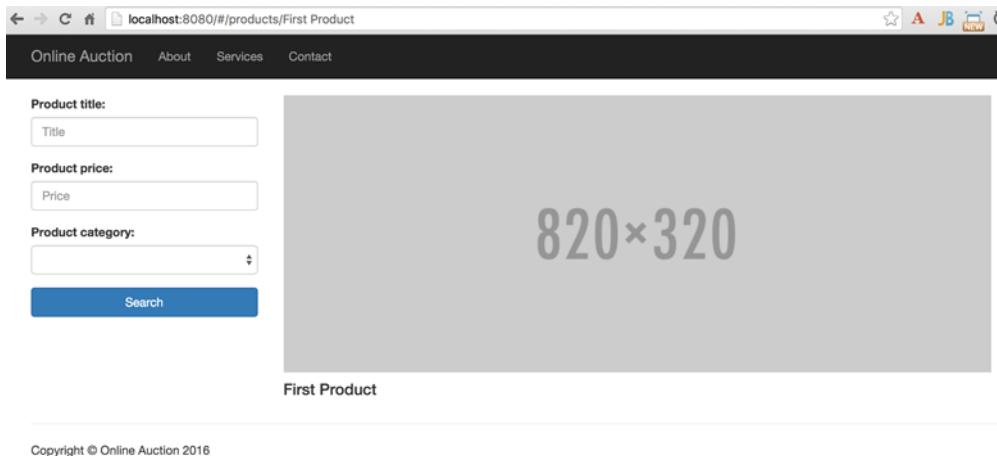
Now if you run the main-luxury-lazy application with the Developer Tools panel open to the Network tab, you won't see the luxury module in the list of downloaded files. Click the Luxury Items link, and you'll see that the browser makes an additional request to the server to download `LuxuryModule` and `LuxuryComponent`.

This super-simple example reduced the size of the initial download only by 1 KB. But architecting large applications using lazy-loading techniques can lower the initial size of the downloadable code by hundreds of kilobytes or more, improving the perceived performance of your application. Perceived performance is what the user *thinks* of the performance of your application, and improving it is important, especially when the app is being loaded from a mobile device on a slow network.

### 3.8 Hands-on: adding navigation to the online auction

This hands-on exercise starts where you left off in chapter 2. So far, you have just the home page of the auction (see figure 2.3). The goal of this project is to add navigation so the user can click the product name, which should replace the view that shows the carousel and product thumbnails with a `ProductItemComponent` view.

You won't see the final version of the Product Details view in this chapter. Even though the code from chapter 2 has `ProductService` with all the product details, we'll use it in chapter 4 to illustrate dependency injection. Figure 3.13 shows what the online auction will look like in this chapter, after the user clicks the First Product title on the home page.



**Figure 3.13** Navigating the Product Details route

In this hands-on section, you'll need to perform the following steps:

- 1 Create a `ProductDetailComponent` that displays only the product title.
- 2 Refactor the code to introduce a `HomeComponent` that encapsulates the carousel and a grid with product items.
- 3 Configure the route for the products path that takes a product title. This route has to navigate to `ProductDetailComponent`, which will receive the product title via the `ActivatedRoute` object.
- 4 Modify the `AppComponent` code to render either `HomeComponent` or `ProductDetailComponent` depending on the selected route.
- 5 Add `<route-outlet>` to the main application to render either `HomeComponent` or `ProductDetailComponent`.
- 6 Add a link with `[routerLink]` to the template of `ProductItemComponent` so when the user clicks the product's title, the application will navigate to the Product Details route.

**NOTE** If you prefer skip ahead to see the final version of this project in action, open the command window in the auction folder and run `npm install` followed by `npm start`. Otherwise, copy the auction folder from chapter 2 to a separate location, and follow the instructions in the next subsections.

### 3.8.1 Creating `ProductDetailComponent`

Create a new `app/components/product-detail` folder and add a `product-detail.ts` file to that folder with the following content.

**Listing 3.20 product-detail.ts**

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';
import {ActivatedRoute} from '@angular/router';

@Component({
  selector: 'auction-product-page',
  template: `
    <div>
      
      <h4>{{productTitle}}</h4>
    </div>
  `
})
export default class ProductDetailComponent {
  productTitle: string;

  constructor(route: ActivatedRoute) {
    this.productTitle = route.snapshot.params['prodTitle'];
  }
}
```

**3.8.2 Creating HomeComponent and code refactoring**

In chapter 2, you created a main page for the auction that contained a number of components. You'll need to refactor the code so the new version of the main page will use routing. You'll define an area with the tag `<router-outlet>` where you'll display either HomeComponent or ProductDetailComponent. HomeComponent will encapsulate the existing CarouselComponent and a grid with ProductItemComponents. Here are the steps:

- 1 Create a new app/components/home folder, and in it add a home.ts file with the following content.

**Listing 3.21 home.ts**

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';

@Component({
  selector: 'auction-home-page',
  styleUrls: ['/home.css'],
  template: `
    <div class="row carousel-holder">
      <div class="col-md-12">
        <auction-carousel></auction-carousel>
      </div>
    </div>
    <div class="row">
      <div *ngFor="let product of products"
        class="col-sm-4 col-lg-4 col-md-4">
        <auction-product-item [product]="product">
        </auction-product-item>
      </div>
    </div>
  
```

```

        </div>
    </div>
}

export default class HomeComponent {
    products: Product[] = [];

    constructor(private productService: ProductService) {
        this.products = this.productService.getProducts();
    }
}

```

Angular injects into this component `ProductService`, and the provider for this service is declared in `AppModule`. You'll learn about providers in the next chapter.

In chapter 2, the preceding code was located in the `application.ts` file. But you want to encapsulate this code inside `HomeComponent`, and you'll configure a route for it in `AppModule`. In the next step, you'll remove the corresponding code from `application.ts`.

If you see styles that aren't explicitly defined in the code, they come from the CSS that comes with the Bootstrap library. You can customize them as needed.

- 2 Create the `home.css` file to specify styles for placing the Bootstrap carousel component inside `HomeComponent`.

#### **Listing 3.22 home.css**

```

.slide-image {
    width: 100%;
}

.carousel-holder {
    margin-bottom: 30px;
}

.carousel-control,.item {
    border-radius: 4px;
}

```

#### **3.8.3 Simplifying ApplicationComponent**

Now that you've encapsulated a large portion of the code inside `HomeComponent`, the code of `ApplicationComponent` will become shorter:

- 1 Replace the content of the `application.ts` file with the following code.

#### **Listing 3.23 application.ts**

```

import {Component, ViewEncapsulation} from '@angular/core';

@Component({
    selector: 'auction-application',

```

```
templateUrl: 'app/components/application/application.html',
styleUrls: ['app/components/application/application.css'],
encapsulation: ViewEncapsulation.None
})
export default class ApplicationComponent {}
```

In the templateUrl and styleUrls properties, you use the full path to the HTML and CSS files. In chapter 10, in the sidebar “Using relative paths in templates,” you’ll learn how to use a relative path while specifying HTML and CSS files.

In a book, it’s easier to describe shorter code snippets, so you’ll place the markup of ApplicationComponent into a separate application.html file.

- 2 Modify the content of application.html to look like this.

#### **Listing 3.24 application.html**

```
<auction-navbar></auction-navbar>

<div class="container">
  <div class="row">
    <div class="col-md-3">
      <auction-search></auction-search>
    </div>

    <div class="col-md-9">
      <router-outlet></router-outlet>
    </div>
  </div>
</div>

<auction-footer></auction-footer>
```

The main change here is the replacement of the carousel and product item components with the tag `<router-outlet>`. When the router renders HomeComponent, the carousel and product item components will be rendered as well.

The top portion of the auction window is taken up by the navigation bar, the bottom portion is the footer, and the area in the middle is split into two sections: the search component and the router outlet. According to Bootstrap’s grid system, the entire width of the window is divided into 12 equal columns. You allocate 3 of them to `<auction-search>`, and 9 will go to `<router-outlet>`. In other words, 25% of the screen width is allocated for the search, and 75% is for the routes. You’ll implement search in chapter 7, which covers working with forms.

#### **3.8.4 Adding a RouterLink to ProductItemComponent**

HomeComponent includes multiple instances of ProductItemComponent. Each of them should have a routerLink to navigate to the ProductDetailComponent passing the product title as a parameter. Follow these steps:

- 1 Modify the code of the product-item.ts file to reference a CSS file, as shown here.

#### **Listing 3.25 product-item.ts**

```
import {Component, Input} from '@angular/core';
import {Product} from '../../services/product-service';

@Component({
  selector: 'auction-product-item',
  styleUrls: ['app/components/product-item/product-item.css'],
  templateUrl: 'app/components/product-item/product-item.html',
})
export default class ProductItemComponent {
  @Input() product: Product;
}
```

The product-item.html file needs an anchor tag with the `routerLink` directive, which should navigate to the route mapped to the path `products/:prodTitle`. You'll configure it in `AppModule` a bit later.

- 2 Modify the content of product-item.html to look like this.

#### **Listing 3.26 product-item.html**

```
<div class="thumbnail">
  
  <div class="caption">
    <h4 class="pull-right">{{ product.price | currency }}</h4>
    <h4><a [routerLink]="/products", product.title>{{ product.title }}</a></h4>
      <p>{{ product.description }}</p>
    </div>
    <div class="ratings">
      <auction-stars [rating]="product.rating"></auction-stars>
    </div>
  </div>
```

You use the currency pipe (a pipe is specified after the vertical bar) for formatting the product price. If this pipe doesn't work in your browser, read the workaround in section 5.3.

- 3 Create a product-item.css file with the following content.

#### **Listing 3.27 product-item.css**

```
.caption {
  height: 130px;
  overflow: hidden;
}
```

```

.caption h4 { white-space: nowrap; }

.thumbnail { padding: 0; }

.thumbnail img { width: 100%; }

.thumbnail .caption-full {
  padding: 9px;
  color: #333;
}

.ratings {
  color: #d17581;
  padding-left: 10px;
  padding-right: 10px;
}

```

### 3.8.5 Modifying the root module to add routing

Finally, you need to update the app.module.ts file to add the RouterModule and location strategy, and to configure routes.

**Listing 3.28 app.module.ts**

```

import { NgModule }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { RouterModule } from '@angular/router';
import {LocationStrategy, HashLocationStrategy} from '@angular/common';
import ApplicationComponent from './components/application/application';
import CarouselComponent from "./components/carousel/carousel";
import FooterComponent from "./components/footer/footer";
import NavbarComponent from "./components/navbar/navbar";
import ProductItemComponent from "./components/product-item/product-item";
import SearchComponent from "./components/search/search";
import StarsComponent from "./components/stars/stars";
import {ProductService} from "./services/product-service";
import HomeComponent from "./components/home/home";
import ProductDetailComponent from "./components/product-detail/
➥ product-detail";

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule,
                  RouterModule.forRoot([
                    {path: '',                      component:
➥ HomeComponent},
                    {path: 'products/:prodTitle',   component: ProductDetailComponent}
                  ]),
  declarations: [ ApplicationComponent,CarouselComponent,
                 FooterComponent, NavbarComponent,
                 HomeComponent, ProductDetailComponent,
                 ProductItemComponent,SearchComponent,StarsComponent],
  providers:    [ProductService,

```

```

        {provide: LocationStrategy, useClass:
          HashLocationStrategy} ] ,
bootstrap: [ ApplicationComponent ]
})
export class AppModule { }

```

Here you configure two routes: the base URL (the empty path) will navigate to HomeComponent, and the products/:prodTitle path is for rendering ProductDetailComponent, which will get the value of the product title as a parameter. The value for prodTitle will be provided in ProductItemComponent, where the routerLink was defined.

### 3.8.6 *Running the auction*

Switch to the auction directory in the command window, and start the server by entering `npm start` (the start script is configured in `package.json`, as explained in chapter 2). The browser will open the home page of the auction, which looks the same as in chapter 2. Now click the title of any product, and you should see its simplified Product Details page as shown in figure 3.13. In chapter 4, you'll inject additional product details into this view.

#### Applying the spread operator

As your application grows, the number of components that you declare in `AppModule` can make your code less readable. Using the ES6 spread operator (discussed in appendix A) may help. Consider creating a separate file where you list all your components, like this:

```
export const myComponents = [
  ApplicationComponent,
  CarouselComponent,
  FooterComponent,
  NavbarComponent,
  HomeComponent,
  ProductDetailComponent,
  ProductItemComponent,
  SearchComponent,
  StarsComponent];
```

Then your `@NgModule` decorator can use the spread operator as follows:

```
@NgModule({
  // other code goes here

  declarations: [ ...myComponents ],

  // other code goes here
})
```

### 3.9 Summary

In this chapter, you've learned how to implement navigation in a SPA using the Angular router. These are the main takeaways from this chapter:

- Configure routes for your application using `RouterModule`.
- By selecting a location strategy, you can control what the URL of each view looks like.
- While navigating an application, the router renders the underlying component in the content area defined by the `<router-outlet>` tags. There could be one or more such areas.
- To navigate to the route, add anchor tags to your application. The anchor tags should use the `routerLink` property instead of the `href` attribute. You can pass parameters to the route at this point.
- To minimize the initial size of your app, see if some of the modules can be loaded later on demand by implementing lazy-loading techniques.

# *Dependency injection*



## **This chapter covers**

- Introducing Dependency Injection (DI) as a design pattern
- Benefits of DI
- How Angular implements DI
- Registering object providers and using injectors
- The hierarchy of injectors
- Applying DI in the online auction application

In the previous chapter, we discussed the router, and now your online auction application knows how to navigate from the Home view to an almost-empty Product Details view. In this chapter, you'll continue working on the online auction, but this time we'll concentrate on how to use Angular to automate the process of creating objects and assembling the application from its building blocks.

Any Angular application is a collection of components, directives, and classes that may depend on each other. Although each component can explicitly instantiate its dependencies, Angular can do this job using its dependency injection (DI) mechanism.

We'll start this chapter by identifying the problem that DI solves and reviewing the benefits of DI as a software engineering design pattern. Then we'll go over the specifics of how Angular implements the DI pattern using an example `ProductComponent` that depends on a `ProductService`. You'll see how to write an injectable service and how to inject it into another component.

Then you'll see a sample application that demonstrates how Angular DI allows you to easily replace one component dependency with another by changing just one line of code. After that, we'll introduce a more advanced concept: a hierarchy of injectors. At the end of the chapter, we'll go through a hands-on exercise to build the next version of the online auction that uses the techniques covered in the chapter.

## 4.1 The Dependency Injection and Inversion of Control patterns

Design patterns are recommendations for how to solve certain common tasks. A given design pattern can be implemented differently depending on the software you use. In this section, we'll briefly introduce two design patterns: Dependency Injection (DI) and Inversion of Control (IoC).

### 4.1.1 The Dependency Injection pattern

If you've ever written a function that takes an object as an argument, you can say that you wrote a program that instantiates this object and *injects* it into the function. Imagine a fulfillment center that ships products. An application that keeps track of shipped products can create a product object and invoke a function that creates and saves a shipment record:

```
var product = new Product();
createShipment(product);
```

The `createShipment()` function depends on the existence of an instance of the `Product` object. In other words, the `createShipment()` function has a dependency: `Product`. But the function itself doesn't know how to create `Product`. The calling script should somehow create and give (think *inject*) this object as an argument to the function.

Technically, you're decoupling the creation of the `Product` object from its use—but both of the preceding lines of code are located in the same script, so it's not real decoupling. If you need to replace `Product` with `MockProduct`, it's a small code change in this simple example.

What if the `createShipment()` function had three dependencies (such as `product`, `shipping company`, and `fulfillment center`), and each of those dependencies had its own dependencies? In that case, creating a different set of objects for `createShipment()` would require many more manual code changes. Would it be possible to ask someone to create instances of dependencies (with their dependencies) for you?

This is what the Dependency Injection pattern is about: if object A depends on an object of type B, object A won't explicitly instantiate object B (as with the `new` operator

in the previous example). Rather, it will have B *injected* from the operational environment. Object A just needs to declare, “I need an object of type B; could someone please give it to me?” The words *of type* are important here. Object A doesn’t request a specific implementation of the object and will be happy as long as the injected object is of type B.

#### 4.1.2 *The Inversion of Control pattern*

Inversion of Control (IoC) is a more general pattern than DI. Rather than making your application use some API from a framework (or a software container), the framework creates and supplies the objects that the application needs. The IoC pattern can be implemented in different ways, and DI is one of the ways of providing the required objects. Angular plays the role of the IoC container and can provide the required objects according to your component’s declarations.

#### 4.1.3 *Benefits of dependency injection*

Before we explore the syntax of Angular’s implementation of DI, let’s look at the benefits of having objects injected versus instantiating them with a new operator. Angular offers a mechanism that helps with registering and instantiating component dependencies. In short, DI helps you write code in a loosely coupled way and makes your code more testable and reusable.

##### **LOOSE COUPLING AND REUSABILITY**

Say you have a `ProductComponent` that gets product details using the `ProductService` class. Without DI, your `ProductComponent` needs to know how to instantiate the `ProductService` class. This can be done multiple ways, such as using `new`, calling `getInstance()` on a singleton object, or invoking `createProductService()` on some factory class. In any case, `ProductComponent` becomes *tightly coupled* with `ProductService`.

If you need to reuse `ProductComponent` in another application that uses a different service to get product details, you must modify the code (for example, `productService = new AnotherProductService()`). DI allows you to decouple application components by sparing them from the need to know how to create their dependencies.

Consider the following `ProductComponent` example:

```
@Component({
  providers: [ProductService]
})
class ProductComponent {
  product: Product;

  constructor(productService: ProductService) {
    this.product = productService.getProduct();
  }
}
```

In Angular applications, you register objects for DI by specifying providers. A *provider* is an instruction to Angular about *how* to create an instance of an object for future injection into a target component or directive. In the preceding code snippet, the line `providers: [ProductService]` is shorthand for `providers: [{provide: ProductService, useClass: ProductService}]`.

**NOTE** You saw the `providers` property in chapter 3, but it was defined not on the component but on the module level.

Angular uses the concept of a *token*, which is an arbitrary name representing an object to be injected. Usually the token's name matches the type of the object to be injected, so the preceding code snippet instructs Angular to provide a `ProductService` token using the class of the same name. Using an object with the property `provide`, you can map the same token to different values or objects (such as to emulate the functionality of the `ProductService` while someone else is developing a real service class).

**NOTE** In section 4.4.1, you'll see how to declare a token with an arbitrary name.

Now that you've added the `providers` property to the `@Component` annotation of `ProductComponent`, Angular's DI module will know that it has to instantiate an object of *type* `ProductService`. `ProductComponent` doesn't need to know which concrete implementation of the `ProductService` type to use—it'll use whatever object is specified as a provider. The reference to the `ProductService` object will be injected via the constructor's argument, and there's no need to explicitly instantiate `ProductService` in `ProductComponent`. Just use it as in the preceding code, which calls the service method `getProduct()` on the `ProductService` instance magically created by Angular.

If you need to reuse the same `ProductComponent` in a different application with a different implementation of the type `ProductService`, change the `providers` line, as in the following example:

```
providers: [{provide: ProductService, useClass: AnotherProductService}]
```

Now Angular will instantiate `AnotherProductService`, but the code using the type `ProductService` won't break. In this example, using DI increases the reusability of `ProductComponent` and eliminates its tight coupling with `ProductService`. If one object is tightly coupled with another, this may require substantial code modifications if you want to reuse just one of them in another application.

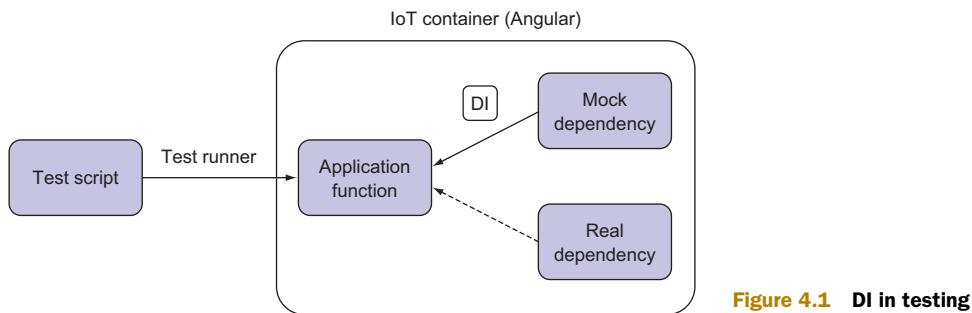
#### TESTABILITY

DI increases the testability of your components in isolation. You can easily inject mock objects if their real implementations aren't available or you want to unit-test your code.

Say you need to add a login feature to your application. You can create a `LoginComponent` (to render ID and password fields) that uses a `LoginService` component,

which should connect to a certain authorization server and check the user's privileges. The authorization server has to be provided by a different department, but it's not ready yet. You finish coding the `LoginComponent`, but you can't test it for reasons that are out of your control, such as a dependency on another component developed by someone else.

In testing, we often use mock objects that mimic the behavior of real objects. With a DI framework, you can create a mock object, `MockLoginService`, that doesn't connect to an authorization server but rather has hard-coded access privileges assigned to the users with certain ID/password combinations. Using DI, you can write a single line that injects `MockLoginService` into your application's Login view without needing to wait until the authorization server is ready. Later, when that server is ready, you can modify the providers line so Angular will inject the real `LoginService` component, as shown in figure 4.1.



**Figure 4.1** DI in testing

**NOTE** In the hands-on section of chapter 9, you'll see how to unit-test injectable services.

## 4.2 Injectors and providers

Now that you've had a brief introduction to Dependency Injection as a general software engineering design pattern, let's go over the specifics of implementing DI in Angular. In particular, we'll go over such concepts as injectors and providers.

Each component can have an `Injector` instance capable of injecting objects or primitive values into a component or service. Any Angular application has a root injector available to all of its modules. To let the injector know *what* to inject, you specify the provider. An injector will inject the object or value specified in the provider into the constructor of a component.

**NOTE** Although eagerly loaded modules don't have their own injectors, a lazy-loaded module has its own sub-root injector that's a direct child of the application root injector.

Providers allow you to map a custom type (or a token) to a concrete implementation of this type (or value). You can specify the provider(s) either inside the component's `@Component` decorator or as a property of `@NgModule`, as in every code sample so far.

**TIP** In Angular, you can inject data only via a constructor's arguments. If you see a class with a no-argument constructor, it's a guarantee that nothing is injected into this component.

You'll be using `ProductComponent` and `ProductService` for all the code samples in this chapter. If your application has a class implementing a particular type (such as `ProductService`), you can specify a provider object for this class during the `AppModule` bootstrap, like this:

```
@NgModule({
  ...
  providers: [{provide: ProductService, useClass: ProductService}]
})
```

When the token name is the same as the class name, you can use the shorter notation to specify the provider in the module:

```
@NgModule({
  ...
  providers: [ProductService]
})
```

The `providers` property can be specified in the `@Component` annotation. The short notation of the `ProductService` provider in `@Component` looks like this:

```
providers: [ProductService]
```

No instance of `ProductService` is created at this point. The `providers` line instructs the injector as follows: “When you need to construct an object that has an argument of type `ProductService`, create an instance of the registered class for injection into this object.”

**NOTE** Angular also has the `viewProviders` property, which is used when you don't want the child components to use providers declared in the parent. You'll see an example of using `viewProviders` in section 4.5.

If you need to inject a different implementation of a particular type, use the longer notation:

```
@NgModule({
  ...
  providers: [{provide: ProductService, useClass: MockProductService}]
})
```

Here it is on the component level:

```
@Component ({
  ...
  providers: [{provide: ProductService, useClass: MockProductService}]
})
```

This gives the following instruction to the injector: “When you need to inject an object of type `ProductService` into a component, create an instance of the class `MockProductService`.”

Thanks to the provider, the injector knows *what* to inject; now you need to specify *where* to inject the object. In TypeScript, it comes down to declaring a constructor argument specifying its type. The following line shows how to inject an object of type `ProductService` into the constructor of a component:

```
constructor(productService: ProductService)
```

### Injection with TypeScript vs. ES6

TypeScript simplifies the syntax of injection into a component because it doesn’t require you to use any DI annotations with the constructor arguments. All you need to do is specify the type of the constructor’s argument:

```
constructor(productService: ProductService)
```

This works because any component has an annotation `@Component`. And because the TypeScript compiler is configured with the option `"emitDecoratorMetadata": true`, Angular will automatically generate all required metadata for the object to be injected.

Because you use SystemJS for on-the-fly TypeScript transpiling, you can add the following TypeScript compiler option in `systemjs.config.js`:

```
typescriptOptions: {
  "emitDecoratorMetadata": true
}
```

If you’re writing the class in ES6, add the `@Inject` annotation with an explicit type to the constructor’s arguments:

```
constructor(@Inject(ProductService) productService)
```

The constructor will remain the same regardless of which concrete implementation of `ProductService` is specified as a provider. Figure 4.2 shows a sample sequence diagram of the injection process.

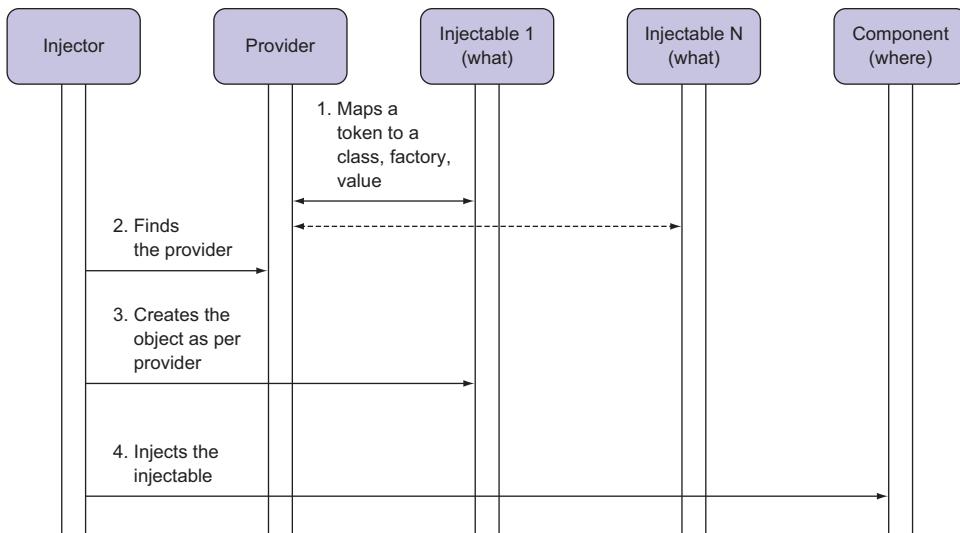


Figure 4.2 Injecting in time

#### 4.2.1 How to declare a provider

You can declare custom providers as an array of objects that contain a `provide` property. Such an array can be specified in the `providers` property of the module or on the component level.

Here's an example of a single-element array that specifies the provider object for the `ProductService` token:

```
[{provide: ProductService, useClass: MockProductService}]
```

The `provide` property maps the token to the method of instantiating the injectable object. This example instructs Angular to create an instance of the `MockProductService` class wherever the `ProductService` token is used as a dependency. But the object creator (Angular's injector) can use a class, a factory function, a string, or a special `OpaqueToken` class for instantiation and injection:

- To map a token to an implementation of a class, use the object with the `useClass` property, as shown in the preceding example.
- If you have a factory function that instantiates objects based on certain criteria, use an object with the `useFactory` property, which specifies a factory function (or a fat-arrow expression) that knows how to instantiate required objects. The factory function can have an optional argument with dependencies, if they exist.
- To provide a string with a simple injectable value (such as the URL of a service), use the object with the `useValue` property.

In the next section, you'll use the `useClass` property while reviewing a basic application. Section 4.4 will illustrate `useFactory` and `useValue`.

## 4.3 A sample application with Angular DI

Now that you've seen a number of code snippets related to Angular DI, let's build a small application that will bring all the pieces together. We want to prepare you for using DI in the online auction application.

### 4.3.1 Injecting a product service

Let's create a simple application that uses `ProductComponent` to render product details and `ProductService` to supply data about the product. If you use the downloadable code that comes with the book, this app is located in the `main-basic.ts` file in the `di_samples` directory. In this section, you'll build an application that produces the page shown in figure 4.3.

`ProductComponent` can request the injection of the `ProductService` object by declaring the constructor argument with a type:

```
constructor(productService: ProductService)
```

Figure 4.4 shows a sample application that uses these components.

<b>Basic Dependency Injection Sample</b>
<b>Product Details</b>
<b>Title:</b> iPhone 7
<b>Description:</b> The latest iPhone, 7-inch screen
<b>Price:</b> \$249.99

Figure 4.3 A sample DI application

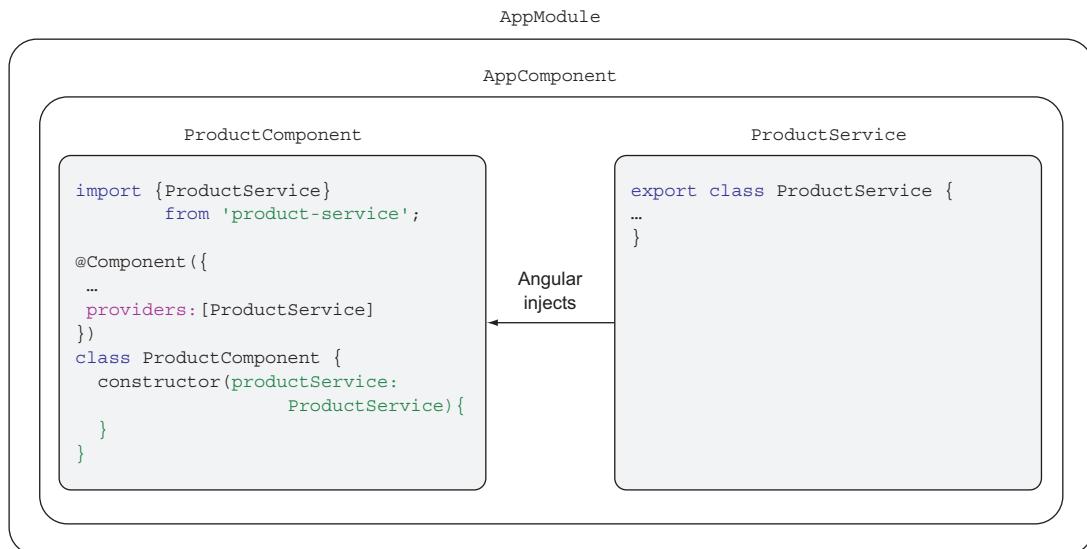


Figure 4.4 Injecting `ProductService` into `ProductComponent`

AppModule bootstraps AppComponent, which includes ProductComponent, which is dependent on ProductService. Note the import and export statements. The class definition of ProductService starts with the export statement, to enable other components to access its content. ProductComponent includes the import statement providing the name of the class (ProductService) and the module being imported (located in the file product-service.ts).

The providers attribute defined on the component level instructs Angular to provide an instance of the ProductService class when requested. ProductService may communicate with some server, requesting details for the product selected on the web page, but we'll skip this part for now and concentrate on how this service can be injected into ProductComponent. Let's implement the components from figure 4.4.

In addition to index.html, you'll be creating the following files:

- The main-basic.ts file will contain the code to load the AppModule, which includes AppComponent, which hosts ProductComponent.
- ProductComponent will be implemented in the product.ts file.
- ProductService will be implemented in a single product-service.ts file.

Each of these is pretty simple. The main-basic.ts file, shown in the following listing, contains the code of the module and root component, which hosts the ProductComponent child component. The module imports and declares ProductComponent.

#### **Listing 4.1 main-basic.ts**

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';
import ProductComponent from './components/product';
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `<h1> Basic Dependency Injection Sample</h1>
             <di-product-page></di-product-page>`
})
class AppComponent { }

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent, ProductComponent ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);
```

Based on the tag `<di-product-page>`, it's easy to guess that there's a component with the selector having this value. This selector is declared in ProductComponent, whose dependency (ProductService) is injected via the constructor.

**Listing 4.2 product.ts**

```
import {Component, bind} from '@angular/core';
import {ProductService, Product} from "../services/product-service";

@Component({
  selector: 'di-product-page',
  template: `<div>
    <h1>Product Details</h1>
    <h2>Title: {{product.title}}</h2>
    <h2>Description: {{product.description}}</h2>
    <h2>Price: ${{product.price}}</h2>
  </div>`,
  providers: [ProductService]
})

export default class ProductComponent {
  product: Product;

  constructor( productService: ProductService) {
    this.product = productService.getProduct();
  }
}
```

The short notation of the providers property tells the injector to instantiate the `ProductService` class.

Angular instantiates `ProductService` and injects it here.

In listing 4.2, the name of the type is the same as the name of the class—`ProductService`—so you use a short notation without the need to explicitly map the provide and useClass properties. When specifying providers, you separate the name (a token) of the injectable object from its implementation. In this case, the name of the token is the same as the name of the type: `ProductService`. The actual implementation of this service can be located in a class called `ProductService`, `OtherProductService`, or something else. Replacing one implementation with another comes down to changing the providers line.

The constructor of `ProductComponent` invokes `getProduct()` on the service and places a reference to the returned `Product` object in the `product` class variable, which is used in the HTML template. By using double curly braces, listing 4.2 lets you bind the title, description, and price properties of the `Product` class.

The `product-service.ts` file includes the declaration of two classes: `Product` and `ProductService`.

**Listing 4.3 product-service.ts**

```
export class Product {
  constructor(
    public id: number,
    public title: string,
    public price: number,
    public description: string) {
  }
}
```

The `Product` class represents a product (a value object). It's used outside of this script, so you export it.

```
export class ProductService {
  getProduct(): Product {
    return new Product(0, "iPhone 7", 249.99, "The latest iPhone,
      ↪ 7-inch screen");
  }
}
```

For simplicity, the `getProduct()` method always returns the same product with hard-coded values.

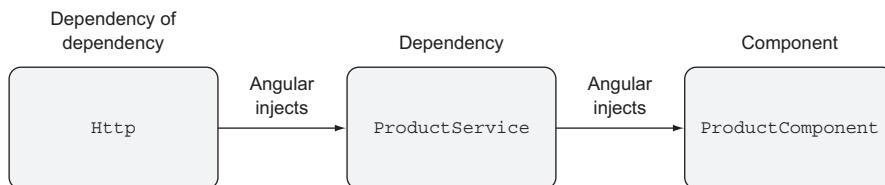
In a real-world application, the `getProduct()` method would have to get the product information from an external data source, such as by making an HTTP request to a remote server.

To run this example, open a command window in the project folder and execute the command `npm start`. The live-server will open the window, as shown earlier in figure 4.3. The instance of `ProductService` is injected into `ProductComponent`, which renders product details provided by the server.

In the next section, you'll see a `ProductService` decorated with the `@Injectable` annotation, which can be used to generate DI metadata when the service itself has dependencies. The `@Injectable` annotation isn't needed here because `ProductService` doesn't have any other service injected into it, and Angular doesn't need additional metadata to inject `ProductService` into components.

#### 4.3.2 Injecting the `Http` service

Often, a service will need to make an HTTP request to get the requested data. `ProductComponent` depends on `ProductService`, which is injected using the Angular DI mechanism. If `ProductService` needs to make an HTTP request, it'll have an `Http` object as its own dependency. `ProductService` will need to import the `Http` object for injection; `@NgModule` must import `HttpModule`, which defines `Http` providers. The `ProductService` class should have a constructor for injecting the `Http` object. Figure 4.5 shows `ProductComponent` depending on `ProductService`, which has its own dependency: `Http`.



**Figure 4.5** A dependency can have its own dependency.

The following code snippet illustrates the `Http` object's injection into `ProductService` and the retrieval of products from the `products.json` file:

```
import {Http} from '@angular/http';
import {Injectable} from "@angular/core";

@Injectable()
```

```
export class ProductService {
  constructor(private http:Http) {
    let products = http.get('products.json');
  }
  // other app code goes here
}
```

The class constructor is the injection point, but where do you declare the provider for injecting the `Http` type object? All the providers required to inject various flavors of `Http` objects are declared in `HttpModule`. You just need to add it to your `AppModule`, like this:

```
import { HttpModule } from '@angular/http';
...
@NgModule({
  imports: [
    BrowserModule,
    HttpModule
  ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent ],
  bootstrap: [ AppComponent ]
})
export class AppModule { }
```

**NOTE** In section 8.3.4, you'll write an application illustrating the architecture shown in figure 4.5.

Now that you've seen how to inject an object into a component, let's look at what it takes to replace one implementation of the service with another using Angular DI.

## 4.4 *Switching injectables made easy*

Earlier in this chapter, we stated that the DI pattern allows you to decouple components from their dependencies. In the previous section, you decoupled `ProductComponent` from `ProductService`. Now let's simulate another scenario.

Suppose you've started development with a `ProductService` that's supposed to get data from a remote server, but the server's feed isn't ready. Rather than modify the code in `ProductService` to introduce hard-coded data for testing, you'll create another class: `MockProductService`.

Moreover, to illustrate how easy it is to switch from one service to another, you'll create a small application that uses two instances of `ProductComponent`. Initially, the first one will use `MockProductService` and the second `ProductService`. Then, with a one-line change, you'll make both of them use the same service. Figure 4.6 shows how the multiple `_injectors` application will render product components in the browser.



Figure 4.6 Rendering two products

The iPhone 7 product is rendered by `Product1Component`, and the Samsung 7 is rendered by `Product2Component`. This application focuses on switching product services using Angular DI, so we've kept the components and services simple. Toward this end, all of the TypeScript code is located in one `main.ts` file.

### A class playing the role of an interface

In appendix B, we explain the TypeScript interfaces, which are a useful way to ensure that an object being passed to a function is valid or that a class implementing an interface sticks to a declared contract. A class can implement an interface using the keyword `implements`, but there's more: in TypeScript, all classes can be used as interfaces (although we don't encourage using this feature), so `ClassA` can implement `ClassB`. Even if the code isn't initially written with interfaces, you can still use a concrete class as if it were declared as an interface.

The content of `main.ts` is shown in listing 4.4. We'd like to draw your attention to the following line:

```
class MockProductService implements ProductService
```

This shows one class “implementing” another as if the latter was declared as an interface.

#### Listing 4.4 main.ts

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component } from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser'

class Product {
  constructor(public title: string) {}
}

class ProductService {
  getProduct(): Product {
    // Code making an HTTP request to get actual product details
    // would go here
    return new Product('iPhone 7');
  }
}

class MockProductService implements ProductService {
  getProduct(): Product {
    return new Product('Samsung 7');
  }
}

@Component({
  selector: 'product1',
  template: '{{product.title}}' })
```

Initially, you developed `ProductService` as a class.

Then you introduced another service, `MockProductService`, that implements `ProductService` as an interface.

```

class Product1Component {
  product: Product;

  constructor(private productService: ProductService) {
    this.product = productService.getProduct();
  }
}

@Component({
  selector: 'product2',
  template: '{{product.title}}',
  providers: [{provide:ProductService, useClass:MockProductService}]
})
class Product2Component {
  product: Product;

  constructor(private productService: ProductService) {
    this.product = productService.getProduct();
  }
}

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `
    <h2>A root component hosts two products<br>
    ↪ provided by different services</h2>
    <product1></product1>
    <br>
    <product2></product2>
  `
})
class AppComponent { }

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
  providers:   [ ProductService ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent, Product1Component, Product2Component ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

The constructor of **ProductComponent1** gets the instance of **ProductService** injected.

**Declares a specific implementation of **ProductService** in the second component**

There's no need to change the constructor. **ProductComponent2** gets **MockProductService** because its provider was specified at the component level.

**AppComponent** renders two child components, and each of them uses a different instance of **ProductService**.

Registers a provider with an application-level injector

If a component doesn't need a specific **ProductService** implementation, there's no need to explicitly declare a provider for each component, as long as a provider was specified at the parent's level. In listing 4.4, **Product1Component** doesn't declare its own providers, so Angular will find one on the application level. But each component is free to override the providers declaration made at the app or parent component level, as in **Product2Component**.

**ProductService** becomes a common token that both product components understand. **Product2Component** declares an explicit provider, which maps **MockProductService** to the common **ProductService** custom type. This component-level provider

will override the parent's one. If you decide that `Product1Component` should use `MockProductService` as well, you can add the `providers` line to its `@Component` annotation, as in `Product2Component`.

Running this application renders product components in the browser, as shown earlier in figure 4.6. This all is good, but suppose you're notified by another team that the `ProductService` class (used as the app-level provider) won't be available for some time. How can you switch to using `MockProductService` exclusively for a while?

This requires a one-line change. Replacing the `providers` line in the module declaration will do the trick:

```
@NgModule({
...
providers: [{provide: ProductService, useClass: MockProductService}]
...
})
```

From now on, wherever the type `ProductService` needs to be injected and no `providers` line is specified on the component level, Angular will instantiate and inject `MockProductService`. Running the application after making the preceding change renders the components as shown in figure 4.7.

Imagine that your application had dozens of components using `ProductService`. If each of them instantiated this service with a new operator or a factory class, you'd need to make dozens of code changes. With Angular DI, you were able to switch the service by changing one line in the `providers` declaration.



**Figure 4.7** Rendering two products with `MockProductService`

### JavaScript hoisting and classes

Class declarations aren't *hoisted* (hoisting is explained in appendix A). Typically, each class is declared in a separate file, and their declarations are imported on top of the script so all class declarations are available up front.

If multiple classes are declared in one file, both `ProductService` and `MockProductService` must be declared before the components that use them. If you run into a situation where the objects are declared after the point of injection, consider using the function `forwardRef()` with the annotation `@Inject` (see the Angular documentation for `forwardRef()` at <http://mng.bz/31YN>).

#### 4.4.1 Declaring providers with `useFactory` and `useValue`

Let's look at some examples that illustrate the factory and value providers. In general, factory functions are used when you need to implement application logic prior to instantiating an object. For example, you may need to decide which object to instantiate, or

your object may have a constructor with arguments that you need to initialize before creating an instance.

The following listing, from the main-factory.ts file, shows how you can specify a factory function as a provider. This factory function creates either `ProductService` or `MockProductService` based on a boolean flag.

#### Listing 4.5 Specifying a factory function as a provider

```
const IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT: boolean = true;

@Component({
  selector: 'product2',

  providers: [
    {
      provide: ProductService,
      useFactory: (isDev) => {
        if (isDev) {
          return new MockProductService();
        } else{
          return new ProductService();
        }
      },
      deps: ["IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT"]
    },
    template: '{{product.title}}'
  )
class Product2Component {
  product: Product;

  constructor(productService: ProductService) {
    this.product = productService.getProduct();
  }
}
```

First you declare a token with an arbitrary name (`IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT` in this case) and set it to `true` to let the program know you're operating in the development environment (that is, you want to work with the mock product service). The factory uses the arrow expression that will instantiate `MockProductService`.

The constructor of `Product2Component` has an argument of type `ProductService`, and the service will be injected there. You could use such a factory for `Product1Component` as well; changing the value of `IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT` to `false` would inject the instance of `ProductService` into both components.

Listing 4.5 isn't the best solution for switching environments: it reaches out to `IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT`, which was declared *outside* of the component, breaking the component's encapsulation. You want the component to be self-contained, so let's try to inject the value of `IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT` into the component; that way, it doesn't need to reach out to the external code.

Declaring a constant (or a variable) isn't enough to make it injectable. You need to register the value of `IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT` with the injector, using `provide` with `useValue`, which lets you use it as an injectable parameter in the arrow expression in listing 4.5.

**NOTE** Both `useFactory` and `useValue` come from Angular Core. `useValue` is a special case of `useFactory`, for when the factory is represented by a single expression and doesn't need any other dependencies.

For an easy switch between development and other environments, you can specify the environment's value provider on the root component level, as shown in listing 4.6; then the service factory will know which service to construct. The value of the `useFactory` property is a function with two arguments: the factory function itself and its dependencies (`deps`).

**NOTE** Listing 4.6 and many other code examples in this book use fat-arrow function expressions (described in appendix A). In essence, a fat-arrow function expression is a shorter notation for anonymous functions. For example, `(isDev) => {...}` is equivalent to `function(isDev) {...}`.

#### Listing 4.6 Specifying the environment's value provider

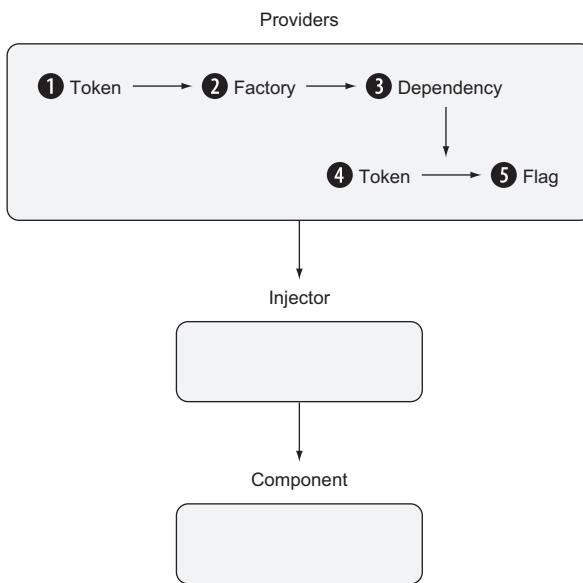
```
@Component({
  selector: 'product2',
  providers: [
    {
      provide: ProductService,
      useFactory: (isDev) => {
        if (isDev) {
          return new MockProductService();
        } else{
          return new ProductService();
        }
      },
      deps: ["IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT"]),
      template: '{{product.title}}'
    }
  ],
  class Product2Component { ... }
  ...
  @NgModule({
    ...
    providers: [ ProductService,
      {provide: "IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT", useValue:true}]
  })
}

The factory function has an
isDev argument, which is a
dependency that's injected
from outside.

The second property, deps,
defines the dependency of the
factory function (an injectable
value of IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT
in this case).

To make the value of
IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT injectable,
specify provide with useValue.
```

Because you inject the value into `IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT` at the app level, any child component that uses this factory will be affected by a simple switch from `false` to `true`.



- ① The first token is `ProductService`.
- ② The factory is defined as an arrow function expression.
- ③ The factory has a dependency—`IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT`.
- ④ The second token is `IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT`.
- ⑤ The second token is mapped to the value `false`.

**Figure 4.8** Binding a factory with dependencies

To recap, a provider maps the token to a class or a factory to let the injector know how to create objects. The class or factory may have its own dependencies, so the providers should specify all of them. Figure 4.8 illustrates the relationships between the providers and the injector in listing 4.6.

Angular prepares a tree of providers, finds the injector, and uses it for the `Product2Component` component. Angular will use either the component's injector or the parent's. We'll discuss the hierarchy of injectors next.

#### 4.4.2 Using `OpaqueToken`

Injecting into a hard-coded string (such as `IS_DEV_ENVIRONMENT`) may cause problems if your application has more than one provider that uses a string with the same value for a different purpose. Angular offers an `OpaqueToken` class that's preferable to using strings as tokens.

Imagine that you want to create a component that can get data from different servers (such as dev, prod, and QA). The next listing illustrates how you can introduce an injectable value, `BackendUrl`, as an instance of `OpaqueToken` rather than as a string.

**Listing 4.7 Using OpaqueToken instead of a string**

```

import {Component, OpaqueToken, Inject, NgModule} from '@angular/core';
import {platformBrowserDynamic} from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import {BrowserModule} from '@angular/platform-browser';

export const BackendUrl = new OpaqueToken('BackendUrl');

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: 'URL: {{url}}'
})
class AppComponent {
  constructor(@Inject(BackendUrl) public url: string) {}
}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent ],
  providers:   [ {provide:BackendUrl, useValue: 'myQAserver.com'} ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

You wrap the string “BackendUrl” into an instance of `OpaqueToken`. Then, in the constructor of this component, instead of injecting a vague `string` type, you inject a concrete `BACKEND_URL` type with the value provided in the module declaration.

## 4.5 The hierarchy of injectors

Any Angular application is a tree of nested components. When the web page loads, Angular creates an application object with its injector. It also creates a hierarchy of components with corresponding injectors, according to the application structure. For example, you may want a certain function to be executed when your application is initialized:

```
{provide:APP_INITIALIZER, useValue: myappInit}
```

The application’s root component hosts other components. If you include, for example, component B in the template of component A, the latter becomes a parent of the former. In other words, a root component is a parent to other child components, which in turn can have their own children.

Consider the following HTML document, which includes a root component represented by the tag `<app>`:

```

<html>
  <body>
    <app></app>
  </body>
</html>

```

From the following code, you can see that `app` is a selector of the `AppComponent`, which is a parent of the `<product1>` and `<product2>` components:

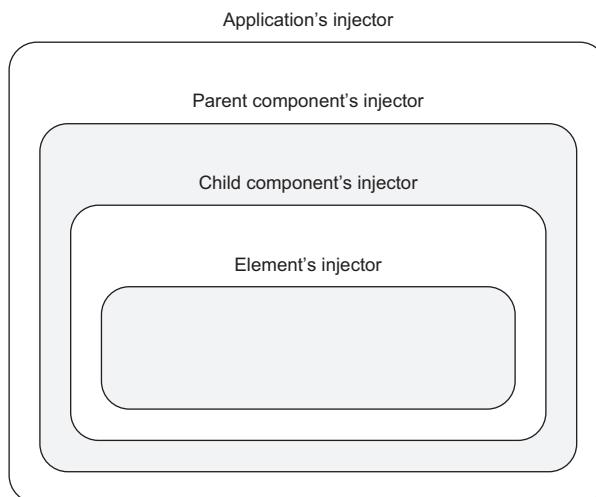
```
@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `
    <product1></product1>
    <product2></product2>
  `
})
class AppComponent {}
```

The parent component's injector creates an injector for each child component, so you have a hierarchy of components and a hierarchy of injectors. Also, the template markup of each component can have its own Shadow DOM with elements, and each element gets its own injector. Figure 4.9 shows the hierarchy of injectors.

When your code creates a component that requires a particular object to be injected, Angular looks for a provider of the requested object at the component level. If found, the component's injector is used. If it's not found, Angular checks whether the provider exists on one of the parent components. If the provider for the requested object isn't found at any level of the injectors hierarchy, Angular will throw an error.

**NOTE** Angular creates an additional injector for a lazy-loaded module. Providers declared in the `@NgModule` of a lazy-loaded module are available in the module, but not to the entire application.

The example application injects only a service, and it doesn't illustrate the use of element injectors. In the browser, each component instance can be represented by a Shadow DOM, which has one or more elements depending on what's defined in the



**Figure 4.9** The hierarchy of injectors

component's template. Each element in the Shadow DOM has an `ElementInjector` that follows the same parent-child hierarchy as the DOM elements themselves.

Say you want to add an autocomplete feature to the HTML `<input>` element component. To do that, you can define a directive as follows:

```
@Directive({
  selector: '[autocomplete]'
})
class AutoCompleter {
  constructor(element: ElementRef) {
    // Implement the autocomplete logic here
  }
}
```

The square brackets mean `autocomplete` can be used as an attribute of the HTML element. The reference to this element will be automatically injected into the constructor of the `AutoCompleter` class by the element injector.

Now take another look at the code from section 4.4. The `Product2Component` class had a provider of `MockProductService` at the component level. The `Product1Component` class didn't specify any providers for the type `ProductService`, so Angular performed the following actions:

- Checked its parent `AppComponent`—no providers there.
- Checked the `AppModule` and found providers: `[ProductService]` there.
- Used the app-level injector and created an instance of `ProductService` on the app level.

If you remove the providers line from `Product2Component` and rerun the application, it'll still work using the app-level injector and the same instance of the `ProductService` for both components. If providers for the same token were specified on both parent and child components, and each of these components had a constructor requesting an object represented by the token, two separate instances of such an object would be created: one for the parent and another for the child.

#### 4.5.1 `viewProviders`

If you want to ensure that a particular injectable service won't be visible to the component's children or other components, use the `viewProviders` property instead of providers. Say you're writing a reusable library that internally uses a service that you don't want to be visible from the applications that use this library. Using `viewProviders` instead of providers will allow you to make such a service private for the library.

Here's another example. Imagine that you have the following hierarchy of components:

```
<root>
  <product2>
    <luxury-product></luxury-product>
  </product2>
</root>
```

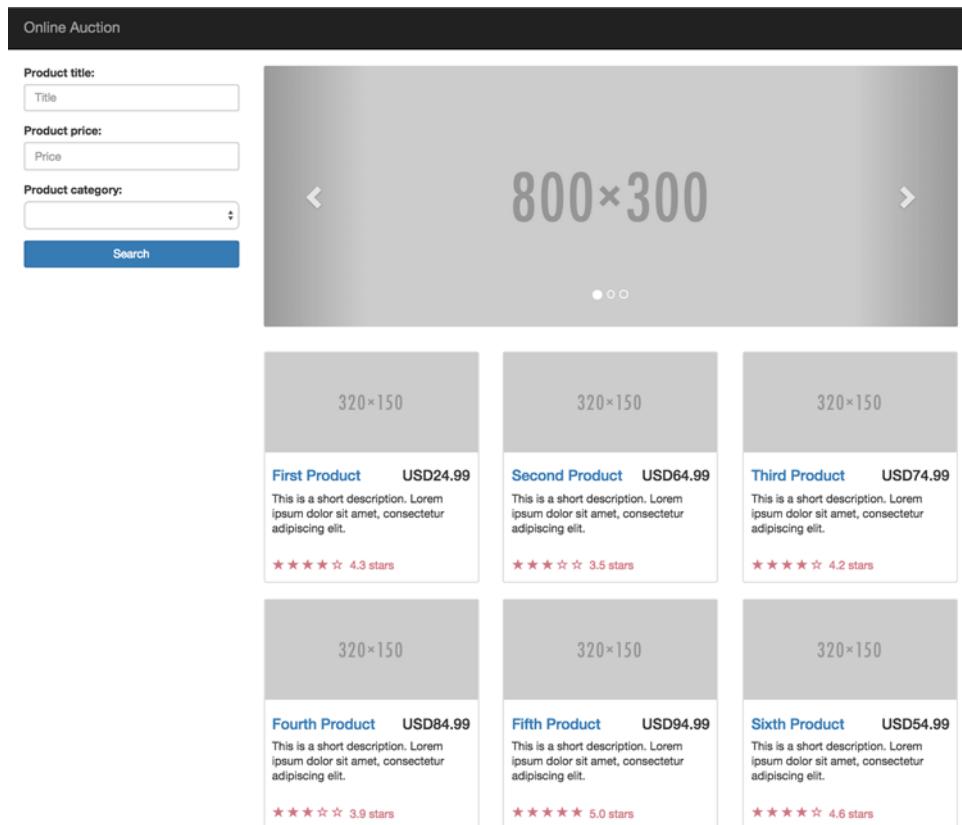
Both AppModule and Product2Component have providers defined using the token ProductService, but Product2Component uses a special class that you don't want to be visible to its children. In this case, you can use the viewProviders property with the Product2Component class; when the injector of LuxuryProductComponent doesn't find a provider, it'll go up the hierarchy. It won't see the provider in Product2Component, and it will use the provider for ProductService defined in RootComponent.

**NOTE** An instance of the injectable object is created and destroyed at the same time as the component that defines the provider for this object.

## 4.6 Hands-on: using DI in the online auction application

In chapter 3, you added routing to the online auction action so it can render a simplified Product Details view. In this hands-on exercise, you'll implement the ProductDetail component to show actual product details.

The Home page of the auction is shown in figure 4.10. If you click any of the links, such as First Product or Second Product, the app will show you a pretty basic detail view, as we showed in figure 3.16.



**Figure 4.10** The auction Home page

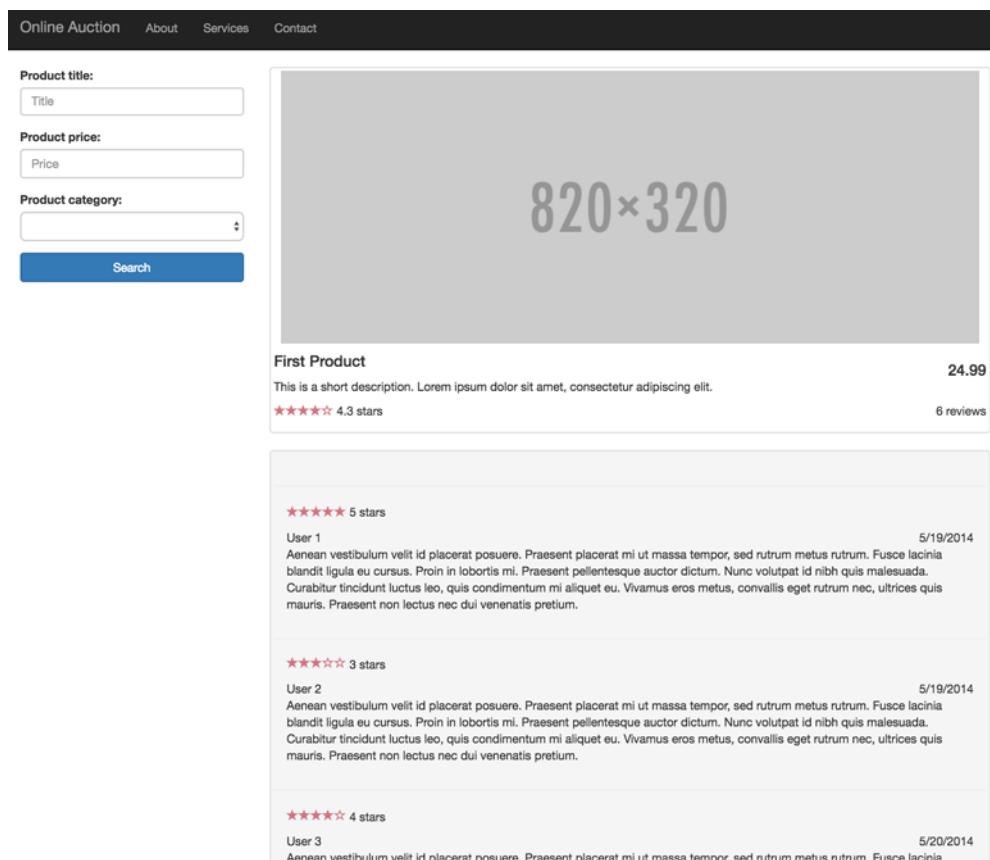


Figure 4.11 The auction Product Details view

Your goal is to render the details of the selected product, providing yet another illustration of DI in action. Figure 4.11 shows how the Product Details view will look at the end of this hands-on exercise when First Product is selected.

**TIP** We'll use the auction application developed in chapter 3 as a starting point for this exercise. If you prefer to see the final version of this project, browse the source code in the auction folder from chapter 4. Otherwise, copy the auction folder from chapter 3 to a separate location, run `npm install`, and follow the instructions in this section.

Now that you've learned about provider and dependency injection, let's quickly review some code fragments from the auction created in the previous chapter, focusing on the DI-related code. The script in the `app.module.ts` file specifies the app-level service providers, as shown here:

```

@NgModule({
  ...
  providers: [ProductService,
    {provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy}],
  bootstrap: [ApplicationComponent]
})
export class AppModule { }

```

Because the `ProductService` provider is specified in the module, it can be reused by all children of `ApplicationComponent`. The following fragment from `HomeComponent` (see `home.ts`) doesn't specify providers to be used for the injection of `ProductService` via the constructor—it reuses the instance of `ProductService` created in its parent:

```

@Component({
  selector: 'auction-home-page',
  styleUrls: ['/home.css'],
  template: `...
`)
export default class HomeComponent {
  products: Product[] = [];

  constructor(private productService: ProductService) {
    this.products = this.productService.getProducts();
  }
}

```

As soon as `HomeComponent` is instantiated, `ProductService` is injected, and its `getProducts()` method populates the `products` array, which is bound to the view.

The HTML fragment that displays the content of this array uses the `*ngFor` loop to display one `<auction-product-item>` template for each element of the array:

```

<div class="row">
  <div *ngFor="let product of products" class="col-sm-4 col-lg-4 col-md-4">
    <auction-product-item [product]="product"></auction-product-item>
  </div>
</div>

```

The template for `<auction-product-item>` contains the following line:

```

<h4><a [routerLink]="/products", product.title]>{{ product.title }}</a>
  </h4>

```

Clicking this link instructs the router to render `ProductDetailComponent` and provides the value of `product.title` as the route parameter. You want to modify this code to pass the product ID instead of the title.

This brief overview of the existing code was intended to remind you how the Product Details page is requested. Next, let's implement the code to produce the view shown in figure 4.11.

#### 4.6.1 Changing the code to pass the product ID as a parameter

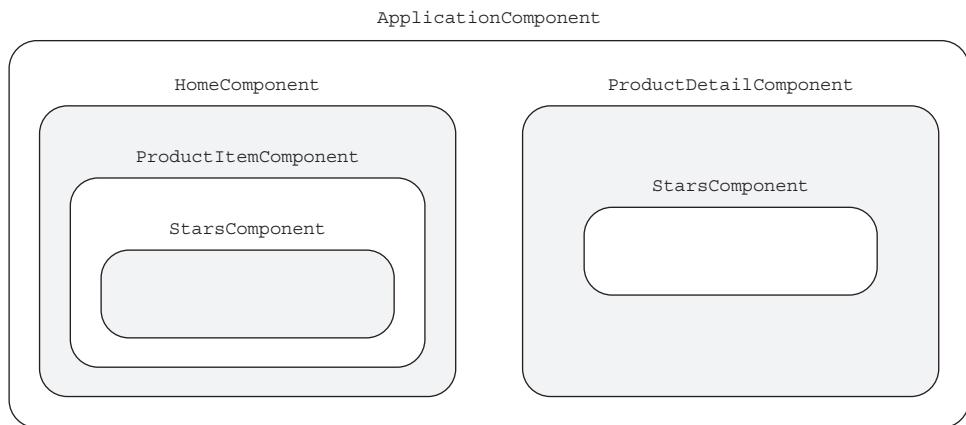
Open the product-item.html file, and modify the line with [routerLink] so it looks like this:

```
<h4><a [routerLink]=["/products", product.id]">{{ product.title }}</a></h4>
```

The product-item.html file contains the template used to display products in the Home view. Now, clicking the product title will pass the product.id to the route configured for the path products.

#### 4.6.2 Modifying ProductDetailComponent

Before you begin coding, look at figure 4.12, which shows the parent-child relationship between the components of the auction. Understanding parent-child relations can help you decide whether some of the parent injectors can be reused by their children.



**Figure 4.12** Parent-child relations in the auction

In chapter 3, you injected an instance of `ProductService` in `HomeComponent`, but you'll need it in `ProductDetailComponent` as well. You can define the provider of `ProductService` during the bootstrap of the application to make it available in all children of `ApplicationComponent`. To do so, follow these steps:

- 1 Modify the code in `app.module.ts` to change the route configuration from `products/:prodTitle` to `products/:productId`. The first lines of the `@NgModule` decorator should look like this.

#### Listing 4.8 Modifications in `app.module.ts`

```
@NgModule({
  imports: [ BrowserModule,
```

```
RouterModule.forRoot([
  {path: '', component: HomeComponent},
  {path: 'products/:productId',
    component: ProductDetailComponent}
])],
```

Because you're passing the product ID to `ProductDetailComponent`, its code should be modified accordingly.

- 2 Open the `product-detail.ts` file, and modify its code as shown next.

#### **Listing 4.9 Modifications in `product-detail.ts`**

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';
import { ActivatedRoute } from '@angular/router';
import {Product, Review, ProductService} from
  ' ../../services/product-service';

@Component({
  selector: 'auction-product-page',
  templateUrl: 'app/components/product-detail/product-detail.html'
})
export default class ProductDetailComponent {
  product: Product;
  reviews: Review[];

  constructor(route: ActivatedRoute, productService: ProductService) {

    let prodId: number = parseInt(route.snapshot.params['productId']);
    this.product = productService.getProductById(prodId);

    this.reviews = productService.getReviewsForProduct(this.product.id);
  }
}
```

Angular will inject the `ProductService` instance into `ProductDetailComponent`. When `ProductDetailComponent` is created, it invokes the `getProductsById()` method, which returns one product with an `id` that matches the `productId` passed from the `Home` view via the constructor's argument of type `ActivatedRoute`. This is how you populate the `product` variable.

Then the constructor calls the `getReviewsForProduct()` method to populate the `reviews` array. You'll see the declaration of this method as well as the `Review` class later in this section.

- 3 Create the following `product-detail.html` file in the `product-detail` folder.

#### **Listing 4.10 `product-detail.html`**

```
<div class="thumbnail">
  
  <div>
```

```

<h4 class="pull-right">{{ product.price }}</h4>
<h4>{{ product.title }}</h4>
<p>{{ product.description }}</p>
</div>
<div class="ratings">
  <p class="pull-right">{{ reviews.length }} reviews</p>
  <p><auction-stars [rating]="product.rating"></auction-stars></p>
</div>
</div>
<div class="well" id="reviews-anchor">
  <div class="row">
    <div class="col-md-12"></div>
  </div>
  <div class="row" *ngFor="let review of reviews">
    <hr>
    <div class="col-md-12">
      <auction-stars [rating]="review.rating"></auction-stars>
      <span>{{ review.user }}</span>
      <span class="pull-right">
        {{ review.timestamp | date: 'shortDate' }}</span>
        <p>{{ review.comment }}</p>
      </div>
    </div>
  </div>
</div>

```

This HTML template uses local binding to the properties of the `product` variable. Note how you use square brackets to pass the `rating` input to `StarsComponent` (represented by `<auction-stars>`), introduced in chapter 2. In this version of the auction, the user can only see the reviews; you'll implement the Leave a Review functionality in chapter 6.

The pipe operator (`|`) allows you to create filters that can transform a value. The expression `review.timestamp | date: 'shortDate'` takes the timestamp from a `Review` object and displays it in a `shortDate` form. You can find other date formats in the Angular documentation at <http://mng.bz/CX8F>. Angular comes with several classes that can be used with the pipe operator, and you can create custom filters (explained in chapter 5). In chapter 8, you'll see how to use the `async` pipe to automatically unwrap the server's responses.

- 4 To save you some typing, copy into your project the `app/services/product-service.ts` file provided with the code of the auction application for this chapter. This file contains three classes—`Product`, `Review`, and `ProductService`—and hard-coded data for products and reviews. The HTML template from listing 4.10 uses the following `Product` and `Review` classes.

#### **Listing 4.11 Product and Review classes**

```

export class Product {
  constructor(
    public id: number,
    public title: string,

```

```

    public price: number,
    public rating: number,
    public description: string,
    public categories: string[]) {
}
}

export class Review {
  constructor(
    public id: number,
    public productId: number,
    public timestamp: Date,
    public user: string,
    public rating: number,
    public comment: string) {
}
}

```

The ProductService class is shown in the next listing.

#### Listing 4.12 ProductService class

```

export class ProductService {
  getProducts(): Product[] {
    return products.map(p => new Product(p.id, p.title, p.price, p.rating,
      p.description, p.categories));
  }

  getProductById(productId: number): Product {
    return products.find(p => p.id === productId);
  }

  getReviewsForProduct(productId: number): Review[] {
    return reviews
      .filter(r => r.productId === productId)
      .map(r => new Review(r.id, r.productId, Date.parse(r.timestamp),
        r.user, r.rating, r.comment));
  }
}

var products = [
  {
    "id": 0,
    "title": "First Product",
    "price": 24.99,
    "rating": 4.3,
    "description": "This is a short description. Lorem ipsum dolor sit
      amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.",
    "categories": ["electronics", "hardware"] },
  {
    "id": 1,
    "title": "Second Product",
    "price": 64.99,
    "rating": 4.5,
    "description": "A more detailed description. This product is
      perfect for...",
    "categories": ["electronics", "hardware"] }
]

```

```
"rating": 3.5,
"description": "This is a short description. Lorem ipsum dolor sit
➥ amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.",
"categories": ["books"] }];

var reviews = [
{
  "id": 0,
  "productId": 0,
  "timestamp": "2014-05-20T02:17:00+00:00",
  "user": "User 1",
  "rating": 5,
  "comment": "Aenean vestibulum velit id placerat posuere. Praesent..."},
{
  "id": 1,
  "productId": 0,
  "timestamp": "2014-05-20T02:53:00+00:00",
  "user": "User 2",
  "rating": 3,
  "comment": "Aenean vestibulum velit id placerat posuere. Praesent... "
}];
```

This class has three methods: `getProducts()`, which returns an array of `Product` objects; `getProductById()`, which returns one product; and `getReviewsForProduct()`, which returns an array of `Review` objects for the selected product. All the data for products and reviews is hard-coded in the `products` and `reviews` arrays, respectively. (For brevity, we've shown fragments of these arrays.) The `getReviewsForProduct()` method filters the `reviews` array to find reviews for the specified `productId`. Then it uses the `map()` function to turn an array of `Object` elements into a new array of `Review` objects.

### Using the ES6 API while compiling into ES5 syntax

If your IDE shows the `find()` function in red, it's because your `tsconfig.json` file specifies ES5 as a target for compilation, and `find()` wasn't supported in ES5 arrays. To remove the red, you can install the type definition file for ES6 shim:

```
npm i @types/es6-shim --save-dev
```

For details, see section B.10.1.

- 5 Start the server in the auction directory by entering the command `npm start`. When you see the auction's home page, click the product title to see the Product Details view shown in figure 4.11.

## 4.7 Summary

In this chapter, you've learned what the Dependency Injection pattern is and how Angular implements it. The online auction will use DI on every page. These are the main takeaways from this chapter:

- Providers register objects for future injection.
- You can create a provider not only for an object, but for a string value as well.
- Injectors form a hierarchy, and if Angular can't find the provider for the requested type at the component level, it'll try to find it by traversing parent injectors.
- The value of the `providers` property is visible in the child components, whereas `viewProviders` is only visible at the component level.

# *Bindings, observables, and pipes*

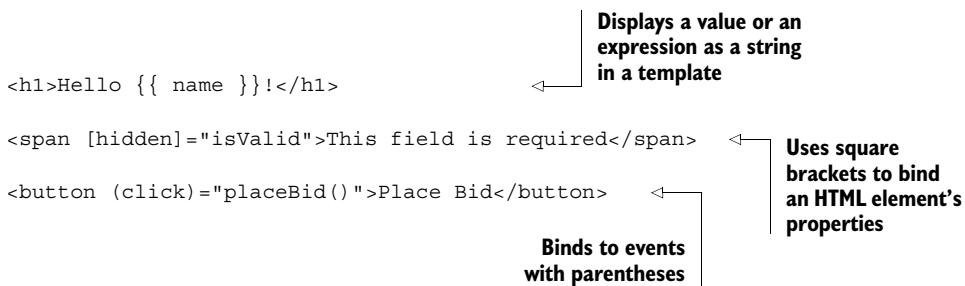
## **This chapter covers**

- Working with flavors of data binding
- Binding to attributes vs. properties
- Understanding observable data streams
- Treating events as observable data streams
- Minimizing network load by canceling unwanted HTTP requests
- Minimizing manual coding with pipes

The goal of the first four chapters of this book was to jump-start application development with Angular. In those chapters, we discussed how to use property bindings, handle events, and apply directives without providing detailed explanations. In this chapter, we want to take a breather and cover some of these techniques in more detail. You'll continue writing code in TypeScript, and you'll see an example of using destructuring syntax while handing events.

## 5.1 Data binding

Data binding allows you to connect the data from your application with the UI. The data-binding syntax lowers the amount of manual coding. Chapter 2 briefly introduced the data-binding syntax, and you used it in almost every example in the previous chapters. In particular, you've seen the following cases:



In Angular, data binding is implemented in a unidirectional way (also known as *one-way* data binding). The “one way” could mean either applying data changes from the component’s properties to the UI or binding UI events with the component’s methods. For example, whenever a component’s `productTitle` property is updated, the view (the template) is automatically updated by using the following syntax in the template: `{{productTitle}}`. Similarly, when a user types in an `<input>` field, the event binding (denoted by parentheses) invokes an event handler on the right side of the equal sign:

```
(input) = "onInput()"
```

**NOTE** In templates, both double curly braces in the text and square brackets in HTML elements’ attributes result in property binding. Angular binds the interpolated value (a string with injected expression values) to the `textContent` property of the corresponding DOM node. It’s not just a one-time assignment—the text is constantly updated as the value of the corresponding expression changes.

### What’s wrong with AngularJS two-way binding?

In AngularJS, data changes on the view automatically update the underlying data (one direction), which also triggers an update of the view (another direction). In other words, AngularJS uses two-way data binding under the hood.

Although having two-way data binding in forms simplifies coding, using it to bind values in various application scripts may substantially slow performance in large applications. That’s because AngularJS internally keeps a list of all data-binding expressions on the page, and a browser event can result in AngularJS checking the list of the expressions over and over again until it ensures that everything is in sync. During this process, a single property can be updated multiple times.

Although Angular doesn't use two-way data binding by default, you can still implement it. Now it's your choice, not the framework's. In this section, we'll go over several flavors of data binding:

- Event binding to invoke a function that handles this event
- Attribute binding to update the text value of an HTML element's attribute
- Property binding to update the value of the DOM element's property
- Template binding to transform the view template
- Two-way data binding with `ngModel`

### 5.1.1 Binding to events

To assign an event-handler function to an event, you need to put the event name in parentheses in the component's template. The following code snippet shows how to bind the function `onClickEvent()` to the `click` event, and the function `onInputEvent()` to the `input` event:

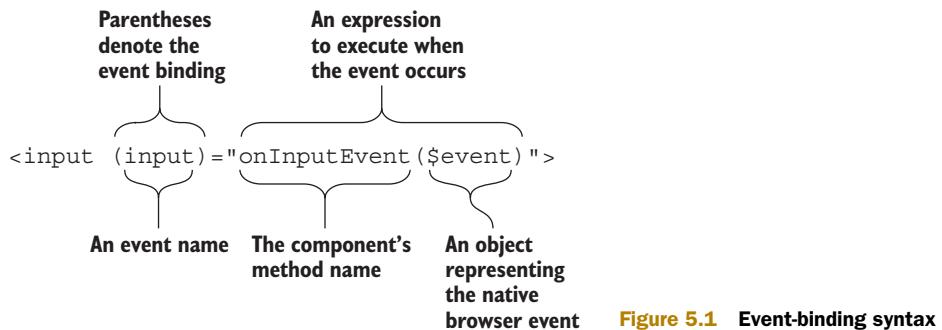
```
<button (click)="onClickEvent()">Get Products</button>

<input placeholder="Product name" (input)="onInputEvent()">
```

When the event specified in parentheses is triggered, the expression in double quotes is reevaluated. In the preceding example, the expressions are functions, so they're invoked each time the corresponding event is triggered.

If you're interested in analyzing the properties of the event object, add the `$event` argument to the handler function. In particular, the `target` property of the event object represents the DOM node where the event occurred. The instance of the event object will be available only within the binding scope (that is, in the event-handler function). Figure 5.1 shows how to read the event-binding syntax.

The event in parentheses is called *the target of binding*. You can bind functions to any standard DOM events that exist today (see “Event reference” in the Mozilla Developer Network documentation, <http://mzl.la/1JcBR22>) or that will be introduced in the future. You can also create custom events and bind function handlers to them the same way (see “Output properties and custom events” in section 6.1.1).



### 5.1.2 Binding to properties and attributes

Each HTML element is represented by a tag with *attributes*, and the browser creates a DOM object with *properties* for each tag. The user sees DOM objects on the screen as they're rendered by the browser. You should have a good understanding of what exists at any given moment in three distinct areas:

- The HTML document
- The DOM object
- The rendered UI

An *HTML document* consists of elements represented by tags with attributes, which are always strings. The browser instantiates HTML elements as *DOM objects* (nodes) that have properties and are rendered on the web page as a UI. Whenever the values of the DOM nodes' properties change, the page is re-rendered.

#### PROPERTIES

Consider the following `<input>` tag:

```
<input type="text" value="John" required>
```

The browser uses this string to create a node in the DOM tree, which is a JavaScript object of type `HTMLInputElement`. Each DOM object has an API in the form of methods and *properties* (see “`HTMLInputElement`” in the Mozilla Developer Network documentation, <http://mzl.la/1QqMBgQ>). In particular, the `HTMLInputElement` object includes the properties `type` and `value` of type `DOMString`, and `required` of type `Boolean`. The browser renders this DOM node.

**NOTE** The browser will synchronize the rendered values with the values of the corresponding DOM object's properties, regardless of the synchronization features offered by a particular framework.

In Angular, you denote property binding by enclosing the property name in square brackets and assigning an expression (or a class variable) to it. Figure 5.2 illustrates how Angular's property-binding mechanism works. Imagine a component, `MyComponent`, that has a class with a `greeting` variable. The template of this component includes an `<input>` tag with the class variable `greeting` bound to the `value` property.

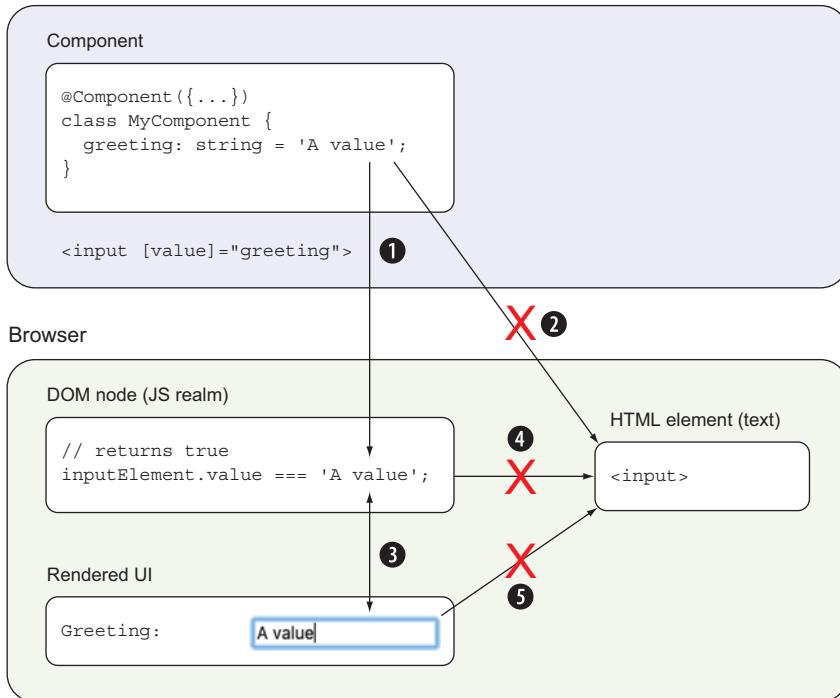
An application component may have a data structure that serves as a model. Application code may also change the model's property (such as a function that calculates something, or data coming from a server), which will trigger the property-binding mechanism, resulting in UI updates.

#### When property binding is used

Property binding is used in these two scenarios:

- A component needs to reflect the state of the model in the view.
- A parent component needs to update a property of its child (see the “Input Properties” section in chapter 6).

## Angular



- ➊ Angular updates the DOM using the one-way property binding (from `greeting` to the DOM object's property). If a script assigns a reference to this `<input>` element to the variable `inputElement`, it's going to be equal to `A value`. Note that we use dot notation to access the value of the node's property.
- ➋ Angular's property binding doesn't update the attribute of the HTML element after the value of `inputElement.value` changes.
- ➌ The DOM node's `value` property is displayed on the UI. Angular updated the DOM node, and the browser rendered the new value to keep the DOM and UI in sync.
- ➍ The DOM node's `value` property doesn't change the attribute of the corresponding HTML element.
- ➎ The browser doesn't sync the HTML element's attribute with the UI when the user types in the `<input>`. The user sees the new values coming from the DOM and not from the HTML document.

Figure 5.2 Property binding

#### ATTRIBUTES

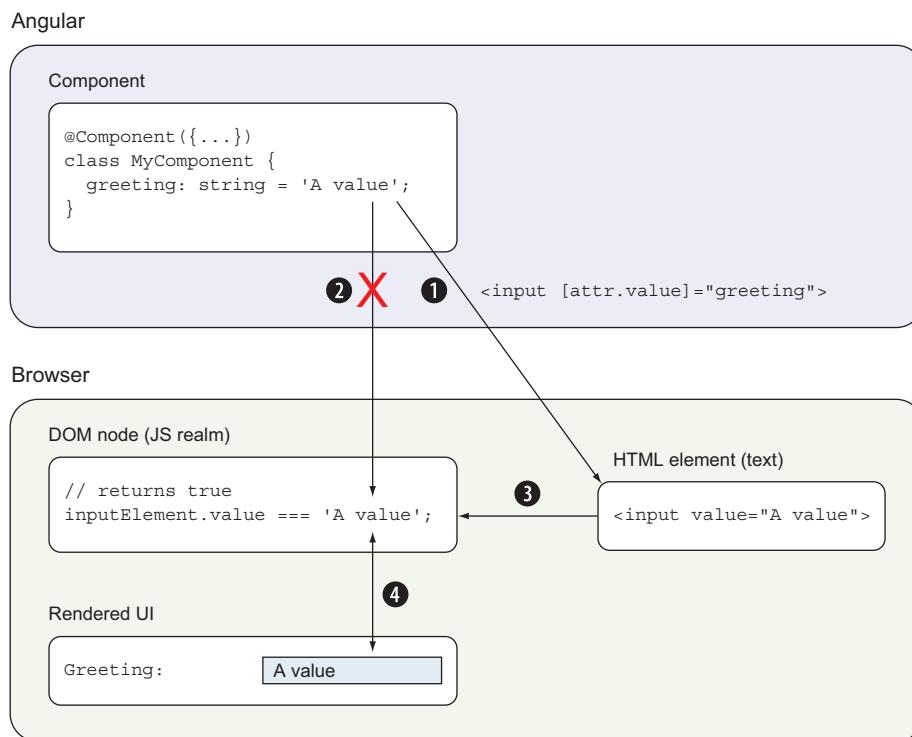
We use the word *attributes* in the context of the HTML document (not the DOM object). Attribute bindings are rarely used, because the browser uses HTML to build the DOM tree; after that, it works mainly with properties of the DOM object. But there are some cases when you may need to use attribute bindings. For example, the `hidden` attribute isn't supported in Internet Explorer 10, and it won't create a corresponding

DOM attribute, so if you need to toggle the visibility of a component using CSS styles, attribute binding will help. Another example is integration with the Google Polymer framework—you can only do it via attribute binding.

Like property bindings, an attribute binding is denoted by placing an attribute name in square brackets. But to let Angular know that you want to bind to an attribute (and not the DOM property), you have to add the prefix `attr.:`

```
<input [attr.value]="greeting">
```

Figure 5.3 illustrates attribute binding.



- ➊ Angular updates the **HTML element** using the one-way attribute binding (from `greeting` to the **HTML element's attribute**). Note the `attr.` in the binding expression.
- ➋ Angular's attribute binding doesn't update the **DOM's node**.
- ➌ In this case, the **DOM's object** got `A value` because the browser synchronized the `value` attribute between the **HTML element** and the **DOM**.
- ➍ The **DOM node's value** property is displayed on the **UI** because the browser keeps the **UI** and **DOM** in sync.

Figure 5.3 Attribute binding

Let's see how property and attribute bindings work in a simple example. Listing 5.1 shows an `<input>` element that uses binding with the `value` attribute and the `value` property. This code sample is located in the `attribute-vs-property.ts` file.

### Listing 5.1 attribute-vs-property.ts

```

import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `
    <h3>Property vs attribute binding:</h3>
    <input [value]="greeting"
           [attr.value] = "greeting"
           (input)="onInputEvent($event)">
  `
})
class AppComponent {

  greeting: string = 'A value';

  onInputEvent(event: Event): void {
    let inputElement: HTMLInputElement = <HTMLInputElement> event.target;

    console.log(`The input property value = ${inputElement.value}`);
    console.log(`The input attribute value = ${inputElement
      .getAttribute('value')}`);
    console.log(`The greeting property value = ${this.greeting}`);
  }
}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

**Attribute binding**

**Property binding**

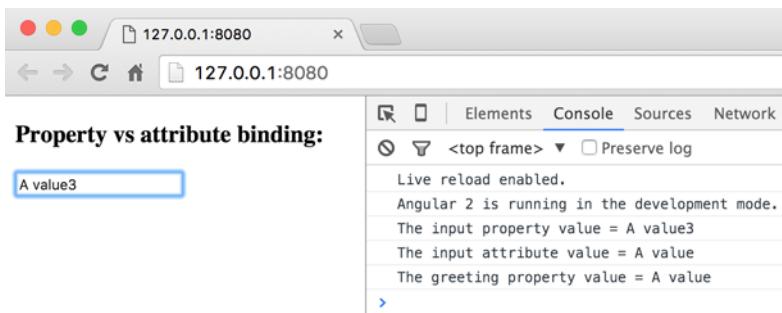
Binds a standard DOM input event, which is fired when the value of the `<input>` element is changed.

The `onInputEvent()` event handler receives the `Event` object, and its `target` property has a reference to the element where this event occurs.

You use `getAttribute()` to get the attribute's value, whereas properties are accessible using the dot notation.

If you run this program and start typing in the input field, it'll print on the browser console the content of the DOM's `value` property, the `value` attribute of the HTML `<input>` element, and the content of the `greeting` property of `MyComponent`. Figure 5.4 shows the console output after we started this program and typed 3 in the `<input>` field.

The value of the `value` attribute didn't change. The value of `greeting` isn't changed either, which proves that Angular doesn't use two-way data binding. In AngularJS, changing the model (`greeting`) would update the view; and if the user changed the data on the view, it would automatically update the model.



**Figure 5.4** Running the attribute-vs-property example

### Simplifying code with destructuring

In appendix A, we'll cover the ES6 destructuring feature, which is also supported by TypeScript. Destructuring could simplify the code of the event-handler function `onInputEvent()` in listing 5.1.

The `onInputEvent()` function receives the `Event` object, and then a line extracts the value from the `target` property. With destructuring syntax, you can eliminate the line that extracts the value of `event.target`:

```
onInputEvent ({target}): void {
  console.log(`The input property value = ${target.value}`);
  console.log(`The input attribute value =
    ↪ ${target.getAttribute('value')}`);
  console.log(`The greeting property value = ${this.greeting}`);
}
```

Using the curly braces in the argument of this function sends the following instruction to this function: “You’ll get an object that has a `target` property. Just give me the value of this property.”

### 5.1.3 Binding in templates

Say you need to conditionally hide or show a certain HTML element. You can do so by binding a Boolean flag to a `hidden` attribute or a `display` style of the element. Depending on the flag’s value, this element will be either shown or hidden, but the object that represents this element remains in the DOM tree.

Angular offers *structural directives* (`NgIf`, `NgSwitch`, and `NgFor`) that change the DOM’s structure by removing elements from or adding elements to it. `NgIf` can conditionally remove an element from or add one to the DOM tree. `NgFor` loops through an array and adds an element to the DOM tree for each array element. `NgSwitch` adds one element to the DOM tree from a set of possible elements, based on some condition. Using template binding, you can instruct Angular to do this for you. Removing

elements can be better than hiding them if you want to ensure that your application won't waste time supporting the behavior of these elements (such as processing events or monitoring change detection).

### HTML templates and Angular directives

The HTML `<template>` tag (see “`<template>`” in the Mozilla Developer Network documentation, <http://mzl.la/1OndeMV>) isn't a typical tag, because the browser ignores its content unless the application includes a script to parse and add it to the DOM. Angular offers so-called *shortcut* syntaxes for directives—they start with an asterisk, such as `*ngIf` or `*ngFor`. When Angular's parser sees a directive that starts with an asterisk, it converts this directive into an HTML fragment that uses a `<template>` tag and is recognizable by browsers.

Listing 5.2 includes one `<span>` and one `<template>` and illustrates two flavors of template binding using the `NgIf` directive. Depending on the flag's value (which is toggled by the button click), the `<span>` elements either add to the DOM or remove from it.

#### Listing 5.2 template-binding.ts

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component }         from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `
    <button (click)="flag = !flag">Toggle flag's value</button>

    <p>
      Flag's value: {{flag}}
    </p>

    <p>
      1. span with *ngIf="flag": <span *ngIf="flag">Flag is true</span>
    </p>

    <p>
      2. template with [ngIf]="flag": <template [ngIf]="flag">Flag is true
        &lt;/template>
    </p>
  `
})
class AppComponent {
  flag: boolean = true;
}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent ],
```

```

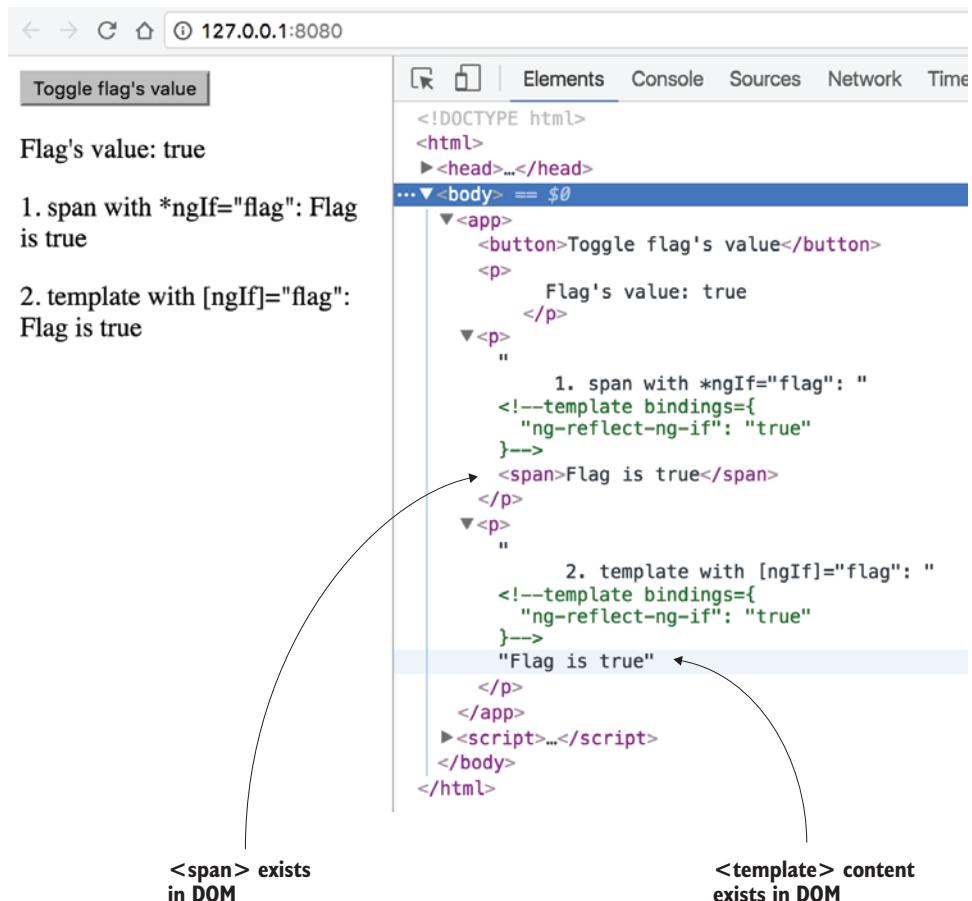
    bootstrap:      [ AppComponent ]
  })
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

Unlike other Angular bindings, the template binding transforms the view template. The code in listing 5.2 conditionally adds the message about the flag's value to or removes it from the DOM tree. You use both the shortcut syntax, `*ngIf="flag"`, to handle the `<span>` element and a fully expanded version, `[ngIf]="flag"`, to handle the content of the `<template>` tag.

Figure 5.5 shows that when the flag is true, the DOM tree includes the content of both `<span>` and `<template>`. Figure 5.6 shows that when the flag is false, the DOM tree doesn't include either `<span>` or `<template>`.



**Figure 5.5** Template binding: flag is true.

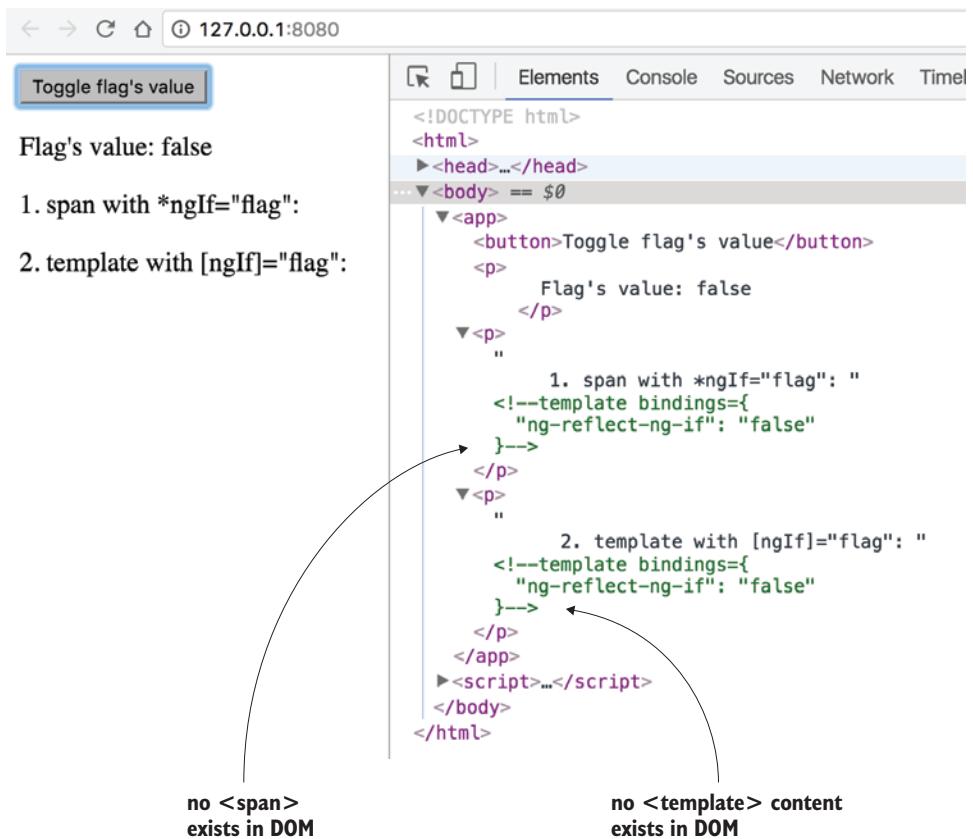


Figure 5.6 Template binding: flag is false.

All the binding examples you've seen so far illustrate binding in one direction: either from the UI to the application code, or from the code to the UI. But there's another scenario in which binding works in both directions, and we'll discuss it next.

#### 5.1.4 Two-way data binding

Two-way data binding is a simple way to keep the view and the model in sync. Whether the view or the model change first, both are immediately synchronized.

You've learned that one-way binding from the UI to an Angular component is arranged by surrounding an event name with parentheses:

```
<input (input)="onInputEvent($event)">
```

One-way binding from a component to the UI is denoted by surrounding an HTML attribute with square brackets:

```
<input [value]="myComponentProperty" >
```

In some cases, you may still want to use two-way binding. The longer way of combining the two preceding examples would be as follows:

```
<input [value]="myComponentProperty"
       (input)="onInputEvent($event)">
```

Angular also offers a shorter, combined notation: `[]()`. In particular, Angular has a `NgModel` directive that you can use for two-way binding (note that when `NgModel` is used in templates, its name isn't capitalized):

```
<input [(ngModel)] = "myComponentProperty">
```

You can still see `myComponentProperty`, but which event does it handle? In this example, the `NgModel` directive is used with the `<input>` element. This event is the default trigger for synchronizing UI changes in the HTML `<input>` element with the underlying model. But the driving event can be different, depending on the UI control being used with `ngModel`. This is controlled internally by a special `ControlValueAccessor` Angular interface, which serves as a bridge between a control and a native element. `ControlValueAccessor` is used to create custom form controls.

Two-way binding was popular with forms where we needed to synchronize values from the form fields with the properties of underlying model object. In chapter 7, we'll cover the use of the `NgModel` directive in greater detail. You'll learn how to handle forms without needing to use `[(ngModel)]` for each form's control; but there are some cases where it can be handy, so let's get familiar with the syntax.

Suppose the landing page of a financial application allows the user to check the latest prices of a stock by entering its symbol in an input field. Users often enter the same stocks that they own or follow, such as `AAPL` for Apple. You can save the last-entered symbol as a cookie (or in HTML5 local storage), and the next time the user opens this page, the program can read the cookie and populate the input field. The user should still be able to type in this field, and the entered value should be synchronized with a `lastStockSymbol` variable, which plays the role of the model. The following listing implements this functionality.

### Listing 5.3 two-way-binding.ts

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { FormsModule } from '@angular/forms';

@Component({
  selector: 'stock-search',
  template: `<input type='text' placeholder= "Enter stock symbol"
    [(ngModel)] = "lastStockSymbol" />
    <br>The value of lastStockSymbol is {{lastStockSymbol}}`})
  Requests the two-way binding to synchronize
  the changes with lastStockSymbol
})
```

```

class StockComponent {
    lastStockSymbol: string;

    constructor() {
        setTimeout(() => {
            // Code to get the last entered stock from
            // local history goes here (not implemented)

            this.lastStockSymbol = "AAPL";
        }, 2000);
    }
}

@Component({
    selector: 'app',
    directives: [StockComponent],
    template: `<stock-search></stock-search>
`})
class AppComponent {}

@NgModule({
    imports:      [ BrowserModule, FormsModule ],
    declarations: [ AppComponent ],
    bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

**lastStockSymbol** is the model, and it can be modified either by the user typing in the input field or programmatically.

To emulate the scenario of reading the last stock symbol from a cookie, you arrange a one-second delay, after which the value of **lastStockSymbol** is changed to AAPL and the input field shows it.

Imports **FormsModule** so you can use **NgModel**

The `lastStockSymbol` variable and the value of the `<input>` field are always in sync. You can see this in action by running the script in the `two-way-binding.ts` file.

**NOTE** Listing 5.3 uses Angular's `NgModel` directive to implement two-way data binding, but you can use application-specific properties for this as well. You'll need to name the properties using a special suffix, `Change`. In the hands-on section of chapter 6, you'll see how to modify a product rating using two-way binding with the `[(rating)]` syntax.

In AngularJS, two-way binding was the default mode of operation, which seems like a simple and elegant solution for synchronizing a view and a model. But on a complex UI containing dozens of controls, changing the value in one place could cause a chain of binding updates, and performance could suffer.

With two-way binding, debugging could also be more difficult, because there could be many reasons why a particular value was changed. Was it because of the user's input, or was it the result of a modified value in some variable?

Implementing change detection in the Angular framework wasn't trivial, either. With a unidirectional data flow, you always know where the change to a particular UI element or component property comes from, because only one property in the component's code can change a particular value on the UI.

## 5.2 Reactive programming and observables

Reactive programming is about creating responsive (fast) event-driven applications, where an observable event stream is pushed to subscribers. In software engineering, Observer/Observable is a well-known pattern, and it's a good fit in any asynchronous processing scenario. But reactive programming is a lot more than just an implementation of the Observer/Observable pattern. The observable streams can be canceled, they can notify about the end of a stream, and the data pushed to the subscriber can be transformed on the way from the source to the subscriber by applying various operators (functions).

**NOTE** One of the most important characteristics of observables is that they implement the *push model* of data processing. In contrast, the *pull model* is implemented by looping through an array, by an `Iterable`, or by using ES6 generator functions.

Multiple libraries implement reactive extensions that support observable streams, and RxJS (<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS>) is one such library. The RxJS library is integrated in Angular.

### 5.2.1 What are observables and observers?

An *observer* is an object that handles a data stream pushed by an *observable* function. There are two main types of observables: hot and cold. A *cold* observable starts streaming data when some code invokes a `subscribe()` function on it. A *hot* observable streams data even if there's no subscriber interested in the data. In this book, we'll use only cold observables.

A script that subscribes to an observable provides the observer object that knows what to do with the stream elements:

```
let mySubscription: Subscription = someObservable.subscribe(myObserver);
```

To cancel the stream subscription, invoke the `unsubscribe()` method:

```
mySubscription.unsubscribe();
```

An *observable* is an object that streams elements from some data source (a socket, an array, UI events) one element at a time. To be precise, an observable stream knows how to do three things:

- Emit the next element
- Throw an error
- Send a signal that the streaming is over (that the last element has been served)

Accordingly, an observer object provides up to three callbacks:

- The function to handle the next element emitted by the observable
- The function to handle errors in the observable
- The function to be invoked when the stream of data finishes

**NOTE** In appendix A, we'll discuss using the `Promise` object, which can invoke an event handler specified in the `then()` function only once. The `subscribe()` method is like a sequence of `then()` invocations: one invocation for each arriving data element.

Application code can apply a sequence of operators, transforming each element prior to supplying it to the handler function. Figure 5.7 shows a sample data flow from an observable that emits data to a subscriber (which implements the observer). This data flow applies two operators: `map()` and `filter()`. The emitter (the producer) creates an original stream of data (rectangles). The `map()` operator transfers each rectangle into a triangle, which is given to a `filter()` operator that filters out the stream to push only selected triangles to the subscriber.

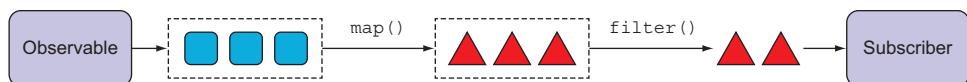


Figure 5.7 From observable to subscriber

A more realistic example would be a stream of `Customer` objects that's mapped to another stream containing only the `age` property of each customer. The first stream could be filtered to keep only those customer objects where `age < 50`.

**NOTE** Each operator accepts an observable object as an argument and returns an observable as well. This allows for chaining operators.

The documentation of reactive extensions (see “Operators” in the ReactiveX documentation, <http://reactivex.io/documentation/operators.html>) uses *marble diagrams* to illustrate operators. For example, the `map()` operator is represented as the marble diagram shown in figure 5.8.

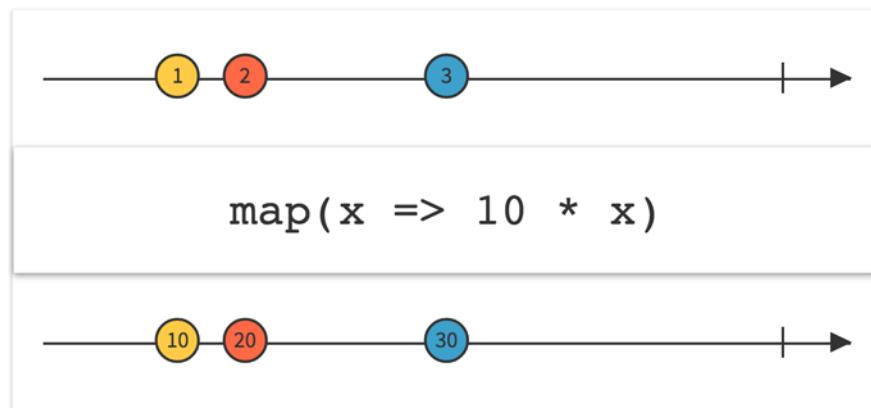


Figure 5.8 A marble diagram for `map`

This figure illustrates a map operator that applies a function multiplying each element of the stream by 10. The vertical bars on the right represent the ends of the respective streams. In marble diagrams, errors are represented by red cross signs.

**TIP** Check out the RxMarbles website (<http://rxmarbles.com>), which offers interactive marble diagrams for a variety of Rx operators.

### From arrays to iterables and observables

JavaScript has a number of useful methods for working with arrays of data, such as these:

- `map()`—Allows you to apply a function to each element of the array. With `map()`, you can transform one array into another without changing the number of elements. For example, `myArray.map(convertToJson)`.
- `filter()`—Allows you to apply a function to each element of an array, filtering out elements by applying some business logic. For example, `myArray.filter(priceIsLessThan100)`. The resulting array may have fewer elements than the original.
- `reduce()`—Allows you to produce an aggregate value from an array's elements. For example, `myArray.reduce((x, y) => x+y)`. The result of `reduce()` is always a single value.

A stream is a collection of data given to your application over time. ES6 introduces the concept of *iterables* and *iterators* that let you treat an array as a data collection and iterate through its elements one at time.

The source of the iterable data doesn't have to be an array. You can write an ES6 generator function (see appendix A) that returns a reference to its iterator, and then you can start *pulling* the data (one at a time) from this iterator: `myIterator.next().value`. For each value, you can apply some business logic and then reach out for the next element.

An observable object is a more advanced version of an iterator. Iterators use the pull model to retrieve the data, whereas observables push the data to subscribers.

It's probably easier to understand the concept of an observable stream by visualizing asynchronous data coming from the server. You'll see such an example later in this chapter, and more in chapter 8 when you learn how to work with HTTP requests and WebSockets, but the concept of an observable stream can be applied to events as well. Is an event a one-time deal that just needs a handler function? Can you think of an event as a sequence of elements provided over time? We'll discuss event streams next.

**NOTE** You'll see how to turn any service into an observable in chapter 8.

#### 5.2.2 Observable event streams

Earlier in this chapter, you learned about the syntax of event binding in templates. Now let's take a closer look at event handling.

Each event is represented by the Event object (or a descendant) containing properties describing the event. Angular applications can handle standard DOM events and can create and *emit* (dispatch) custom events as well.

A handler function for an event can be declared with an optional \$event parameter that contains a JavaScript object with properties describing the event. With standard DOM events, you can use any functions or properties of the browser's Event object (see "Event" in the Mozilla Developer Network documentation, <http://mzl.la/1EAG6iw>).

In some cases, you won't be interested in reading the event object's properties, such as when the only button on a page is clicked, and this is all that matters. In other cases, you may want to know specific information, such as what character was entered in the <input> field when the keyup event was dispatched:

```
template: `<input (keyup)="onKey($event)">
...
onKey(event:any) {
  console.log("You have entered " + event.target.value);
}
```

The preceding code snippet accesses the value property of the <input> element by using event.target, which points at the element that dispatched the event. But Angular allows you to get the HTML element (and its properties) right in the template by declaring a *template local variable* that will always hold a reference to its HTML element.

The following code fragment declares a mySearchField local template variable (the name must start with a hash sign), extracts the value of the hosting HTML element (<input> in this case), and passes it to the event-handler function rather than the reference to the Event object. Note that the hash sign is needed only to declare a local variable in the template; you don't need the hash when using this variable in the JavaScript portion of the code:

```
template: `<input #mySearchField (keyup)="onKey(mySearchField.value)">
...
onKey(value: string) {
  console.log("You have entered " + value);
}
```

**NOTE** If your code dispatches a custom event, it can carry application-specific data, and the event object can be strongly typed (not just be of the type any). You'll see how to do this in chapter 6, in the section "Output properties and custom events."

A traditional JavaScript application treats a dispatched event as a one-time deal; for example, one click results in one function invocation. Angular offers another approach where you consider events observable streams of data happening over time. Handling observable streams is an important technique to master, so let's see what it's all about.

By subscribing to a stream, your code expresses an interest in receiving the stream's elements. During subscription, you specify the code to be invoked when the next element is emitted, and optionally the code for error processing and stream completion. Often you'll specify a number of chained operators and then invoke the `subscribe()` method.

How does all this apply to events coming from the UI? You could use event binding that handles multiple keyup events and handles the value of `lastStockSymbol`:

```
<input type='text' (keyup) = "getStockPrice($event)">
```

Isn't this technique good enough for handling multiple events? Imagine that the preceding code is used to get a price quote for the AAPL stock. After the user types the first A, the `getStockPrice()` function will make a promise-based request to the server, which will return the price of A, if there is such a stock. Then the user enters the second A, which results in another server request for the AA price quote. The process repeats for *AAP* and *AAPL*.

This isn't what you want, so you can arrange a 500-millisecond delay to give the user enough time to type several letters. The `setTimeout()` function comes to the rescue!

What if the user types slowly, and during the 500-millisecond interval manages only to enter *AAP*? The first request for AAP goes to the server, and 500 milliseconds later the second request for AAPL is sent. A program can't cancel the first HTTP request if the server returns a `Promise` object, so you'll keep your fingers crossed that your users type quickly and don't overload the server with unwanted requests.

With observable streams, there's a better solution to this problem, and some of the Angular UI components can generate them. For example, `FormControl` class is one of the fundamental blocks of forms processing and represents form elements. Each form element has its own `FormControl` object. By default, whenever the value of the form element changes, `FormControl` emits the `valueChanges` event, which produces an observable stream you can subscribe to.

Let's write a small app that uses a simple form with one input field that generates an observable stream. To understand the next example, you need to know that form elements are bound to Angular component properties via the `formControl` attribute.

**NOTE** There's a way to program forms by using directives in the component's template: these are *template-driven forms*. You can also program forms by creating form-related objects in the TypeScript code of your components. These are *reactive forms*. We'll cover Angular forms in chapter 7.

Listing 5.4 applies just one operator, `debounceTime()`, prior to invoking `subscribe()`. RxJS supports dozens of operators that you can use with observable streams (see the RxJS documentation, <http://mng.bz/ZxZT>), but Angular didn't reimplement all of them in the framework. That's why you need to import additional operators from

RxJS, which is a peer dependency of Angular. The `debounceTime()` operator lets you specify a delay in emitting data elements of a stream.

#### Listing 5.4 observable-events.ts

```

import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { FormControl, ReactiveFormsModule } from '@angular/forms';
import 'rxjs/add/operator/debounceTime';           ← You can either import the implementation
                                                    of specific operators, as is done here, or
                                                    import all of them using import 'rxjs/Rx';

@Component({
  selector: "app",
  template: `
    <h2>Observable events demo</h2>
    <input type="text" placeholder="Enter stock" [FormControl]="searchInput"> ← This <input> element is represented by
                                                    the ngFormControl named search.
  `})
class AppComponent {
  searchInput: FormControl = new FormControl('');

  constructor() {
    this.searchInput.valueChanges
      .debounceTime(500)           ← Waits 500 milliseconds before
      .subscribe(stock => this.getStockQuoteFromServer(stock));   ← emitting the next event with the
                                                    content of the <input> element
  }
  getStockQuoteFromServer(stock: string) {
    console.log(`The price of ${stock} is ${100*Math.random()
      .toFixed(4)}); ← Subscribes to the
  }
}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule,  ReactiveFormsModule], ← observable stream
  declarations: [ AppComponent ],
  bootstrap:    [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

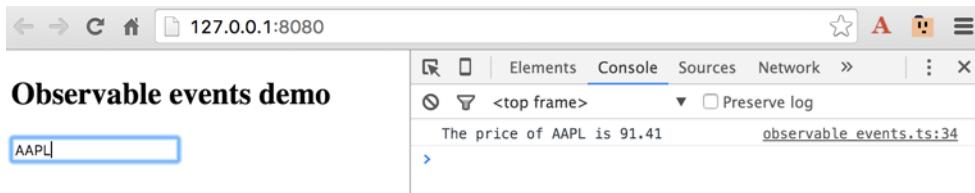
platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

The `subscribe()` method creates the instance of `Observer`, which in this case passes each value from the stream generated by the `searchInput` to the `getStockQuoteFromServer()` method. In a real-world scenario, this method would issue a request to the server, and you'll see such an app in the next section; but for now, this function just generates a random number.

If you didn't use the `debounceTime()` operator, the `valueChanges` event would be emitted after each character typed by the user. To prevent processing each keystroke, you instruct `searchInput` to emit the data with a 500-millisecond delay, which allows the user to enter several characters before the content of the input field is emitted into the stream. Figure 5.9 shows a screenshot taken after we started this application and entered `AAPL` in the input field.

**TIP** No matter how many operators you chain together, none of them will be invoked on the stream until you invoke `subscribe()`.



**Figure 5.9** Getting the price for AAPL

**NOTE** Listing 5.4 handles an observable stream that the `FormControl` object provided when the DOM object emitted the `change` event. If you prefer to generate an observable stream based on another event (such as `on keyup`), you can use the RxJS `Observable.fromEvent()` API (see the RxJS documentation on GitHub, <http://mng.bz/8K8I>).

You may argue that you could implement the preceding example by handling the `input` event, which would be dispatched when the user finished entering the stock symbol and moved the focus out of the input field. This is true, but there are many scenarios where you'll want an immediate response from the server, such as retrieving and filtering a data collection as the user types.

Listing 5.4 doesn't really make any network requests to the server for price quotes—you generate random numbers on the user's computer. Even if the user enters a wrong stock symbol, this example will result in a local invocation of `Math.random()`, which has a negligible effect on the application's performance. In a real-world application, the user's typos may generate network requests that introduce delays while returning quotes for mistakenly entered stock symbols. In the next section, we'll show you how to cancel pending server requests with observable streams.

### 5.2.3 Cancelling observables

One of the benefits of observables over promises is that the former can be canceled. In the previous section, we offered one scenario in which a typo might result in useless server requests. Implementing master-detail views is another use case for a request cancellation. Say a user clicks a row in a list of products to see the product details that must be retrieved from the server. Then they change their mind and click another

row, which issues another server request; in that case, the pending request should ideally be canceled.

Let's look at how you can cancel pending requests by creating an application that issues HTTP requests as the user types in the input field. You'll handle two observable streams:

- The observable stream produced by the search field
- The observable stream produced by the HTTP requests issued while the user is typing in the search field

For this example (`observable-events-http.ts`), you'll use the free weather service at <http://openweathermap.org>, which provides an API for making weather requests for cities around the world. It returns the weather information as a JSON-formatted string. For example, to get the current temperature in London in Fahrenheit (`units=imperial`), the URL looks like this:

```
http://api.openweathermap.org/data/2.5/
➥ find?q=London&units=imperial&appid=12345
```

To use this service, you go to [openweathermap.org](http://openweathermap.org) and receive an application ID (`appid`). The code in listing 5.5 constructs the request URL by concatenating the base URL with the entered city name and the application ID. As the user enters the characters of the city name, the code subscribes to the event stream and issues HTTP requests. If a new request is issued before the response from the previous one comes back, the `switchMap()` operator cancels the previous request and sends the new one to this weather service. Canceling pending requests can't be done with promises. This example also uses the `FormControl` directive to generate an observable stream from the input field where the user enters the name of the city.

#### **Listing 5.5 observable-events-http.ts**

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { FormControl, ReactiveFormsModule} from '@angular/forms';
import {HttpModule, Http} from '@angular/http';

import {Observable} from 'rxjs/Rx';
import 'rxjs/add/operator/switchMap';
import 'rxjs/add/operator/map';
import 'rxjs/add/operator/debounceTime';

@Component({
  selector: "app",
  template: `
    <h2>Observable weather</h2>
    <input type="text" placeholder="Enter city" [formControl]="searchInput">
    <h3>{{temperature}}</h3>
  `})
export class AppComponent {
  searchInput = new FormControl();
  temperature: Observable<any>;

  constructor(private http: Http) {
    this.temperature = this.searchInput.valueChanges
      .debounceTime(400)
      .switchMap((cityName: string) => this.getWeather(cityName));
  }

  getWeather(cityName: string): Observable<any> {
    const url = `http://api.openweathermap.org/data/2.5/find?q=${cityName}&units=imperial&appid=12345`;
    return this.http.get(url).map(res => res.json());
  }
}
```



**Imports the required HTTP support**

```

class AppComponent {
  private baseWeatherURL: string=
    ↪ 'http://api.openweathermap.org/data/2.5/find?q=';
  private urlSuffix: string =
    ↪ "&units=imperial&appid=ca3f6d6ca3973a518834983d0b318f73";

  searchInput: FormControl = new FormControl('');
  temperature: string;

  constructor(private http:Http) {

    this.searchInput.valueChanges
      .debounceTime(200)
      .switchMap(city => this.getWeather(city)) ←
    ↪ .subscribe(
      res => {
        if (res['cod'] === '404') return;
        if (!res.main) {
          this.temperature ='City is not found';
        } else {
          this.temperature =
            `Current temperature is ${res.main.temp}F, +
             humidity: ${res.main.humidity}%`;
        }
      },
      err => console.log(`Can't get weather. Error code: ${err.message}, URL: ${err.url}`),
      () => console.log(`Weather is retrieved`)) ←
    );
  }

  getWeather(city: string): Observable<Array<string>> {
    return this.http.get(this.baseWeatherURL + city + this.urlSuffix)
      .map(res => {
        console.log(res);
        return res.json();
      });
  }

  @NgModule({
    imports: [ BrowserModule, ReactiveFormsModule,
              HttpClientModule ],
    declarations: [ AppComponent ],
    bootstrap: [ AppComponent ]
  })
  class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

**The subscribe() method is needed to start the observable emitting its data, in this case at 200-millisecond intervals.**

**The second argument of subscribe() is a callback that's invoked in the case of an error.**

**The switchMap() operator takes the entered value from the input field (the first observable) and passes it to the getWeather() method, which issues the HTTP request to the weather service.**

**The third argument of subscribe() is invoked after the stream is complete.**

**The map() operator takes the data that arrives in JSON form wrapped in the response object and converts it to an object.**

**The getWeather() method constructs the URL and defines the HTTP GET request.**

**Adds HttpClientModule**

We'd like you to recognize two observables in listing 5.5:

- The FormControl directive creates an observable from the input field events (this.searchInput.valueChanges).
- getWeather() also returns an observable.

You use the `switchMap()` operator instead of `subscribe` when the function that handles data generated by observable can also return an observable. Then you use `subscribe()` for the second observable:

```
Observable1 → switchMap(function) → Observable2 → subscribe()
```

You're switching over from the first observable to the second one. If `Observable1` pushes the new value but the function that creates `Observable2` hasn't finished yet, it's killed; `switchMap()` unsubscribes and resubscribes to `Observable1` and starts handling the new value from this stream.

If the observable stream from the UI pushes the next value before `getWeather()` has returned its observable value, `switchMap()` kills the running `getWeather()`, gets the new value for the city from the UI, and invokes `getWeather()` again. While killing `getWeather()`, it also aborts the HTTP request that was slow and didn't complete in time.

The first argument of `subscribe()` contains a callback for handling data coming from the server. The code in this arrow expression is specific to the API provided by the weather service. You just extract the temperature and humidity from the returned JSON. The API offered by this particular weather service stores the error codes in the response, so you manually handle the status 404 here and not in the error-handler callback.

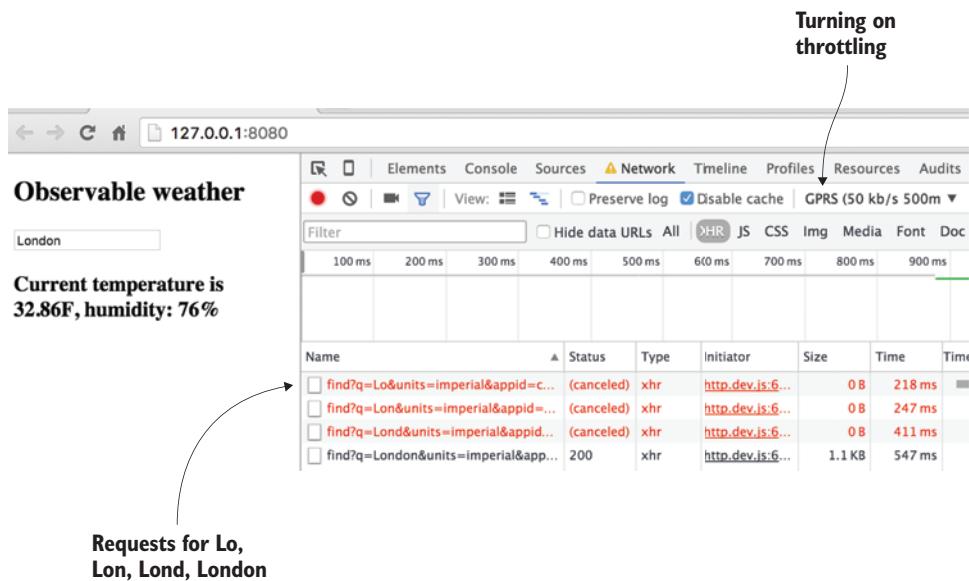
Now let's verify that canceling previous requests works. Typing the word `London` takes more than the 200 milliseconds specified in `debounceTime()`, which means the `valueChanges` event will emit the observable data more than once. To ensure that the request to the server takes more than 200 milliseconds, you need a slow internet connection.

**NOTE** Listing 5.5 has lots of code in the constructor, which may look like a red flag to developers who prefer using constructors only to initialize variables and not to execute any code that takes time to complete. If you take a closer look, though, you'll notice that it just creates a subscription to two observable streams (UI events and HTTP service). No actual processing is done until the user starts entering the name of a city, which happens after the component is already rendered.

We ran the preceding example and then turned on throttling in Chrome Developer Tools, emulating a slow GPRS connection. Typing the word `London` resulted in four `getWeather()` invocations: for `Lo`, `Lon`, `Lond`, and `London`. Accordingly, four HTTP requests were sent over the slow connection, and three of them were automatically canceled by the `switchMap()` operator, as shown in figure 5.10.

With very little programming, you saved bandwidth by eliminating the need for the server to send four HTTP responses for cities you're not interested in and that may not even exist. As we stated in chapter 1, a good framework is one that allows you to write less code.

Pipes are yet another Angular feature that let you achieve more with less manual coding.



**Figure 5.10** Running observable\_events\_http.ts

**NOTE** Chapter 9 contains a refactored version of the weather application.

### 5.3 Pipes

A *pipe* is a template element that allows you to transform a value into a desired output. A pipe is specified by adding the vertical bar (|) and the pipe name right after the value to be transformed:

```
template: `<p>Your birthday is {{ birthday | date }}</p>`
```

Angular comes with a number of predefined pipes, and each pipe has a class that implements its functionality (such as DatePipe) as well as the name you can use in the template (such as date):

- UpperCasePipe allows you to convert an input string into uppercase by using | uppercase in the template.
- DatePipe lets you display a date in different formats by using | date.
- CurrencyPipe transforms a number into a desired currency by using | currency.
- AsyncPipe will unwrap the data from the provided observable stream by using | async. You'll see a code sample that uses `async` in chapter 8.

Some pipes don't require input parameters (such as uppercase), and some do (such as date:'medium'). You can chain as many pipes as you want. The next code snippet shows how to display the value of the `birthday` variable in a medium date format and in uppercase (for example, JUN 15, 2001, 9:43:11 PM):

```
template=
`<p>
  {{ birthday | date:'medium' | uppercase}}
</p>`
```

As you can see, with literally no coding, you can convert a date into the required format as well as show it in uppercase (see the date formats in the Angular DatePipe documentation, <http://mng.bz/78lD>).

### A workaround for broken pipes

At the time of writing, pipes such as date, number, and currency don't work in all browsers. There are two workarounds for this issue:

- Add the polyfill service to your index.html:

```
<script src="https://cdn.polyfill.io/v2/
  ↗ polyfill.min.js?features=Intl~locale.en"></script>
```

This service will polyfill just what your browser needs.

- If you don't want (or aren't allowed) to load scripts from CDNs, add the internationalization package to your project:

```
npm install intl@1.1.0 --save
```

Then add the following lines to your index.html:

```
<script src="node_modules/intl/dist/Intl.min.js"></script>
<script src="node_modules/intl/locale-data/jsonp/en.js"></script>
```

The second solution will increase the size of your application by 33 KB.

You can read more about pipes in the Angular documentation at <https://angular.io/docs/ts/latest/guide/pipes.html>, which includes the name of the class implementing a particular pipe as well as examples of its use.

#### 5.3.1 Custom pipes

In addition to predefined pipes, Angular offers a simple way to create custom pipes, which can include code specific to your application. You need to create a @Pipe annotated class that implements the PipeTransform interface. The PipeTransform interface has the following signature:

```
export interface PipeTransform {
  transform(value: any, ...args: any[]): any;
}
```

This tells you that a custom pipe class must implement just one method with the preceding signature. The first parameter of `transform` takes a value to be transformed, and the second defines zero or more parameters required for your transformation algorithm. The `@Pipe` annotation is where you specify the name of the pipe to be used in the template. If your component uses custom pipes, they have to be explicitly listed in its `@Component` annotation in the `pipes` property.

In the previous section, the weather example displayed the temperature in London in Fahrenheit. But most countries use the metric system and show temperature in Celsius. Let's create a custom pipe that can convert the temperature from Fahrenheit to Celsius and back. The code of the custom `TemperaturePipe` pipe (see the following listing) can be used in a template as `temperature`.

#### Listing 5.6 temperature-pipe.ts

A custom pipe implements the `PipeTransform` interface, so you must add the transform method.

If this pipe is used without providing a format, you throw an error. An alternative approach would be to return the provided value without transformation.

```
import {Pipe, PipeTransform} from '@angular/core';

@Pipe({name: 'temperature'})
export class TemperaturePipe implements PipeTransform {

    transform(value: any[], fromTo: string): any {
        if (!fromTo) {
            throw "Temperature pipe requires parameter FtoC or CtoF ";
        }
        return (fromTo == 'FtoC') ?
            (value - 32) * 5.0/9.0: // F to C
            value * 9.0 / 5.0 + 32; // C to F
    }
}
```

The name of the pipe is `temperature`, and it can be used in the component's template.

Next comes the code of the component (`pipe-tester.ts`) that uses the `temperature` pipe. Initially this program will convert the temperature from Fahrenheit to Celsius (the `FtoC` format). By clicking the toggle button, you can change the direction of the temperature conversion.

#### Listing 5.7 pipe-tester.ts

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { FormsModule } from '@angular/forms';
import { TemperaturePipe } from './temperature-pipe';

@Component({
```

```

selector: 'app',
template:`<input type='text' value="0"
placeholder= "Enter temperature" [(ngModel)] = "temp">
<button (click)="toggleFormat()">Toggle Format</button>
<br>In {{targetFormat}} this temperature is {{temp | temperature:
  format | number:'1.1-2'}}` ←
)
class AppComponent {
  temp: number;
  toCelsius: boolean=true;
  targetFormat: string ='Celsius';
  format: string='FtoC'; ←
  toggleFormat() { ←
    this.toCelsius = !this.toCelsius;
    this.format = this.toCelsius? 'FtoC': 'CtoF';
    this.targetFormat = this.toCelsius?'Celsius':'Fahrenheit';
  }
}
@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule, FormsModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent, TemperaturePipe ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ] ←
})
class AppModule { } ←
platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

**Chains the temperature pipe with Angular's number pipe to display the resulting temperature as a number that has at least one digit before the decimal point and up to two digits after**

**The initial value, FtoC, is passed as a parameter to the temperature pipe.**

**When the user clicks the toggle button, switches the conversion direction and changes the output text accordingly**

**Imports FormsModule, which is required for ngModel support**

**Explicitly lists the custom pipe in the module declarations**

In the following section, you'll create yet another custom pipe to filter auctioned products.

## 5.4 Hands-on: filtering products in the online auction

In this exercise, you'll use observable event streams to filter featured products on the home page of the online auction. An auction (or any online store) may display many products, which complicates finding a specific product.

For example, auction users may remember just a couple of letters in a product title. To spare them scrolling through pages of products, you'll let them start typing the product title to filter out products that don't match. Most important, the rendered product list must change as the user types.

This is a good use case for applying reactive observable event streams. The user types a letter, which emits the next element of the stream that represents the current content of the search field. The subscriber of this stream provides immediate filtering and re-rendering of the products on the UI. In this scenario, you won't make any requests to the server.

**NOTE** We'll use the auction application developed in chapter 4 as a starting point for this exercise. If you prefer to see the final version of this project, you can browse the source code in the auction folder for chapter 5. Otherwise, copy the auction folder from chapter 4 to a separate location, run `npm install`, and follow the instructions in this section.

Follow these steps:

- 1 Create a custom pipe, `FilterPipe`. To do so, create a new pipes subdirectory under `app`, and in it create the following `filter-pipe.ts` file, implementing the custom pipe `FilterPipe`.

#### Listing 5.8 filter-pipe.ts

```
import { Pipe, PipeTransform } from '@angular/core';

@Pipe({name: 'filter'})
export class FilterPipe implements PipeTransform {

  transform(list: any[], filterByField: string, filterValue: string): any {
    if (!filterByField || !filterValue) { ←
      return list;
    }

    return list.filter(item => { ←
      const field = item[filterByField].toLowerCase();
      const filter = filterValue.toLocaleLowerCase();
      return field.indexOf(filter) >= 0;
    });
  }
}
```

If either the field name or the filter's value isn't provided, don't filter.

Filters the array of Product objects by the property passed in the filterByField parameter. It returns true only for those array elements that have characters provided as a filterValue.

- 2 Modify `HomeComponent` to use `FilterPipe`. `HomeComponent` is the parent of `<auction-product-item>` components, and it also has a `products` variable that stores an array of products provided by `ProductService`. `FilterPipe` will filter out the elements of this array.

You need to add an `<input>` element where the user can enter a filter criterion. `HomeComponent` will subscribe to the observable stream of events from this input field to get the value for the pipe.

Finally, you need to use the custom pipe, which requires the following:

- Import the `FilterPipe`.
- Include `FilterPipe` in the declarations section of the `@NgModule` annotation.
- Apply the filter in the `*ngFor` loop to each array element.

Modify the code of the `home.ts` file so it looks like the following listing.

**Listing 5.9 home.ts**

```

import {Component} from '@angular/core';
import {FormControl} from '@angular/forms';
import {Product, ProductService} from '../../../../../services/product-service';
import CarouselComponent from '../carousel/carousel';
import ProductItemComponent from '../product-item/product-item';
import {FilterPipe} from '../pipes/filter-pipe'           ← Imports the pipe
import 'rxjs/add/operator/debounceTime';

@Component({
  selector: 'auction-home-page',
  styleUrls: ['app/components/home/home.css'],
  template: `
    <div class="row carousel-holder">
      <div class="col-md-12">
        <auction-carousel></auction-carousel>
      </div>
    </div>
    <div class="row">
      <div class="col-md-12">
        <div class="form-group">
          <input placeholder="Filter products by title"
                 class="form-control" type="text"
                 [FormControl]="titleFilter">           ← Addx the input element
          </div>
        </div>
      </div>
      <div class="row">
        <div *ngFor="let product of products | filter:'title':filterCriteria"
             class="col-sm-4 col-lg-4 col-md-4">
          <auction-product-item [product]="product"></auction-product-item>
        </div>
      </div>
    </div>
  `)
export default class HomeComponent {
  products: Product[] = [];
  titleFilter: FormControl = new FormControl();
  filterCriteria: string;

  constructor(private productService: ProductService) {
    this.products = this.productService.getProducts();
    this.titleFilter.valueChanges
      .debounceTime(100)
      .subscribe(
        value => this.filterCriteria = value,
        error => console.error(error));
  }
}

```

**Addx the input element where the user can type**

**Applies the filter pipe. filter is the name of the custom pipe, title is the product property to filter by, and filterCriteria is the name of the property that holds the current filter criterion entered by the user.**

**Subscribes to the input's events stream, and assigns the filter value to match the current value of the <input> element.**

- 3 Add ReactiveFormsModule to the imports section of @NgModule in app.module.ts. You need it to support the filter <input> element.

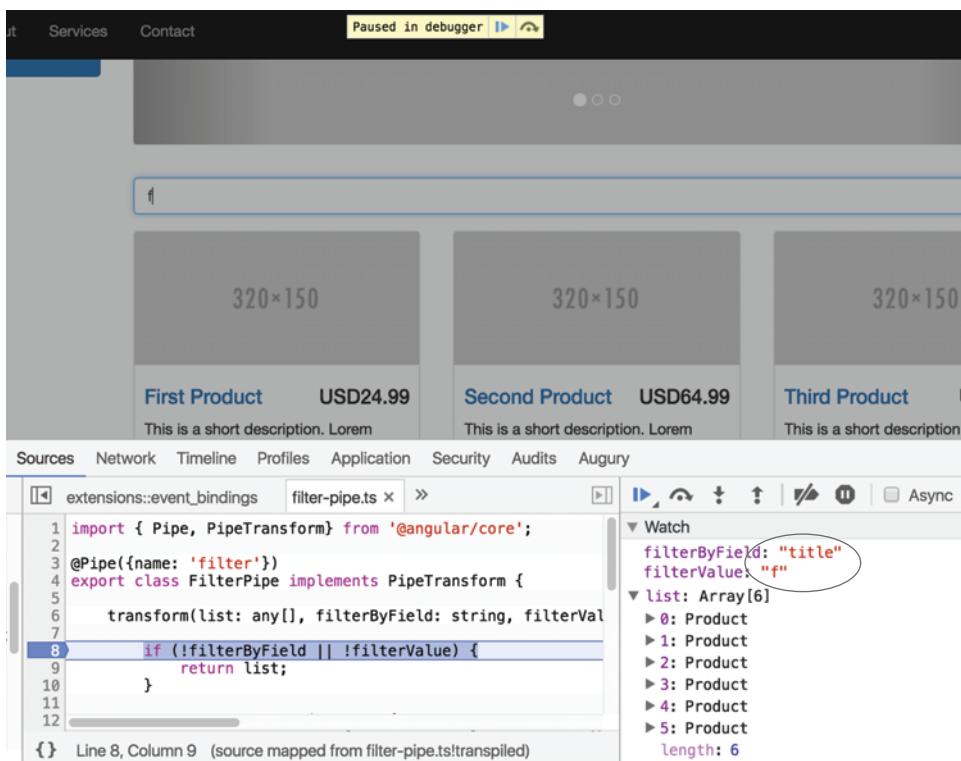


Figure 5.11 FilterPipe receives the values.

- Run the application by entering `npm start` in the Command window. Start typing any letters from the product title in the filter field, and you'll see that only products that meet the filter criteria are rendered by the browser.

For reference, we ran the auction application and paused it in the debugger after typing the letter `f` in the filter field. Figure 5.11 shows the input received by `FilterPipe` before the filtering is complete.

In the Watch panel, you can see the values received by `FilterPipe` as parameters. The arrows illustrate TypeScript destructuring in action. After the filtering is complete, this window shows only products that have “f” in their titles. In this hands-on exercise, you implemented the event observable stream and the custom pipe.

## 5.5 Summary

From a binding perspective, there’s a separation of responsibilities between a software developer and Angular. The developer is responsible for providing bindings between the component’s template and the supporting code. Angular applies its change-detection mechanism to ensure that bindings are immediately updated to reflect the current state of the application.

Observable streams are a fundamental concept of the *reactive* programming style, which is being practiced by developers in multiple programming languages. RxJS 5, the JavaScript library of reactive extensions, is integrated into the Angular framework.

These are the main takeaways from this chapter:

- Binding to a component's properties propagates the data in one direction: from DOM to UI.
- Binding to events propagates actions from the UI to the component.
- Two-way binding is denoted with the `[()]` notation.
- You can use a structural directive, `ngIf`, to add nodes to and remove nodes from the browser's DOM.
- Using observable data streams simplifies asynchronous programming. You can subscribe to and unsubscribe from a stream as well as cancel pending requests for data.



# *Implementing component communications*

---

## **This chapter covers**

- Creating loosely coupled components
- How a parent component should pass data to its child, and vice versa
- Implementing the Mediator design pattern to create reusable components
- A component lifecycle
- Understanding change detection

We've established that any Angular application is a tree of components. While designing components, you need to ensure that they're reusable and self-contained and at the same time have some means for communicating with each other. In this chapter, we'll focus on how components can pass data to each other in a loosely coupled manner.

First, we'll show you how a parent component can pass data to its child by binding to the input properties of the child. Then you'll see how a child component can send data to its parent by emitting events via its output properties.

We'll continue with an example that applies the Mediator design pattern to arrange data exchange between components that don't have parent-child relationships. The Mediator pattern is probably the most important pattern in any component-based framework. Finally, we'll discuss the lifecycle of an Angular component and the hooks you can use to provide application-specific code that intercepts important events during a component's creation, lifespan, and destruction.

## 6.1 Inter-component communication

Figure 6.1 shows a view that consists of a number of components that are numbered and have different shapes for easier reference. Some of the components contain other components (let's call the outer ones *containers*), and others are peers. To abstract this from any particular UI framework, we avoided using HTML elements like input fields, drop-downs, and buttons, but you can extrapolate this into a view of your real-world application.

When you design a view that consists of multiple components, the less they know about each other, the better. Say a user clicks the button in component 4, which has to initiate some actions in component 5. Is it possible to implement this scenario without component 4 knowing that component 5 exists? Yes, it is.

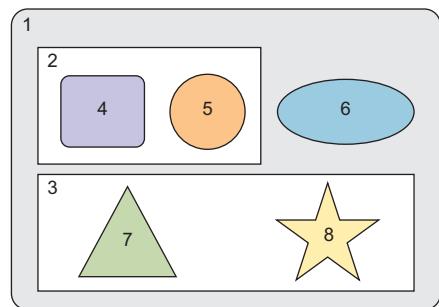
You've seen already examples of loosely coupling components by using dependency injection. Now we'll show you a different technique for achieving the same goal, using bindings and events.

### 6.1.1 Input and output properties

Think of an Angular component as a black box with outlets. Some of them are marked as `@Input()`, and others are marked as `@Output()`. You can create a component with as many inputs and outputs as you want.

If an Angular component needs to receive values from the outside world, you can bind the producers of these values to the corresponding inputs of the component. Whom are they received from? The component doesn't have to know. The component just needs to know *what* to do with these values when they're provided.

If a component needs to communicate values to the outside world, it can *emit events* through its outputs. Whom are they emitted to? The component doesn't have to know. Whoever is interested can listen or subscribe to the events that a component emits.



**Figure 6.1** A view consists of components.

Let's implement these principles. First you'll create an `OrderComponent` that can receive order requests from the outside world.

#### INPUT PROPERTIES

The input properties of a component are decorated with `@Input` and are used to get data from the parent component. Imagine that you want to create a UI component for placing orders to buy stocks. It will know how to connect to the stock exchange, but that's irrelevant in the context of this discussion of input properties. You want to ensure that `OrderComponent` receives data from other components via its properties marked with `@Input` annotations.

Listing 6.1 includes two components: `AppComponent` (the parent) and `OrderComponent` (the child). The latter has two properties, `stockSymbol` and `quantity`, marked with `@Input` annotations. The `AppComponent` allows users to enter a stock symbol, which is passed to the `OrderComponent` via bindings.

You'll also pass `quantity` to the `OrderComponent`; but you won't use binding with `quantity`, so you can see the case when a parent needs to pass to the child a value that won't be changing. You'll leave off the binding mechanism by not surrounding the `quantity` attribute in the `<order-processor>` tag with square brackets.

#### Listing 6.1 `input_property_binding.ts`

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component, Input } from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';

@Component({
  selector: 'order-processor',
  template: `
    Buying {{quantity}} shares of {{stockSymbol}}
  `,
  styles:[`>host {background: cyan;}`]
})
class OrderComponent {

  @Input() stockSymbol: string;
  @Input() quantity: number;
}

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `
    <input type="text" placeholder="Enter stock (e.g. IBM)" 
      (change)="onInputEvent($event)">
    <br/>
    <order-processor [stockSymbol]="stock"
      quantity="100"></order-processor>
  `
})
class AppComponent {
  stock: string;
}
```

**Declares two input properties**

**Binds the value of the stock property of AppComponent to the input property of OrderComponent**

**Assigns the value 100 to the input property of OrderComponent. There's no binding here.**

```

    onInputEvent({target}):void{
        this.stock=target.value;
    }
}

@NgModule({
    imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
    declarations: [ AppComponent, OrderComponent ],
    bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

As soon as the user moves the focus from the AppComponent input field, the change event is dispatched, and OrderComponent gets a new stock symbol for processing.

**TIP** Because you don't use binding for the quantity attribute, the value 100 arrives in OrderComponent as a string (all values in HTML attributes are strings). If you want to preserve the types, use bindings, like this: [quantity]="100".

**NOTE** If you change the value of stockSymbol or quantity in the OrderComponent, the change won't affect the property values of the parent component. Property binding is unidirectional: from parent to child.

Figure 6.2 shows the browser's window after the user types IBM in the input field. The OrderComponent received the input values.

The next question is, how can a component intercept the moment when one of its input properties changes? A simple way is to change the input property to a setter. You use stockSymbol in the template of the component, so you need the getter as well. Because you have a public setter, rename the variable to \_stockSymbol and make it private.



**Figure 6.2** OrderComponent got the values.

### Listing 6.2 Adding the setter and getter

```

private _stockSymbol: string;

@Input()
set stockSymbol(value: string) {
    this._stockSymbol = value;
    if (this._stockSymbol != undefined) {
        console.log(`Sending a Buy order to NASDAQ:
        ➔ ${this.stockSymbol} ${this.quantity}`);
    }
}

get stockSymbol(): string {
    return this._stockSymbol;
}

```

When this application starts, all input variables are initialized with default values, and the change-detection mechanism qualifies the initialization as a change of the bound variable `stockSymbol`. The setter is invoked, and, to avoid sending an order for the undefined `stockSymbol`, you check its value in the setter.

**NOTE** In section 6.2.1, we'll show you how to intercept the changes in input properties without using setters.

In chapter 3, we showed you how to pass parameters to a component using `ActivatedRoute`. In this scenario, parameters are passed via constructor. Binding to `@Input()` parameters is a solution for passing data from parent to child, and it works only for components located within the same route.

#### OUTPUT PROPERTIES AND CUSTOM EVENTS

Angular components can dispatch custom events using the `EventEmitter` object. These events can be handled either in the component or by its parents. `EventEmitter` is a subclass of `Subject` (implemented in RxJS) that can serve as both observable and observer. In other words, `EventEmitter` can dispatch custom events using its `emit()` method as well as consume observables using its `subscribe()` method. Because this section is about sending data from a component to the outside world, we'll focus on dispatching custom events here.

Let's say you need to write a UI component that's connected to a stock exchange and displays changing stock prices. This component may be used in a financial dashboard application in a brokerage firm. In addition to displaying prices, the component should also send events with the latest prices to the outside world so other components can apply business logic to the changing prices.

Let's create a `PriceQuoterComponent` that implements such functionality. For this example, you won't connect to any servers but will rather emulate the changing prices using a random number generator. Displaying changing prices in `PriceQuoterComponent` is pretty straightforward—you'll bind the `stockSymbol` and `lastPrice` properties to the component's template.

You'll notify the outside world by emitting custom events via the `@Output` property of the component. Not only will you fire the event as soon as the price changes, but this event will also carry a payload: an object with the stock symbol and the latest price. The following script implements this functionality.

#### Listing 6.3 `output-property-binding.ts`

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component, Output, EventEmitter }
  ↪   from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';

interface IPriceQuote {
  stockSymbol: string;
} ← Declares a TypeScript interface to represent
      a price quote. This will help your IDE with
      error checking and type-ahead prompts.
```

**Displays the stock symbol and price in the component's UI. You use CurrencyPipe for currency formatting.**

```

        lastPrice: number;
    }

    @Component({
        selector: 'price-quoter',
        template: `<strong>Inside PriceQuoterComponent: {{stockSymbol}}</strong>`  

        {{price | currency:'USD':true:'1.2-2'}}</strong>`,
        styles:[`:host {background: pink;}`]
    })
    class PriceQuoterComponent {
        @Output() lastPrice: EventEmitter<IPriceQuote> = new EventEmitter();
        stockSymbol: string = "IBM";
        price:number;
        constructor() {
            setInterval(() => {
                let priceQuote: IPriceQuote = {
                    stockSymbol: this.stockSymbol,
                    lastPrice: 100*Math.random()
                };

                this.price = priceQuote.lastPrice;
                this.lastPrice.emit(priceQuote)
            }, 1000);
        }
    }
    @Component({
        selector: 'app',
        template: `<price-quoter (lastPrice)="priceQuoteHandler($event)"></price-quoter><br>
        AppComponent received: {{stockSymbol}} {{price |  

        currency:'USD':true:'1.2-2'}}`  

    })
    @NgModule({
        imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
        declarations: [ AppComponent, PriceQuoterComponent ],
        bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
    })
    class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

The output property, `lastPrice`, is represented by the `EventEmitter` object, which emits `lastPrice` events to the parents of this component.

This example uses a hard-coded value, IBM, as a stock symbol.

Emulates changing prices by invoking a function that generates a random number every second and populates the `priceQuote` object

Sends each new price to whomever is interested via the `output` property by emitting an event, which carries the `priceQuote` object as a payload

This tag represents the `PriceQuoterComponent` child component, which internally updates the price quotes in its template. On the application level, the event handler for the `last-price` event is invoked to display the price quote that arrives with the event object.

Displays the price quotes in the application's template as well

The event handler receives the object of type `IPriceQuote`, and you extract the values of `stockSymbol` and `lastPrice` from it. If you run this example, you'll see the prices update every second in both `PriceQuoterComponent` (shaded background) as well as `AppComponent` (white background), as shown in figure 6.3.

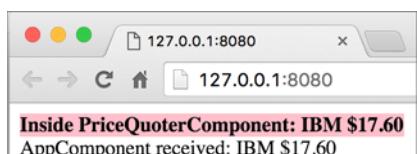


Figure 6.3 Running the output properties example

**TIP** By default, the name of a custom event is the same as the name of the output property, which is `lastPrice` in this case. If you want to emit an event with a different name, specify the name of the event as an argument to the `@Output` annotation. For example, to emit an event called `last-price`, declare the output property as `@Output('last-price') lastPrice;`.

In listing 5.3, you create `PriceQuoterComponent` as an Angular component because it includes the UI. But the business may require the functionality for price-quote retrieval without the UI, in order to reuse it both in trader applications and on large dashboards. You could implement the same functionality as an injectable service, as you did with `ProductService` in the online auction project.

### Event bubbling

As we write this, Angular doesn't offer a syntax to support event bubbling. For `PriceQuoterComponent`, this means if you try to listen to the `last-price` event not on this component but on its parent, the event won't bubble up there. In the following code snippet, the `last-price` event won't reach the `<div>` because it's the parent of `<price-quoter>`:

```
<div (last-price)="priceQuoteHandler($event)">
  <price-quoter></price-quoter>
</div>
```

If event bubbling is important to your application, don't use `EventEmitter`; use native DOM events, instead. The following example is another version of `PriceQuoterComponent` that handles event bubbling without using Angular's `EventEmitter`:

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component, ElementRef } from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';

interface IPriceQuote {
  stockSymbol: string,
  lastPrice: number
}

@Component({
  selector: 'price-quoter',
  template: `PriceQuoter: {{stockSymbol}} \${{price}}`,
  styles:[`::host {background: pink;}`]
})
class PriceQuoterComponent {
  stockSymbol: string = "IBM";
  price:number;

  constructor(element: ElementRef) {
    setInterval(() => {
```

```
(continued)
    let priceQuote: IPriceQuote = {
      stockSymbol: this.stockSymbol,
      lastPrice: 100*Math.random()
    };

    this.price = priceQuote.lastPrice;

    element.nativeElement
      .dispatchEvent(new CustomEvent('last-price', {
        detail: priceQuote,
        bubbles: true
      }));
    }, 1000);
}
}

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `
    <div (last-price)="priceQuoteHandler($event)">
      <price-quoter></price-quoter>
    </div>
    <br>
    AppComponent received: {{stockSymbol}} \${{price}}
  `
})
class AppComponent {

  stockSymbol: string;
  price:number;

  priceQuoteHandler(event: CustomEvent) {
    this.stockSymbol = event.detail.stockSymbol;
    this.price = event.detail.lastPrice;
  }
}
@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent, PriceQuoterComponent ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);
```

In the preceding application, Angular injects a reference to the DOM element that represents `<price-quoter>` using `ElementRef`, and then the custom event is dispatched by invoking `element.nativeElement.dispatchEvent()`. Event bubbling will work here, but keep in mind that this code becomes browser-specific and won't work with non-HTML renderers.

### 6.1.2 The Mediator pattern

When you design a component-based UI, each component should be self-contained, and components shouldn't rely on the existence of other UI components. Such loosely coupled components can be implemented using the Mediator design pattern, which according to Wikipedia "defines how a set of objects interact" ([https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mediator\\_pattern](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mediator_pattern)). We'll explain what this means by analogy with toy interconnecting bricks.

Imagine a child playing with building bricks (think *components*) that "don't know" about each other. Today this child (the *mediator*) can use some blocks to build a house, and tomorrow they'll construct a boat from the same components.

**NOTE** The role of the mediator is to ensure that components properly fit together according to the task at hand while remaining loosely coupled.

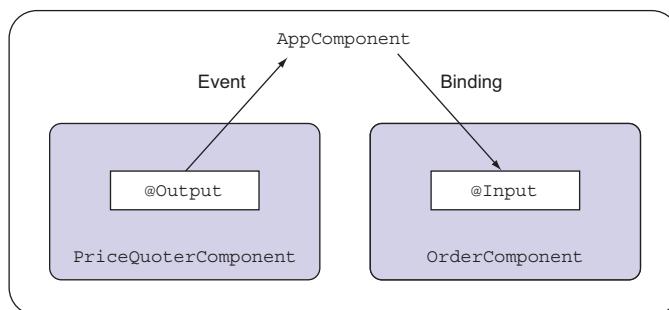
Let's revisit figure 6.1. Each component except 1 has a parent (a container) that can play the role of mediator. The top-level mediator is container 1, which is responsible for making sure components 2, 3, and 6 can communicate if need be. On the other hand, component 2 is a mediator for 4 and 5. Component 3 is the mediator for 7 and 8.

The mediator needs to receive data from one component and pass it to another. Let's go back to examples of monitoring stock prices.

Imagine a trader monitoring the prices of several stocks. At some point, the trader clicks the Buy button next to a stock symbol to place a purchase order with the stock exchange. You can easily add a Buy button to `PriceQuoterComponent` from the previous section, but this component doesn't know how to place orders to buy stocks. `PriceQuoterComponent` will notify the mediator (`AppComponent`) that the trader wants to purchase a particular stock at that very moment.

The mediator should know which component can place purchase orders and how to pass the stock symbol and quantity to it. Figure 6.4 shows how an `AppComponent` can mediate the communication between `PriceQuoterComponent` and `OrderComponent`.

**NOTE** Emitting events works like broadcasting. `PriceQuoterComponent` emits events via the `@Output` property without knowing who will receive the events. `OrderComponent` waits for the value of the `@Input` property to change as a signal for placing an order.



**Figure 6.4** Mediating communications

To demonstrate the Mediator pattern in action, let's write a small application that consists of the two components shown in figure 6.4. You can find this application in the mediator directory, which has the following files:

- *stock.ts*—The interface defining a value object that represents a stock
- *price-quoter.ts*—PriceQuoterComponent
- *order.ts*—OrderComponent
- *mediator.ts*—PriceQuoterComponent and OrderComponent

You'll use the Stock interface in two scenarios:

- To represent the payload of the event emitted by PriceQuoterComponent
- To represent the data given to the OrderComponent via binding

The content of the stock.ts file is as follows.

#### **Listing 6.4 stock.ts**

```
export interface Stock {
  stockSymbol: string;
  bidPrice: number;
}
```

Suppose you use SystemJS to transpile the TypeScript on the fly. By default, SystemJS will turn the content of the stock.ts file into an empty stock.js module, and you'll get an error when the SystemJS loader tries to import it. You need to let SystemJS know that it has to treat Stock as a module. This can be done while configuring SystemJS by using the `meta` annotation, as shown in the following code extract from systemjs.config.js:

```
packages: {...},
meta: {
  'app/mediator/stock.ts': {
    format: 'es6'
  }
}
```

The PriceQuoterComponent, shown next, has a Buy button and the `buy` output property. It emits the `buy` event only when the user clicks the Buy button.

#### **Listing 6.5 price-quoter.ts**

```
import {Component, Output, Directive, EventEmitter} from '@angular/core';
import {Stock} from './stock';

@Component({
  selector: 'price-quoter',
  template: `<strong><input type="button" value="Buy"
  (click)="buyStocks($event)">
  {{stockSymbol}} \${{lastPrice | currency:'USD':true:'1.2-2'}}</strong>`}
```

```

    ↵ </strong>
    ``,
    styles:[`:host {background: pink; padding: 5px 15px 15px 15px;}`]
})
export class PriceQuoterComponent {
    @Output() buy: EventEmitter<Stock> = new EventEmitter();

    stockSymbol: string = "IBM";
    lastPrice:number;

    constructor() {
        setInterval(() => {
            this.lastPrice = 100*Math.random();
        }, 2000);
    }

    buyStocks(): void{
        let stockToBuy: Stock = {
            stockSymbol: this.stockSymbol,
            bidPrice: this.lastPrice
        };

        this.buy.emit(stockToBuy);
    }
}

```

When the mediator (AppComponent) receives the buy event from <price-quoter>, it extracts the payload from this event and assigns it to the stock variable, which is bound to the input parameter of <order-processor>. The code is shown next.

#### Listing 6.6 mediator.ts

```

import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component } from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';

import {OrderComponent} from './order';
import {PriceQuoterComponent} from './price-quoter';
import {Stock} from './stock';

@Component({
    selector: 'app',
    template:
    `<price-quoter (buy)="priceQuoteHandler($event)"></price-quoter><br>
    <br/>
    <order-processor [stock]="stock"></order-processor>
    `)
class AppComponent {
    stock: Stock;

    priceQuoteHandler(event:Stock) {

```

```

        this.stock = event;
    }
}
@NgModule({
    imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
    declarations: [ AppComponent, OrderComponent,
                    PriceQuoterComponent ],
    bootstrap:    [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

When the value of the buy input property on OrderComponent changes, its setter displays the message “Placed order ...”, showing the stockSymbol and the bidPrice.

#### Listing 6.7 order.ts

```

import {Component, Input} from '@angular/core';
import {Stock} from './stock';

@Component({
    selector: 'order-processor',
    template: `{{message}}`,
    styles:[`host {background: cyan;}`]
})
export class OrderComponent {

    message:string = "Waiting for the orders...";

    private _stock: Stock;

    @Input() set stock(value: Stock ){
        if (value && value.bidPrice != undefined) {
            this.message = `Placed order to buy 100 shares of
                ${value.stockSymbol} at $$$${value.bidPrice.toFixed(2)}`;
        }
    }

    get stock(): Stock{
        return this._stock;
    }
}

```

The screenshot in figure 6.5 was taken after the user clicked the Buy button when the price of the IBM stock was \$12.17. PriceQuoterComponent is rendered on top, and OrderComponent is at the bottom. They're self-contained and loosely coupled.



Figure 6.5 Running the mediator example

**TIP** Don't start implementing the UI components of your application until you've identified your mediators, the custom reusable components, and the means of communication between them.

The Mediator design pattern is a good fit for the online auction as well. Imagine the last minutes of a bidding war for a hot item. Users monitor frequently updated bids and click the button to increase their bids.

### An alternative implementation of Mediator

In this section, you saw how sibling components use their parent as a mediator. If components don't have the same parent or aren't displayed at the same time (the router may not display the required component at the moment), you can use an injectable service as a mediator. Whenever the component is created, the mediator service is injected, and the component can subscribe to events emitted by the service (as opposed to using `@Input()` parameters like `OrderComponent` did).

If you'd like to see this in action, read the "Providing search results to HomeComponent" section in the hands-on exercise in chapter 8. Check the code of the `ProductService` that plays the role of the mediator. This service defines the `searchEvent: EventEmitter` variable, which is used by `SearchComponent` to emit the data entered by the user. `HomeComponent` subscribes to the `searchEvent` variable to receive the text entered by the user in the search form.

#### 6.1.3 *Changing templates at runtime with ngContent*

In some cases, you'll want to be able to dynamically change the content of a component's template at runtime. In AngularJS, this was known as *transclusion*, but the new term for it is *projection*. In Angular, you can project a fragment of the parent component's template onto its child by using the `ngContent` directive. The syntax is pretty simple and requires two steps:

- 1 In the child component's template, include the tags `<ng-content></ng-content>` (the *insertion point*).
- 2 In the parent component, include the HTML fragment that you want to project into the child's insertion point between tags representing the child component (such as `<my-child>`):

```
template: `...  
  <my-child>  
    <div>Passing this div to the child</div>  
  </my-child>  
`...
```

In this example, the parent component won't render the content placed between `<my-child>` and `</my-child>`. The following listing illustrates this technique.

**Listing 6.8 basic-ng-content.ts**

```

import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component, ViewEncapsulation }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';

@Component({
  selector: 'child',
  styles: ['.wrapper {background: lightgreen;}'],
  template: `
    <div class="wrapper">
      <h2>Child</h2>
      <div>This div is defined in the child's template</div>
      <ng-content></ng-content>
    </div>
  `,
  encapsulation: ViewEncapsulation.Native
})
class ChildComponent {}

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  styles: ['.wrapper {background: cyan;}'],
  template: `
    <div class="wrapper">
      <h2>Parent</h2>
      <div>This div is defined in the Parent's template</div>
      <child>
        <div>Parent projects this div onto the child </div>
      </child>
    </div>
  `,
  encapsulation: ViewEncapsulation.Native
})
class AppComponent {}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent, ChildComponent ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

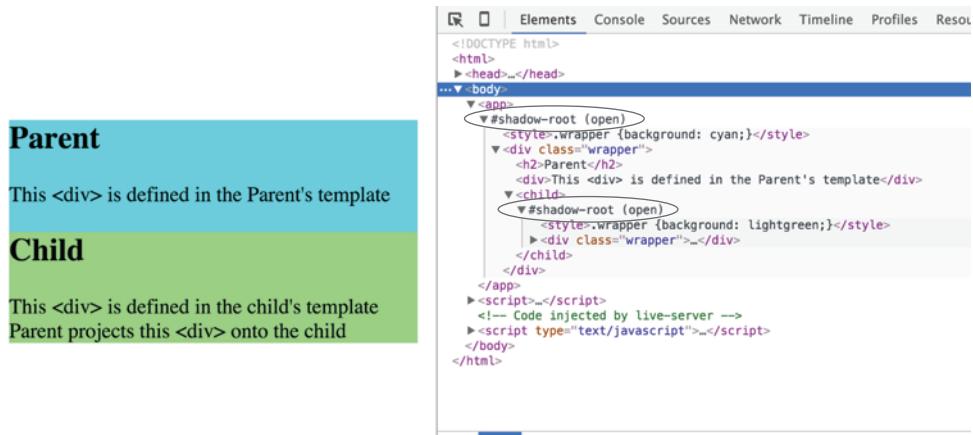
```

**The content that comes from the parent is displayed here.**

**By default, Angular uses the ViewEncapsulation.Emulated mode (see the “Shadow DOM support in Angular” sidebar in chapter 3). You’ll start with Native, and then you’ll rerun this program in Emulated and None modes.**

**This content isn’t rendered by AppComponent but is passed ChildComponent instead.**

We’ll also use this example to illustrate how the Shadow DOM and Angular’s View-Encapsulation work. Have you noticed that both parent and child components use the `.wrapper` style in their outermost `<div>` elements? In a regular HTML page, this would mean both parent and child would be rendered with the same style. We’ll show that it’s possible to encapsulate styles in child components so they don’t conflict with parent styles if their names are the same.

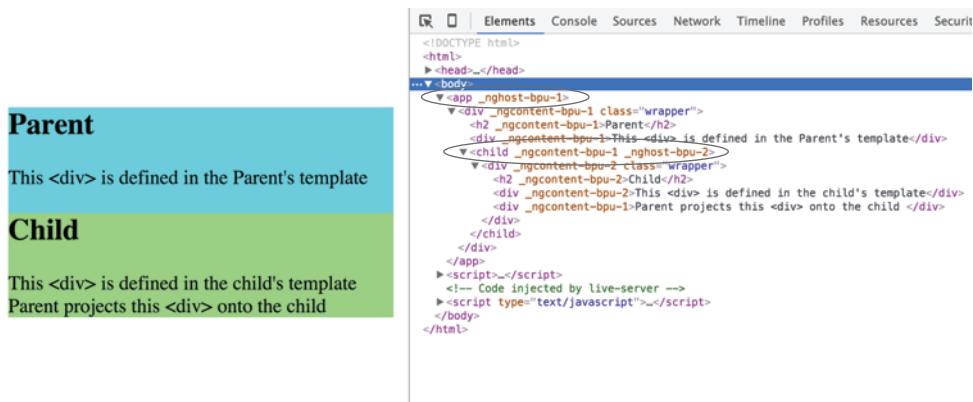


**Figure 6.6** Running basic-ng-content.ts with ViewEncapsulation.Native

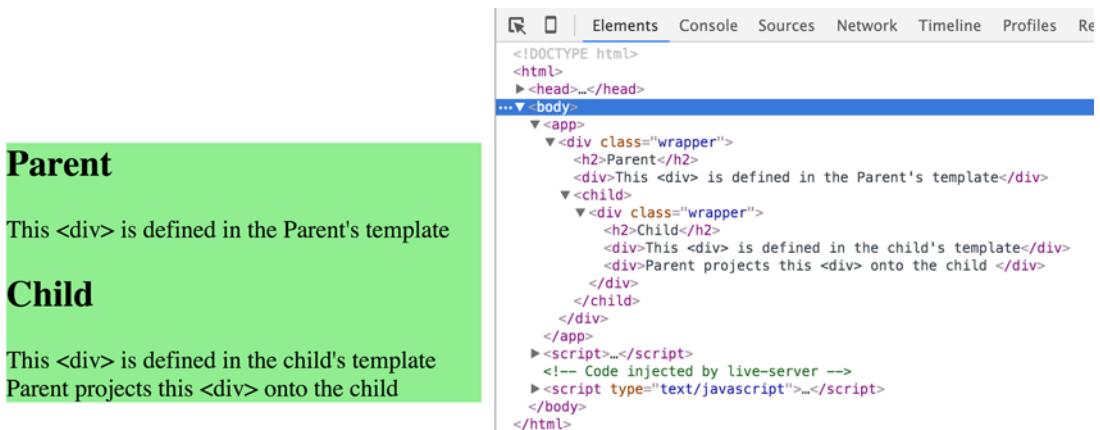
Figure 6.6 shows the running application in ViewEncapsulation.Native mode with the Developer Tools panel open. The ChildComponent got the HTML content from AppComponent and created Shadow DOM nodes for parent and child (see #shadow-root on the right). Note that the .wrapper style from the parent's <div> (cyan background, if you're reading this book in color) wasn't applied to the child's <div> also using the .wrapper style, which is rendered in a light green background. The child's #shadow-root acts as a wall protecting the child's styles from inheriting the parent's styles.

The screenshot in figure 6.7 was taken after changing encapsulation to ViewEncapsulation.Emulated. The DOM structure is different, and there are no longer any #shadow-root nodes. Angular generated additional attributes for the parent's and child's elements to implement encapsulation, but the UI is rendered the same way.

Figure 6.8 shows the same example running with encapsulation set to ViewEncapsulation.None. In this case, all of the parent's and child's elements were merged into



**Figure 6.7** Running basic-ng-content.ts with ViewEncapsulation.Emulated



**Figure 6.8** Running basic-ng-content.ts with ViewEncapsulation.None

the main DOM tree, and the styles weren't encapsulated—the entire window is shown with the parent's light green background.

#### PROJECTING INTO MULTIPLE AREAS

A component can have more than one `<ng-content>` tag in its template. Let's consider an example where a child component's template is split into three areas: header, content, and footer. The HTML markup for the header and footer could be projected by the parent component, and the content area could be defined in the child component. To implement this, the child component needs to include two separate pairs of `<ng-content></ng-content>` populated by the parent (header and footer).

To ensure that the header and footer content will be rendered in the proper `<ng-content>` areas, you'll use the `select` attribute, which can be any valid selector (a CSS class, a tag name, and so on). The child's template could look like this:

```

<ng-content select=".header"></ng-content>
<div>This content is defined in child</div>
<ng-content select=".footer"></ng-content>

```

The content that arrives from the parent will be matched by the selector and rendered in the corresponding area. Here's the complete code to implement this.

#### Listing 6.9 ng-content-selector.ts

```

import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component }         from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';

@Component({
  selector: 'child',
  styles: ['.child {background: lightgreen;}'],

```

```

template: `

<div class="child">
  <h2>Child</h2>
  <ng-content select=".header" ></ng-content>
  <div>This content is defined in child</div>
  <ng-content select=".footer"></ng-content>
</div>
`)

class ChildComponent {}

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  styles: ['.app {background: cyan;}'],
  template: `
    <div class="app">
      <h2>Parent</h2>
      <div>This div is defined in the Parent's template</div>
      <child>
        <div class="header" >Child got this header from parent {{todaysDate}}</div>
        <div class="footer">Child got this footer from parent</div>
      </child>
    </div>
  `)
class AppComponent {
  todaysDate: string = new Date().toLocaleDateString();
}

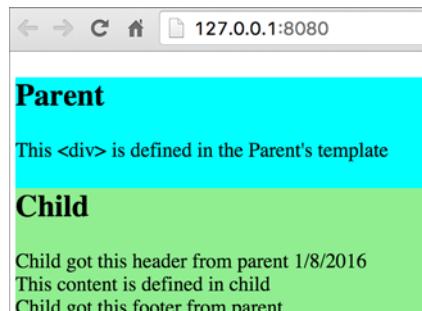
@NgModule({
  imports: [ BrowserModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent, ChildComponent ],
  bootstrap: [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

Note that you use property binding in `AppComponent` to include today's date in the header. The projected HTML can only bind the properties visible in the parent's scope, so you can't use the child's properties in the parent's binding expression.

Running this example will render the page shown in figure 6.9. The `ngContent` directive with the `select` attribute allows you to create a universal component with a view divided into several areas that get their markup from the outside.



**Figure 6.9** Running `ng-content-select.ts`

### Direct binding to innerHTML

You can bind a component property with HTML content directly to template, as in this example:

```
<p [innerHTML]="myComponentProperty"></p>
```

But using `ngContent` is preferable to binding to `innerHTML` for the following reasons:

- `innerHTML` is a browser-specific API, whereas `ngContent` is platform independent.
- With `ng-content`, you can define multiple slots where the HTML fragments will be inserted.
- `ngContent` allows you to bind the parent component's properties into projected HTML.

## 6.2 Component lifecycle

Various events happen during the lifecycle of an Angular component. When a component is created, the change-detection mechanism (explained in the next section) begins monitoring the component. The component is initialized, added to the DOM, and rendered so the user can see it. After that, the state of the component (the values of its properties) may change, causing re-rendering of the UI; and finally, the component is destroyed.

Figure 6.10 shows the lifecycle hooks (callbacks) where you can add custom code if need be. The callbacks shown on the light gray background will be invoked only once, and those on the darker background multiple times.

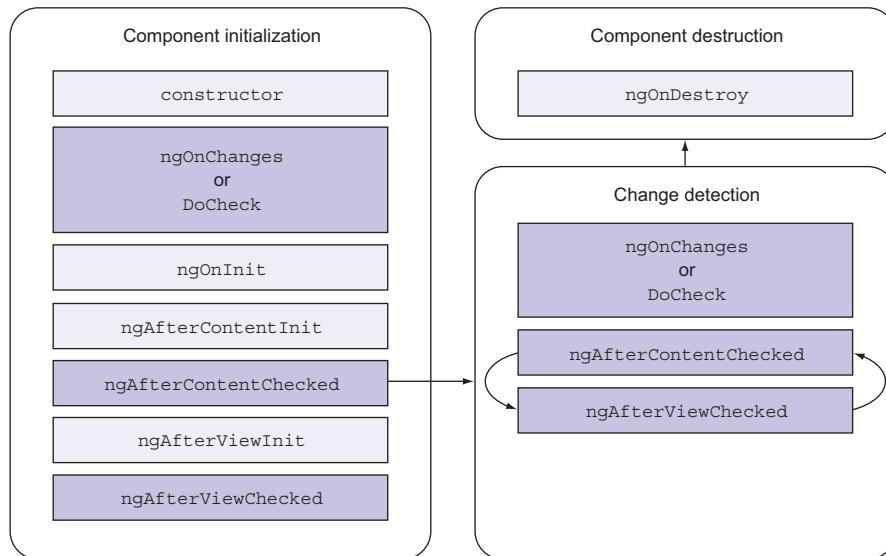


Figure 6.10 A component's lifecycle

The user sees the component after the initialization phase is complete. Then the change-detection mechanism ensures that the component's properties stay in sync with its UI. If the component is removed from the DOM tree as a result of the router's navigation or a structural directive (such as `ngIf`), Angular initiates the destroy phase.

The constructor is invoked first when the instance of the component is being created, but the component's properties aren't initialized yet in the constructor. After the constructor's code is complete, Angular will invoke the following callbacks *if you implemented them*:

- `ngOnChanges()`—Called when a parent component modifies (or initializes) the values bound to the input properties of a child. If the component has no input properties, `ngOnChanges()` isn't invoked. If you wish to implement a custom change-detection algorithm, it must be placed in `DoCheck()`. But implementing manual change detection there may be costly, because `DoCheck()` is invoked after every change-detection cycle.
- `ngOnInit()`—Invoked after the first invocation of `ngOnChanges()`, if any. Although you might initialize some component variables in the constructor, the properties of the component aren't ready yet. By the time `ngOnInit()` is invoked, the component's properties will have been initialized.
- `ngAfterContentInit()`—Invoked when the child component's state is initialized, if you used the `ngContent` directive to pass some HTML code to it.
- `ngAfterContentChecked()`—Invoked on the child component that used `ngContent` after it gets the content from the parent (or during the change-detection phase), if the bindings used in `ngContent` change.
- `ngAfterViewInit()`—Invoked when the binding on the component's template is complete. The parent component is initialized first, and, if it has children, this callback is invoked after all children are ready.
- `ngAfterViewChecked()`—Invoked when the change-detection mechanism checks whether there are any changes in the component template's bindings. This callback may be called more than once as the result of modifications in this or other components.

Whenever you see the word `Content` in the name of the lifecycle callback method, that method is applied if content is projected using `<ng-content>`. When you see the word `View` in the name of the callback method, it applies to the template of the component. The word `Checked` means the component's changes are applied and the component is synchronized with the DOM.

Some applications may need to invoke specific business logic whenever the value of a property changes. For example, financial applications need to log each of a trader's steps, so if a trader places a buy order at \$101 and then immediately changes the price to \$100, this must be tracked in a log file. This may be a good use case for adding logging in the `DoCheck()` callback.

During the destruction phase, your application may clean up system resources. Say your component is subscribed to an application-level service that keeps track of the

### When not to write code in constructors

In the online auction application, you inject `ProductService` in the constructor of `HomeComponent` and invoke the `getProducts()` method right there. If the `getProducts()` method needed to use values of the component's properties, you'd move the invocation of this method to `ngOnInit()` to ensure that all properties were initialized by the time you called `getProducts()`. The other reason to move code from the constructor to `ngOnInit()` is to keep the constructor's code light without starting any long-running synchronous functions from there.

application state (such as an application store offered by the Redux library). When Angular destroys this component, it should unsubscribe from the state service in the `ngOnDestroy()` callback.

**NOTE** Each lifecycle callback is declared in the interface with a name that matches the name of the callback without the prefix `ng`. For example, if you're planning to implement functionality in the `ngOnChanges()` callback, add `implements OnChanges` to your class declaration.

For more information about the component lifecycle, read the Angular documentation on lifecycle hooks at <http://mng.bz/6huZ>. In the next section, you'll see an example that uses one of the lifecycle hooks.

#### 6.2.1 Using `ngOnChanges`

Let's illustrate component lifecycle hooks using `ngOnChanges()`. This example will include parent and child components, and the latter will have two input properties: `greeting` and `user`. The first property is a `string`, and the second is an `Object` with one property, `name`. To understand why the `ngOnChanges()` callback may or may not be invoked, you need to be familiar with the concept of mutable versus immutable objects.

### Mutable vs. immutable

JavaScript strings are immutable, which means when a string value is created in memory, it will never change. Consider the following code snippet:

```
var greeting = "Hello";
greeting = "Hello Mary";
```

The first line creates the value `Hello` at a certain memory location, such as `@287651`. The second line doesn't change the value at that address but creates the new string `Hello Mary` at a different location, such as `@286777`. Now you have two strings in memory, and each of them is immutable.

What happens to the variable `greeting`? Its value changed, because it pointed initially at one memory location and then to another.

**(continued)**

JavaScript objects are mutable, which means after the object instance is created at a certain memory location, it stays there even if the values of its properties change. Consider the following code:

```
var user = {name: "John"};
user.name = "Mary";
```

After the first line, the object is created, and the `user` variable points at a certain memory location, such as @277500. The string `John` has been created at another memory location, such as @287600, and the `user.name` variable stores the reference to this address.

After the second line is executed, the new string `Mary` is created at another location, such as @287700, and the `user.name` variable stores the reference to this new address. But the `user` variable still stores the memory address @277500. In other words, you mutated the content of the object @277500.

Let's add the hook `ngOnChanges()` to the child component to demonstrate how it intercepts modifications of the input properties. This application has parent and child components. The child has two input properties (`greetings` and `user`) and one regular property (`message`). The user can modify the values of the input properties of the child. Let's demonstrate what property values will be given to the `ngOnChanges()` method if it's invoked.

#### Listing 6.10 `ng-onchanges-with-param.ts`

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component, Input, OnChanges, SimpleChange,
  enableProdMode } from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { FormsModule } from '@angular/forms';

interface IChanges {[key: string]: SimpleChange}; ←
  Declares a structural type for the object to store changes. It's used in ngOnChanges().

@Component({
  selector: 'child',
  styles: ['.child{background:lightgreen}'],
  template: `
    <div class="child">
      <h2>Child</h2>
      <div>Greeting: {{greeting}}</div>
      <div>User name: {{user.name}}</div>
      <div>Message: <input [(ngModel)]="message"></div>
    </div>
  `)
class ChildComponent implements OnChanges {
```

```

The input properties of
ChildComponent get their
values from AppComponent.

@Input() greeting: string;
@Input() user: {name: string};
message: string = 'Initial message';

ngOnChanges(changes: IChanges) {
  console.log(JSON.stringify(changes, null, 2));
}

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  styles: ['.parent {background: lightblue}'],
  template: `
    <div class="parent">
      <h2>Parent</h2>
      <div>Greeting: <input type="text" [value]="greeting"
        (change)="greeting = $event.target.value"></div> //
      <div>User name: <input type="text" [value]="user.name"
        (change)="user.name = $event.target.value"></div>

      <child [greeting]="greeting" [user]="user"></child>
    </div>
  `)
  class AppComponent {
    greeting: string = 'Hello';
    user: {name: string} = {name: 'John'};
  }

  enableProdMode();
}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule, FormsModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent, ChildComponent ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

The message property doesn't have the `@Input` annotation. We've added it to show that modifying its value won't result in an invocation of the `ngOnChanges` callback.

Angular invokes `ngOnChanges()` when the bindings to input properties change.

In the parent component, you modify the values of `greeting` and `user.name` on the `change` event, which is dispatched when these fields lose focus.

The values of the parent's `greeting` and `user` are bound to the child's input properties.

Enables production mode (see the sidebar "Enabling production mode")

When Angular invokes `ngOnChanges()`, it provides the values of each modified input property. Each modified value is represented by an instance of the `SimpleChange` object that contains the current and previous values of the modified input property. The `SimpleChange.isFirstChange()` method allows you to determine whether the value was set for the first time or if it's being updated. You use `JSON.stringify()` to pretty-print the received values.

**NOTE** TypeScript has a structural type system, so the type of the argument changes of `ngOnChanges()` is specified by including a description of the expected data. As an alternative, you could declare an interface (such as `interface IChanges { [key: string]: SimpleChange; }`), and the function signature would look like `ngOnChanges(changes: IChanges)`. The preceding declaration of the user property in `AppComponent` is yet another example of using the structural type.

Let's see if changing `greeting` and `user.name` in the UI results in the invocation of `ngOnChanges()` on the child component. Figure 6.11 shows a screenshot after we ran listing 6.10 with the Chrome Developer Tools open.

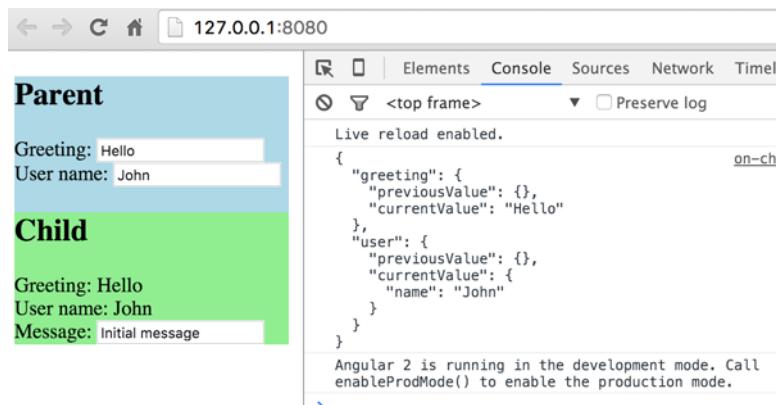
Initially, when the application applied the binding to the child component's input properties, they had no values. The `ngOnChanges()` callback was invoked, and the previous values of both `greeting` and `user` were changed from `{}` to `Hello` and `{name: "John"}`, respectively.

### Enabling production mode

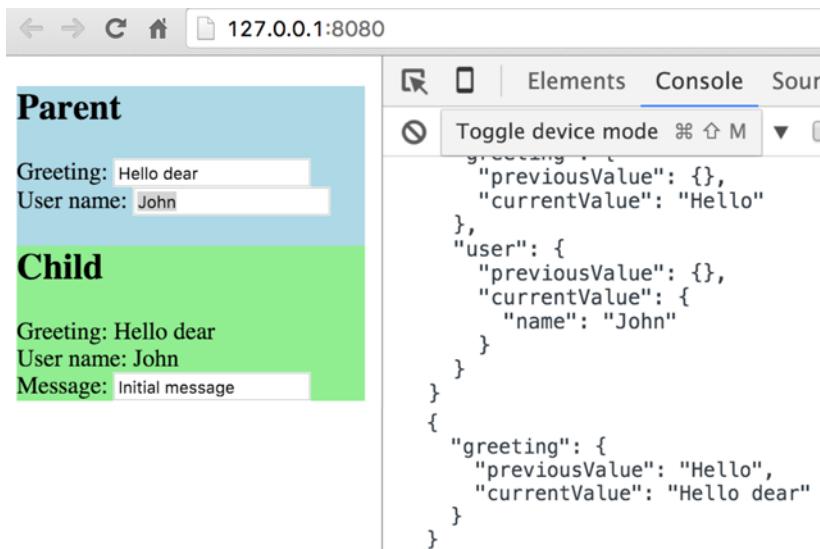
In figure 6.11, you can see a message stating that Angular 2 is running in development mode, which performs assertions and other checks within the framework. One such assertion verifies that a change-detection pass doesn't result in additional changes to any bindings (for example, your code doesn't modify the UI in lifecycle callbacks).

To enable production mode, invoke `enableProdMode()` in your application before invoking the `bootstrap()` method. Enabling production mode will result in better performance in the browser.

Let's have the user change the values in all the input fields. After adding the word *dear* to the Greeting field and moving the focus away, Angular's change-detection mechanism refreshes the binding to the child's *immutable* input property, `greeting`; invokes



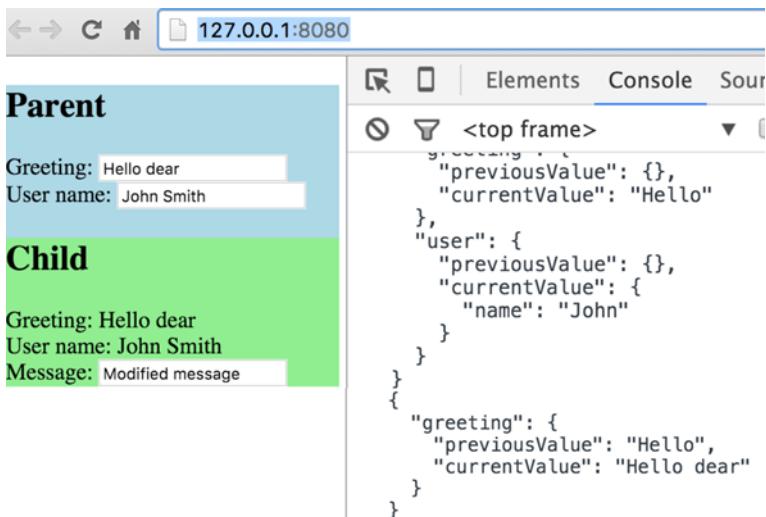
**Figure 6.11** Initial invocation of `ngOnChanges()`



**Figure 6.12** Invocation of `ngOnChanges()` after the greeting is changed

the `ngOnChanges()` callback; and prints the previous value as Hello and the current one as Hello dear, as shown in figure 6.12.

Now suppose the user adds the word *Smith* in the User Name field and moves the focus from this field: no new messages are printed on the console, as shown in figure 6.13. That's because the user changed only the name property of the *mutable* user object; the reference to the user object itself didn't change. This explains why `ngOnChanges()` wasn't invoked. Changing the value in the message property of the `ChildComponent` didn't invoke `ngOnChanges()` either, because this property wasn't annotated with `@Input`.



**Figure 6.13**  
`ngOnChanges()`  
wasn't invoked  
this time.

**NOTE** Although Angular doesn't update bindings to input properties if the object reference hasn't changed, the change-detection mechanism still catches property updates on each object property. This is why John Smith, the new value of the User Name in the child component, has been rendered.

Earlier, in section 6.1.1, you used a setter to intercept the moment when the value of the input parameter changed. You could have used `ngOnChanges()` instead of the setters there. There are use cases when using `ngOnChanges()` instead of a setter isn't an option, and you'll see why in the hands-on section of this chapter.

### 6.3 A high-level overview of change detection

Angular's change-detection (CD) mechanism is implemented in `zone.js` (a.k.a. the Zone). Its main purpose is to keep the changes in the component properties (the model) and the UI in sync. CD is initiated by any asynchronous event that happens in the browser (the user clicked a button, data is received from a server, a script invoked the `setTimeout()` function, and so on).

When CD runs its cycle, it checks all the bindings in the component's template. Why might binding expressions need to be updated? Because one of the component's properties changed.

**NOTE** The CD mechanism applies changes from a component's property to the UI. CD never changes the value of the component's property.

You can think of an application as a tree of components with the root component on the top of this tree. When Angular compiles component templates, each component gets its own change detector. When CD is initiated by the Zone, it makes one pass starting from the root down to the leaf components, trying to see whether the UI of each component needs to be updated.

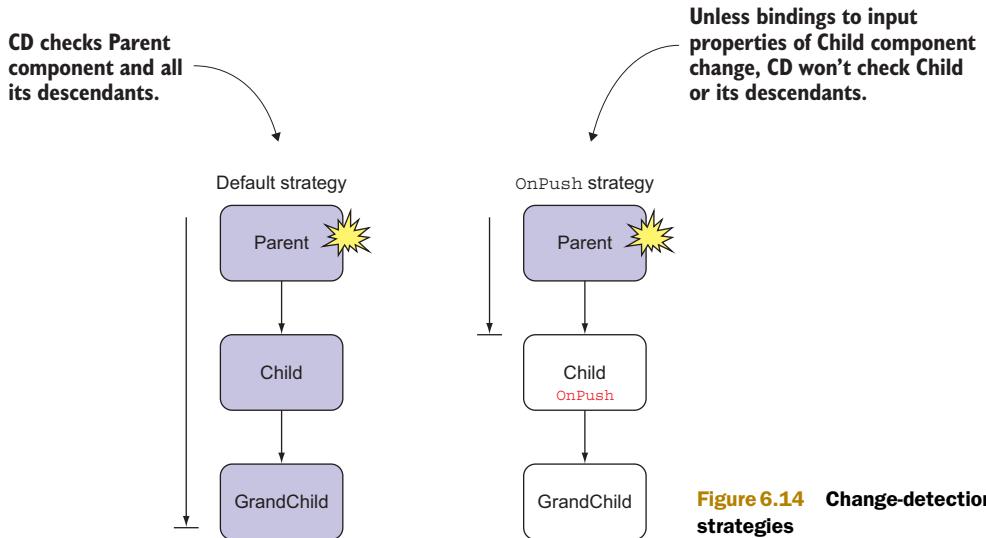
Angular implements two CD strategies: `Default` and `OnPush`. If all components use the `Default` strategy, the Zone checks the entire component tree regardless of where the change happened. If a particular component declares the `OnPush` strategy, the Zone checks this component and its children only if the bindings to the component's input properties have changed. To declare the `OnPush` strategy, you just need to add the following line to the component's template:

```
changeDetection: ChangeDetectionStrategy.OnPush
```

Let's get familiar with these strategies using three components: the parent, child, and grandchild shown in figure 6.14.

Let's say a property of the parent was modified. CD will begin checking the component and all of its descendants. The left side of figure 6.14 illustrates the default CD strategy: all three components are checked for changes.

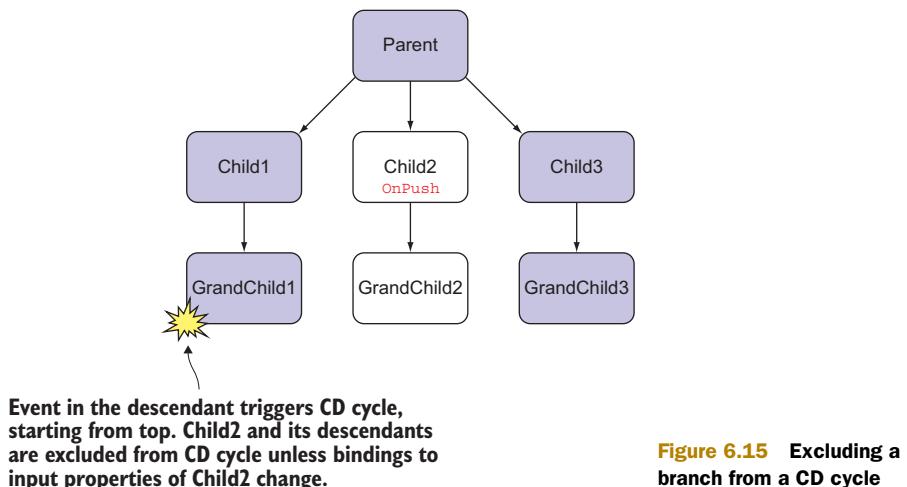
The right side of figure 6.14 illustrates what happens when the child component has the `OnPush` CD strategy. CD starts from the top, but it sees that the child component has



declared the `OnPush` strategy. If no bindings to the input properties of the child component have changed, CD doesn't check either the child or the grandchild.

Figure 6.14 shows a small application with only three components, but real-world apps can have hundreds of components. With the `OnPush` strategy, you can opt out of CD for specific branches of the tree.

Figure 6.15 shows a CD cycle caused by an event in the `GrandChild1` component. Even though this event happened in the leaf component, the CD cycle starts from the top; it's performed on each branch except the branches that originate from a component with the `OnPush` CD strategy and that has no changes in the bindings to its input properties. Components excluded from this CD cycle are shown on the white background.



This was a brief overview of the CD mechanism, which is probably the most sophisticated module of Angular. You should learn about CD in depth only if you need to work on performance-tuning a UI-intensive application, such as a data grid containing hundreds of cells with constantly changing values. For more details about change detection in Angular, read the article “Change Detection in Angular 2” by Victor Savkin at <http://mng.bz/bD6v>.

## 6.4 Exposing a child component’s API

You’ve learned how a parent component can pass data to its child using bindings to input properties. But there are other cases when the parent just needs to use the API exposed by the child. We’ll show you an example that illustrates how a parent component can use the child’s API from both the template and the TypeScript code.

Let’s create a simple application in which a child component has a `greet()` method that will be invoked by the parent. To illustrate different techniques, the parent will use two instances of the same child component. These instances have different template variable names:

```
<child #child1></child>
<child #child2></child>
```

Now you can declare a variable in your TypeScript code, annotated with `@ViewChild`. This annotation is provided by Angular to get a reference to a child component, and you’ll use it with the first child:

```
@ViewChild('child1')
firstChild: ChildComponent;
...
this.firstChild.greet('Child 1');
```

This code instructs Angular to find the child component identified by the template variable `child1` and place the reference to this component into the `firstChild` variable.

To illustrate another technique, you can access the second child component not from the TypeScript code but from the parent’s template. It’s as simple as this:

```
<button (click)="child2.greet('Child 2')">Invoke greet() on child 2</button>
```

The full code illustrating both techniques follows.

### Listing 6.11 exposing-child-api.ts

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component, ViewChild, AfterViewInit } from
  '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';

@Component({
  selector: 'child',
  template: `<h3>Child</h3>`
})

@NgModule({
  declarations: [ChildComponent],
  imports: [BrowserModule],
  exports: [ChildComponent]
})
export class AppModule implements AfterViewInit {
  constructor(private platform: Platform) {}

  ngAfterViewInit() {
    this.platform.ready().then(() => {
      const child1 = this.platform.selectRootElement('#child1');
      const child2 = this.platform.selectRootElement('#child2');

      child1.nativeElement.click();
      child2.nativeElement.click();
    });
  }
}
```

```

class ChildComponent {
  greet(name) {
    console.log(`Hello from ${name}.`);
  }
}

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `
<h1>Parent</h1>
<child #child1></child>
<child #child2></child>

<button (click)="child2.greet('Child 2')">Invoke greet() on child 2
  </button>
`})
class AppComponent implements AfterViewInit {
  @ViewChild('child1')
  firstChild: ChildComponent;

  ngAfterViewInit() {
    this.firstChild.greet('Child 1');
  }
}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent, ChildComponent ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

When you run this app, it prints “Hello from Child 1.” on the console. Click the button, and it will print “Hello from Child 2.” as shown in figure 6.16.



**Figure 6.16 Accessing the child's API**

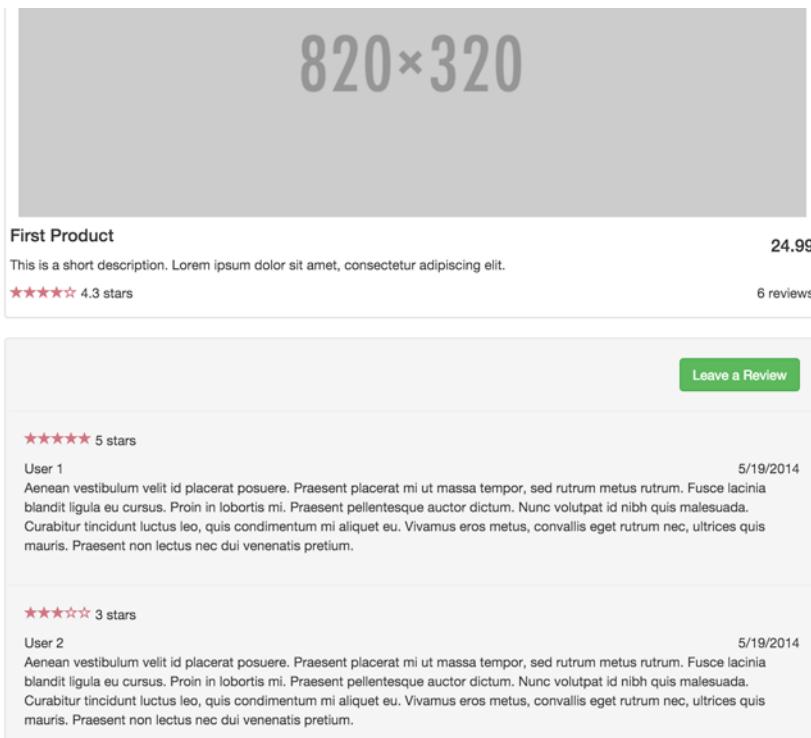
### Updating the UI from lifecycle hooks

Listing 6.11 uses the `ngAfterViewInit()` component lifecycle hook to invoke the API on the child. If the child's `greet()` method doesn't change the UI, this code works fine; but if you try to change the UI from `greet()`, Angular will throw an exception because the UI is changed after `ngAfterViewInit()` was fired. That's because this hook is called in the same event loop for both parent and child components.

There are two ways to deal with this issue. You can run the application in production mode so Angular won't do the additional bindings check, or you can use `setTimeout()` for the code updating the UI so it runs in the next event loop.

## 6.5 Hands-on: adding a rating feature to the online auction

In this section, you'll add a rating feature to the auction. Previous versions of this application just displayed the rating, but now you want to let users rate a product. In chapter 4, you created the Produce Details view; here you'll add the Leave a Review button, which allows users to navigate to a view where they can assign one to five stars to a product and enter a review. A fragment of the new Produce Details view is shown in figure 6.17.



**Figure 6.17** The Produce Details view

StarsComponent will have an input property, which will be modified. The newly added rating's value needs to be communicated to its parent ProductItemComponent.

**NOTE** We'll use the auction application developed in chapter 5 as a starting point for this exercise. If you prefer to see the final version of this project, browse the source code in the auction folder for chapter 6. Otherwise, copy the auction folder from chapter 5 to a separate location. Then copy the package.json file from the auction folder for chapter 6, run `npm install`, and follow the instructions in this section.

### Installing a type-definition file

In this version of the app, you want to use the `Array.fill()` method in the StarsComponent; but this API is available only in ES6, and the TypeScript compiler will complain. You already have the ES6 shim installed locally as a part of the `core.js` package. But because you want to keep ES5 as a target for transpiling, you need an ES6 shim type-declaration file so this API can be recognized by the TypeScript compiler.

You'll install an additional type definition file (see appendix B) from the npm repository. In general, you'll need to install type-definition files whenever you add a third-party JavaScript library.

Follow these steps:

- 1 Install the type-definition file for ES6 shim. To do so, open a command window and run the following command:

```
npm install @types/es6-shim --save-dev
```

This command installs the `es6-shim.d.ts` file in the `node_modules/@types` directory and saves this configuration in the `devDependencies` section of `package.json` file. You should be using TypeScript 2.0, which knows to look for type-definition files in the `@types` directory.

- 2 Modify the code of StarsComponent. The new version should work in two modes: read-only for displaying stars based on the data provided by `ProductService`, and writable for allowing users to click stars to set a new rating value.

Figure 6.17 shows the rendering of `ProductDetailComponent` (the parent) where `StarsComponent` (the child) is in read-only mode. If the user clicks the Leave a Review button, read-only mode should be turned off. You'll add a `readonly` input variable to toggle this mode.

The second input variable, `rating`, is for assigning ratings. You'll also add one output variable, `ratingChange`, that will emit an event with the newly set rating; this will be used by the parent component to recalculate the average rating.

When the user clicks one of the stars, it will invoke the `fillStarsWithColor()` method, which will assign the value to `rating` and emit the rating's

value by dispatching an event. Modify the code of the stars.ts file so it looks like the following listing.

**Listing 6.12 stars.ts**

```
import {Component, EventEmitter, Input, Output} from '@angular/core';

@Component({
  selector: 'auction-stars',
  styles: [`.starrating { color: #d17581; }`],
  templateUrl: 'app/components/stars/stars.html'
})
export default class StarsComponent {
  private _rating: number;
  private stars: boolean[];

  private maxStars: number = 5;

  @Input() readonly: boolean = true;

  @Input() get rating(): number {
    return this._rating;
  }

  set rating(value: number) {
    this._rating = value || 0;
    this.stars = Array(this.maxStars).fill(true, 0, this.rating);
  }

  @Output() ratingChange: EventEmitter<number> = new EventEmitter();

  fillStarsWithColor(index) {

    if (!this.readonly) {
      this.rating = index + 1;
      this.ratingChange.emit(this.rating);
    }
  }
}
```

You use the setter for the input rating. This setter can be invoked either from within StarsComponent (to render an existing rating) or from its parent (when the user clicks the stars). In this application, using ngOnChanges() wouldn't work, because it would be invoked only once by the parent when StarsComponent was created.

Note the use of the ES6 method fill() in the rating() setter. You populate the stars array with the value true from element zero to whatever the rating value is. For each star that has to be filled with color, you store the value true; and for empty stars, you store false.

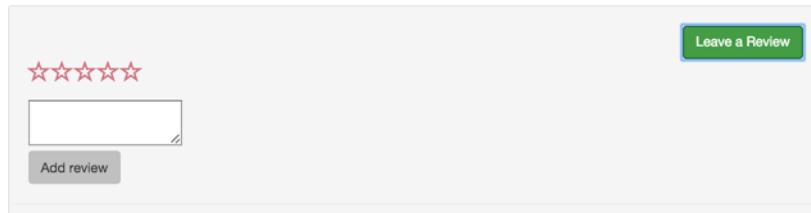
- 3 Modify the template of StarsComponent in the stars.html file as shown in listing 6.13. Using the ngFor directive, you loop through the stars array, which stores Boolean values. You'll use the stock images that come with the Bootstrap library for filled and empty stars (see <http://getbootstrap.com/components>). Based on the value of the array's element, you render either a star filled with color or an empty one. When the user clicks the star, you pass its index to the function fillStarsWithColor().

**Listing 6.13 Revised stars.html**

```
<p>
  <span *ngFor="let star of stars; let i = index"
    class="starrating glyphicon glyphicon-star"
    [class.glyphicon-star-empty]="!star"
    (click)="fillStarsWithColor(i)">
  </span>
  <span *ngIf="rating">{{rating | number:'0.0-2'}} stars</span>
</p>
```

The number pipe formats the rating's value to show two digits after the decimal point.

- 4 Modify the template of ProductDetailComponent. ProductDetailComponent has a Leave a Review button that should provide a means for rating a product and leaving a review. Clicking this button will toggle the visibility of a <div> that allows users to click stars and enter a review, as shown in figure 6.18.



**Figure 6.18** The Leave a Review view

Here StarsComponent works in editable mode, and the user can give the selected product up to five stars. This is how the template implementing the view in figure 6.18 could look:

```
<div [hidden]="isReviewHidden">
  <div><auction-stars [(rating)]="newRating"
    [readonly]="false" class="large"></auction-stars></div>
  <div><textarea [(ngModel)]="newComment"></textarea></div>
  <div><button (click)="addReview()" class="btn">Add review
    ↗ </button></div>
</div>
```

readonly mode is turned off. Note that you use two-way binding in two places: `[(rating)]` and `[(ngModel)]`. Earlier in this chapter, we discussed the use of the `ngModel` directive for two-way binding; but if you have an input property (such as `rating`) and an output property that has the same name plus the suffix `Change` (such as `ratingChange`), you're allowed to use the `[()]` syntax with such properties.

The Leave a Review button toggles the visibility of the preceding `<div>`. This is how it can be implemented:

```
<button (click)="isReviewHidden = !isReviewHidden"
        class="btn btn-success btn-green">Leave a Review</button>
```

Replace the content of the `product-detail.html` file with the following.

#### **Listing 6.14 product-detail.html**

```
<div class="thumbnail">
    
    <div>
        <h4 class="pull-right">{{ product.price }}</h4>
        <h4>{{ product.title }}</h4>
        <p>{{ product.description }}</p>
    </div>
    <div class="ratings">
        <p class="pull-right">{{ reviews.length }} reviews</p>
        <p><auction-stars [rating]="product.rating" ></auction-stars></p>
    </div>
</div>
<div class="well" id="reviews-anchor">
    <div class="row">
        <div class="col-md-12"></div>
    </div>
    <div class="text-right">
        <button (click)="isReviewHidden = !isReviewHidden"
                class="btn btn-success btn-green">Leave a Review</button>
    </div>

    <div [hidden]="isReviewHidden">
        <div><auction-stars [(rating)]="newRating"
            [readonly]="false" class="large"></auction-stars></div>
        <div><textarea [(ngModel)]="newComment" ></textarea></div>
        <div><button (click)="addReview()" class="btn">Add review</button>
        </div>
    </div>

    <div class="row" *ngFor="#review of reviews">
        <hr>
        <div class="col-md-12">
            <auction-stars [rating]="review.rating"></auction-stars>
            <span>{{ review.user }}</span>
        </div>
    </div>
</div>
```

```

        <span class="pull-
right">{{ review.timestamp | date: 'shortDate' }}</span>
            <p>{{ review.comment }}</p>
        </div>
    </div>
</div>

```

After typing a review and giving stars to a product, the user clicks the Add Review button, which invokes `addReview()` on the component. Let's implement it in TypeScript.

- 5 Modify the `product-detail.ts` file. Adding a review should do two things: send the newly entered review to the server and recalculate the average product rating on the UI. You'll recalculate the average on the UI, but you won't implement the communication with the server; you'll log the review on the browser's console. Then you'll add the new review to the array of existing reviews. The following code fragment from `ProductDetailComponent` implements this functionality:

```

addReview() {
    let review = new Review(0, this.product.id, new Date(), 'Anonymous',
        this.newRating, this.newComment);
    console.log("Adding review " + JSON.stringify(review));
    this.reviews = [...this.reviews, review];

    this.product.rating = this.averageRating(this.reviews);

    this.resetForm();
}

averageRating(reviews: Review[]) {
    let sum = reviews.reduce((average, review) => average + review.rating, 0);
    return sum / reviews.length;
}

```

After creating a new instance of the `Review` object, you need to add it to the `reviews` array. The spread operator lets you write it in an elegant way:

```
this.reviews = [...this.reviews, review];
```

The `reviews` array gets the values of all existing elements (`...this.reviews`) plus the new one (`review`). The recalculated average is assigned to the `rating` property, which is propagated to the UI via binding.

What's left? Replace the content of the `product-detail.ts` file with the following code, and this hands-on exercise is over!

#### **Listing 6.15 product-detail.ts**

```

import {Component} from '@angular/core';
import {ActivatedRoute} from '@angular/router';
import {Product, Review, ProductService} from

```

```

    ↵ ' ../../services/product-service';
import StarsComponent from '../stars/stars';

@Component({
  selector: 'auction-product-page',
  styles: ['auction-stars.large {font-size: 24px;}'],
  templateUrl: 'app/components/product-detail/product-detail.html'
})
export default class ProductDetailComponent {
  product: Product;
  reviews: Review[];

  newComment: string;
  newRating: number;

  isReviewHidden: boolean = true;

  constructor(route: ActivatedRoute, productService: ProductService) {

    let prodId: number = parseInt(route.snapshot.params['productId']);
    this.product = productService.getProductById(prodId);

    this.reviews = productService.getReviewsForProduct(this.product.id);
  }

  addReview() {
    let review = new Review(0, this.product.id, new Date(), 'Anonymous',
      this.newRating, this.newComment);
    console.log("Adding review " + JSON.stringify(review));
    this.reviews = [...this.reviews, review];
    this.product.rating = this.averageRating(this.reviews);

    this.resetForm();
  }

  averageRating(reviews: Review[]) {
    let sum = reviews.reduce((average, review) => average + review.rating, 0);
    return sum / reviews.length;
  }

  resetForm() {
    this.newRating = 0;
    this.newComment = null;
    this.isReviewHidden = true;
  }
}

```

## 6.6 Summary

Any Angular application is a hierarchy of components that need to communicate with each other. This chapter was dedicated to covering different ways of arranging such communication. Binding to the component's input properties and dispatching events via the output properties allow you to create loosely coupled components. By means

of its change-detection mechanism, Angular intercepts changes in components' properties to ensure that their bindings are updated.

Each component goes through a certain set of events during its lifecycle. Angular provides several lifecycle hooks where you can write code to intercept these events and apply custom logic there.

These are the main takeaways for this chapter:

- Parent and child components should avoid direct access to each other's internals but should communicate via input and output properties.
- A component can emit custom events via its output properties, and these events can carry an application-specific payload.
- Communications between unrelated components can be arranged by using the Mediator design pattern.
- A parent component can pass one or more template fragments to a child at runtime.
- Each Angular component lets you intercept major lifecycle events of a component and insert application-specific code there.
- The Angular change-detection mechanism automatically monitors changes to components' properties and updates the UI accordingly.
- You can mark selected branches of your app component tree to be excluded from the change-detection process.



# *Working with forms*

## **This chapter covers**

- Understanding the Angular Forms API (NgModel, FormControl, FormGroup, form directives, FormBuilder)
- Working with template-driven forms
- Working with reactive forms
- Understanding form validation

Angular offers rich support for handling forms. It goes beyond regular data-binding by treating form fields as first-class citizens and providing fine-grained control over form data.

This chapter will start by demonstrating how you can implement a sample user registration form in pure HTML. While working on this form, we'll briefly discuss the standard HTML forms and their shortcomings. Then you'll see what the Angular Forms API brings to the table, and we'll cover the template-driven and reactive approaches to creating forms in Angular.

After covering the basics, you'll refactor the original version of the user registration form to use the template-driven approach, and we'll discuss its pros and cons. Then we'll do the same with the reactive approach. After that, we'll discuss form

validation. At the end of the chapter, you'll apply this new knowledge to the online auction application and start implementing its search form component.

### Template-driven vs. reactive approaches

In a *template-driven* approach, forms are fully programmed in the component's template. The template defines the structure of the form, the format of its fields, and the validation rules.

In contrast, in a *reactive* approach, you create the form model programmatically in the code (in TypeScript, in this case). The template can be either statically defined and bound to an existing form model or dynamically generated based on the model.

By the end of the chapter, you'll be familiar with the Angular Forms API and the various ways of working with forms and applying data validation.

## 7.1 Overview of HTML forms

HTML provides basic features for displaying forms, validating entered values, and submitting the data to the server. But HTML forms may not be good enough for real-world business applications, which need a way to programmatically process the entered data, apply custom validation rules, display user-friendly error messages, transform the format of the entered data, and choose the way data is submitted to the server. For business applications, one of the most important considerations when choosing a web framework is how well it handles forms.

In this section, we'll evaluate standard HTML form features using a sample user registration form, and we'll define a set of requirements that a modern web application needs to fulfill users' expectations. We'll also look at the form features provided by Angular.

### 7.1.1 Standard browser features

You may be wondering what you need from an application framework other than data-binding, if HTML already allows you to validate and submit forms. To answer this question, let's review an HTML form that uses only standard browser features.

#### Listing 7.1 Plain HTML user registration form

```
<form action="/register" method="POST">
  <div>Username: <input type="text"></div>
  <div>SSN: <input type="text"></div>
  <div>Password: <input type="password"></div>
  <div>Confirm password: <input type="password"></div>
  <button type="submit">Submit</button>
</form>
```

The form contains a button and four input fields: username, SSN, password, and password confirmation. Users can enter whatever values they want: no input validation is applied here. When the user clicks the Submit button, the form's values are submitted to the server's /register endpoint using HTTP POST, and the page is refreshed.

The default HTML form behavior isn't a good fit for a SPA, which typically needs the following functionality:

- Validation rules should be applied to individual input fields.
- Error messages should be displayed next to the input fields that cause the problems.
- Dependent fields should be validated all together. This form has password and password-confirmation fields, so whenever either of them is changed, both fields should be revalidated.
- The application should be in control of the values submitted to the server. When the user clicks the Submit button, the application should invoke an event-handler function to pass the form values. The application can validate the values or change their format before sending the submit request.
- The application should decide how the data is submitted to the server, whether it's a regular HTTP request, an AJAX request, or a WebSocket message.

HTML's validation attributes and semantic input types partially satisfy the first two requirements.

#### HTML VALIDATION ATTRIBUTES

Several standard validation attributes allow you to validate individual input fields: required, pattern, maxlength, min, max, step, and so on. For example, you can request that username be a required field and its value should contain only letters and numbers:

```
<input id="username" type="text" required pattern="[a-zA-Z0-9]+>
```

Here you use a regular expression, [a-zA-Z0-9] +, to restrict what can be entered in this field. When the user clicks the Submit button, the form will be validated before the submit request is sent. In figure 7.1, you can see the default error message displayed in the Chrome browser when username doesn't conform to the specified pattern.

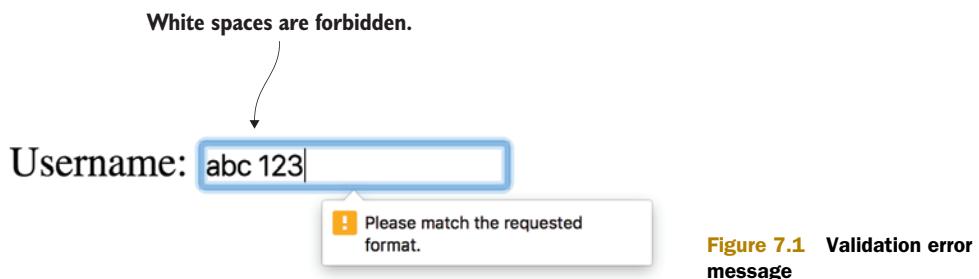


Figure 7.1 Validation error message

There are a number of problems with this message:

- It's too vague and doesn't help the user identify and fix the problem.
- As soon as the input field loses focus, the error message disappears.
- This message format likely won't match other styles in the application.

This input field prevents users from submitting invalid values, but it doesn't let you provide a decent user experience by helping the user with friendly client-side validation.

#### SEMANTIC INPUT TYPES

HTML supports multiple types of input elements: `text`, `number`, `url`, `email`, and so on. Choosing the right type for a form field may prevent users from entering an invalid value. But although this provides a better user experience, it's still not enough to satisfy application-specific validation needs.

Let's consider a ZIP code field (a U.S. postal code). It might be tempting to use the `number` input element, because a ZIP code is represented by a numeric value (at least, in the United States). To keep the values within a certain range, you could use the `min` and `max` attributes. For example, for a five-digit ZIP code, you could use following markup:

```
<input id="zipcode" type="number" min="10000" max="99999">
```

But not every five-digit number is a valid ZIP code. In a more complex example, you might also want to allow only a subset of ZIP codes from the user's state.

To support all these real-world scenarios, you need more advanced form support, and this is what an application framework can provide. Let's see what Angular has to offer.

### 7.1.2 Angular's Forms API

There are two approaches to working with forms in Angular: *template-driven* and *reactive*. These two approaches are exposed as two different APIs (sets of directives and TypeScript classes) in Angular.

With the template-driven approach, the form model is defined in the component's template using directives. Because you're limited to the HTML syntax while defining the form model, the template-driven approach suits only simple scenarios.

For complex forms, the reactive approach is a better option. With the reactive approach, you create an underlying data structure in the code (not in the template). After the model is created, you link the HTML template elements to the model using special directives prefixed with `form*`. Unlike template-driven forms, reactive forms can be tested without a web browser.

Let's highlight several important concepts to further clarify the difference between template-driven and reactive forms:

- Both types of forms have a *model*, which is an underlying data structure that stores the form's data. In the template-driven approach, the model is created implicitly by Angular based on the directives you attach to the template's elements. In the reactive approach, you create the model explicitly and then link the HTML template elements to that model.

- The model *is not* an arbitrary object. It's an object constructed using classes defined in the @angular/forms module: FormControl, FormGroup, and FormArray. In the template-driven approach, you don't access these classes directly, whereas in the reactive approach you explicitly create instances of these classes.
- The reactive approach doesn't spare you from writing an HTML template. The view won't be generated for you by Angular.

### Enabling Forms API support

Both types of forms—template-driven and reactive—need to be explicitly enabled before you start using them. To enable template-driven forms, add FormsModule from @angular/forms to the imports list of the NgModule that uses the Forms API. For reactive forms, use ReactiveFormsModule. Here's how to do it:

```
import { NgModule } from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from
  ↪ '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { FormsModule, ReactiveFormsModule } from '@angular/forms';

@NgModule({
  imports      : [ BrowserModule, FormsModule, ReactiveFormsModule ], ←
  declarations: [ AppComponent ],
  bootstrap    : [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule {}

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);
```

**Both form modules can be imported in the same application module.**

We won't repeat this code for each example in this chapter, but all of them assume the modules are imported. All the downloadable code samples for the book import the modules in AppModule.

## 7.2 Template-driven forms

As we mentioned earlier, you can use only *directives* to define a model in the template-driven approach. But what directives can you use? These directives come with FormsModule: NgModel, NgModelGroup, and NgForm.

In chapter 5, we discussed how the NgModel directive can be used for two-way data binding. But in the Forms API, it plays a different role: it marks the HTML element that should become a part of the form model. Although these two roles are separate, they don't conflict and can be safely used at the same time on a single HTML element. You'll see examples later in this section. Let's briefly look at these directives and then apply the template-driven approach to the sample registration form.

### 7.2.1 Directives overview

Here we'll briefly describe the three main directives from `FormsModule`: `NgModel`, `NgModelGroup`, and `NgForm`. We'll show how they can be used in the template and highlight their most important features.

#### NGFORM

`NgForm` is the directive that represents the entire form. It's automatically attached to every `<form>` element. `NgForm` implicitly creates an instance of the `FormGroup` class that represents the model and stores the form's data (more on `FormGroup` later in this chapter). `NgForm` automatically discovers all child HTML elements marked with the `NgModel` directive and adds their values to the form model.

The `NgForm` directive has multiple selectors that you can use to attach `NgForm` to non-`<form>` elements:

```
<div ngForm></div>
<ngForm></ngForm>
```

This syntax comes in handy if you're using a CSS framework that requires a certain structure for the HTML elements, and you can't use the `<form>` element.

If you want to exclude a particular `<form>` from being handled by Angular, use the `ngNoForm` attribute:

```
<form ngNoForm></form>
```

The `ngNoForm` attribute prevents Angular from creating an instance of `NgForm` and attaching it to the `<form>` element.

`NgForm` has an `exportAs` property declared on its `@Directive` annotation, which allows you to use the value of this property to create a local template variable that references the instance of `NgForm`:

```
<form #f="ngForm"></form>
<pre>{{ f.value | json }}</pre>
```

First, you specify `ngForm` as the value of the `exportAs` property of `NgForm`; `f` points at the instance of `NgForm` attached to the `<form>`. Then you can use the `f` variable to access instance members of the `NgForm` object. One of them is `value`, which represents the current value of all form fields as a JavaScript object. You can pass it through the standard `json` pipe to display the form's value on the page.

`NgForm` intercepts the standard HTML form's `submit` event and prevents automatic form submission. Instead, it emits the custom `ngSubmit` event:

```
<form #f="ngForm" (ngSubmit)="onSubmit(f.value)"></form>
```

The code subscribes to the `ngSubmit` event using the event-binding syntax. `onSubmit` is an arbitrary name for the method defined in the component, and it's invoked when

the `ngSubmit` event is fired. To pass all of the form's values as an argument to this method, use the `f` variable to access `NgForm`'s `value` property.

#### NGMODEL

In the context of the Forms API, `NgModel` represents a single field on the form. It implicitly creates an instance of the `FormControl` class that represents the model and stores the fields' data (more on `FormControl` later in this chapter).

You attach the `FormControl` object to an HTML element using the `ngModel` attribute. Note that the Forms API doesn't require either a value assigned to `ngModel` or any kind of brackets around the attribute:

```
The name attribute is required when you add ngModel to an element.    <form>
                                <input type="text"
                                      name="username"
                                      ngModel>
                            </form>
```

No value or brackets denote the data-binding syntax. `ngModel` serves as a marker for the `NgForm` directive that represents the form.

The `NgForm.value` property points at the JavaScript object that holds the values of all form fields. The value of the field's `name` attribute becomes the property name of the corresponding property in the JavaScript object in `NgForm.value`.

Like `NgForm`, the `NgModel` directive has an `exportAs` property, so you can create a variable in the template that will reference an instance of `NgModel` and its `value` property:

```
The value of the exportAs property of the NgModel directive is ngModel. You assign it to the local variable c.    <form>
                                <input type="text"
                                      name="username"
                                      ngModel
                                      #c="ngModel" >
                                <pre>{{ c.value }}</pre>
                            </form>
```

The value property holds the current value entered in the previous `<input>` element.

#### NGMODELGROUP

`NgModelGroup` represents a part of the form and allows you to group form fields together. Like `NgForm`, it implicitly creates an instance of the `FormGroup` class. Basically, `NgModelGroup` creates a nested object in the object stored in `NgForm.value`. All the child fields of `NgModelGroup` become properties on the nested object.

Here's how you can use it:

```
The ngModelGroup attribute requires a string value, which becomes a property name that represents the nested object with values of the child fields.    <form #f="ngForm">
                                <div ngModelGroup="fullName">
                                    <input type="text" name="firstName" ngModel>
                                    <input type="text" name="lastName" ngModel>
                                </div>
                            </form>
```

To access the values of the `firstName` and `lastName` fields, use the nested `fullName` object.

```
<!-- Access the values from the nested object-->
<pre>First name: {{ f.value.fullName.firstName }}</pre>
<pre>Last name: {{ f.value.fullName.lastName }}</pre>
```

## 7.2.2 Enriching the HTML form

Let's refactor the sample user registration form from listing 7.1. There, it was a plain HTML form that didn't use any Angular features. Now you'll wrap it into an Angular component, add validation logic, and enable programmatic handling of the submit event. Let's start by refactoring the template and then move on to the TypeScript part. First, modify the `<form>` element.

### Listing 7.2 Angular-aware form

```
<form #f="ngForm" (ngSubmit)="onSubmit(f.value)">
  <!-- Form fields go here -->
</form>
```

You declare a local template variable `f` that points at the `NgForm` object attached to the `<form>` element. You need this variable to access the form's properties, such as `value` and `valid`, and to check whether the form has errors of a specific type.

You also configure the event handler for the `ngSubmit` event emitted by `NgForm`. You don't want to listen to the standard `submit` event, and `NgForm` intercepts the `submit` event and stops its propagation. This prevents the form from being automatically submitted to the server, resulting in a page reload. Instead, `NgForm` emits its own `ngSubmit` event.

The `onSubmit()` method is the event handler. It's defined as the component's instance method. In template-driven forms, `onSubmit()` takes one argument: the form's value, which is a plain JavaScript object that keeps the values of all the fields on the form. Next, you change the `username` and `ssn` fields.

### Listing 7.3 Modified username and ssn fields

The `ngModel` attribute attaches the `NgModel` directive to the `<input>` element and makes this field a part of the form. You also add the `name` attribute.

```
<div>Username: <input type="text" name="username" ngModel></div>
<div>SSN: <input type="text" name="ssn" ngModel></div>
```

You make similar changes to the `ssn` field, but the value of the `name` attribute is different.

Now let's change the password fields. Because these fields are related and represent the same value, it's natural to combine them into a group. It will also be convenient to deal with both passwords as a single object when you implement form validation later in this chapter.

**Listing 7.4 Modified password fields**

The `ngModelGroup` directive instructs `NgForm` to create a nested object within the form's value object that keeps the child fields. `passwordsGroup` will become the property name for the nested object.

```
<div ngModelGroup="passwordsGroup">
  <div>Password: <input type="password" name="password" ngModel>
  ↵ </div> 2((C07-2))
  <div>Confirm password: <input type="password" name="pconfirm" ngModel>
  ↵ </div> 2((C07-3))
</div>
```

Changes for the password and pconfirm fields are similar to those for `ngModelGroup`, but the values of the name attributes differ.

The Submit button is the only HTML element left in the template, but it remains the same as in the plain HTML version of the form:

```
<button type="submit">Submit</button>
```

Now that you're done with the template refactoring, let's wrap it into a component. Here's the code of the component:

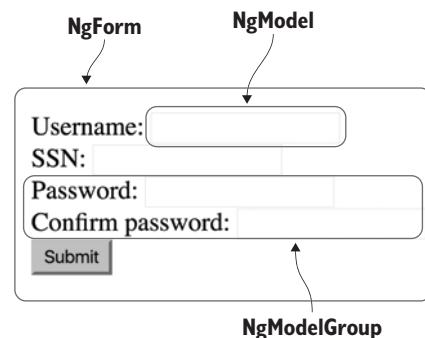
**Listing 7.5 HTML form component**

```
@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  template: `...
})
class AppComponent {
  onSubmit(formValue: any) {
    console.log(formValue);
  }
}
```

We haven't included the content of the template, to keep the listing terse, but the refactored version described earlier should be inlined here.

The `onSubmit()` event handler takes a single argument: the form's value. As you can see, the handler doesn't use any Angular-specific API. Depending on the validity flag, you can decide whether to post the `formValue` to the server. In this example, you print it to the console.

Figure 7.2 displays the sample registration form with the form directives applied to it. Each form directive is circled so you can see what the form is made up of. The complete



**Figure 7.2** Form directives on the registration form

running application that illustrates how to use form directives is located in the 01\_template-driven.ts file, in the code that comes with the book.

## 7.3 Reactive forms

Unlike in the template-driven approach, creating a reactive form is a two-step process. First you need to create a model programmatically in the code, and then you link HTML elements to that model using directives in the template. Let's start with the first step, creating a model.

### 7.3.1 Form model

The form model is an underlying data structure that keeps the form's data. It's constructed out of special classes defined in the @angular/forms module: FormControl, FormGroup, and FormArray.

#### FORMCONTROL

FormControl is an atomic form unit. Usually it corresponds to a single <input> element, but it can also represent a more complex UI component like a calendar or a slider. FormControl keeps the current value of the HTML element it corresponds to, the element's validity status, and whether it's been modified.

Here's how you can create a control:

```
let username = new FormControl('initial value'); ← Pass the control's initial value as the first argument of the constructor.
```

#### FORMGROUP

FormGroup usually represents a part of the form and is a collection of FormControls. FormGroup aggregates the values and the statuses of each FormControl in the group. If one of the controls in a group is invalid, the entire group becomes invalid. It's convenient for managing related fields on the form. FormGroup is also used to represent the entire form. For example, if a date range is represented by two date input fields, they can be combined into a single group to obtain the date range as a single value and display an error if either of the entered dates is invalid.

Here's how you can create a control group combining the from and to controls:

```
let formModel = new FormGroup({
  from: new FormControl(),
  to : new FormControl()
});
```

#### FORMARRAY

FormArray is similar to FormGroup, but it has a variable length. Whereas FormGroup represents an entire form or a fixed subset of a form's fields, FormArray usually represents a growable collection of fields. For example, you could use FormArray to allow users to enter an arbitrary number of emails. Here's a model that would back such a form:

```

FormGroup represents the entire form.
  let formModel = new FormGroup({
    emails: new FormArray([
      new FormControl(),
      new FormControl()
    ])
  });
Unlike FormGroup, controls in FormArray aren't associated with keys, but you can reference them by index.

```

Uses FormArray to represent the emails field, because you want to allow users to enter multiple emails

### 7.3.2 Form directives

The reactive approach uses a completely different set of directives than template-driven forms. The directives for reactive forms come with `ReactiveFormsModule` (see section 7.2).

All reactive directives are prefixed with the `form*` string, so you can easily distinguish the reactive from the template-driven approach just by looking at the template. Reactive directives aren't exportable, which means you can't create a variable in the template that references an instance of a directive. This is done intentionally to clearly separate the two approaches. In template-driven forms, you don't access the model classes; and in reactive forms, you can't operate the model in the template.

Table 7.1 shows how model classes correspond to form directives. The first column lists the model classes covered in the previous section. In the second column are the directives that bind a DOM element to an instance of a model class using the property-binding syntax. As you can see, `FormArray` can't be used with the property binding. The third column lists directives that link a DOM element to a model class by name. They must only be used in the `formGroup` directive.

Model class	Form directives	
<code>FormGroup</code>	<code>formGroup</code>	<code>formGroupName</code>
<code>FormControl</code>	<code>formControl</code>	<code>formControlName</code>
<code>FormArray</code>	—	<code>formArrayName</code>

**Table 7.1 Correspondence of model classes to form directives**

Let's look at the form directives.

#### FORMGROUP

`formGroup` often binds an instance of the `FormGroup` class that represents the entire form model to a top-level form's DOM element, usually a `<form>`. All directives attached to the child DOM elements will be in the scope of `formGroup` and can link model instances by name.

To use the `formGroup` directive, first create a `FormGroup` in the component:

```

@Component(...)
class FormComponent {
  formModel: FormGroup = new FormGroup({});
}

```

Then add the `formGroup` attribute to an HTML element. The value of the `formGroup` attribute references a component's property that keeps an instance of the `FormGroup` class:

```
<form [formGroup]="formModel"></form>
```

#### FORMGROUPNAME

`formGroupName` can be used to link nested groups in a form. It needs to be in the scope of a parent `FormGroup` directive to link one of its child `FormGroup` instances. Here's how you'd define a form model that can be used with `formGroupName`.

#### Listing 7.6 Form model to use with `formGroupName`

```
A FormGroup without a name. It's bound to a DOM element using the formGroup directive and property-binding syntax. @Component(...) class FormComponent { formModel: FormGroup = new FormGroup({ dateRange: new FormGroup({ from: new FormControl(), to : new FormControl() }) }) }
```

**A child FormGroup with the name `dateRange`. You can use `formGroupName` to link this group to a DOM element in the template.**

Now let's look at the template.

#### Listing 7.7 `formGroup` template

```
<form [formGroup]="formModel"> Binds the FormGroup that represents the entire form using property-binding syntax <div formGroupName="dateRange">...</div> </form>
```

**Links the <div> element to the FormGroup called `dateRange` defined in `formModel`**

In the `FormGroup` scope, you can use `formGroupName` to link child model classes by names defined in the parent `FormGroup`. The value you assign to the `formGroupName` attribute must match the name you chose for the child `FormGroup` in listing 7.7 (in this case, it's `dateRange`).

#### Property-binding shorthand syntax

Because the value you assign to the `*Name` directive is a string literal, you can use a shorthand syntax and omit the square brackets around the attribute name. The long version would look like this:

```
<div [formGroupName]="'dateRange'">...</div>
```

Note the square brackets around the attribute name and single quotes around the attribute value.

**FORMCONTROLNAME**

`formControlName` must be used in the scope of the `FormGroup` directive. It links one of its child `FormControl` instances to a DOM element.

Let's continue the example of the date-range model introduced when we explained the `formGroupName` directive. The component and form model remain the same. You only need to complete the template.

**Listing 7.8 Completed `FormGroup` template**

```
<form [FormGroup]="formModel">
  <div formGroupName="dateRange">
    <input type="date" formControlName="from">
    <input type="date" formControlName="to">
  </div>
</form>
```

As in the `formGroupName` directive, you just specify the name of a `FormControl` you want to link to the DOM element. Again, these are the names you chose while defining the form model.

**FormControl**

`FormControl` can be used for single-field forms, when you don't want to create a form model with `FormGroup` but still want to use Forms API features like validation and the reactive behavior provided by the `FormControl.valueChanges` property. You saw an example in chapter 5 when we discussed observables. Here's the essence of that example.

**Listing 7.9 FormControl**

```
@Component({ ... })
class FormComponent {
  weatherControl: FormControl = new FormControl();
  constructor() {
    this.weatherControl.valueChanges
      .debounceTime(500)
      .switchMap(city => this.getWeather(city))
      .subscribe(weather => console.log(weather));
  }
}
```

Instead of defining a form model with `FormGroup`, as you saw earlier in this section, create a standalone instance of a `FormControl`.

Uses `valueChanges` to get the value from the form

You could use `ngModel` to sync the value entered by user with the component's property; but because you're using the Forms API, you can use its reactive features. In the preceding example, you apply several RxJS operators to the observable returned by the `valueChanges` property to improve the user experience. More details on this example can be found in chapter 5.

Here's the template of the `FormComponent` from listing 7.9:

```
<input type="text" [FormControl] = "weatherControl">
```

Because you're working with a standalone `FormControl` that's not a part of a `FormGroup`, you can't use the `formControlName` directive to link it by name. Instead you use `FormControl` with the property-binding syntax.

#### FORMARRAYNAME

`formArrayName` must be used in the scope of a `FormGroup` directive. It links one of its child `FormArray` instances to a DOM element. Because form controls in `FormArray` don't have names, you can link them to DOM elements only by index. Usually you render them in a loop, using the `ngFor` directive.

Let's look at an example that allows users to enter an arbitrary number of emails. We'll highlight the key parts of the code here, but you can find the full runnable example in `02_growable-items-form.ts` in the code distributed with the book. First you define the model.

**Listing 7.10 02\_growable-items-form.ts file: defining the model**

```
    @Component(....)
    class AppComponent {
        formModel: FormGroup = new FormGroup({
            Creates a
            FormGroup that
            will represent
            the form
            emails: new FormArray([
                new FormControl(),
                ]),
            });
            //...
        })
    }
```

Uses a `FormArray` for the `emails` collection to allow users to enter multiple emails

In the template, email fields are rendered in the loop using the `ngFor` directive.

**Listing 7.11 02\_growable-items-form.ts file: template**

```
<ul formArrayName="emails">
    <li *ngFor="let e of formModel.get('emails').controls; let i=index">
        <input [formControlName] = "i">
        </li>
        <button type="button" (click) = "addEmail()">Add Email</button>
    </ul>
    Defines the click event handler
    formArrayName links the
    FormArray to the DOM element.
    Loops through the emails array
    and creates an input field for
    each entry
    Links the <input>
    element to an instance
    of FormControl by index
```

The `let i` notation in the `*ngFor` loop allows you to automatically bind the value of the array's index to the `i` variable available in the loop. The `formControlName` directive links the `FormControl` in `FormArray` to a DOM element; but instead of specifying a name, it uses

the `i` variable that references the index of the current control. When users click the Add Email button, you push a new FormControl instance to the FormArray: `this.formModel.get('emails').push(new FormControl())`.

Figure 7.3 shows the form with two email fields; an animated version, available at <https://www.manning.com/books/angular-2-development-with-typescript>, shows how it works. Every time the user clicks the Add Email button, a new FormControl instance is pushed to the emails FormArray, and through data-binding a new input field is rendered on the page. The form's value is updated below the form in real time via data-binding as well.

### 7.3.3 Refactoring the sample form

Now let's refactor the sample registration form from listing 7.1. Originally it was a plain HTML form, and then you applied a template-driven approach. Now it's time for a reactive version. You start reactive forms by defining a form model.

#### Listing 7.12 Defining a form model

```
@Component('...')  
class AppComponent {  
  formModel: FormGroup;  
  
  constructor() {  
    this.formModel = new FormGroup({  
      'username': new FormControl(),  
      'ssn': new FormControl(),  
      'passwordsGroup': new FormGroup({  
        'password': new FormControl(),  
        'pconfirm': new FormControl()  
      })  
    });  
  }  
  
  onSubmit() {  
    console.log(this.formModel.value);  
  }  
}
```

The diagram shows the code from Listing 7.12 with several annotations:

- Declares a component property that keeps the form's model**: Points to the `formModel: FormGroup;` line.
- Initializes the form model in the constructor**: Points to the `constructor()` block.
- Nested group for password fields**: Points to the `'passwordsGroup': new FormGroup({ ... })` block.
- Accesses the form's value using the component's formModel property**: Points to the `console.log(this.formModel.value);` line.

The `formModel` property keeps an instance of the `FormGroup` type that defines the structure of the form. You'll use this property in the template to bind the model to the DOM element with the `formGroup` directive. It's initialized programmatically in the

```
{
  "emails": [
    "first@gmail.com",
    "second@yahoo.com",
    null
  ]
}
```

Figure 7.3 Form with a growable email collection

constructor by instantiating model classes. The names you give to form controls in the parent `FormGroup` are used in the template to link the model to the DOM elements with the `formControlName` and `formGroupName` directives.

`passwordsGroup` is a nested `FormGroup` to group the password and password-confirmation fields. It will be convenient to manage their values as a single object when you add form validation.

Because reactive form directives aren't exportable, you can't access them in the template and pass the form's value directly to the `onSubmit()` method as an argument. Instead, you access the value using the component's property that holds the form's model.

Now that the model is defined, you can write the HTML markup that binds to the model.

### Listing 7.13 HTML binding to the model

```

Binds the <form> element to the form
model represented by a FormGroup
class using the formGroup directive
<form [formGroup]="formModel"
       (ngSubmit)="onSubmit()">
  <div>Username: <input type="text" formControlName="username"></div>
  <div>SSN: <input type="text" formControlName="ssn"></div>

  <div formGroupName="passwordsGroup">
    <div>Password: <input type="password" formControlName="password">
      &lt;/div>
    <div>Confirm password: <input type="password" formControlName="pconfirm">
      &lt;/div>
  </div>
  <button type="submit">Submit</button>
</form>

```

In the reactive approach, you don't pass any params to the method that handles the `ngSubmit` event.

Uses the `formControlName` directive to link input fields to the `FormControl` instances defined in the parent `FormGroup` model

Links `password` and `pconfirm` using the `formControlName` directive

The HTML structure mimics the model structure you defined in the component. To link the `FormGroup` to the DOM element, use the `formGroupName` directive.

The behavior of this reactive version of the registration form is identical to the template-driven version, but the internal implementation differs. The complete application that illustrates how to create reactive forms is located in the `03_reactive.ts` file, in the code that comes with the book.

#### 7.3.4 Using FormBuilder

`FormBuilder` simplifies the creation of reactive forms. It doesn't provide any unique features compared to the direct use of the `FormControl`, `FormGroup`, and `FormArray` classes, but its API is more terse and saves you from the repetitive typing of class names.

Let's refactor the component class from the previous section to use `FormBuilder`. The template will remain exactly the same, but you'll change the way the `formModel` is constructed. Here's what it should look like.

#### Listing 7.14 Refactoring `formModel` with `FormBuilder`

```
FormControl is instantiated using the configuration array. Like FormGroup, FormBuilder allows you to create nested groups.

FormBuilder is an injectable service provided by ReactiveFormsModule, so you can inject it into the constructor. Its methods will be used to configure formModel.

constructor(fb: FormBuilder) {
  this.formModel = fb.group({
    'username': ['', ],
    'ssn': ['', ],
    'passwordsGroup': fb.group({
      'password': ['', ],
      'pconfirm': ['', ]
    })
  });
}

The FormBuilder.group() method creates a FormGroup using a configuration object passed as the first argument. The configuration object has the same format as the one that FormGroup's constructor accepts.

The FormBuilder.group() method accepts an object with extra configuration parameters as the last argument. You can use it to specify group validators.
```

Unlike `FormGroup`, `FormBuilder` allows you to instantiate `FormControl`s using an array. Each item of the array has a special meaning. The first item is `FormControl`'s initial value. The second is a validator function. It can also accept a third argument, which is an `async` validator function. The rest of the array's items are ignored.

As you can see, configuring a form model with `FormBuilder` is less verbose and is based on the configuration objects rather than requiring explicit instantiation of the control's classes. The complete application that illustrates how to use `FormBuilder` is located in the `04_form-builder.ts` file in the code that comes with the book.

## 7.4 Form validation

One of the advantages of using the Forms API, compared to regular data binding, is that forms have validation capabilities. Validation is available for both types of forms: template-driven and reactive. You create validators as plain TypeScript functions. In the reactive approach, you use functions directly, and in the template-driven approach you wrap them into custom directives.

Let's start by validating reactive forms and then move to template-driven ones. We'll cover the basics and apply validation to the sample registration form.

### 7.4.1 Validating reactive forms

Validators are just functions that conform to the following interface:

```
interface ValidatorFn {
  (c: AbstractControl): {[key: string]: any};
}
```

**The type declaration `{[key: string]: any}` describes an object literal, where the property names are strings and values can be of any type.**

The validator function should declare a single parameter of type `AbstractControl` and return an object literal. There are no restrictions on the implementation of the function—it's up to the validator's author. `AbstractControl` is the superclass for `FormControl`, `FormGroup`, and `FormArray`, which means validators can be created for all model classes.

A number of predefined validators ship with Angular: `required`, `minLength`, `maxLength`, and `pattern`. They're defined as static methods of the `Validators` class declared in the `@angular/forms` module, and they match standard HTML5 validation attributes.

Once you have a validator, you need to configure the model to use it. In the reactive approach, you provide validators as arguments to the constructors of the model classes. Here's an example:

**The first parameter is the default value, and the second is the validator function.**

```
import { FormControl, Validators } from '@angular/forms';

let usernameControl = new FormControl('', Validators.required);
```

You can also provide a list of validators as the second argument:

```
let usernameControl = new FormControl('', [Validators.required,
  Validators.minLength(5)]);
```

To test the control's validity, use the `valid` property, which returns either `true` or `false`:

**Indicates whether the value entered in the field passes or fails the validation rules configured for the control**

```
let isValid: boolean = usernameControl.valid;
```

If any of the validation rules fails, you can get error objects generated by the validator functions:

```
let errors: {[key: string]: any} = usernameControl.errors;
```

### The error object

The error returned by a validator is represented by a JavaScript object that has a property with the same name as the validator. Whether it's an object literal or an object with a complex prototypal chain doesn't matter for the validator.

The property's value can be of any type and may provide additional error details. For example, the standard `Validators.minLength()` validator returns the following error object:

```
{
  minlength: {
    requiredLength: 7,
    actualLength: 5
  }
}
```

**(continued)**

The object has a top-level property that matches the validator's name, `minlength`. Its value is also an object with two fields: `requiredLength` and `actualLength`. These error details can be used to display a user-friendly error message.

Not all validators provide the error details. Sometimes the top-level property just indicates that the error has occurred. In this case, the property is initialized with the value `true`. Here's an example of the standard `Validators.required()` error object:

```
{
  required: true
}
```

### CUSTOM VALIDATORS

Standard validators are good for validating basic data types, like strings and numbers. If you need to validate a more complex data type or application-specific logic, you may need to create a custom validator. Because validators in Angular are just functions with a certain signature, they're fairly easy to create. You need to declare a function that accepts an instance of one of the control types—`FormControl`, `FormGroup`, or `FormArray`—and returns an object that represents the validation error (see the sidebar “The error object”).

Here's an example of a custom validator that checks whether the control's value is a valid Social Security number (SSN), which is a unique ID given to each U.S. citizen:

```

function ssnValidator(control: FormControl): any {
  const value = control.value || '';
  const valid = value.match(/^\d{9}$/);
  return valid ? null : { ssn: true };
}
  
```

**Angular may invoke the validator even before a user enters a real value, so make sure it's not null.**

**The type of the argument is `FormControl`, because you're testing an individual field.**

**If the value is an invalid SSN, you return an error object. Otherwise null is returned, indicating that there are no errors. The error object doesn't provide any details.**

**Matches the value against a regular expression that represents the SSN format. It's a trivial check, but it works for the example.**

Custom validators are used the same way as the standard ones:

```
let ssnControl = new FormControl('', ssnValidator);
```

The complete running application that illustrates how to create custom validators is located in the `05_custom-validator.ts` file in the code that comes with the book.

### GROUP VALIDATORS

You may want to validate not only individual fields but also groups of fields. Angular allows you to define validator functions for `FormGroup`s as well.

Let's create a validator that will make sure the password and password-confirmation fields on the sample registration form have the same value. Here's one possible implementation:

```
function equalValidator({value}: FormGroup): {[key: string]: any} {
  const [first, ...rest] = Object.keys(value || {});
  const valid = rest.every(v => value[v] === value[first]);
  return valid ? null : {equal: true};
}

Gets the names of all properties in the value object
Iterates through all the values and makes sure they're equal
>Returns either null or an error object
```

The signature of the function conforms to the `ValidatorFn` interface : the first parameter is of type `FormGroup`, which is a subclass of `AbstractControl`, and the return type is an object literal. Note that you use an ECMAScript feature called *destructuring* (see the “Destructuring” section in appendix A). You extract the `value` property from the instance of the `FormGroup` class that will be passed as an argument. This makes sense here because you never access any other `FormGroup` property in the validator's code.

Next you get the names of all properties in the value object and save them in two variables, `first` and `rest`. `first` is the name of a property that will be used as the reference value—values of all other properties must be equal to it to make validation pass. `rest` stores the names of all the other properties. Again, you're using the destructuring feature to extract references to the array items (see the section “Destructuring of arrays” in appendix A). Finally, you return either `null` if the values in the group are valid or an object that indicates the error state otherwise.

#### VALIDATING THE SAMPLE REGISTRATION FORM

Now that we've covered the basics, let's add validation to the sample registration form. You'll use the `ssnValidator` and `equalValidator` implemented earlier in this section. Here's the modified form model.

**Listing 7.15 Modified form model**

```
For the username control, you use the standard Validators.required validator. It makes sure a non-empty value is entered in the field.
For the ssn field, you use the ssnValidator implemented previously.
For the password field, you use the standard validators.minLength validator, which returns an error if the length of the entered string value is less than five characters.

this.formModel = new FormGroup({
  'username': new FormControl('', Validators.required),
  'ssn': new FormControl('', ssnValidator),
  'passwordsGroup': new FormGroup({
    'password': new FormControl('', Validators.minLength(5)),
    'pconfirm': new FormControl('')
  }, {}, equalValidator)
});
```

Configures `equalValidator` for the `passwordsGroup`. It makes sure the values of all fields in the group are the same. Unlike `FormControl`, you pass validators as the third argument to the `FormGroup` constructor.

Before printing the form's model to the console in the `onSubmit()` method, you check whether the form is valid:

```
onSubmit() {
  if (this.formModel.valid) {
    console.log(this.formModel.value);
  }
}
```

In the model-driven approach, configuring validators requires changes only in the code, but you still want to make some changes in the template. You want to display validation errors when the user enters an invalid value. Here's the modified version of the template.

#### **Listing 7.16 Modified template**

```
<form [formGroup]="formModel" (ngSubmit)="onSubmit()" novalidate>
  <div>Username:
    <input type="text" formControlName="username">
    <span [hidden]="!formModel.hasError('required', 'username')">Username is
      ↗ required</span> ←
  </div>
  <div>SSN:
    <input type="text" formControlName="ssn">
    <span [hidden]="!formModel.hasError('ssn', 'ssn')">SSN is invalid
      ↗ </span> ←
  </div>

  <div formGroupName="passwordsGroup">
    <div>Password:
      <input type="password" formControlName="password">
      <span [hidden]="!formModel.hasError('minlength', ['passwordsGroup',
        ↗ 'password'])">
        Password is too short
      </span> ←
    </div>
    <div>Confirm password:
      <input type="password" formControlName="pconfirm">
      <span [hidden]="!formModel.hasError('equal', 'passwordsGroup')">
        Passwords must be the same
      </span>
    </div>
  </div>
  <button type="submit">Submit</button>
</form>
```

The annotations highlight specific parts of the template code:

- Conditionally shows the error message for the username field**: Points to the `<span>` element under the `username` input field.
- Adds an error message for the ssn field as you did for the username field**: Points to the `<span>` element under the `ssn` input field.
- Conditionally shows the error message for the password field**: Points to the `<span>` element under the `password` input field.

Note how you access the `hasError()` method available on the form model when you conditionally show error messages. It takes two parameters: the name of the validation error you want to check, and the path to the field you're interested in in the form model. In the case of `username`, it's a direct child of the top-level `FormGroup`.

that represents the form model, so you specify just the name of the control. But the password field is a child of the nested FormGroup, so the path to the control is specified as an array of strings. The first element is the name of the nested group, and the second element is the name of the password field itself. Like the username field, passwordsGroup specifies the path as a string because it's a direct child of the top-level FormGroup.

The complete running application that illustrates how to use validator functions with reactive forms is located in the 09\_reactive-with-validation.ts file in the code that comes with the book. In this example, you hardcoded the error messages in the template, but they can be provided by the validators. For the example that dynamically provides error messages, see the 07\_custom-validator-error-message.ts file.

### Configuring validators with FormBuilder

Validators can also be configured when you're using FormBuilder to define form models. Here's a modified version of the model for the sample registration form that uses FormBuilder:

```
@Component('...')  
class AppComponent {  
  formModel: FormGroup;  
  
  constructor(fb: FormBuilder) { ←  
    this.formModel = fb.group({ ←  
      'username': ['', Validators.required], ←  
      'ssn': ['', ssnValidator], ←  
      'passwordsGroup': fb.group({ ←  
        'password': ['', Validators.minLength(5)], ←  
        'pconfirm': [''] ←  
      }, {validator: equalValidator}) ←  
    }); ←  
  } ←  
}
```

**FormBuilder** is a registered provider, so you can inject it into the component's constructor instead of instantiating it directly with the new keyword.

Validators are specified as the second array item while configuring FormControls.

While configuring the FormGroup validators, you provide an options object as the second argument to the group() method, and you use the validator property on the object to specify the validators.

### ASYNCHRONOUS VALIDATORS

The Forms API supports asynchronous validators. Async validators can be used to check form values against a remote server, which involves sending an HTTP request. Like regular validators, async validators are functions. The only difference is that async validators should return either an Observable or a Promise object. Here's an async version of the SSN validator.

**Listing 7.17 Async SSN validator**

```
function asyncSsnValidator(control: FormControl): Observable<any> {
  const value: string = control.value || '';
  const valid = value.match(/^\d{9}$/);
  return Observable.of(valid ? null : { ssn: true }).delay(5000);
}
```

In this case, the return value is of the Observable type.

To keep this example simple, you emulate asynchrony with the RxJS delay operator. The validation result arrives 5 seconds after the function is invoked.

Async validators are passed as the third argument to constructors of model classes:

```
let ssnControl = new FormControl('', null, asyncSsnValidator);
```

The complete running application that illustrates how to use async validators is located in the 08\_async-validator.ts file in the code that comes with the book.

**CHECKING A FIELD'S STATUS AND VALIDITY**

You're already familiar with control properties such as valid, invalid, and errors for checking field statuses. In this section, we'll look at a number of other properties that help improve the user experience:

- *Touched and untouched fields*—In addition to checking a control's validity, you can also use the touched and untouched properties to check whether a field was visited by the user. If the user puts the focus into a field using the keyboard or mouse, the field becomes touched; otherwise it's untouched. This can be useful when displaying error messages—if the value in a field is invalid but it was never visited by the user, you can choose not to highlight it with red, because it's not a user mistake. Here's an example:

Defines a CSS class that highlights an input field's border with red, for invalid fields

```
<style>.hasError {border: 1px solid red;}</style>
<input type="text" required
       name="username" ngModel #c="ngModel"
       [class.hasError]="c.invalid && c.touched">
```

Adds the required validator for the username field

Enables Forms API support for the field, and saves a reference to the NgModel directive instance in the template-locale c variable

Conditionally applies the hasError CSS class to the <input> element

**NOTE** All the properties discussed here are available for the model classes FormControl, FormGroup, and FormArray, as well as for the template-driven directives NgModel, NgModelGroup, and NgForm.

Note the CSS class binding example on the last line. It conditionally applies the hasError CSS class to the element if the expression on the right side is true. If you used only c.invalid, the border would be highlighted as soon as the page was rendered; but this can confuse users, especially if the page has a lot of fields. Instead, you add one more condition: the field must be touched. Now the field is highlighted only after a user visits this field.

- *Pristine and dirty fields*—Another useful pair of properties are pristine and its counterpart dirty. dirty indicates that the field was modified after it was initialized with its original value. These properties can be used to prompt the user to save changed data before leaving the page or closing the dialog window.

**NOTE** All of the preceding properties have corresponding CSS classes (ng-touched and ng-untouched, ng-dirty and ng-pristine, ng-valid and ng-invalid) that are automatically added to HTML elements when the property is true. These can be useful to style elements in a certain state.

- *Pending fields*—If you have async validators configured for a control, you may also find the Boolean property pending to be useful. It indicates whether the validity status is currently unknown. This happens when an async validator is still in progress and you need to wait for the results. This property can be used for displaying a progress indicator.

For reactive forms, the statusChanges property of type Observable can be more convenient. It emits one of three values: VALID, INVALID, and PENDING.

#### VALIDATING TEMPLATE-DRIVEN FORMS

Directives are all you can use when you create template-driven forms, so you can wrap validator functions into directives to use them in the template. Let's create a directive that wraps the SSN validator implemented in listing 7.17.

**Listing 7.18 SsnValidatorDirective**

```

@Directive({
  selector: '[ssn]',
  providers: [
    {
      provide: NG_VALIDATORS,
      useValue: ssnValidator,
      multi: true
    }
  ]
})
class SsnValidatorDirective {}
```

The code is annotated with several callouts:

- A callout on the first line of the code, pointing to the @Directive annotation, contains the text: "Defines the directive's selector as an HTML attribute".
- A callout on the "useValue" line of the providers array contains the text: "Registers ssnValidator as an NG\_VALIDATORS provider".
- A callout on the "provide" line of the providers array contains the text: "Declares a directive using the @Directive annotation from the @angular/core module".

The square brackets around the ssn selector denote that the directive can be used as an attribute. This is convenient, because you can add the attribute to any <input> element or to an Angular component represented as a custom HTML element.

In this example, you register the validator function using the predefined NG\_VALIDATORS Angular token. This token is in turn injected by the NgModel directive,

and NgModel gets the list of all validators attached to the HTML element. Then NgModel passes validators to the FormControl instance it implicitly creates internally. The same mechanism is responsible for running validators; directives are just a different way to configure them. The `multi` property lets you associate multiple values with the same token. When the token is injected into the NgModel directive, NgModel gets a list of values instead of a single value. This enables you to pass multiple validators.

Here's how you can use SsnValidatorDirective:

```
<input type="text" name="my-ssn" ngModel ssn>
```

You can find the complete running application that illustrates directive validators in the `06_custom-validator-directive.ts` file in the code that comes with the book.

#### VALIDATING THE SAMPLE REGISTRATION FORM

Now you can add form validation to the sample registration form. Let's start with the template.

**Listing 7.19 Registration form validation template**

<b>Adds the validation directive as the required attribute</b>	<b>Passes the form's value and validity status to the onSubmit() method</b>
<pre>&lt;form #f="ngForm" (ngSubmit)="onSubmit(f.value, f.valid)" novalidate&gt;   &lt;div&gt;Username:     &gt;  &lt;input type="text" name="username" ngModel required&gt;         &lt;span [hidden]="!f.form.hasError('required', 'username')"&gt;Username is           ↗ required&lt;/span&gt;       &lt;/div&gt;       &lt;div&gt;SSN:         &lt;input type="text" name="ssn" ngModel ssn&gt;         &lt;span [hidden]="!f.form.hasError('ssn', 'ssn')"&gt;SSN is invalid&lt;/span&gt;       &lt;/div&gt;       &lt;div ngModelGroup="passwordsGroup" equal&gt;         &lt;div&gt;Password:           &lt;input type="password" name="password" ngModel minlength="5"&gt;           &lt;span [hidden]="!f.form.hasError('minlength', ['passwordsGroup',             ↗ 'password'])"&gt;             Password is too short           &lt;/span&gt;         &lt;/div&gt;         &lt;div&gt;Confirm password:           &lt;input type="password" name="pconfirm" ngModel&gt;           &lt;span [hidden]="!f.form.hasError('equal', 'passwordsGroup')"&gt;             Passwords must be the same           &lt;/span&gt;         &lt;/div&gt;       &lt;/div&gt;       &lt;button type="submit"&gt;Submit&lt;/button&gt;     &lt;/form&gt;</pre>	
<b>Conditionally shows and hides error messages</b>	
<b>equal is a directive wrapper for the equalValidator you implemented earlier. Custom validator directives are added the same way as standard ones.</b>	

In the template-driven approach, you don't have a model in the component. Only the template can inform the form's handler whether the form is valid, and that's why you pass the form's value and validity status as arguments to the `onSubmit()` method. You also add the `novalidate` attribute to prevent standard browser validation from interfering with the Angular validation.

Validation directives are added as attributes. The required directive is provided by Angular and is available once you register Forms API support with `FormsModule`. Similarly, you can use the `minlength` directive to validate the password field.

To conditionally show and hide validation errors, you use the same `hasError()` method you used in the reactive version. But to access this method, you need to use a `form` property of type `FormGroup`, available on the `f` variable that references an instance of the `formGroup` directive.

In the `onSubmit()` method, you check whether the form is valid before printing the value to the console.

#### Listing 7.20 Checking form validation

```
@Component({ template: '...' })
class AppComponent {
  onSubmit(formValue: any, isFormValid: boolean) {
    if (isFormValid) {
      console.log(formValue);
    }
  }
}
```

Now for the last step: you need to add custom validator directives to the declarations list of the `NgModule` where you define `AppComponent`.

#### Listing 7.21 Adding validator directives

```
@NgModule({
  imports      : [ BrowserModule, FormsModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent, EqualValidatorDirective,
    SsnValidatorDirective ],
  bootstrap   : [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule {}
```

The complete running application that illustrates how to use validator directives with template-driven forms is located in the `10_template-driven-with-validation.ts` file in the code that comes with the book.

## 7.5 Hands-on: adding validation to the search form

This hands-on exercise will start where you left off in chapter 6. You'll need to modify the code of the `SearchComponent` to enable form validation and collect the data

entered in the form. When the search form is submitted, you'll print the form's value on the browser's console. Chapter 8 is about communication with the server, and in that chapter you'll refactor the code so the search form will make a real HTTP request.

In this section you'll perform the following steps:

- 1 Add a new method to the `ProductService` class that returns an array of all available product categories.
- 2 Create a model representing the search form using `FormBuilder`.
- 3 Configure validation rules for the model.
- 4 Refactor the template to properly bind to the model created in the previous step.
- 5 Implement the `onSearch()` method to handle the form's submit event.

Figure 7.4 shows what the search form will look like after you complete this hands-on exercise. It illustrates the validators in action.

If you prefer to see the final version of this project, browse the source code in the `auction` folder from chapter 7. Otherwise, copy the `auction` folder from chapter 6 to a separate location, and follow the instructions in this section.

### 7.5.1 *Modifying the root module to add Forms API support*

Update the `app.module.ts` file to enable reactive forms support for the application. Import `ReactiveFormsModule` from `@angular/forms`, and add it to the list of imported modules in the main application `NgModule`.

#### **Listing 7.22 Updated app.module.ts file**

```
import { ReactiveFormsModule } from '@angular/forms';

@NgModule({
  imports: [
    BrowserModule,
    FormsModule,
    ReactiveFormsModule,
    RouterModule.forRoot([ ... ])
  ],
  declarations: [ ... ]
})
```

### 7.5.2 *Adding a list of categories to the SearchComponent*

Each product has the `categories` property, represented by an array of strings, and a single product can relate to multiple categories. The form should allow users to select

The screenshot shows a search form with three fields and one button. The first field is labeled "Product title:" and contains "ab", with the error message "Type at least 3 characters" below it. The second field is labeled "Product price:" and contains "-10", with the error message "Price is not a positive number" below it. The third field is labeled "Product category:" and contains "All categories". Below the fields is a blue "Search" button.

**Figure 7.4** Search form with validators

a category while searching for products; you need a way to provide a list of all available categories to the form so it can display them to users. In a real-world application, the categories would likely come from the server. In this online auction example, you'll add a method to the `ProductService` class that will return hardcoded categories:

- 1 Open the `app/services/product-service.ts` file, and add a `getAllCategories()` method that accepts no parameters and returns a list of strings:

```
getAllCategories(): string[] {
  return ['Books', 'Electronics', 'Hardware'];
}
```

- 2 Open the `app/components/search/search.ts` file, and add an `import` statement for `ProductService`:

```
import {ProductService} from '../services/product-service';
```

- 3 Configure this service as a provider for `SearchComponent`:

```
@Component({
  selector: 'auction-search',
  providers: [ProductService],
  //...
})
```

- 4 Declare a `categories: string[]` class property as a reference to the list of categories. You'll use it for the data binding:

```
export default class SearchComponent {
  categories: string[];
}
```

- 5 Declare a `constructor()` with one parameter: `ProductService`. Angular will inject it when the component is instantiated. Initialize the `categories` property using the `getAllCategories()` method:

The **private** keyword automatically creates a class property with the same name as the parameter and initializes it with the provided value.

```
constructor(private productService: ProductService) {
  this.categories = this.productService.getAllCategories();
}
```

### 7.5.3 Creating a form model

Now let's define the model that will handle the search form:

- 1 Open the `app/components/search/search.ts` file, and add the Forms API-related imports. The `import` statement at the beginning of the file should look like this:

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';
import {FormControl, FormGroup, FormBuilder, Validators} from
  '@angular/forms';
```

- 2** Declare a `formModel` class property of the `FormGroup` type:

```
export default class SearchComponent {
  formModel: FormGroup;
  //...
}
```

- 3** In the constructor, define the `formModel` using the `FormBuilder` class:

```
const fb = new FormBuilder();
this.formModel = fb.group({
  'title': [null, Validators.minLength(3)],
  'price': [null, positiveNumberValidator],
  'category': [-1]
})
```

- 4** Add a `positiveNumberValidator` function:

```
function positiveNumberValidator(control: FormControl): any {
  if (!control.value) return null;
  const price = parseInt(control.value);
  return price === null || typeof price === 'number' && price > 0
    ? null : {positivenumber: true};
}
```

`positiveNumberValidator()` attempts to parse an integer value from the `FormControl`'s value using the standard `parseInt()` function. If the parsed value is a valid positive number, the function returns `null`, meaning there are no errors. Otherwise the function returns an error object.

#### 7.5.4 Refactoring the template

Let's add form directives to the template to bind the model defined in the previous step to the HTML elements:

- 1** You defined the form model in the code implementing the reactive approach, so in the template you should attach the `NgFormModel` directive to the `<form>` element:

The diagram shows the template code with three annotations:

- Binds the form to the model already created in the component**: Points to the `[formGroup]="formModel"` attribute.
- Subscribes to the ngSubmit event. The onSearch() method will be invoked every time the user clicks the button. You'll define this method in the following steps.**: Points to the `(ngSubmit)="onSearch()"` attribute.
- Disables the native browser's form validation so it doesn't interfere with Angular's**: Points to the `novalidate` attribute.

```
<form [formGroup]="formModel"
      (ngSubmit)="onSearch()"
      novalidate>
```

- 2 Define the validation rules, and conditionally display error messages for the title field:

```
<div class="form-group"
      [class.has-error]="formModel.hasError('minlength', 'title')"
    <label for="title">Product title:</label>
    <input id="title"
          placeholder="Title"
          class="form-control"
          type="text"
          formControlName="title"
          minlength="3">
    <span class="help-block"
          [class.hidden]="!formModel.hasError('minlength', 'title')"
        Type at least 3 characters
    </span>
</div>
```

Here you use the `form-group`, `form-control`, `has-error`, and `help-block` CSS classes defined in the Twitter Bootstrap library. They're required to properly render the form and highlight the field with the red border in the case of a validation error. You can read more about these classes in the Bootstrap documentation, in the "Forms" section: <http://getbootstrap.com/css/#forms>.

- 3 Do the same for the product price field:

```
<div class="form-group"
      [class.has-error]="formModel.hasError('positivenumber', 'price')"
    <label for="price">Product price:</label>
    <input id="price"
          placeholder="Price"
          class="form-control"
          type="number"
          step="any"
          min="0"
          formControlName="price">
    <span class="help-block"
          [class.hidden]="!formModel.hasError('positivenumber', 'price')"
        Price is not a positive number
    </span>
</div>
```

- 4 Add validation rules and an error message for the product category field:

```
<div class="form-group">
  <label for="category">Product category:</label>
  <select id="category"
          class="form-control"
          formControlName="category">
    <option value="-1">All categories</option>
    <option *ngFor="let c of categories"
           [value]="c">{{c}}</option>
  </select>
</div>
```

The Submit button remains unchanged.

### 7.5.5 Implementing the `onSearch()` method

Add the following `onSearch()` method:

```
onSearch() {
  if (this.formModel.valid) {
    console.log(this.formModel.value);
  }
}
```

### 7.5.6 Launching the online auction

To launch the application, open a command window and start http-server in the root directory of the project. Enter `http://localhost:8080` in a web browser, and you should see a Home page that includes the search form shown in 7.4. This version of the application illustrates form creation and validation without performing a search. You'll implement the search functionality in chapter 8, when we discuss communication with servers.

## 7.6 Summary

In this chapter, you've learned how to work with forms in Angular. These are the main takeaways from this chapter:

- There are two approaches to working with forms: template-driven and reactive. The template-driven approach is easier and quicker to configure, but the reactive one is easier to test, enables more flexibility, and provides more control over the form.
- The reactive approach offers advantages for applications that use not only the DOM renderer but another one (such as one from NativeScript) targeting non-browser environments. Reactive forms are programmed once and can be reused by more than one renderer.
- A number of standard validators ship with Angular, but you can also create custom ones. You should validate the user's input, but client-side validation isn't a replacement for performing additional validation on the server. Consider client-side validation as a way to provide instant feedback to the user, minimizing server requests involving invalid data.



# *Interacting with servers using HTTP and WebSockets*

---

## **This chapter covers**

- Creating a simple web server using the Node and Express frameworks
- Making server requests from Angular using the Http object API
- Communicating with the Node server from Angular clients using the HTTP protocol
- Wrapping a WebSocket client into an Angular service that generates an observable stream
- Broadcasting data from the server to multiple clients via WebSockets

Angular applications can communicate with any web server supporting HTTP or WebSocket protocols, regardless of what server-side platform is used. So far, we've been covering mostly the client side of Angular applications, with the weather service example in chapter 5 being the only exception. In this chapter, you'll learn how to communicate with web servers in more detail.

We'll first give you a brief overview of Angular's `Http` object, and then you'll create a web server using TypeScript and Node.js. This server will provide the data required for all of the code samples, including the online auction. Then you'll learn how the client code can make HTTP requests to web servers and consume the responses using *observables*, which we introduced in chapter 5. We'll also show you how to communicate with the server via WebSockets, focusing on the server-side data push.

In the hands-on section, you'll implement a product search function in which the data about auction products and reviews will come from the server via HTTP requests. You'll also implement product bid notifications, which will be sent by the server using the WebSocket protocol.

## 8.1 A brief overview of the `Http` object's API

Web applications run HTTP requests asynchronously so the UI remains responsive and the user can continue working with the application while the HTTP requests are being processed by the server. Asynchronous HTTP requests can be implemented using callbacks, promises, or observables. Although promises eliminate the callback hell (see appendix A), they have the following shortcomings:

- There's no way to cancel a pending request made with a promise.
- When a promise resolves or rejects, the client receives either the data or an error message, but in either case it'll just be a single piece of data. A promise doesn't offer a way to handle a continuous stream of chunks of data delivered over time.

Observables don't have these shortcomings. In section 5.2.2, we looked at a promise-based scenario that resulted in multiple unnecessary requests to get a price quote for a stock, generating unnecessary network traffic. Then, in the example with the weather services in section 5.2.3, we demonstrated how you can cancel HTTP requests made with observables.

Let's look at Angular's implementation of the `Http` class, which is included in the `@angular/http` package. This package includes several classes and interfaces, as described in the Angular HTTP client documentation at <http://mng.bz/87C3>.

If you peek inside the `@angular/http/src/http.d.ts` type definition file, you'll see the following APIs in the `Http` class:

```
import {Observable} from 'rxjs/Observable';
...
export declare class Http {
...
    constructor(_backend: ConnectionBackend, _defaultOptions: RequestOptions);
    request(url: string | Request, options?: RequestOptionsArgs): Observable<Response>;
    get(url: string, options?: RequestOptionsArgs): Observable<Response>;
```

```

post(url: string, body: string, options?: RequestOptionsArgs): Observable<Response>;
  ↵

put(url: string, body: string, options?: RequestOptionsArgs): Observable<Response>;
  ↵

delete(url: string, options?: RequestOptionsArgs): Observable<Response>;

patch(url: string, body: string, options?: RequestOptionsArgs): Observable<Response>;
  ↵

head(url: string, options?: RequestOptionsArgs): Observable<Response>;
}

```

This code is written in TypeScript, and each of the `Http` object's methods has `url` as a mandatory argument, which can be either a `string` or a `Request` object. You can also pass an optional object of type `RequestOptionArgs`. Each method returns an `Observable` that wraps an object of type `Response`.

The following code snippet illustrates one of the ways of using the `get()` API of the `Http` object, passing a URL as a `string`:

```

constructor(private http: Http) {
  this.http.get('/products').subscribe(...);
}

```

We haven't specified the full URL here (such as `http://localhost:8000/products`), assuming that the Angular application makes a request to the server where it was deployed, so the base portion of the URL can be omitted. The `subscribe()` method has to receive an observer object with the code for handling the received data and errors.

The `Request` object offers a more generic API, where you can separately create a `Request` instance, specify an HTTP method, and include the search parameters and a Header:

```

let myHeaders: Headers = new Headers();
myHeaders.append('Authorization', 'Basic QWxhZGRpb');

this.http
  .request(new Request({
    headers: myHeaders,
    method: RequestMethod.Get,
    url: '/products',
    search: 'zipcode=10001'
  }))
  .subscribe(...);

```

`RequestOptionsArgs` is declared as a TypeScript interface:

```

export interface RequestOptionsArgs {
  url?: string;
  method?: string | RequestMethod;
}

```

```

    search?: string | URLSearchParams;
    headers?: Headers;
    body?: any;
    withCredentials?: boolean;
    responseType?: ResponseContentType;
}

```

All members of this interface are optional, but if you decide to use them, the TypeScript compiler will ensure that you provide values of the proper data types:

```

var myRequest: RequestOptionsArgs = {
  url: '/products',
  method: 'Get'
};

this.http
  .request(new Request(myRequest))
  .subscribe(...);

```

In the hands-on section, you'll see an example of using the `search` property of `RequestOptionsArgs` to make HTTP requests that have query string parameters.

### What's the Fetch API?

There's an effort under way to unify the process of fetching resources on the web. The Fetch API (<https://fetch.spec.whatwg.org/>) can be used as a replacement for the XMLHttpRequest object. It defines generic Request and Response objects, which can be used not only with HTTP, but also with other emerging web technologies like Service Workers and the Cache API.

With the Fetch API, HTTP requests are made using the global function `fetch()`:

```

fetch('https://www.google.com/search?q=fetch+api')
  .then(response => response.text())
  .then(result => console.log(result));

```

The URL of the resource you want to fetch is the only required parameter.

The `fetch()` call returns a promise that successfully resolves to the Response object regardless of the HTTP response code.

When the requested data is received, you can apply your application's logic to the data. Here you just print the data on the console.

To extract the body's content from the response, you need to use one of the methods in the `Response` object. Each method expects the body to be in a certain format. You read the body as plain text using the `text()` method, which in turn returns a Promise.

Unlike Angular's observable-based `Http` service, the Fetch API is promise-based. The Fetch API is mentioned in Angular documentation because several of Angular's classes and interfaces are inspired by it (such as `Request`, `Response`, and `RequestOptionsArgs`).

Later in this chapter, you'll see how to make requests using the `Http` object's API and how to handle HTTP responses by subscribing to observable streams. In chapter 5, you used the public weather server, but here you'll create your own web server using the Node.js framework.

## 8.2 Creating a web server with Node and TypeScript

Many platforms allow you to develop and deploy web servers. In this book, we decided to use Node.js for the following reasons:

- There's no need to learn a new programming language to understand the code.
- Node allows you to create standalone applications (such as servers).
- Node does a great job in the area of communications using HTTP or WebSockets.
- Using Node lets you continue writing code in TypeScript, so we don't have to explain how to create a web server in Java, .NET, or Python.

In Node, a simple web server can be written with a few lines of code, and you'll start with a very basic one. Then you'll write a web server that can serve JSON data (product details, of course) using the HTTP protocol. A bit later, you'll create yet another version of the server that will communicate with the client over a WebSocket connection. Finally, in the hands-on project, we'll teach you how to write the client portion of the auction so it communicates with your web server.

### 8.2.1 Creating a simple web server

In this section, you'll create a standalone Node application that will run as a server supporting all the Angular code examples. When both the server and client sides are ready, the project's directory will have the structure shown in figure 8.1.

**NOTE** If you've run the code samples from appendix B, you already have the TypeScript compiler installed on your computer. Otherwise, do that now.

Let's start by creating a directory named `http_websocket_samples` with a `server` subdirectory. Configure a new Node project there by running the following command:

```
npm init -y
```

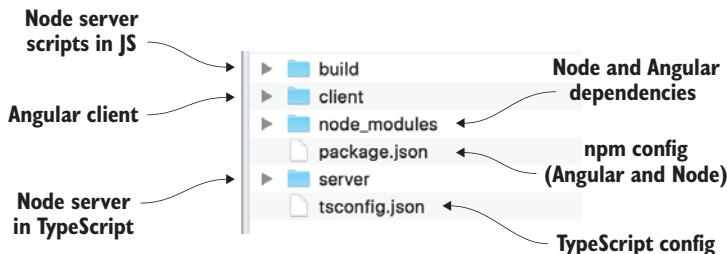


Figure 8.1 The project structure of an Angular-Node application

As you learned in chapter 2, the `-y` option instructs npm to create the `package.json` configuration file with default settings, without prompting you for any options.

Next, create the `hello_server.ts` file with the following content:

#### Listing 8.1 hello\_server.ts

```
Loads the Node module using the ES6
syntax import * as, which is supported
by TypeScript as well

import * as http from 'http';           ←

const server = http.createServer((request, response)=> {
    response.writeHead(200, {'Content-Type': 'text/plain'});
    response.end('Hello World!\n');
});

const port = 8000;
server.listen(port);
console.log('Listening on http://localhost:' + port);
```

This basic server will only know how to respond with HTTP status 200 and the text “Hello World!”, regardless of what the client requests.

The `listen()` function will make this script run infinitely.

Listing 8.1 needs to be transpiled, so create the `tsconfig.json` file in the `http_websocket_samples` directory to configure the tsc compiler.

#### Listing 8.2 tsconfig.json

```
{
  "compilerOptions": {
    "target": "es5",
    "module": "commonjs",
    "emitDecoratorMetadata": true,
    "experimentalDecorators": true,
    "outDir": "build"
  },
  "exclude": [
    "node_modules",
    "client"
  ]
}
```

The transpiler will put the `.js` files into the build directory.

tsc shouldn't transpile the code located in the `node_modules` directory.

Instructs tsc to transpile modules according to the CommonJS spec. The `import` statement in `hello_server.ts` will be transpiled into `var http = require('http');`.

Later, you'll create the client directory for the Angular part of the app, but that code doesn't need to be transpiled because SystemJS will do it on the fly.

After running the `npm run tsc` command, the transpiled `hello_server.js` file will be saved in the `build` directory, and you can start your web server:

```
node build/hello_server.js
```

Node will start the V8 JavaScript engine that will run the script from `hello_server.js`; it will create a web server and print the following message on the console: “Listening on `http://localhost:8000`”. If you open your browser at this URL, you’ll see a web page with the text “Hello World!”

## TypeScript 2.0 and @types

In this project, you use a locally installed tsc compiler version 2.0, which uses the @types packages to install type-definition files. That's because older versions of tsc didn't support the types compiler option, and if you have an older version of tsc installed globally, running tsc will use that version, causing compilation errors.

To ensure that you use the local version of tsc, configure it as a command ("tsc": "tsc") in the scripts section of package.json, and start the compiler by entering the npm run tsc command to transpile the server's files. Run this command from the same directory where the tsconfig.json file is located (the project root in the code samples for this chapter).

You need to have Node's type-definition files (see appendix B) to prevent TypeScript compilation errors. To install Node's type definitions for another project, run the following command from the root directory of your project:

```
npm i @types/node --save
```

If you use the code samples that come with this chapter, you can run the command npm install, because the package.json file includes the @types/node dependency for Node:

```
"@types/node": "^4.0.30"
```

### 8.2.2 Serving JSON

In all the auction code samples so far, the data about products and reviews has been hardcoded in the product-service.ts file as arrays of JSON-formatted objects. In the hands-on section, you'll move this data to the server, so the Node web server needs to know how to serve JSON.

To send JSON to the browser, you need to modify the header to specify a MIME type of application/json:

```
const server = http.createServer((request, response) => {
  response.writeHead(200, {'Content-Type': 'application/json'});
  response.end('{"message": "Hello Json!"}\n');
});
```

This snippet suffices as an illustration of sending JSON, but real-world servers perform more functions, such as reading files, routing, and handling various HTTP requests (GET, POST, and so on). Later, in the auction example, you'll need to respond with either product or review data depending on the request.

To minimize manual coding, let's install Express (<http://expressjs.com>), a Node framework that provides a set of features required by all web applications. You won't be using all of its functionality, but it will help with creating a RESTful web service that will return JSON-formatted data.

To install Express, run the following command from the http\_websocket\_samples directory:

```
npm install express --save
```

This downloads Express into the node\_modules folder and updates the dependencies section in package.json.

Because this project's file has the entry "@types/express": "^4.0.31", you already have all the type definitions for Express in your node\_modules directory. But if you want to install them in any other project, run the following command:

```
npm i @types/express --save
```

Now you can import Express into your application and start using its API while writing code in TypeScript. The following listing shows the my-express-server.ts file that implements the server-side routing for HTTP GET requests.

### Listing 8.3 my-express-server.ts

**Instantiates the Express object using the app constant as a reference**

```
import * as express from "express";
const app = express();
```

app.get('/', (req, res) => res.send('Hello from Express'));

app.get('/products', (req, res) => res.send('Got a request for products'));

app.get('/reviews', (req, res) => res.send('Got a request for reviews'));

const server = app.listen(8000, "localhost", () => {
 const {address, port} = server.address();
 console.log(`Listening on http://localhost:\${port}`);
});

You've implemented routing only for GET requests using the Express API's get(), but Express has the methods required to handle all HTTP methods.

You can find their declarations in express.d.ts.

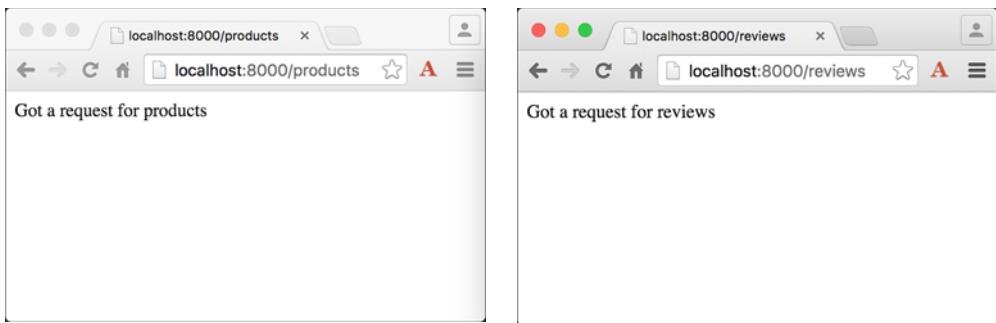
**You use destructuring here (see appendix A) to automatically extract the values of the address and port properties.**

**Starts listening on port 8000 at the address localhost, and executes the code from the fat arrow function on startup**

If you used the ES5 syntax instead of destructuring, you'd need to write two lines instead of one:

```
var address = server.address().address;
var port = server.address().port;
```

Transpile my-express-server.ts by running `npm run tsc`, and start this server (node build/my-express-server.js). You can request either products or services, depending on which URL you enter in the browser, as shown in figure 8.2.



**Figure 8.2 Server-side routing with Express**

**NOTE** To debug Node applications, refer to your preferred IDE documentation. You can also use the node-inspector command-line tool (<https://github.com/node-inspector/node-inspector>).

### 8.2.3 Live TypeScript recompilation and code reload

The server-side examples are written in TypeScript, so you need to use tsc to transpile the code to JavaScript prior to deploying it in Node. In section B.3.1, in appendix B, we'll discuss the compilation option -w that runs tsc in watch mode; whenever a TypeScript file changes, it gets recompiled automatically. To set the auto-compilation mode for your code, open a separate command window in the directory with the sources, and run the following command there:

```
tsc -w
```

When no filenames are specified, tsc uses the tsconfig.json file for compilation options. Now, whenever you make a change in the TypeScript code and save the file, it'll generate a corresponding .js file in the build directory as specified in tsconfig.json. Accordingly, to start your web server with Node, you could use the following command:

```
node build/my-express-server.js
```

Live recompilation of the TypeScript code helps, but the Node server won't automatically pick up code changes after it has started. So that you don't need to manually restart the Node server to see your code changes in action, you can use a handy utility: Nodemon (<http://nodemon.io>). It will monitor for any changes in your source and, when it detects changes, will automatically restart your server and reload the code.

You can install Nodemon either globally or locally. For a global install, use the following command:

```
npm install -g nodemon
```

The following command will start your server in monitoring mode:

```
nodemon build/my-express-server.js
```

Install Nodemon locally (`npm install nodemon --save-dev`) and introduce npm scripts (<https://docs.npmjs.com/misc/scripts>) in the package.json file.

#### Listing 8.4 package.json

```
"scripts": {
  "tsc": "tsc",
  "start": "node build/my-express-server.js",
  "dev": "nodemon build/my-express-server.js"
},
"devDependencies": {
  "nodemon": "^1.8.1"
}
```

With this setup, you can start the server in development mode with `npm run dev` (auto restart/reload) or `npm start` in production (no restart/reload). We gave the name `dev` to the command that starts nodemon, but you can name it anything you want, such as `startNodemon`.

#### 8.2.4 Adding the RESTful API for serving products

Your ultimate goal is to serve products and reviews for the auction application. In this section, we'll illustrate how to prepare a Node server with REST endpoints to serve products in JSON format when HTTP GET requests are received.

You'll modify the code in the `my-express-server.ts` file to serve either all products or a specific one (by ID). The modified version of this application, shown next, is located in the `auction-rest-server.ts` file.

#### Listing 8.5 auction-rest-server.ts

```
import * as express from "express";
const app = express();

class Product {
    constructor(
        public id: number,
        public title: string,
        public price: number){}
}

const products = [
    new Product(0, "First Product", 24.99),
    new Product(1, "Second Product", 64.99),
    new Product(2, "Third Product", 74.99)
];

function getProducts(): Product[] {
    return products;
}
```

The code is annotated with three callout boxes:

- A box labeled "Defines the Product class" points to the `Product` class definition.
- A box labeled "Creates an array of three Product instances with the hardcoded data" points to the `products` constant, which contains three `Product` instances with hardcoded data.
- A box labeled "This function returns the entire array of Product instances." points to the `getProducts` function, which returns the `products` array.

```

    app.get('/', (req, res) => {
      res.send('The URL for products is http://localhost:8000/products');
    });

    app.get('/products', (req, res) => {
      res.json(getProducts());
    });

    function getProductById(productId: number): Product {
      return products.find(p => p.id === productId);
    }

    app.get('/products/:id', (req, res) => {
      res.json(getProductById(parseInt(req.params.id)));
    });

    const server = app.listen(8000, "localhost", () => {
      const {address, port} = server.address();
      console.log(`Listening on ${address} port ${port}`);
    });
  
```

**When Express receives the GET request containing /products, it invokes the getProducts() function and returns the result to the client in JSON format.**

**When Express receives GET requests with parameters, their values are stored in the params property of the request object. You convert the product ID from a string to an integer and invoke getProductById(). The result is sent to the client in JSON format.**

Now you can start the auction-rest-server.ts application in Node (run nodemon build/auction-rest-server.js) and see if the browser receives all products or a selected product. Figure 8.3 shows the browser window after we entered the URL http://localhost:8000/products. Our server returned all the products in JSON format.

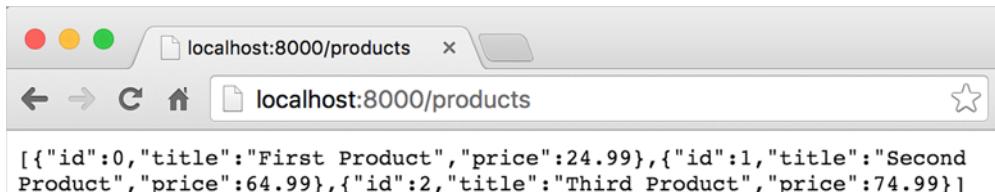


Figure 8.3 Node server response to http://localhost:8000/products

Figure 8.4 shows the browser window after we entered the URL http://localhost:8000/products/1. This time, our server returned only data about the product that has an id with the value of 1.

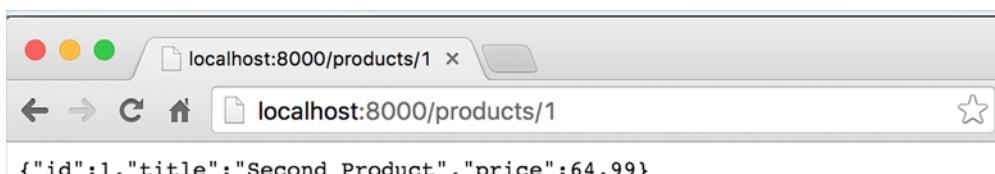


Figure 8.4 Node server response to http://localhost:8000/products/1

The server is ready. Now you can learn how to initiate HTTP requests and handle responses in Angular applications.

## 8.3 Bringing Angular and Node together

Earlier in this chapter, you created the `http_websocket_samples` folder containing the `auction-rest-server.ts` file, which is a Node application that responds to HTTP GET requests and supplies product details. In this section, you'll write an Angular client that will issue HTTP requests and treat the product's data as an Observable object returned by your server. The code of the Angular application will be located in the client subdirectory (see figure 8.1).

### 8.3.1 Static resources on the server

A typical web application deployed on the server includes static resources (such as HTML, images, CSS, and JavaScript code) that have to be loaded in the browser when the user enters the application's URL. Because we're using SystemJS, which does on-the-fly transpiling, the TypeScript files are static resources as well.

From Node's perspective, the Angular portion of this application is considered static resources. Because Angular apps load dependencies from `node_modules`, this directory also belongs to the static resources required by the browser.

The Express framework has a special API to specify the directories with static resources, and you'll make slight modifications in the `auction-rest-server.ts` file shown in listing 8.5. In that file, you didn't specify the directory with static resources, because no client's app was deployed there. The new version of this file will be called `auction-rest-server-angular.ts`. First, add the following lines:

```
import * as path from "path";
app.use('/', express.static(path.join(__dirname, '..', 'client')));
app.use('/node_modules', express.static(path.join(__dirname, '..',
  'node_modules')));
```

When the browser requests static resources, Node will look for them in the `client` and `node_modules` directories. Here you use Node's `path.join` API to ensure that the file path is created in a cross-platform way. You can use `path.join` when you need to build an absolute path for a specific file; you'll see examples later.

Let's keep the same REST endpoints on the server:

- / serves `main.html`, which is the landing page of the application.
- `/products` gets all products.
- `/products/:id` gets a product by its ID.

Unlike in the `my_express_server.ts` application, you don't want Node to handle the base URL; you want Node to send the `main.html` file to the browser. In the `auction-rest-server-angular.ts` file, change the route for the base URL / to look like this:

```
app.get('/', (req, res) => {
  res.sendFile(path.join(__dirname, '../client/main.html'));
});
```

Now, when the user enters the URL of the Node server in the browser, the main.html file will be served first. Then it'll load your Angular application with all dependencies.

#### THE COMMON NPM CONFIGURATION FILE

The new version of the package.json file will combine all dependencies required for both the Node-related code and your Angular application. Note that you declare several commands in the `script` section. The first command is for running the locally installed tsc, and the others are to start Node servers for the code samples included in this chapter.

**Listing 8.6 Modified package.json file**

```
{
  "private": true,
  "scripts": {
    "tsc": "tsc",
    "start": "node build/my-express-server.js",
    "dev": "nodemon build/my-express-server.js",
    "devRest": "nodemon build/auction-rest-server.js",
    "restServer": "nodemon build/auction-rest-server-angular.js",
    "simpleWsServer": "node build/simple-websocket-server.js",
    "twoWayWsServer": "nodemon build/two-way-websocket-server.js",
    "bidServer": "nodemon build/bids/bid-server.js"
  },
  "dependencies": {
    "@angular/common": "^2.0.0",
    "@angular/compiler": "^2.0.0",
    "@angular/core": "^2.0.0",
    "@angular/forms": "^2.0.0",
    "@angular/http": "^2.0.0",
    "@angular/platform-browser": "^2.0.0",
    "@angular/platform-browser-dynamic": "^2.0.0",
    "@angular/router": "^3.0.0",

    "core-js": "^2.4.0",
    "rxjs": "5.0.0-beta.12",
    "systemjs": "0.19.37",
    "zone.js": "0.6.21",

    "@types/express": "^4.0.31",
    "@types/node": "^4.0.30",
    "express": "^4.14.0",
    "ws": "^1.1.1"
  },
  "devDependencies": {
    "@types/es6-shim": "0.0.30",
    "@types/ws": "0.0.29",
    "nodemon": "^1.8.1",
    "typescript": "^2.0.0"
  }
}
```

Note that you include the `@angular/http` package here, which includes Angular's support for the HTTP protocol. You also include `ws` and `@types/ws`—you'll need them for WebSocket support later in the chapter.

### npm scripts

npm supports the `scripts` property in `package.json` with more than a dozen scripts available right out of the box (see the `npm-scripts` documentation for details, <https://docs.npmjs.com/misc/scripts>). You can also add new commands specific to your development and deployment workflow.

Some of these scripts need to be run manually (such as `npm start`), and some are invoked automatically (such as `postinstall`). In general, if any command in the `scripts` section starts with the `post` prefix, it'll run automatically after the command specified after this prefix. For example, if you define the command "`"postinstall" : "myCustomInstall.js"`", each time you run `npm install`, the `myCustomInstall.js` script will run as well.

Similarly, if a command has a `pre` prefix, the command will run before the command named after this prefix. For example, in section 10.3.2, you'll see the following commands in the `package.json` file:

```
"prebuild": "npm run clean && npm run test",
"build": "webpack --config webpack.prod.config.js --progress --profile
  ↪ --colors"
```

If you run the `build` command, npm will first run the script defined in `prebuild`; then it'll run the script defined in `build`.

So far, you've been using only two commands: `npm start` and `npm run dev`. But you can add any commands you like to the `scripts` section of your `package.json` file. For example, both the `build` and `prebuild` commands in the preceding example are custom commands.

### Common vs. separate configuration files

In this chapter, all code samples for the client and server belong to a single npm project and share the same `package.json` file. All dependencies and typings are shared by the client and server applications. This setup may reduce the time for installing dependencies and save space on disk because some of the dependencies may be shared between the client and server.

But keeping the code for the client and server in a single project tends to complicate the build automation process for two reasons:

- Client and server may require conflicting versions of a particular dependency.
- You use build automation tools, which may require different configurations for client and server, and their `node_modules` directories won't be located in the root directory of the project.

In chapter 10, you'll separate the client and server portions of the online auction into two independent npm projects.

The next step is to add an Angular app to the client directory.

### 8.3.2 Making GET requests with the `Http` object

When Angular's `Http` object makes a request, the response comes back as `Observable`, and the client's code will handle it by using the `subscribe()` method. Let's start with a simple application (`client/app/main.ts`) that retrieves all products from the Node server and renders them using an HTML unordered list.

**Listing 8.7** `client/app/main.ts`

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { HttpClientModule, Http } from '@angular/http';
import { Observable } from "rxjs/Observable";
import 'rxjs/add/operator/map';

@Component({
  selector: 'http-client',
  template: `<h1>All Products</h1>
<ul>
  <li *ngFor="let product of products">
    {{product.title}}
  </li>
</ul>
`)
class AppComponent {

  products: Array = [];
  theDataSource: Observable;

  constructor(private http: Http) {
    this.theDataSource = this.http.get('/products')
      .map(res => res.json());
  }

  ngOnInit() {
    // Get the data from the server
    this.theDataSource.subscribe(
      data => {
        if (Array.isArray(data)) {
          this.products = data;
        } else{
          this.products.push(data);
        }
      },
      err =>
        console.log("Can't get products. Error code: %s, URL: %s ",
        err.status, err.url),
    );
  }
}

The error
callback is
invoked only
if the server
responds with
an error.
```

**Imports the HTTP module and the `Http` object that will be injected into `AppComponent`**

**There are more than 100 operators in RxJS; you just need `map()` in this example.**

**The instance of the `Http` service is injected into the component.**

**Doesn't send a GET request to the `/products` endpoint of the Node server yet, because no one subscribed to it**

**The `map()` operator converts the data into a JSON string and returns an `Observable`. No server requests are made until a `subscribe()` method is invoked.**

**The `subscribe()` method initiates the request to the server. `subscribe()` internally creates an `Observer` object, and this fat-arrow expression assigns the received data to the `products` array.**

```

        () => console.log('Product(s) are retrieved')
    );
}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule,
                  HttpClientModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

The final callback is invoked after the handling of the stream of data is complete.

Declares HttpClientModule that defines providers required for injecting the Http object

To see the error callback in action, change the endpoint from '/products' to something else. Your Angular application will print the following on the console: "Can't get products. Error code: 404, URL: http://localhost:8000/products".

**NOTE** The HTTP GET request is sent to the server only when you invoke the subscribe() method and not when you call the get() method.

You're ready to start the server and enter its URL in the browser to see the Angular app served. You can start your Node server either by running the long command

```
node build/auction-rest-server-angular.js
```

or by using the npm script that you defined in the package.json file:

```
npm run restServer
```

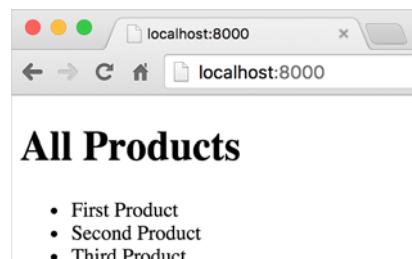
Open the browser to <http://localhost:8000>, and you'll see the Angular app shown in figure 8.5.

**NOTE** Make sure the client/systemjs.config.js file maps the app package to main.ts.

**TIP** You can make HTTP GET requests that pass parameters in the URL after the question mark (such as myserver.com?param1=val1&param2=val2). The Http.get() method can accept a second parameter, which is an object that implements RequestOptionsArgs. The search field of RequestOptionsArgs can be used to set either a string or a URLSearchParams object. You'll see an example of using URLSearchParams in the hands-on section.

### 8.3.3 Unwrapping observables in templates with AsyncPipe

In the previous section, you handled the observable stream of products in the TypeScript code by invoking the subscribe() method. Angular offers an alternative



**Figure 8.5** Retrieving all products from the Node server

syntax that lets you handle observables right in the template of a component with pipes; it's covered in chapter 5.

Angular includes `AsyncPipe` (or `async` if used in templates), which can receive a `Promise` or `Observable` as input and subscribe to it automatically. To see this in action, let's make the following changes in the code from the previous section:

- Change the type of the `products` variable from `Array` to `Observable`.
- Remove the declaration of the `theDataSource` variable.
- Remove the invocation of `subscribe()` in the code. You'll assign the `Observable` returned by `http.get().map()` to `products`.
- Add the `async` pipe to the `*ngFor` loop in the template.

The following code (`main-asyncpipe.ts`) implements these changes.

#### Listing 8.8 main-asyncpipe.ts

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { HttpModule, Http } from '@angular/http';
import 'rxjs/add/operator/map';
import { Observable } from "rxjs/Observable";

@Component({
  selector: 'http-client',
  template: `<h1>All Products</h1>
<ul>
  <li *ngFor="let product of products | async"> ←
    {{product.title}}
  </li>
</ul>
`)
class AppComponent {
  products: Observable<Array<string>>; ←
  constructor(private http: Http) {
    this.products = this.http.get('/products')
      .map(res => res.json()); ←
  }
}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule, HttpModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);
```

**The `async` pipe unwraps the array elements from the provided observable stream of products.**

**Now the `products` array has the type `Observable`, which wraps an array of strings.**

**Assigns an Observable that will be returned by `map()` to `products`**

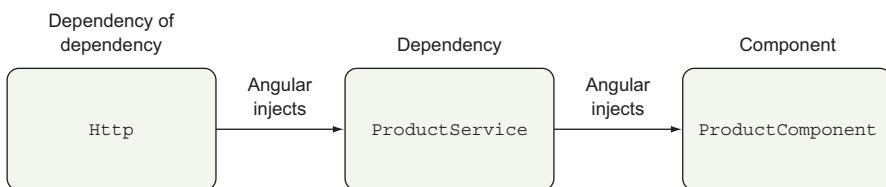
Running this application will produce the same output you saw in figure 8.5.

**NOTE** This version of AppComponent with `async` is shorter than the version in listing 8.7. But the code that explicitly invokes `subscribe()` is easier to test.

### 8.3.4 Injecting HTTP into a service

In this section, you'll see an example of an injectable `ProductService` class that will encapsulate HTTP communications with the server. You'll create a small application in which the user can enter the product ID and have the application make a request to the server's `/products/:id` endpoint.

The user enters the product ID and clicks the button, which starts a subscription to the Observable property `productDetails` on the `ProductService` object. Figure 8.6 shows the injectable objects of the application you're going to build.



**Figure 8.6** The client-server workflow

In chapter 7, you became familiar with the Forms API. Here you'll create an `AppComponent` with a simple form that has an input field and a Find Product button. This application will communicate with the Node web server you created earlier, and you'll implement the client portion in two iterations. In the first version (`main-form.ts`), you won't use the `ProductService` class. The `AppComponent` will get the `Http` object injected and will make requests to the server.

#### Listing 8.9 main-form.ts

```

import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { FormsModule } from '@angular/forms';
import { HttpClientModule, Http } from '@angular/http';

@Component({
  selector: 'http-client',
  template: `<h1>Find Product By ID</h1>
    <form #f="ngForm" (ngSubmit) = "getProductByID(f.value)" >
      <label for="productID">Enter Product ID</label>
      <input id="productID" type="number" name = "productID" ngModel>
      <button type="submit">Find Product</button>
    </form>

    <h4>{{productTitle}} {{productPrice}}</h4>
  `)

```

**Defines the form that invokes  
getProductByID() when the  
user clicks the submit button**

```

class AppComponent {

    productTitle: string;
    productPrice: string;

    constructor(private http: Http) {}

    getProductByID(formValue) {
        this.http.get(`products/${formValue.productID}`)
            .map(res => res.json())
            .subscribe(
                data => {this.productTitle= data.title,
                          this.productPrice=`$` + data.price;},
                err => console.log("Can't get product details. Error code: %s",
                    ↗ URL: %s ",
                    ↗ err.status, err.url),
                () =>     console.log( 'Done' )
            );
    }
}

@NgModule({
    imports:      [ BrowserModule,  FormsModule, HttpClientModule ],
    declarations: [ AppComponent ],
    bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

**In case of an error, prints the error code and the URL on the console**

**Uses string interpolation to attach the entered productID to the URL in the HTTP get() request. The HTTP GET request isn't issued yet at this point.**

**subscribe() issues the GET request and assigns the received values to the productTitle and productPrice class variables, which are bound to the HTML template.**

Figure 8.7 shows a screenshot taken after we entered 2 as a product ID and clicked the Find Product button, which sent a request to the URL `http://localhost:8000/products/2`. The Node Express server matched `/products/2` with the corresponding REST endpoint and routed this request to the method defined as `app.get('/products/:id')`.

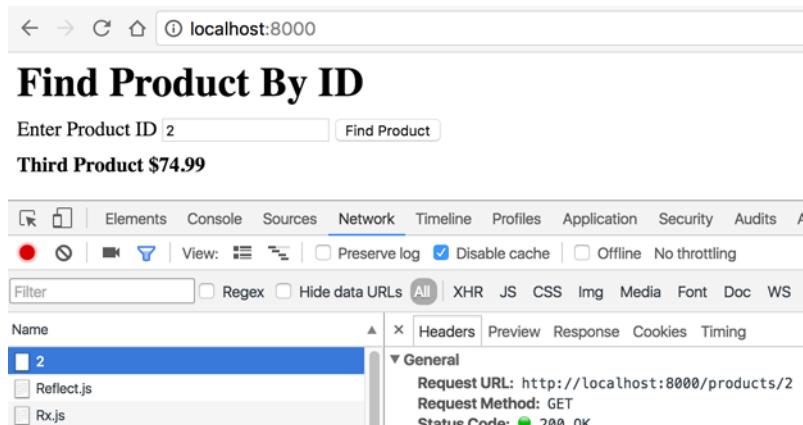


Figure 8.7 Getting product details by ID

### INJECTING AN HTTP OBJECT INTO A SERVICE

Now let's introduce the `ProductService` class (`product-service.ts`). In listing 8.9, you injected `Http` into the constructor of the `AppComponent`; now you'll move the code that uses `Http` into `ProductService` so the code reflects the architecture in figure 8.6.

**Listing 8.10 product-service.ts**

```

You didn't use the @Injectable annotation in previous versions of ProductService because you didn't inject anything into the ProductService itself. import { Http } from '@angular/http';
import { Injectable } from '@angular/core';
import { Observable } from 'rxjs/Observable';
import 'rxjs/add/operator/map';

→ @Injectable()
export class ProductService{
    constructor(private http: Http) {} ←

    getProductByID(productId: string): Observable<any>{
        return this.http.get(`~/products/${productId}`)
            .map(res => res.json());
    }
}

Angular injects the instance of the Http object, and the private qualifier results in implicit creation of the http instance variable.
The getProductByID() method forms the URL, but it doesn't invoke the subscribe() method. It returns an Observable object. The component that handles the data will provide an observer.

```

The `ProductService` class uses DI. The `@Injectable()` decorator instructs the TypeScript compiler to generate the metadata for `ProductService`, and using this decorator is required here. When you were injecting `Http` into the component that had another decorator (`@Component`), that was a signal to the TypeScript compiler to generate the metadata for the component required for DI. If the class `ProductService` didn't have any decorators, the TypeScript compiler wouldn't generate any metadata for it, and the Angular DI mechanism wouldn't know that it had some injection to do into `ProductService`. The mere existence of the `@Injectable()` decorator is required for classes that represent services, and you shouldn't forget to include "emitDecoratorMetadata": true in the `tsconfig.json` file.

The new version of `AppComponent` (`main-with-service.ts`) will become a subscriber of the observable stream produced by `ProductService`.

**Listing 8.11 main-with-service.ts**

```

import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component } from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
import { FormsModule } from '@angular/forms';
import { HttpModule, Http } from '@angular/http';
import { ProductService } from './product-service';

@Component({
    selector: 'http-client',

```

```

providers: [ProductService],
template: `<h1>Find Product By ID Using ProductService</h1>
  <form #f="ngForm" (ngSubmit)="getProductByID(f.value)">
    <label for="productID">Enter Product ID</label>
    <input id="productID" type="number" ngControl="productID">
    <button type="submit">Find Product</button>
  </form>
  <h4>{{productTitle}} {{productPrice}}</h4>
`})
class AppComponent {
  productTitle: string;
  productPrice: string;

  constructor(private productService: ProductService) {} ←

  getProductByID(formValue) {
    this.productService.getProductByID(formValue.productID) ←
      .subscribe( ←
        data => {this.productTitle = data.title,
                  this.productPrice = `$` + data.price;},
        err => console.log("Can't get product details. Error code: %s",
          URL: %s",
          err.status, err.url),
        () => console.log('Done')
      );
  }
}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule,  FormsModule, HttpClientModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

**Subscribes to the Observable, and handles the results**

**Now Angular injects the ProductService, whereas in the previous version of this component it injected the Http object.**

**Invokes the method on ProductService that returns an Observable**

ProductService isn't a component, but a class, and Angular doesn't allow you to specify providers for classes. As a result, you specify the provider for Http in the AppComponent by including the providers property in the @Component decorator. The other choice would be to declare providers in @NgModule. In this particular application, it wouldn't make a difference.

In chapter 4, while discussing DI, we mentioned that Angular can inject objects, and, if they have their own dependencies, Angular will inject them as well. Listing 8.11 proves that Angular's DI module works as expected.

## 8.4 Client-server communication via WebSockets

WebSocket is a low-overhead binary protocol supported by all modern web browsers. With request-based HTTP, a client sends a request over a connection and waits for a response to come back (half-duplex), as shown in figure 8.8. On the other hand, the WebSocket

protocol allows data to travel in both directions simultaneously (full-duplex) over the same connection, as shown in figure 8.9. The WebSocket connection is kept alive, which has an additional benefit: low latency in the interaction between the server and the client.

Whereas a typical HTTP request/response adds several hundred bytes (the headers) to the application data, with WebSockets the overhead is as low as a couple of bytes. If you’re not familiar with WebSockets, refer to [www.websocket.org](http://www.websocket.org) or one of the many tutorials available online.

#### 8.4.1 Pushing data from a Node server

WebSockets are supported by most server-side platforms (Java, .NET, Python, and others), but you’ll continue using Node to implement your WebSocket-based server. You’ll implement one particular use case: the server will push data to a browser-based client as soon as the client connects to the socket. We purposely won’t have you send a request for data from the client, to illustrate that WebSockets aren’t about request-response communication. Either party can start sending the data over the WebSocket connection.

Several Node packages implement the WebSocket protocol; here you’ll use the npm package called `ws` (<https://www.npmjs.com/package/ws>). Install it by entering the following command in your project’s directory:

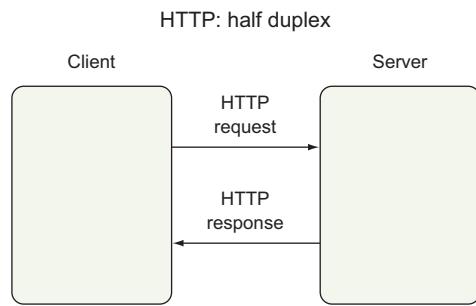
```
npm install ws --save
```

Then install the type definition file for `ws`:

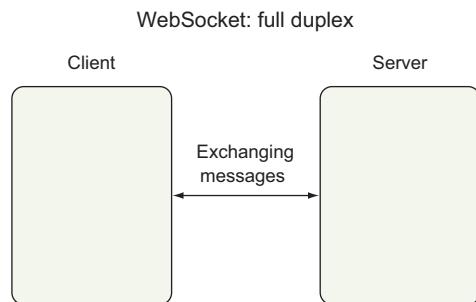
```
npm install @types/ws --save-dev
```

Now the TypeScript compiler won’t complain when you use the API from the `ws` package. Besides, this file is handy for seeing the APIs and types available.

Your first WebSocket server will be pretty simple: it’ll push the text “This message was pushed by the WebSocket server” to the client as soon as the connection is established. You purposely don’t want the client to send any data request to the server, to illustrate that a socket is a two-way street and that the server can push the data without any request ceremony.



**Figure 8.8 Half-duplex communication**



**Figure 8.9 Full-duplex communication**

The application in listing 8.12 (`simple-websocket-server.ts`) creates two servers. The HTTP server will run on port 8000 and will be responsible for sending the initial HTML file to the client. The WebSocket server will run on port 8085 and will communicate with all connected clients through this port.

### Listing 8.12 simple-websocket-server.ts

```

import * as express from "express";
import * as path from "path";
import {Server} from "ws";
const app = express();

app.use('/', express.static(path.join(__dirname, '..', 'client')));
app.use('/node_modules', express.static(path.join(__dirname, '..',
  'node_modules')));

// HTTP Server
app.get('/', (req, res) => {
  res.sendFile(path.join(__dirname, '..',,
    'client/simple-websocket-client.html'));
});

const httpServer = app.listen(8000, "localhost", () => {
  console.log('HTTP Server is listening on port 8000');
});

// WebSocket Server
var wsServer: Server = new Server({port:8085});

console.log('WebSocket server is listening on port 8085');

wsServer.on('connection',
  websocket => websocket.send('This message was pushed by the
    WebSocket server'));

```

**This example uses the Server type from the ws module for the explicit variable declaration. That's why you import only the Server definition.**

**Whenever the HTTP client connects to the base URL, the HTTP server will send back the client/simple-websocket-client.html file.**

**The HTTP Server starts listening on port 8000.**

**The WebSocket server starts listening on port 8085. The wsServer variable will know everything about this socket.**

**As soon as the client connects to the socket, the connection event is dispatched on the object represented by wsSocket to this particular client.**

**The send() method will push the message, “This message was pushed by the WebSocket server”.**

**NOTE** In listing 8.12, you import only the `Server` module from `ws`. If you used other exported members, you could write `import * as ws from "ws";`.

In listing 8.12, HTTP and WebSocket servers are running on different ports, but you could reuse the same port by providing the newly created `httpServer` instance to the constructor of `WsServer`:

```

const httpServer = app.listen(8000, "localhost", () => {...});

const wsServer: WsServer = new WsServer({server: httpServer});

```

In the hands-on section, you'll reuse port 8000 for both HTTP and WebSocket communications (see the server/auction.ts file).

**NOTE** As soon as the new client connects to the server, the reference to this connection is added to the wsServer.clients array so you can broadcast messages to all connected clients if needed: wsServer.clients.forEach (client => client.send('...')) ;.

The content of the client's simple-websocket-client.html file is shown in listing 8.13. This client doesn't use either Angular or TypeScript. As soon as this file is downloaded to the browser, its script connects to your WebSocket server at ws://localhost:8085. Note that the protocol is ws and not http. For a secure socket connection, use the wss protocol.

#### Listing 8.13 simple-websocket-client.html

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <meta charset="UTF-8">
</head>
<body>
<span id="messageGoesHere"></span>

<script type="text/javascript">
    var ws = new WebSocket("ws://localhost:8085");
    ws.onmessage = function(event) {
        var mySpan = document.getElementById("messageGoesHere");
        mySpan.innerHTML=event.data;
    };
    ws.onerror = function(event) {
        console.log("Error ", event)
    }
</script>
</body>
</html>
```

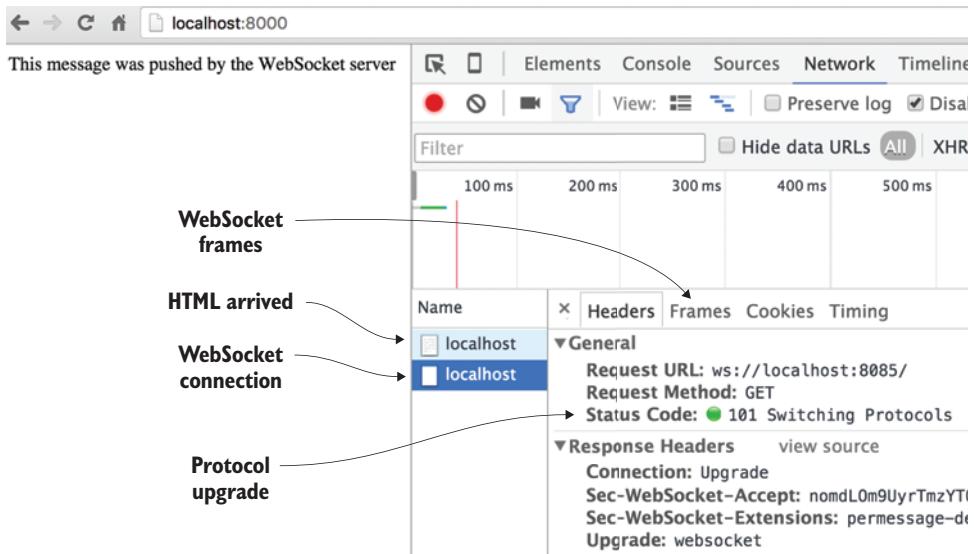
The code is annotated with three callout boxes:

- A vertical callout on the right side points to the first line of the script block: "Establishes the socket connection. At this point, the server upgrades the protocol from HTTP to WebSocket."
- A horizontal callout points to the ws.onmessage line: "When the message arrives from the socket, you display its content in the <span> element."
- A horizontal callout points to the ws.onerror line: "In the case of an error, the browser logs the error message on the console."

To run the server that pushes data to the clients, start the Node server (node build/simple-websocket-server.js or npm simpleWsServer). It will print the following messages on the console:

```
WebSocket server is listening on port 8085
HTTP Server is listening on 8000
```

**NOTE** If you'll be modifying the code located in the server directory, don't forget to run npm run tsc in the root directory of your project to create a fresh version of your JavaScript code in the build directory. Otherwise the node command will load the old JavaScript file.



**Figure 8.10** Getting the message from the socket

To receive the message pushed from the server, open the browser to `http://localhost:8000`. You'll see the message, as shown in figure 8.10.

In this example, the HTTP protocol is used only to initially load the HTML file. Then the client requests the protocol upgrade to WebSocket (status code 101), and from then on this application won't use HTTP.

**TIP** You can monitor messages going over the socket by using the Frames tab in Chrome Developer Tools.

#### 8.4.2 Turning a WebSocket into an observable

In the previous section, you wrote a client in JavaScript (no Angular) using the browser's `WebSocket` object. Now we'll show you how to create a service that will wrap the browser's `WebSocket` object in an observable stream so Angular components can subscribe to messages coming from the server over the socket connection.

Earlier, in section 8.3.2, the code that received the product data was structured as follows (in pseudocode):

```
this.http.get('/products')
  .subscribe(
    data => handleNextDataElement(),
    err => handleErrors(),
    () => handleStreamCompletion()
  );
```

Basically, your goal was to write the application code that would consume the observable stream provided by Angular's `Http` service. But Angular has no service that will

produce an observable from a WebSocket connection, so you'll have to write such a service. This way, the Angular client will be able to subscribe to messages coming from the WebSocket the same way it did with the `Http` object.

#### WRAPPING ANY SERVICE IN AN OBSERVABLE STREAM

Now you'll create a small Angular application that won't use a WebSocket server but will illustrate how to wrap business logic into an Angular service that emits data via an observable stream. Let's start by creating an observable service that will emit hardcoded values without actually connecting to a socket. The following code creates a service that emits the current time every second.

#### Listing 8.14 custom-observable-service.ts

```
import {Observable} from 'rxjs/Rx';

export class CustomObservableService{

    createObservableService(): Observable<Date>{

        return new Observable(
            observer => {
                setInterval(() =>
                    observer.next(new Date())
                , 1000);
            }
        );
    }
}
```

In this code, you create an observable, assuming that the subscriber will provide an `Observer` object that knows what to do with the data pushed by the observable. Whenever the observable invokes the `next()` method on the observer, the subscriber will receive the value given as an argument (`new Date()` in this example). The data stream never throws an error and never completes.

**NOTE** You can also create a subscriber for an observable by explicitly invoking `Subscriber.create()`. You'll see such an example in the hands-on section.

The `AppComponent` in listing 8.15 gets the `CustomObservableService` injected, invokes the `createObservableService()` method that returns `Observable`, and subscribes to it, creating an observer that knows what to do with the data. The observer in this application assigns the received time to the `currentTime` variable.

#### Listing 8.15 custom-observable-service-subscriber.ts

```
import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component }      from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
```

```

import 'rxjs/add/operator/map';

import {CustomObservableService} from "./custom-observable-service";

@Component({
  selector: 'app',
  providers: [ CustomObservableService ],
  template: `<h1>Simple subscriber to a service</h1>
    Current time: {{currentTime | date: 'jms'}}
  `})
class AppComponent {

  currentTime: Date;

  constructor(private sampleService: CustomObservableService) {

    this.sampleService.createObservableService()
      .subscribe( data => this.currentTime = data );
  }
}

@NgModule({
  imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
  declarations: [ AppComponent ],
  bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

For this app, you create the index.html file in the root directory of the project. This app doesn't use any servers, and you can run it by entering the command live-server in the terminal window. In the browser's window, the current time will be updated every second. You use DatePipe here with the format 'jms', which displays only hours, minutes, and seconds (all date formats are described in the Angular DatePipe documentation at <http://mng.bz/78ID>).

This is a simple example, but it demonstrates a basic technique for wrapping any application logic in an observable stream and subscribing to it. In this case, you use setInterval(), but you could replace it with any application-specific code that generates one or more values and sends them as a stream.

Don't forget about error handling and completing the stream if need be. The following code snippet shows a sample observable that sends one element to the observer, may throw an error, and tells the observer that the streaming is complete:

```

return new Observable(
  observer => {
    try {
      observer.next('Hello from observable');

      //throw ("Got an error");
    }
  }
)

```

```

    } catch(err) {
      observer.error(err);
    } finally{
      observer.complete();
    }
  );
);

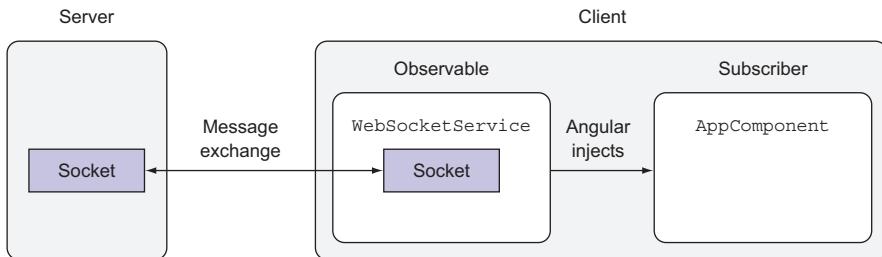
```

If you uncomment the line with `throw`, `observer.error()` is invoked, which results in the invocation of the error handler on the subscriber, if there is one.

Now let's teach the Angular service to communicate with the WebSocket server.

#### ANGULAR TALKING TO A WEBSOCKET SERVER

Let's create a small Angular application with a WebSocket service (on the client) that interacts with the Node WebSocket server. The server-side tier can be implemented with any technology that supports WebSockets. Figure 8.11 illustrates the architecture of such an application.



**Figure 8.11** Angular interacting with a server via a socket

The code in listing 8.16 wraps the browser's `WebSocket` object into an observable stream. This service creates an instance of `WebSocket` that's connected to the server based on the provided URL, and this instance handles messages received from the server. The `WebSocketService` also has a `sendMessage()` method so the client can send messages to the server.

#### Listing 8.16 websocket-observable-service.ts

```

import {Observable} from 'rxjs/Rx';

export class WebSocketService{

  ws: WebSocket;

  createObservableSocket(url:string):Observable{
    this.ws = new WebSocket(url);

    return new Observable(

```

```

    observer => {

        this.ws.onmessage = (event) =>
            observer.next(event.data);

        this.ws.onerror = (event) => observer.error(event);

        this.ws.onclose = (event) => observer.complete();

    }
);

}

sendMessage(message: any) {
    this.ws.send(message);
}
}
}

```

**NOTE** Listing 8.16 shows one way to create an observable from WebSocket. As an alternative, you can use the `Observable.webSocket()` method to do this.

Listing 8.17 shows the code of the `AppComponent` that subscribes to `WebSocketService`, which is injected into the `AppComponent` from figure 8.11. This component can also send messages to the server when the user clicks the Send Msg to Server button.

#### Listing 8.17 websocket-observable-service-subscriber.ts

```

import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
import { NgModule, Component } from '@angular/core';
import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';

import { WebSocketService } from './websocket-observable-service';

@Component({
    selector: 'app',
    providers: [ WebSocketService ],
    template: `<h1>Angular subscriber to WebSocket service</h1>
        {{messageFromServer}}<br>
        <button (click)="sendMessageToServer()">Send msg to Server</button>
    `})
class AppComponent {

    messageFromServer: string;

    constructor(private wsService: WebSocketService) {

        this.wsService.createObservableSocket("ws://localhost:8085")
            .subscribe(
                data => {
                    this.messageFromServer = data;
                },
                err => console.log( err ),
                () => console.log( 'The observable stream is complete!' )
            );
    }
}

```

```

        }

        sendMessageToServer() {
            console.log("Sending message to WebSocket server");

            this.wsService.sendMessage("Hello from client");
        }
    }

@NgModule({
    imports:      [ BrowserModule ],
    declarations: [ AppComponent ],
    bootstrap:   [ AppComponent ]
})
class AppModule { }

platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);

```

The HTML file that renders this component is called two-way-websocket-client.html. You need to make sure websocket-observable-service-subscriber is configured as the main app script in systemjs.config.js.

**Listing 8.18 two-way-websocket-client.html**

```

<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <title>Http samples</title>

    <script src="https://cdn.polyfill.io/v2/
polyfill.js?features=Intl.~locale.en"></script>

    <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/zone.js"></script>
    <script src="node_modules/typescript/lib/typescript.js"></script>
    <script src="node_modules/reflect-metadata/Reflect.js"></script>
    <script src="node_modules/rxjs/bundles/Rx.js"></script>
    <script src="node_modules/systemjs/dist/system.src.js"></script>
    <script src="systemjs.config.js"></script>
    <script>
        System.import('app').catch(function (err) {console.error(err);});
    </script>
</head>
<body>
<app>Loading...</app>
</body>
</html>

```

Finally, you'll create another version of simple-websocket-server.ts to serve an HTML file with a different Angular client. This server will be implemented in the two-way-websocket-server.ts file and will have almost the same code, with two small changes:

- When the server receives a request to the base URL, it needs to serve the preceding HTML to the client:

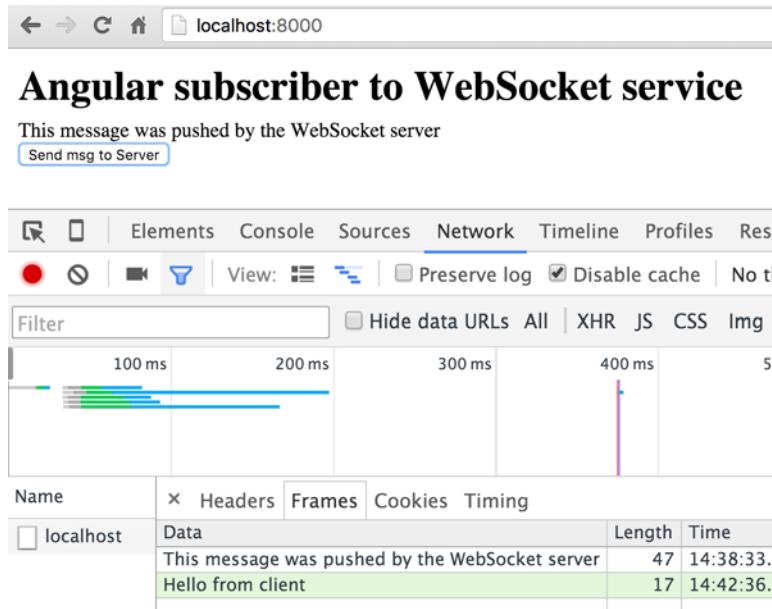
```
app.get('/', (req, res) => { res.sendFile(path.join(__dirname, '..', 'client/two-way-websocket-client.html'));
});
```

- You need to add the `on('message')` handler to process messages arriving from the client:

```
wsServer.on('connection',
  websocket => {
    websocket.send('This message was pushed by the WebSocket server');

    websocket.on('message',
      message => console.log("Server received: %s",
        message));
  });
});
```

To see this application in action, run `nodemon build/two-way-websocket_server.js` (or use the `npm run twoWayWsServer` command that's configured in `package.json`), and open your browser to `localhost:8000`. You'll see the window with the message pushed from Node, and if you click the button, a "Hello from client" message will be sent to the server. We took the screenshot in figure 8.12 after clicking the button once (Chrome Developer Tools was opened to the Frames tab under Network).



**Figure 8.12** Getting the message in Angular from Node

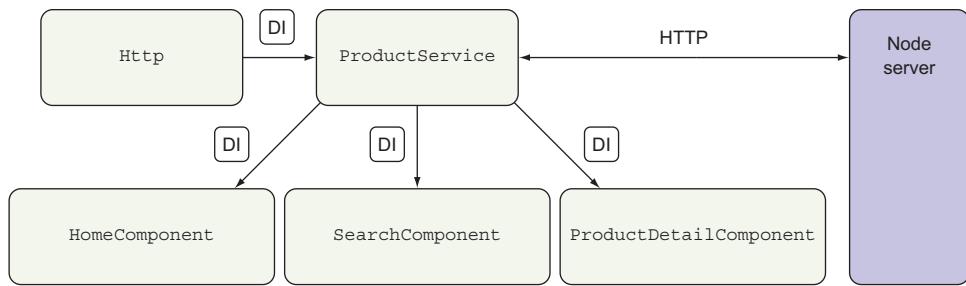
Now that you know how to communicate with a server via the HTTP and WebSocket protocols, let's teach the online auction to interact with the Node server.

## 8.5 Hands-on: implementing product search and bid notifications

The amount of code added to this chapter's version of the auction is pretty substantial, so we decided to spare you from typing it all. In this hands-on exercise, we'll just review the new and modified code fragments in the new version of the auction app that comes with this chapter. This version of the application accomplishes two main goals:

- Implements product search functionality. The `SearchComponent` will connect the auction to the Node server via HTTP, and the data about products and reviews will come from the server.
- Adds server-pushed bid notifications using the WebSocket protocol, so the user can subscribe and watch bid prices for a selected product.

Figure 8.13 shows the main players involved in the product search implementation.



**Figure 8.13 Product search implementation**

The DI in the figure stands for *dependency injection*. Angular injects the `Http` object into `ProductService`, which in turn is injected into three components: `HomeComponent`, `SearchComponent`, and `ProductDetailComponent`. The `ProductService` object is responsible for all communications with the server.

**NOTE** You use the Node server in this project, but you can use any technology that supports the HTTP and WebSocket protocols, such as Java, .NET, Python, Ruby, and so on.

As we mentioned, we'll provide brief explanations about the code changes made in various scripts, but you should perform a detailed code review of the auction on your own. In this chapter's version of the auction, the `scripts` section looks like this:

```

"scripts": {
  "tsc": "tsc",
  "start": "node build/auction.js",
  "dev": "nodemon build/auction.js"
}
  
```

Running `npm start` will start your Node server loading the `auction.js` script. In this project, the `tsconfig.json` file specifies the build directory as an output for the TypeScript compiler; two files, `auction.js` and `model.js`, are created there when you run `npm run tsc` in the project root directory. If you have version 2.0 or later of the TypeScript compiler installed globally, you can just run the `tsc` command.

The TypeScript `auction.ts` source contains the code implementing the HTTP and WebSocket servers, and `model.ts` contains the data that now resides on the server. Running `npm run dev` will start your Node server in live reload mode.

### 8.5.1 Implementing product search using HTTP

The auction's home page has a Search form on the left side; the user can enter search criteria, click the button Search, and get matching products from the server. As shown in figure 8.13, `ProductService` is responsible for all HTTP communications with the server, including the initial load of product information or finding products that meet certain criteria.

#### MOVING PRODUCT AND REVIEW DATA TO THE SERVER

So far, data about products and reviews has been hardcoded in the client-side `ProductService` class; when the application starts, it shows all the hardcoded products in `HomeComponent`. When the user clicks a product, the router navigates to `ProductDetailComponent`, which shows product details and reviews, also hardcoded in `ProductService`.

Now you want the data about products and reviews to be located on the server. The `server/auction.ts` and `server/model.ts` files contain the code that will run as a Node application (the web server). The `auction.ts` file implements HTTP and WebSocket functionality, and the `model.ts` file declares the `Product` and `Review` classes and the `products` and `reviews` arrays with the data. These arrays were also removed from the `client/app/services/product-service.ts` file.

**NOTE** The `Product` class has a new `categories` property, which will be used in the `SearchComponent`.

#### THE PRODUCTSERVICE CLASS

The `ProductService` class will get the `Http` object injected, and most of the methods of this class will return observable streams generated by HTTP requests. The following code fragment shows the new version of the `getProducts()` method:

```
getProducts(): Observable<Product[]> {
  return this.http.get('/products')
    .map(response => response.json());
}
```

As you'll recall, the preceding method won't issue the HTTP GET request until some object subscribes to `getProducts()` or a component's template uses an `AsyncPipe` with the data returned by this method (you can find an example in `HomeComponent`).

The `getProductById()` method looks similar:

```
getProductById(productId: number): Observable<Product> {
  return this.http.get(`/products/${productId}`)
    .map(response => response.json());
}
```

The `getReviewsForProduct()` method also returns an Observable:

```
getReviewsForProduct(productId: number): Observable<Review[]> {
  return this.http
    .get(`/products/${productId}/reviews`)
    .map(response => response.json())
    .map(reviews => reviews.map(
      (r: any) => new Review(r.id, r.productId, new Date(r.timestamp),
        r.user, r.rating, r.comment)));
}
```

The new `ProductService.search()` method is used when the user clicks the Search button in `SearchComponent`:

```
search(params: ProductSearchParams): Observable<Product[]> {
  return this.http
    .get('/products', {search: encodeParams(params)})
    .map(response => response.json());
}
```

The preceding `Http.get()` method uses a second argument, which is an object with the `search` property for storing the query string parameters. As you saw in the `RequestOptionsArgs` interface earlier, the `search` property can hold either a string or an instance of `URLSearchParams`.

Following is the code of the `ProductService.encodeParams()` method, which turns a JavaScript object into an instance of `URLSearchParams`:

```
function encodeParams(params: any): URLSearchParams {
  return Object.keys(params)
    .filter(key => params[key])
    .reduce((accum: URLSearchParams, key: string) => {
      accum.append(key, params[key]);
      return accum;
    }, new URLSearchParams());
}
```

The new `ProductService.getAllCategories()` method is used to populate the Categories dropdown in the `SearchComponent`:

```
getAllCategories(): string[] {
  return ['Books', 'Electronics', 'Hardware'];
}
```

The `ProductService` class also defines a new `searchEvent` variable of type `EventEmitter`. We'll explain its use in the next section when we discuss how to pass the search results to the `HomeComponent`.

#### PROVIDING SEARCH RESULTS TO HOMECOMPONENT

Initially, `HomeComponent` displays all products by invoking the `ProductService.getProducts()` method. But if the user performs a search by some criteria, you need to make a request to the server, which may return a subset of products or an empty data set if none of the products meet the search criteria.

`SearchComponent` receives a result, which has to be passed to `HomeComponent`. If both of these components were children of the same parent (such as `AppComponent`), you could use the parent as a mediator (see chapter 6) and input/output parameters of the children for the data. But `HomeComponent` is added to `AppComponent` dynamically by the router, and currently Angular doesn't support cross-route input/output parameters. You need another mediator, and the `ProductService` object can become one, because it's injected into both `SearchComponent` and `HomeComponent`.

The `ProductService` class has a `searchEvent` variable that's declared as follows:

```
searchEvent: EventEmitter = new EventEmitter();
```

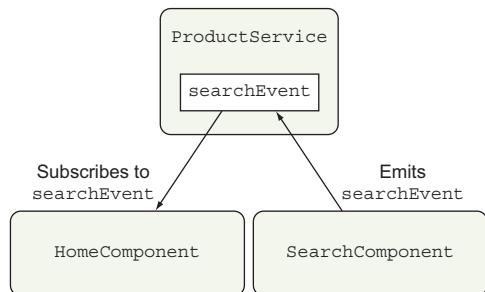
`SearchComponent` uses this variable to emit the `searchEvent` that carries the object with search parameters as the payload. `HomeComponent` subscribes to this event, as shown in figure 8.14.

`SearchComponent` is a form, and when the user clicks the Search button, it has to notify the world about which search parameters were entered. `ProductService` does this by emitting the event with the search parameters:

```
onSearch() {
  if (this.formModel.valid) {
    this.productService.searchEvent.emit(this.formModel.value);
  }
}
```

`HomeComponent` is subscribed to the `searchEvent` that may arrive from `SearchComponent` with a payload of search parameters. As soon as that happens, the `ProductService` `.search()` method is invoked:

```
this.productService.searchEvent
  .subscribe(
    params => this.products = this.productService.search(params),
    console.error.bind(console),
    () => console.log('DONE')
  );
```



**Figure 8.14 Component communication via events**

## Search limitations

Our search solution assumes that HomeComponent is displayed on the screen when the user performs the product search. But if the user navigates to the Product Detail view, HomeComponent is removed from the DOM, and there are no listeners for the searchEvent. This isn't a serious shortcoming for an example in a book, and an easy fix would be to disable the search button if the user navigated from the Home route. You can also inject the Router object into SearchComponent and, when the user clicks the Search button while the home route isn't active (if (!router.isActive(url))), navigate to it programmatically by invoking router.navigate('home'), which returns a Promise object. When the promise is resolved, you can emit the searchEvent from there.

### HANDLING PRODUCT SEARCH ON THE SERVER

The following code fragment is from the auction.ts file that handles the product search request sent from the client. When the client hits the server's endpoint with query string parameters, you pass the received parameters as req.query to the getProducts() function, which performs a sequence of filters (as specified by the parameters) on the products array to filter out the non-matching products:

```
app.get('/products', (req, res) => {
  res.json(getProducts(req.query));
});

...

function getProducts(params): Product[] {
  let result = products;

  if (params.title) {
    result = result.filter(
      p => p.title.toLowerCase().indexOf(params.title.toLowerCase()) !== -1);
  }
  if (result.length > 0 && parseInt(params.price)) {
    result = result.filter(
      p => p.price <= parseInt(params.price));
  }
  if (result.length > 0 && params.category) {
    result = result.filter(
      p => p.categories.indexOf(params.category.toLowerCase()) !== -1);
  }

  return result;
}
```

### TESTING THE PRODUCT SEARCH FUNCTIONALITY

Now that we've done a brief code review of the product search implementation, you can start the Node server using the command `npm run dev` and open the browser to `localhost:8000`. When the auction app loads, enter your search criteria in the form on

the left, and see how HomeComponent re-renders its children (ProductItemComponent) that meet the search criteria.

### 8.5.2 Broadcasting auction bids using WebSockets

In real auctions, multiple users can bid on products. When the server receives a bid from a user, the bid server should broadcast the latest bid to all users who are interested in receiving such notifications (those who subscribed for notifications). You've emulated the bidding process by generating random bids from random users.

When users open the Product Details view, they should be able to subscribe to bid notifications made by other users on the selected product. You implement this functionality with a server-side push via WebSockets. Figure 8.15 shows the Product Details view with the Watch toggle button that starts and stops the current bid notifications pushed by the server over the socket. Next, we'll briefly highlight the changes in the auction app related to bid notifications.

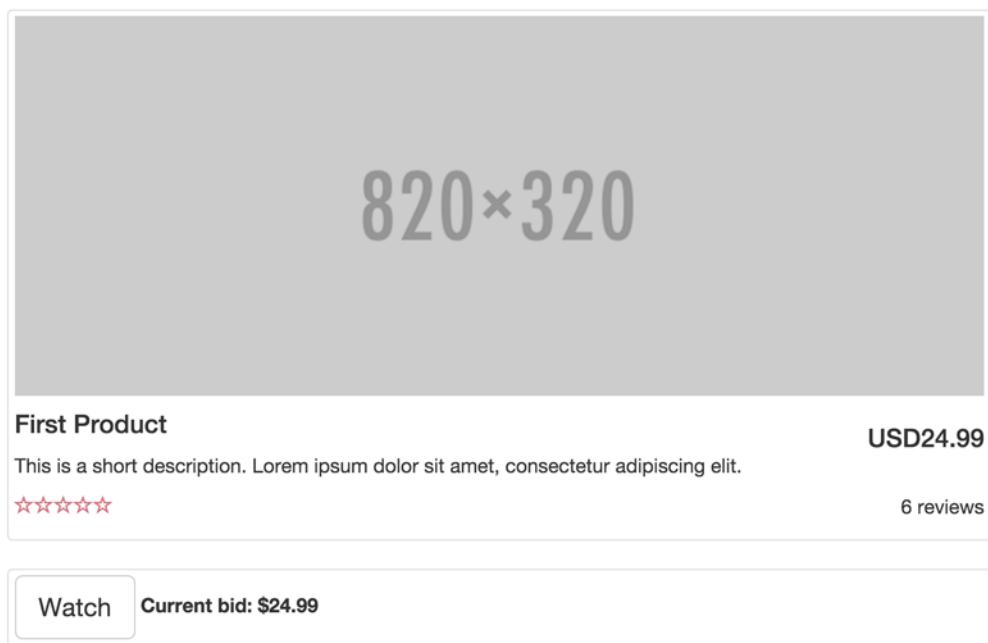


Figure 8.15 Toggle button for watching bids

#### THE CLIENT SIDE

Two new services are located in the client/app/services directory: BidService and WebSocketService. WebSocketService is an Observable wrapper for the WebSocket object. It's similar to the one you created earlier, in section 8.4.2.

BidService gets the WebSocketService injected:

```
@Injectable()
export class BidService {
    constructor(private webSocket: WebSocketService) {}

    watchProduct(productId: number): Observable<any> {
        let openSubscriber = Subscriber.create(
            () => this.webSocket.send({productId: productId}));

        return this.webSocket.createObservableSocket('ws://'
            + 'localhost:8000', openSubscriber)
            .map(message => JSON.parse(message));
    }
}
```

BidService is injected into ProductDetailComponent. When the user clicks the Watch toggle button, the BidService.watchProduct() method sends the product ID to the server, indicating that this user wants to start or stop watching the selected product:

```
toggleWatchProduct() {
    if (this.subscription) {
        this.subscription.unsubscribe();
        this.subscription = null;
        this.isWatching = false;
    } else {
        this.isWatching = true;
        this.subscription = this.bidService.watchProduct(this.product.id)
            .subscribe(
                products => this.currentBid = products.find(p: any) => p.productId
                    === this.product.id).bid,
                error => console.log(error));
    }
}
```

The template of the ProductDetailComponent has the Watch toggle button, and the latest bid received from the server is rendered as HTML label:

```
<button class="btn btn-default btn-lg"
    [ngClass]="{active: isWatching}"
    (click)="toggleWatchProduct()"
    role="button">
    {{ isWatching ? 'Stop watching' : 'Watch' }}
</button>

<label>Current bid: {{ currentBid | currency }}</label>
```

There's also a small new client/app/services/services.ts script, in which you declare all the import statements and the array of services used for dependency injection:

```

import {BidService} from './bid-service';
import {ProductService} from './product-service';
import {WebSocketService} from './websocket-service';

export const ONLINE_AUCTION_SERVICES = [
  BidService,
  ProductService,
  WebSocketService
];

```

The providers declared in the `ONLINE_AUCTION_SERVICES` constant are used in the `main.ts` file that bootstraps the Angular portion of the auction:

```

@NgModule({
  ...
  providers: [ProductService,
    ONLINE_AUCTION_SERVICES,
    {provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy}],
  bootstrap: [ApplicationComponent]
})

```

#### THE SERVER SIDE

The `server/auction.ts` script includes the code that maintains subscribed clients and generates random bids. Each generated bid can be up to five dollars higher than the last one. As soon as the new bid is generated, it's broadcast to all subscribed clients.

The following code from the `server/auction.ts` file handles bid notification requests and broadcasting bids to all subscribed clients:

```

const wsServer: WsServer = new WsServer({server: httpServer});           ←

wsServer.on('connection', ws => {
  ws.on('message', message => {
    let subscriptionRequest = JSON.parse(message);
    subscribeToProductBids(ws, subscriptionRequest.productId);
  });
});                                                               ← Stores references to bid subscriptions in a Map where the key is a reference
                                                               to the WebSocket connection that represents the user, and the value is an array of product IDs for which the client wants to receive bid notifications

const subscriptions = new Map<any, number[]>();                         ←

function subscribeToProductBids(client, productId: number): void {       ←
  let products = subscriptions.get(client) || [];
  subscriptions.set(client, [...products, productId]);
}

setInterval(() => {
  generateNewBids();
  broadcastNewBidsToSubscribers();
}, 2000);                                                               ← Finds the existing product subscriptions for the connected client, and adds a new product ID to the subscriptions array

const currentBids = new Map<number, number>();                           ←

Creates the WebSocket server listening to the same port as the HTTP server
Every two seconds, generates a new bid and broadcasts it to all clients who subscribe to the specific product notifications

```

```

function generateNewBids() {
  getProducts().forEach(p => {
    const currentBid = currentBids.get(p.id) || p.price;
    const newBid = random(currentBid, currentBid + 5); // Max bid increase is $5
    currentBids.set(p.id, newBid);
  });
}

function broadcastNewBidsToSubscribers() {
  subscriptions.forEach((products: number[], ws: WebSocket) => {
    if (ws.readyState === 1) { // 1 - READY_STATE_OPEN
      let newBids = products.map(pid => ({
        productId: pid,
        bid: currentBids.get(pid)
      }));
      ws.send(JSON.stringify(newBids));
    } else {
      subscriptions.delete(ws);
    }
  });
}

```

For each connected client, sends the current bids for the subscribed products

Here you test the `readyState` property of the `WebSocket` object to make sure the client is still connected. For example, if the user closed the auction window, there would be no need to send bid notifications, so this socket connection is removed from the `subscriptions` map.

**NOTE** Note the use of the spread operator (...) in the `subscribeToProductBids()` method. You use it to copy an existing array of product IDs and add a new one.

We've covered the `WebSocket`-related code of the auction, and we encourage you to review the rest of the code on your own. To test the bid-notification functionality, you'll need to start the application, click a product title, and, on the product detail view, click the Watch button. You should see the new bids for this product that are pushed from the server. Open the auction application in more than one browser to test that each browser properly turns bid notifications on and off.

## 8.6 Summary

The main subject of this chapter was enabling client-server interaction, which is the reason web frameworks exist. Angular, combined with the RxJS extensions library, offers a unified approach for consuming data from the server: the client's code subscribes to the data stream coming from the server, whether it's an HTTP- or `WebSocket`-based interaction. The programming model is changed: instead of requesting the data as in AJAX-style applications, Angular consumes data that's *pushed* by observable streams. These are the main takeaways from this chapter:

- Angular comes with the `Http` object that supports HTTP communications with web servers.
- Providers for HTTP services are located in the `HttpModule` module. If your app uses HTTP, don't forget to include it in the `@NgModule` decorator.
- Public methods of `HttpObject` return `Observable`, and only when the client subscribes to it is the request to the server made.
- The WebSocket protocol is more efficient and concise than HTTP. It's bidirectional, and both client and server can initiate communication.
- Creating a web server with NodeJS and Express is relatively simple, but an Angular client can communicate with web servers implemented in different technologies.



# *Unit-testing Angular applications*

---

## **This chapter covers**

- The basics of unit testing with the Jasmine framework
- The main artifacts from the Angular testing library
- Testing the main players of an Angular app: services, components, and the router
- Running unit tests against web browsers with the Karma test runner
- Implementing unit testing in the online auction example

To ensure that your software has no bugs, you need to test it. Even if your application has no bugs today, it may have them tomorrow, after you modify the existing code or introduce new code. Even if you don't change the code in a particular module, it may stop working properly as a result of changes in another module. Your application code has to be retested regularly, and this process should be automated. You

need to prepare test scripts and start running them as early as possible in your development cycle.

There are two main types of testing for the front end of web applications:

- *Unit testing* asserts that a small unit of code (such as a component or function) accepts the expected input data and returns the expected result. Unit testing is about testing isolated pieces of code, especially public interfaces. That's what we'll discuss in this chapter.
- *End-to-end testing* asserts that the entire application works as end users expect and that all units properly interact with each other. For end-to-end testing of Angular 2 applications, you can use the Protractor library (see <https://angular.github.io/protractor>).

**NOTE** *Load* or *stress testing* shows how many concurrent users can work with a web application while it maintains the expected response time. Load-testing tools are mainly about testing the server side of web applications.

Unit tests are for testing the business logic of separate units of code, and typically you'll be running unit tests a lot more often than end-to-end tests. End-to-end testing can emulate a user's actions (such as button clicks) and check the behavior of your application. During end-to-end testing, you shouldn't run the unit-testing scripts.

This chapter is about unit-testing Angular applications. Several frameworks have been specifically created for implementing and running unit tests, and our framework of choice is Jasmine. Actually, it's not only our choice—as we write this, Angular's testing library only works with Jasmine for unit testing. This is described in the “Jasmine Testing 101” section of the Angular documentation (<http://mng.bz/0nv3>).

We'll start by covering the basics of unit testing with Jasmine; toward the end of the chapter, you'll write and run test scripts to unit-test selected components in the online auction. We'll give you a brief overview of Jasmine so you can quickly start writing unit tests; for more details, see the Jasmine documentation (<http://jasmine.github.io>). For running tests, you'll use a test runner called Karma (<https://karma-runner.github.io>), which is an independent command-line utility that can run tests written in different test frameworks.

## 9.1 Getting to know Jasmine

Jasmine allows you to implement a behavior-driven development (BDD) process, which suggests that tests of any unit of software should be specified in terms of the desired behavior of the unit. With BDD, you use natural language constructs to describe what you think your code should be doing. You write unit-test specifications in the form of short sentences, such as “`ApplicationComponent` is successfully instantiated” or “`StarsComponent` emits the rating change event.”

Because it's so easy to understand the meaning of the tests, they can serve as your program documentation. If other developers need to become familiar with your code, they can start by reading the code of the unit tests to understand your intentions.



**Figure 9.1** Running tests using Jasmine's test runner

Using natural language to describe tests has another advantage: it's easy to reason about the test results, as shown in figure 9.1.

**TIP** As much as we'd like all of our tests to pass, make a habit of ensuring that your tests fail first, and see if the test results are easy to understand.

In Jasmine terminology, a test is called a *spec*, and a combination of one or more specs is called a *suite*. A test suite is defined with the `describe()` function —this is where you describe what you're testing. Each test spec in the suite is programmed as an `it()` function, which defines the expected behavior of the code under test and how to test it. Here's an example:

```
describe('MyCalculator', () => {
  it('should know how to multiply', () => {
    // The code that tests multiplication goes here
  });
  it('should not divide by zero', () => {
    // The code that tests division by zero goes here
  });
});
```

Testing frameworks have the notion of an *assertion*, which is a way of questioning whether an expression is true or false. If the assertion is false, the framework throws an error. In Jasmine, assertions are specified using the function `expect()`, followed by *matchers*: `toBe()`, `toEqual()`, and so on. It's as if you're writing a sentence. "I expect `2+2` to equal `4`" looks like this:

```
expect(2 + 2).toEqual(4);
```

Matchers implement a Boolean comparison between the actual and expected values. If the matcher returns `true`, the spec passes. If you expect a test result not to have a certain value, just add the keyword `not` before the matcher:

```
expect(2 + 2).not.toEqual(5);
```

You can find the complete list of matchers at Jamie Mason's Jasmine-Matchers page on GitHub: <https://github.com/JamieMason/Jasmine-Matchers>.

We've given our test suites the same names as the files under test, adding the suffix `.spec` to the name, which is a standard practice; for example, `application.spec.ts` contains

the test script for application.ts. The following test suite is from the file application.spec.ts; it tests that the instance of ApplicationComponent is created:

```
import AppComponent from './app';

describe('AppComponent', () => {
  it('is successfully instantiated', () => {
    const app = new AppComponent();

    expect(app instanceof AppComponent).toEqual(true);
  });
});
```

This is a test suite containing a single test. If you extract the texts from `describe()` and `it()` and put them together, you'll get a sentence that clearly indicates what you're testing here: "ApplicationComponent is successfully instantiated."

**NOTE** If other developers need to know what your spec tests, they can read the texts in `describe()` and `it()`. Each test should be self-descriptive and serve as program documentation.

The preceding code instantiates `AppComponent` and expects the expression `app instanceof AppComponent` to be evaluated to `true`. From the `import` statement, you can guess that this test script is located in the same directory as `AppComponent`.

### Where to store test files

The Jasmine framework is used to unit test JavaScript applications written in different frameworks or in pure JavaScript. One of the approaches for storing test files is to create a separate test directory and keep only test scripts there, so they aren't mixed up with the application code.

In Angular applications, we prefer to keep each test script in the same directory as the component or service under test. This is convenient for two reasons:

- All component-related files are located together in the same directory. Typically, we create a directory for storing the component's `.ts`, `.html`, and `.css` files; adding a `.spec` file there won't clutter the directory content.
- There's no need to change the configuration of the SystemJS loader, which already knows where the application files are located. It will load the tests from the same locations.

If you want some code to be executed before each test (such as to prepare test dependencies), you can specify it in the `setup` functions `beforeAll()` and `beforeEach()`, which will run before the suite or each spec, respectively. If you want to execute some code right after the suite or each spec is finished, use the `teardown` functions `afterAll()` and `afterEach()`.

**TIP** If you have a spec with multiple `it()` tests, and you want the runner to skip some tests, change them from `it()` to `xit()`.

### 9.1.1 What to test

Now that you have an understanding of how to test, the question is what to test. In Angular applications written in TypeScript, you can test functions, classes, and components:

- *Test functions*—Say you have a function that converts the passed string to uppercase. You can write multiple tests just for this function, for cases where the argument is null, an empty string, undefined, a lowercase word, an uppercase word, a mixed-case word, a number, and so on.
- *Test classes*—If you have a class containing several methods (like `ProductService`), you can write a test suite that includes all the tests needed to ensure that each of the class methods functions properly.
- *Test components*—You can test the public API of your services or components. In addition to testing them for correctness, we'll show you code samples that use publicly exposed properties or methods.

### 9.1.2 How to install Jasmine

You can get Jasmine by downloading its standalone distribution, but you'll install it using npm, as you've done for all other packages in this book. The npm repository has several Jasmine-related packages, but you just need `jasmine-core`. Open the command window in the root of your project, and run the following command:

```
npm install jasmine-core --save-dev
```

To make sure the TypeScript compiler knows about the Jasmine types, run the following command to install the Jasmine type-definition file:

```
npm i @types/jasmine --save-dev
```

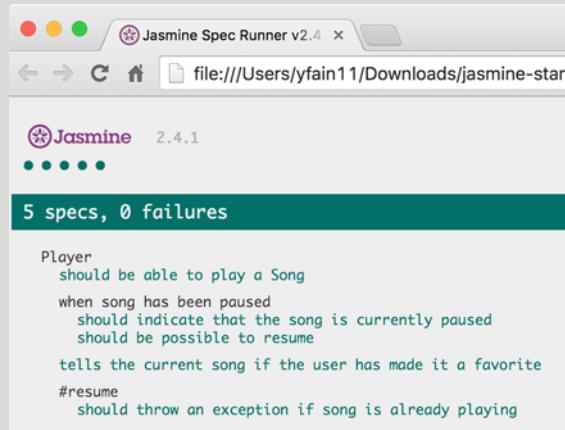
When your tests are written, you need a test-runner application to run them. Jasmine comes with two runners: one is for the command line (see the npm package `jasmine`), and the other is HTML-based. You'll start by using the HTML-based runner, but to run tests from the command line, you'll use another test runner called Karma.

Although Jasmine comes with a preconfigured HTML-based runner as a sample app, you need to create an HTML file to test yours. This HTML file should include the following script tags that load Jasmine:

```
<link rel="stylesheet" href="node_modules/jasmine-core/lib/jasmine-core/
➥ jasmine.css">
<script src="node_modules/jasmine-core/lib/jasmine-core/jasmine.js">
</script>
<script src="node_modules/jasmine-core/lib/jasmine-core/jasmine-html.js">
</script>
<script src="node_modules/jasmine-core/lib/jasmine-core/boot.js"></script>
```

## Using the standalone Jasmine distribution

If you want to see the running Jasmine tests quickly, download the zip file with the standalone version of Jasmine from <https://github.com/jasmine/jasmine/releases>. Unzip this file, and open SpecRunner.html in your web browser. You'll see the window shown here.



**Testing the sample app that comes with Jasmine**

You'll also need to add all required Angular dependencies, as you did in every index.html file in all the code samples in the book, plus the Angular testing library. You'll keep using the SystemJS loader, but this time you'll load the code of the unit tests (the .spec files), which will load the application code via import statements.

In this chapter, we'll show you how to write unit tests. You'll run them manually using the HTML-based runner first. Then we'll show you how to use Karma, which can run command-line tests that report possible errors in different browsers. In chapter 10, you'll integrate Karma into the application build process, so the unit tests will run automatically as part of the build.

## 9.2 What comes with Angular's testing library

Angular comes with a testing library that includes the wrappers for Jasmine's describe(), it(), and xit() functions and also adds such functions as beforeEach(), async(), fakeAsync(), and others.

Because you don't configure and bootstrap the application during test runs, Angular offers a TestBed helper class that allows you to declare modules, components, providers, and so on. TestBed includes such functions as configureTestingModule(), createComponent(), inject(), and others. For example, the syntax for configuring a testing module looks similar to configuring @NgModule:

```
beforeEach(() => {
  TestBed.configureTestingModule({
    imports: [ ReactiveFormsModule, RouterTestingModule,
```

```
        RouterTestingModule.withRoutes(routes)],
declarations: [AppComponent, HomeComponent, WeatherComponent],
providers: [{provide: WeatherService, useValue: {} }]
})
});
```

The `beforeEach()` function is used in test suites during the setup phase. It allows you to specify the required modules, components, and providers that may be needed by each test.

The `inject()` function creates an injector and injects the specified objects into tests, according to the app's providers configured for Angular DI:

```
inject([Router, Location], (router: Router, location: Location) => {
  // Do something
})
```

The `async()` function runs in the Zone and may be used with asynchronous services. `async()` doesn't complete the test until all of its asynchronous operations have been completed or the specified timeout has passed:

```
it(' does something', inject([AClass], object => {
  myPromise.then(() => { expect(true).toEqual(true); });
}), 3000));
```

The `fakeAsync()` function lets you speed up the testing of asynchronous services by simulating the passage of time:

```
it('...', fakeAsync(() => {
  // Do something
  tick(1000);
  expect(...);
}));
```

← Simulates the asynchronous passage of 1 second

The Angular testing library has an `NgMatchers` interface that includes the following matchers:

- `toBePromise()`—Expects the value to be a promise
  - `toBeAnInstanceOf()`—Expects the value to be an instance of a class
  - `toHaveText()`—Expects the element to have exactly the given text
  - `toHaveCssClass()`—Expects the element to have the given CSS class
  - `toHaveCssStyle()`—Expects the element to have the given CSS styles
  - `toImplement()`—Expects a class to implement the interface of the given class
  - `toContainError()`—Expects an exception to contain the given error text
  - `toThrowErrorWith()`—Expects a function to throw an error with the given error text when executed

The Angular Testing API for TypeScript is documented at <http://mng.bz/ym8N>. We'll show you how to test services, routers, event emitters, and components later in this chapter, but first let's go over some basics.

### 9.2.1 Testing services

Typically, Angular services are injected into components; to set up the injectors, you need to define providers for an `it()` block. Angular offers the `beforeEach()` setup method, which runs before each `it()` call. You can inject the service into `it()` using `inject()` to test synchronous functions in the service.

Real services may need some time to complete, and this may slow your tests. There are two ways to speed up tests:

- Create a class that implements a mock service by extending a class of the real service that returns hardcoded data quickly. For example, you can create a mock service for `WeatherService` that returns immediately without making any requests to the remote server that returns actual weather data:

```
class MockWeatherService implements WeatherService {
  getWeather() {
    return Observable.empty();
  }
}
```

- Use the `fakeAsync()` function, which automatically identifies asynchronous calls and replaces timeouts, callbacks, and promises with immediately executed functions. The `tick()` function allows you to fast-forward the time, so there's no need to wait until the timeout expires. You'll see examples of using `fakeAsync()` later in this chapter.

### 9.2.2 Testing navigation with the router

To test the router, your spec scripts can invoke such router methods as `navigate()` and `navigateByUrl()`. The `navigate()` method takes an array of configured routes (commands) that will construct the route as an argument, whereas `navigateByUrl()` takes a string representing the segment of the URL you want to navigate to.

If you use `navigate()`, you specify the configured path and route params, if any. If the router is properly configured, it should update the URL in the address bar of the browser.

The next code snippet shows how to programmatically navigate to the product route, pass 0 as a route param, and ensure that after the navigation, the URL (represented by the `Location` object) has a segment of `/product/0`:

```
it('should be able to navigate to product details using commands API',
  fakeAsync(inject([Router, Location], (router: Router, location: Location) => {
    TestBed.createComponent(AppComponent);
    router.navigate(['/products', 0]);
```

```

    tick();
    expect(location.path()).toBe('/product/0');
  })
));

```

When you provide an array of values to the router, it's called a *commands API*. For the preceding code fragment to work, the route with parameter `/products/:productId` has to be configured, as explained in chapter 3.

The `it()` function invokes the callback provided as the second argument. `fakeAsync()` wraps a function provided as an argument (`inject()` in the previous example) and executes it in the Zone. The `tick()` function lets you manually fast-forward the time and advance tasks in the microtasks queue in the browser's event loop. In other words, you can emulate the time that asynchronous tasks take, and execute asynchronous code synchronously, which simplifies and speeds up execution of the unit tests.

With `TestBed.createComponent()` (explained in the next section), you create an instance of the component. Then you invoke the router's `navigate()` method, advance the async tasks that perform the navigation with `tick()`, and check whether the current location is the same as the expected one.

The `navigateByUrl()` function takes a specific URL segment and should properly build the `Location.path` that represents the client's portion in the address bar of the browser. This is what you'll test:

```

router.navigateByUrl('/products');
...
expect(location.path()).toBe('/products');

```

You'll see how to use `navigateByUrl()` in section 9.3.

While testing the router, you can use `SpyLocation`, which is a mock for the `Location` provider. It allows tests to fire simulated location events. For example, you can prepare a specific URL and simulate the change of the hash portion, the browser's Back and Forward buttons, and more.

### 9.2.3 Testing components

Components are classes with templates. If your class contains methods implementing the application's logic, you can test them as you would any other functions; but more often you'll be testing the templates. In particular, you're interested in testing that the bindings work properly and that they display the expected data.

Angular offers the `TestBed.createComponent()` method, which returns a `ComponentFixture` object that will be used to work with the component when it's created. This fixture gives you access to both the component and the native HTML element's instances, so you can assign values to the component's properties as well as find specific HTML elements in the component's template.

You can also trigger the change-detection cycle on the component by invoking the `detectChanges()` method on the fixture. After the change detection has updated the

UI, you can run the `expect()` function to check the rendered values. The following code snippet illustrates these actions using a `ProductComponent` that has a `product` property, assuming that it's bound to the template element `<h4>`:

```
let fixture = TestBed.createComponent(ProductDetailComponent);
let element = fixture.nativeElement;
let component = fixture.componentInstance;
component.product = {title: 'iPhone 7', price: 700};

fixture.detectChanges();
expect(element.querySelector('h4').innerHTML).toBe('iPhone 7');
```

Now let's write a sample application in which you'll implement unit tests for a component, a router, and a service.

### 9.3 Testing a sample weather application

Let's try testing Angular components and services using an application that has a main page with two links: Home and Weather. You'll use a router to navigate to the Weather page, which is a refactored version of the weather app you created in chapter 5 (`observable-events-http.ts`).

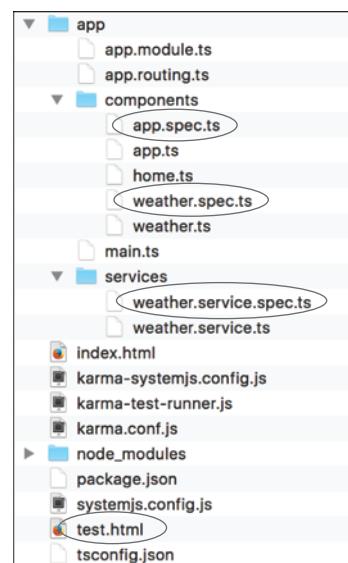
In chapter 5, a large chunk of the code was placed in the constructor of `AppComponent`, which complicates testing because you can't invoke the code of the constructor after an object is created. Now `WeatherComponent` will get the `WeatherService` injected, and `WeatherService` will use the remote server from chapter 5 to get the weather information. Figure 9.2 shows what the window looked like when we ran this application, navigated to the Weather route, and entered New York in the input field.

Figure 9.3 shows the structure of this project (see the `test_weather` directory). Note the `.spec.ts` files, which contain the code for unit-testing the components and the weather service.

To run these tests, create the following `test.html` file that loads all the `spec.ts` files circled in figure 9.3



**Figure 9.2** Checking the weather component in the `test_samples` project



**Figure 9.3** The structure of the `test_samples` project

**Listing 9.1 test.html**

```

<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en">
<head>
  <meta charset="utf-8">
  <title>Testing the Weather Application</title>
  <base href="/">

  <!-- TypeScript in-browser compiler -->
  <script src="node_modules/typescript/lib/typescript.js"></script>

  <!-- Polyfills -->
  <script src="node_modules/reflect-metadata/Reflect.js"></script>

  <!-- Jasmine -->                                ← Loads Jasmine files
  <link rel="stylesheet" href="node_modules/jasmine-core/lib/jasmine-core/
  ↵ jasmine.css">
  <script src="node_modules/jasmine-core/lib/jasmine-core/jasmine.js">
  ↵ </script>
  <script src="node_modules/jasmine-core/lib/jasmine-core/jasmine-html.js">
  ↵ </script>
  <script src="node_modules/jasmine-core/lib/jasmine-core/boot.js"></script>

  <!-- Zone.js -->
  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/zone.js"></script>
  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/proxy.js"></script>
  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/sync-test.js"></script>
  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/jasmine-patch.js"></script>
  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/async-test.js"></script>
  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/fake-async-test.js"></script>
  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/long-stack-trace-zone.js"></script>

  <!-- SystemJS -->
  <script src="node_modules/systemjs/dist/system.src.js"></script>
  <script src="systemjs.config.js"></script>
</head>
<body>
<script>
  var SPEC_MODULES = [
    'app/components/app.spec',
    'app/components/weather.spec',
    'app/services/weather.service.spec'
  ];
  Promise.all([
    System.import('@angular/core/testing'),
    System.import('@angular/platform-browser-dynamic/testing')
  ])
  .then(function (modules) {
    var testing = modules[0];
    var browser = modules[1];
    ← Declares an array with
      the names of the specs
      to be loaded
    ← Loads two Angular
      modules required
      for testing
    ← When the testing modules are
      loaded, stores their references
      in the variables
  });
</script>

```

```

    testing.TestBed.initTestEnvironment(
      browser.BrowserDynamicTestingModule,
      browser.platformBrowserDynamicTesting());
    // Load all the spec files.
    return Promise.all(SPEC_MODULES.map(function (module) {
      return System.import(module);
    }));
  }
  .then(window.onload)
  .catch(console.error.bind(console));
</script>
</body>
</html>

```

**Initializes the test environment.**  
**If you configure AppModule in the app, you replace it with BrowserDynamicTestingModule in tests.**

**After the frameworks and specs are loaded, initiates the event handler for the load event so Jasmine will run the tests**

### 9.3.1 Configuring SystemJS

To use an HTML-based test runner, you need to add Angular testing modules to your SystemJS configuration. Here's the fragment from the systemjs.config.js file that comes with this project.

**Listing 9.2 systemjs.config.js fragment**

```

'@angular/common/testing' : 'ng:common/bundles/',
  ↵ common-testing.umd.js',
    '@angular/compiler/testing' : 'ng:compiler/bundles/',
    ↵ compiler-testing.umd.js',
    '@angular/core/testing' : 'ng:core/bundles/',
    ↵ core-testing.umd.js',
    '@angular/router/testing' : 'ng:router/bundles/',
    ↵ router-testing.umd.js',
    '@angular/http/testing' : 'ng:http/bundles/',
    ↵ http-testing.umd.js',
    '@angular/platform-browser/testing' : 'ng:platform-browser/',
    ↵ bundles/platform-browser-testing.umd.js',
    '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic/testing': 'ng:platform-browser-dynamic/bundles/platform-browser-dynamic-testing.umd.js',
  },
  paths: {
    'ng:' : 'node_modules/@angular/'
  },

```

### 9.3.2 Testing the weather router

The router for this application is configured in the app.routing.ts file.

**Listing 9.3 app.routing.ts**

```

import { Routes, RouterModule } from '@angular/router';
import { HomeComponent } from './components/home';
import { WeatherComponent } from './components/weather';

```

```

export const routes: Routes = [
  { path: '', component: HomeComponent },
  { path: 'weather', component: WeatherComponent }
];

export const routing = RouterModule.forRoot(routes);

```

Although you can configure the routes either in your app module or in a separate file, having the routes configured in a separate file is a best practice. Doing so allows you to reuse the route configuration to run both the application and the test scripts.

The script in `app.module.ts` of the weather app uses the `routes` constant in the declaration of `@NgModule`.

#### **Listing 9.4 app.module.ts**

```

@NgModule({
  imports: [BrowserModule, HttpClientModule, ReactiveFormsModule, routing],
  declarations: [AppComponent, HomeComponent, WeatherComponent],
  bootstrap: [AppComponent],
  providers: [
    { provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy },
    { provide: WEATHER_URL_BASE, useValue: 'http://api.openweathermap.org/
      ↪ data/2.5/weather?q=' },
    { provide: WEATHER_URL_SUFFIX, useValue:
      ↪ '?units=imperial&appid=ca3f6d6ca3973a518834983d0b318f73' },
    WeatherService
  ]
})

```

The test script for the routes is located in the `app.spec.ts` file, and it reuses the same `routes` constant.

#### **Listing 9.5 app.spec.ts**

```

import { TestBed, fakeAsync, inject, tick } from '@angular/core/testing';
import { Location } from '@angular/common';
import { ReactiveFormsModule } from '@angular/forms';
import { provideRoutes, Router } from '@angular/router';
import { RouterTestingModule } from '@angular/router/testing';

import { routes } from '../app.routing';
import { WeatherService } from '../services/weather.service';
import { AppComponent } from './app';
import { HomeComponent } from '../components/home';
import { WeatherComponent } from '../components/weather';

describe('Router', () => {
  beforeEach(() => {
    TestBed.configureTestingModule({
      ...
    });
  });

  it('should ...', () => {
    ...
  });
});

```

Test suite for the routes defined in `app.routing.ts`

Before running each test, you configure the testing module to include the components and providers required for testing the router.

Tests navigation to WeatherComponent, which gets the WeatherService injected, so you need to register a provider for the fake service here.

```

imports: [ ReactiveFormsModule, RouterTestingModule,
          RouterTestingModule.withRoutes(routes)],
declarations: [AppComponent, HomeComponent, WeatherComponent],
providers: [{provide: WeatherService, useValue: {} } ]
}
});
});

it('should be able to navigate to home using commands API',
fakeAsync(inject([Router, Location], (router: Router, location:
  Location) => {
  TestBed.createComponent(AppComponent); ←
  router.navigate(['/']);
  tick(); ←
  expect(location.path()).toBe('/');
}));

it('should be able to navigate to weather using commands API',
fakeAsync(inject([Router, Location], (router: Router, location:
  Location) => {
  TestBed.createComponent(AppComponent);
  router.navigate(['/weather']);
  tick();
  expect(location.path()).toBe('/weather');
})));

it('should be able to navigate to weather by URL',
fakeAsync(inject([Router, Location], (router: Router, location:
  Location) =>
  TestBed.createComponent(AppComponent);
  router.navigateByUrl('/weather');
  tick();
  expect(location.path()).toEqual('/weather');
))) ;
});
```

**Provides routes for the router-testing module**

**Tests that the router can navigate to the route /. The / route doesn't add anything to the base URL, so you expect it to be an empty string.**

**You need to create AppComponent because it declares <router-outlet>.**

**Fast-forwards the time required for the asynchronous creation of AppComponent**

**Tests whether the router can navigate to the /weather route using the navigate() method**

**Tests whether the router can navigate to the /weather route using the navigateByUrl() method**

Note that you import ReactiveFormsModule because WeatherComponent uses the Forms API.

**NOTE** Don't unit-test third-party code in your app. In listing 9.5, you use an empty object as a provider for WeatherService, which in the real app makes calls to a remote weather server. What if that remote server is down when you run your test specs? Unit tests should assert that your scripts work fine, not someone else's software. That's why you don't use an actual WebService and use an empty object instead.

When testing the client-side navigation of your application, you'll use the Router class and its `navigate()` and `navigateByUrl()` methods.

Listing 9.5 illustrates the use of both the `navigate()` and the `navigateByUrl()` methods for testing that the programmatic navigation properly updates the address bar of the application. But because you don't run that app during the test, there's no browser address bar, so it has to be emulated. That's why instead of `RouterModule`, you use `RouterTestingModule`, which knows how to check the expected content of the address bar using the `Location` class.

Now let's look at testing the injection of services. As a matter of fact, you've already been injecting services while testing routes:

```
fakeAsync(inject([Router, Location], ...))
```

But in the next section, we'll show you a different way to initialize the required services: you'll get the `Injector` object and invoke its `get()` method.

### 9.3.3 Testing the weather service

The `WeatherService` class encapsulates communications with the weather server.

#### Listing 9.6 weather.service.ts

```
import {Inject, Injectable, OpaqueToken} from '@angular/core';
import {Http, Response} from '@angular/http';
import {Observable} from 'rxjs/Observable';
import 'rxjs/add/operator/filter';
import 'rxjs/add/operator/map';

export const WEATHER_URL_BASE = new OpaqueToken('WeatherUrlBase');
export const WEATHER_URL_SUFFIX = new OpaqueToken('WeatherUrlSuffix');

export interface WeatherResult {
  place: string;
  temperature: number;
  humidity: number;
}

@Injectable()
export class WeatherService {
  constructor(
    private http: Http,
    @Inject(WEATHER_URL_BASE) private urlBase: string,
    @Inject(WEATHER_URL_SUFFIX) private urlSuffix: string) {
  }

  getWeather(city: string): Observable<WeatherResult> {
    return this.http
      .get(this.urlBase + city + this.urlSuffix)
      .map((response: Response) => response.json())
      .filter(this._hasResult)
  }
}
```

```

        .map(this._parseData);
    }

    private _hasResult(data): boolean {
        return data['cod'] !== '404' && data.main;
    }

    private _parseData(data): WeatherResult {
        let [first,] = data.list;
        return {
            place: data.name || 'unknown',
            temperature: data.main.temp,
            humidity: data.main.humidity
        };
    }
}

```

Note the use of the `OpaqueToken` type mentioned in chapter 4. You use it twice to inject into `urlBase` and `urlSuffix` the values provided in the `@NgModule` decorator. Using dependency injection for `urlBase` and `urlSuffix` makes it simpler to replace the real weather server with a mock, if need be.

The `getWeather()` method in listing 9.6 forms the URL for the HTTP `get()` by concatenating `urlBase`, `city`, and `urlSuffix`. The result is processed by `map()`, `filter()`, and another `map()` so the observable will emit objects of type `WeatherResult`.

**NOTE** You aren't testing the `_hasResult()` and `_parseData()` methods because private methods can't be unit-tested. Should you decide to test them, change their access level to public.

To test `WeatherService`, you'll use the `MockBackend` class, which is one of Angular's implementations of the `Http` object. `MockBackend` doesn't make any HTTP requests but intercepts them and allows you to create and return hardcoded data in the format of the expected result.

Before each test, you'll get a reference to the `Injector` object, which will get you the new instances of `MockBackend` and `WeatherService`. The testing code for the `WeatherService` is located in the `weather.service.spec.ts` file.

#### Listing 9.7 `weather.service.spec.ts`

```

import {async, getTestBed, TestBed, Injector} from '@angular/core/testing';
import {Response, ResponseOptions, HttpModule, XHRBackend} from '@angular/
➥ http';
import {MockBackend, MockConnection} from '@angular/http/testing';
import {WeatherService, WEATHER_URL_BASE, WEATHER_URL_SUFFIX} from './
➥ weather.service';

describe('WeatherService', () => {
    let mockBackend: MockBackend;

```

```

let service: WeatherService;

let injector: Injector;

beforeEach(() => {
  TestBed.configureTestingModule({
    imports: [HttpModule],
    providers: [
      { provide: XHRBackend, useClass: MockBackend },
      { provide: WEATHER_URL_BASE, useValue: '' },
      { provide: WEATHER_URL_SUFFIX, useValue: '' },
      WeatherService
    ]
  });
  injector = getTestBed();           ← Gets an instance of the Injector. The TestBed class
});                                implements the Injector interface, and getTestBed() returns an object that implements the injector's API.

beforeEach(() => {
  mockBackend = injector.get(XHRBackend); ← Sets the providers that the test injector should use for the XHRBackend token
  service = injector.get(WeatherService); ← Sets the providers that the test injector should use for the WeatherService token
});                                ←

it('getWeather() should return weather for New York', async(() => {
  let mockResponseData = {           ← The test starts by creating a mock object to represent the
    cod: '200',                    ← weather for New York. The structure of this object mimics
    name: 'New York',              ← the actual response data from the real web service.
    main: {
      temp: 57,
      humidity: 44
    }
});                                ← Configures MockBackend by subscribing to "HTTP requests," and emulates the real response with the content of mockResponseData. The body of this response is created by instantiating ResponseOptions.

  mockBackend.connections.subscribe((connection: MockConnection) => {           ←
    let responseOpts = new ResponseOptions({body:
      JSON.stringify(mockResponseData)});           ←
    connection.mockRespond(new Response(responseOpts));           ←
  });

  service.getWeather('New York').subscribe(weather => {
    expect(weather.place).toBe('New York');
    expect(weather.humidity).toBe(44);
    expect(weather.temperature).toBe(57);
  });
});                                ← The invocation of getWeather('New York') is expected to return the mock data for New York. The getWeather() method internally uses Http emulated by MockBackend.
});                                ←

```

These are the main takeaways from testing services injection:

- Prepare the providers.
- If you're using services that make requests to external servers, mock them up.

We've shown you how to test the navigation and services; now let's look at how you can test an Angular component.

#### 9.3.4 Testing the weather component

WeatherService is injected into WeatherComponent (weather.ts) via constructor, where you subscribe to the observable's messages coming from the WeatherService. When the user starts entering the name of a city in the UI, the getWeather() method is invoked, and the returned weather data is displayed in the template via binding.

**Listing 9.8 weather.ts**

```
import {Component} from '@angular/core';
import {FormControl} from '@angular/forms';
import 'rxjs/add/operator/debounceTime';
import 'rxjs/add/operator/switchMap';

import {WeatherService, WeatherResult} from '../services/weather.service';

@Component({
  selector: 'my-weather',
  template: `
    <h2>Weather</h2>
    <input type="text" placeholder="Enter city" [formControl]="searchInput">
    <h3>Current weather in {{weather?.place}}:</h3>
    <ul>
      <li>Temperature: {{weather?.temperature}}F</li>
      <li>Humidity: {{weather?.humidity}}%</li>
    </ul>
  `,
})
export class WeatherComponent {
  searchInput: FormControl;
  weather: WeatherResult;

  constructor(weatherService: WeatherService) {
    this.searchInput = new FormControl('');
    this.searchInput.valueChanges
      .debounceTime(300)
      .switchMap((place: string) => weatherService.getWeather(place))
      .subscribe(
        (wthr: WeatherResult) => this.weather = wthr,
        error => console.error(error),
        () => console.log('Weather is retrieved'));
  }
}
```

You want to write a test to check that when the weather property gets the values, the template is properly updated via bindings. You also want to test that when the value of the searchInput object changes, the observable emits data via its valueChanges property.

### The Elvis operator

The template of WeatherComponent includes expressions with question marks, such as `weather?.place`. The question mark in this context is called the *Elvis operator*.

The `weather` property is populated asynchronously, and if `weather` is null by the time the expression is evaluated, the `weather.place` expression would throw an error. To suppress null dereferencing, you use the Elvis operator to short-circuit further evaluation if `weather` is null. The Elvis operator offers an explicit notation to show which values could be null.

The test suite will contain one test to check that data bindings work as expected. `TestBed.createComponent(WeatherComponent)` will create a `ComponentFixture` that contains references to the `WeatherComponent` as well as the DOM object that represents this component. In listing 9.8, you use the `weather` property for bindings; you'll initialize this property with the object literal containing hardcoded values for `place`, `humidity`, and `temperature`.

After that, you'll force change-detection by invoking the `detectChanges()` method on the instance of `ComponentFixture`. You expect to see the values from `weather` in one `<h3>` and two `<li>` tags in the component's template. The code for this test is located in the `weather.spec.ts` file.

#### Listing 9.9 weather.spec.ts

```
import { TestBed } from '@angular/core/testing';
import { ReactiveFormsModule } from '@angular/forms';

import { WeatherComponent } from './weather';
import { WeatherService } from '../services/weather.service';

describe('WeatherComponent', () => {
  beforeEach(() => {
    TestBed.configureTestingModule({
      imports: [ ReactiveFormsModule ],
      declarations: [ WeatherComponent ],
      providers: [{provide: WeatherService, useValue: {} }]
    });
  });

  it('should display the weather ', () => {
    let fixture = TestBed.createComponent(WeatherComponent);
    let element = fixture.nativeElement;
    let component = fixture.componentInstance;
    component.weather = {place: 'New York', humidity: 44, temperature: 57};

    Gets a reference to the HTML element rendered for this component
  });

  Gets a reference to the component under test
  initializes the component's weather property as if the data came from the server
  creates an instance of WeatherComponent, and gets a ComponentFixture back
  WeatherComponent expects WeatherService to be injected, and you replace the real service with an empty object.
});
```

**Compares the text of the <h3> element with the expected value**

```
fixture.detectChanges(); ← Initiates change detection

expect(element.querySelector('h3').innerHTML).toBe('Current weather in
  ↪ New York:');
expect(element.querySelector('li:nth-of-
  type(1)').innerHTML).toBe('Temperature: 57F'); ←
expect(element.querySelector('li:nth-of-
  type(2)').innerHTML).toBe('Humidity: 44%');
});;
});;
```

**Compares the text of the first and second <li> with the expected values. You use the CSS selector li:nth-of-type() to get the text of the <li> element by its position.**

**TIP** Listing 9.9 uses an empty object to mock WeatherService because you don't plan to invoke any methods on it. You could define the mock service as class MockWeatherService implements WeatherService and provide implementations for the real methods, but they would return hardcoded values. When defining a mock service in real-world applications, it's advisable to create classes that implement the interfaces of the real services.

**NOTE** In chapter 7, you learned two approaches for creating forms in Angular. Although the template-driven approach requires little coding, using reactive forms makes them more testable without requiring the DOM object.

#### RUNNING TESTS IN THE HTML-BASED RUNNER

Let's run the test suite for the weather application in the HTML-based runner. Just run the live-server, and enter the URL <http://localhost:8080/test.html> in the browser. All the tests should pass, and the browser window should look like figure 9.4.

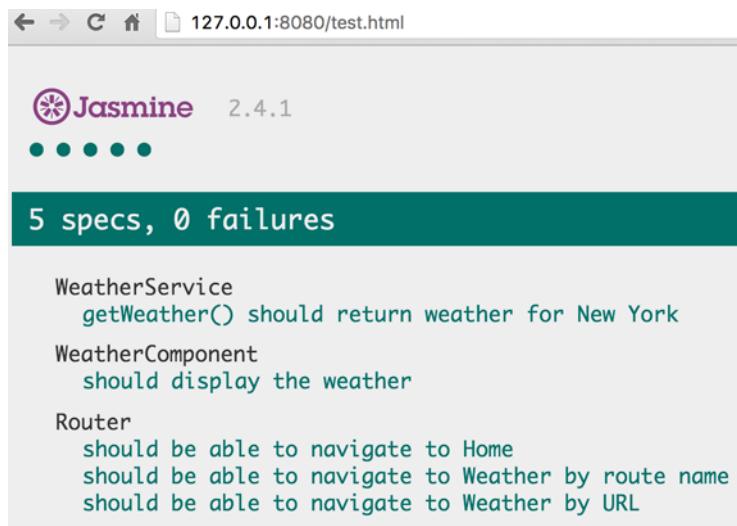


Figure 9.4 The test suite passed.

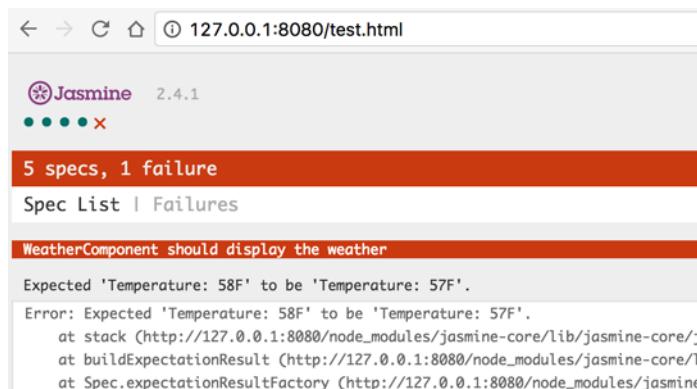
When you write tests, you want to see how they fail. Let's make one of the tests fail to see how it's reported. Change the temperature to 58 degrees on the line where you initialize the `weather` property:

```
component.weather = {place: 'New York', humidity: 44, temperature: 58};
```

The test still expects the UI to render the temperature as 57 degrees:

```
expect(element.querySelector('li:nth-of-type(1)').innerHTML)
  .toBe('Temperature: 57F');
```

The test output shown in figure 9.5 reports the failure of one of five tests.



**Figure 9.5** The test suite failed.

Manually running tests in the web browser isn't the best way to unit-test your code. You want a testing process that can be run as a script from a command line, so it can be integrated into the automated build process. Jasmine has a runner that can be used from a command prompt, but we prefer to use an independent test runner, Karma, that can work with a variety of unit-test frameworks. We'll show you how to use the Karma runner next.

## 9.4

### Running tests with Karma

Karma (<https://karma-runner.github.io>) is a test runner that was originally created by the AngularJS team, but it's being used to test JavaScript code written with or without frameworks. Karma is built using Node.js, and although it doesn't run in a web browser, it can run tests to check whether your application will work in multiple browsers (you'll run tests for Chrome and Firefox).

For the Weather application, you'll install Karma and the plugins for Jasmine, Chrome, and Firefox, and save them in the `devDependencies` section of `package.json`:

```
npm install karma karma-jasmine karma-chrome-launcher karma-firefox-
  launcher --save-dev
```

To run Karma, configure the npm test command of the project as follows:

```
"scripts": {
  "test": "karma start karma.conf.js"
}
```

**NOTE** The karma executable is a binary file located in the node\_modules/.bin directory.

You'll also create a small karma.conf.js configuration file to let Karma know about the project. This file is located in the root directory of the project and includes paths for Angular files as well as configuration options for the Karma runner.

**Listing 9.10 karma.conf.js**

```
module.exports = function (config) {
  config.set({
    browsers: ['Chrome', 'Firefox'],
    frameworks: ['jasmine'],
    reporters: ['dots'],
    singleRun: true,
    files: [
      // Paths loaded by Karma.
      'node_modules/typescript/lib/typescript.js',
      'node_modules/reflect-metadata/Reflect.js',
      'node_modules/systemjs/dist/system.src.js',
      'node_modules/zone.js/dist/zone.js',
      'node_modules/zone.js/dist/async-test.js',
      'node_modules/zone.js/dist/fake-async-test.js',
      'node_modules/zone.js/dist/long-stack-trace-zone.js',
      'node_modules/zone.js/dist/proxy.js',
      'node_modules/zone.js/dist/sync-test.js',
      'node_modules/zone.js/dist/jasmine-patch.js',
      // Paths loaded via module imports.
      {pattern: 'karma-systemjs.config.js', included: true, watched: false},
      {pattern: 'karma-test-runner.js', included: true, watched: false},
      {pattern: 'node_modules/@angular/**/*.js', included: false, watched: false},
      {pattern: 'node_modules/@angular/**/*.js.map', included: false, watched: false},
      {pattern: 'node_modules/rxjs/**/*.js', included: false, watched: false},
      {pattern: 'node_modules/rxjs/**/*.js.map', included: false, watched: false},
      {pattern: 'app/**/*.ts', included: false, watched: true}
    ],
  })
}

// Karma SystemJS configuration. Identical to the systemjs.config.js file but additionally defines baseURL: 'base'.
```

**Runs the tests once and stops. This option is useful when Karma runs as part of an automated build.**

**Tests the application against the Chrome and Firefox browsers**

**The unit tests are written using Jasmine.**

**Prints dots on the console to indicate the tests' progress**

**Karma should know about files from the Angular framework (including the testing library).**

**Karma SystemJS configuration. Identical to the systemjs.config.js file but additionally defines baseURL: 'base'.**

**This script will run the tests.**

**Files are loaded via module imports and can contain either the test scripts or the application code included in the import statements.**

```

        proxies: {
          '/app/': '/base/app/'
        },
      Plugins required for the run    ↗
      ↳  plugins: [
        'karma-jasmine',
        'karma-chrome-launcher',
        'karma-firefox-launcher'
      ]
    })
};


```

Required for component assets fetched by Angular's compiler. Filenames that start with /app in the styleUrls and templateUrl properties (not used in the weather app) should be proxied via the Karma-generated /base/app path.

Most of listing 9.10 lists the paths where required files are located. Karma generates a temporary HTML page that includes the files listed with included: true. Files listed with included: false will be dynamically loaded at runtime. All the Angular files, including the testing ones, are loaded dynamically by SystemJS.

You'll need to add one more file to the project: karma-test-runner.js. It's the script that actually runs the tests.

### Listing 9.11 karma-test-runner.js

```

Finds all files with the spec.ts name extension
Error.stackTraceLimit = Infinity;           ↗
Let the browser show full stack traces in case of errors
jasmine.DEFAULT_TIMEOUT_INTERVAL = 1000;       ↗
The default Jasmine timeout for the async function calls is 5 seconds, but this line changes it to 1 second.
__karma__.loaded = function () {};
function resolveTestFiles() {
  return Object.keys(window.__karma__.files)
    .filter(function (path) { return /\.spec\.ts$/.test(path); })
    .map(function (moduleName) { return System.import(moduleName); });
}
Promise.all([
  System.import('@angular/core/testing'),
  System.import('@angular/platform-browser-dynamic/testing')
]).then(function (modules) {
  var testing = modules[0];
  var browser = modules[1];
  testing.TestBed.initTestEnvironment(
    browser.BrowserDynamicTestingModule,
    browser.platformBrowserDynamicTesting()
  );
  then(function () { return Promise.all(resolveTestFiles()); })
    .then(function () { __karma__.start(); },
      function (error) { __karma__.error(error.stack || error); });
}

Loads the test specs
Loads two Angular modules required for testing
After the modules are loaded, specifies the default Angular providers
Initializes the test environment
Runs the tests

```

**Finds all files with the spec.ts name extension**

**Lets the browser show full stack traces in case of errors**

**The default Jasmine timeout for the async function calls is 5 seconds, but this line changes it to 1 second.**

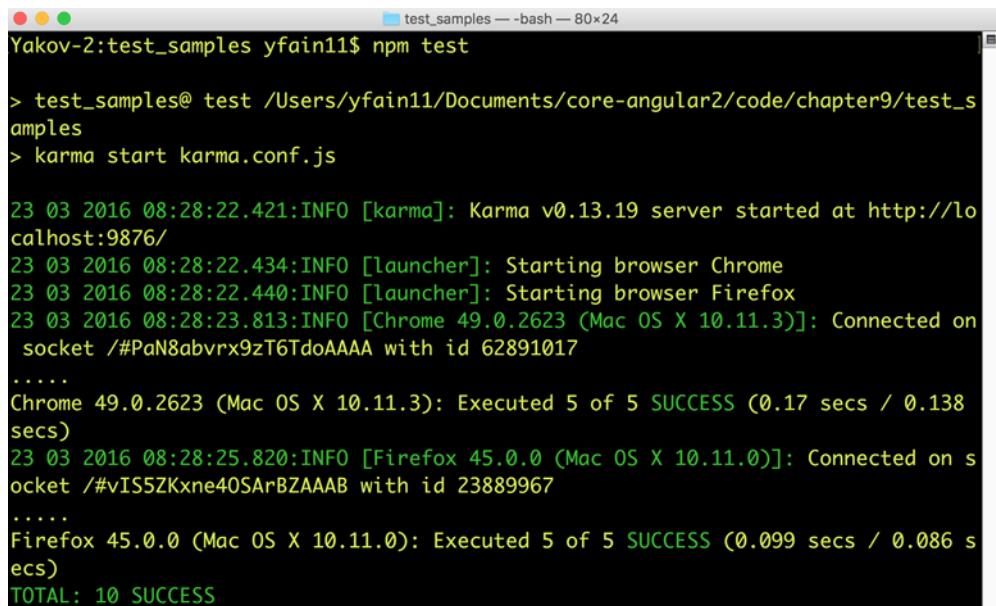
**Because the app code and specs are loaded asynchronously, don't run Karma on the loaded event. You'll call karma.start() later, once all the specs are loaded.**

**Loads two Angular modules required for testing**

**After the modules are loaded, specifies the default Angular providers**

**Initializes the test environment**

**Runs the tests**



```
Yakov-2:test_samples yfain11$ npm test

> test_samples@ test /Users/yfain11/Documents/core-angular2/code/chapter9/test_samples
> karma start karma.conf.js

23 03 2016 08:28:22.421:INFO [karma]: Karma v0.13.19 server started at http://localhost:9876/
23 03 2016 08:28:22.434:INFO [launcher]: Starting browser Chrome
23 03 2016 08:28:22.440:INFO [launcher]: Starting browser Firefox
23 03 2016 08:28:23.813:INFO [Chrome 49.0.2623 (Mac OS X 10.11.3)]: Connected on socket /#PaN8abvrx9zT6TdoAAAA with id 62891017
.....
Chrome 49.0.2623 (Mac OS X 10.11.3): Executed 5 of 5 SUCCESS (0.17 secs / 0.138 secs)
23 03 2016 08:28:25.820:INFO [Firefox 45.0.0 (Mac OS X 10.11.0)]: Connected on socket /#vIS5ZKxne40SArBZAAAB with id 23889967
.....
Firefox 45.0.0 (Mac OS X 10.11.0): Executed 5 of 5 SUCCESS (0.099 secs / 0.086 secs)
TOTAL: 10 SUCCESS
```

Figure 9.6 Testing the weather application with Karma

Now you're ready to run your tests using the command `npm test` from the command line. During the run, Karma will open and close each configured browser and print the test results, as shown in figure 9.6.

Developers tend to use the latest versions of the browser that has the best dev tools, which is Google Chrome. We've seen real-world projects in which a developer demos the application running perfectly in Chrome, and then users complain about an error in Safari. Make sure the development process uses Karma and tests the application against all browsers. Before giving your application to the QA team or showing it to your manager, make sure your Karma runner doesn't report any errors in all the required browsers.

Now that we've given you an overview of writing and running unit tests, let's implement tests for the online auction.

## 9.5 Hands-on: unit-testing the online auction

The goal of this exercise is to show you how to unit-test selected modules of the online auction application. In particular, you'll add unit tests for `AppComponent`, `StarsComponent`, and `ProductService`. You'll run the tests using Jasmine's HTML-based runner and then Karma.

**NOTE** We're going to use the auction application from chapter 8 as a starting point, so copy it to a separate directory and follow the instructions in this section. If you prefer to review the code instead of typing it, use the code that comes with chapter 9, and run the tests.

Install Jasmine, Karma, the type-definition files for Jasmine, and all Angular dependencies by running the following commands:

```
npm install jasmine-core karma karma-jasmine karma-chrome-launcher karma-
➥ firefox-launcher --save-dev
```

```
npm install @types/jasmine --save-dev
npm install
```

In the client directory, create a new auction-unit-tests.html file for loading Jasmine tests.

#### Listing 9.12 auction-unit-tests.html

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
  <title>[TEST] Online Auction</title>

  <!-- TypeScript in-browser compiler -->
  <script src="node_modules/typescript/lib/typescript.js"></script>

  <!-- Polyfills -->
  <script src="node_modules/reflect-metadata/Reflect.js"></script>

  <!-- Jasmine -->
  <link rel="stylesheet" href="node_modules/jasmine-core/lib/jasmine-core/
➥ jasmine.css">
  <script src="node_modules/jasmine-core/lib/jasmine-core/jasmine.js">
  ➥ </script>
  <script src="node_modules/jasmine-core/lib/jasmine-core/jasmine-html.js">
  ➥ </script>
  <script src="node_modules/jasmine-core/lib/jasmine-core/boot.js"></script>

  <!-- Zone.js -->
  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/zone.js"></script>
  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/proxy.js"></script>
  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/sync-test.js"></script>
  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/jasmine-patch.js"></script>
  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/async-test.js"></script>
  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/fake-async-test.js"></script>
  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/long-stack-trace-zone.js"></script>

  <!-- SystemJS -->
  <script src="node_modules/systemjs/dist/system.src.js"></script>
  <script src="systemjs.config.js"></script>
</head>
```

```

<body>
<script>
    var SPEC_MODULES = [
        'app/components/application/application.spec',
        'app/components/stars/stars.spec',
        'app/services/product-service.spec'
    ];

    Promise.all([
        System.import('@angular/core/testing'),
        System.import('@angular/platform-browser-dynamic/testing')
    ])
        .then(function (modules) {
            var testing = modules[0];
            var browser = modules[1];

            testing.TestBed.initTestEnvironment(
                browser.BrowserDynamicTestingModule,
                browser.platformBrowserDynamicTesting()
            );

            // Load all the spec files.
            return Promise.all(SPEC_MODULES.map(function (module) {
                return System.import(module);
            }));
        })
        .then(window.onload)
        .catch(console.error.bind(console));
</script>
</body>
</html>

```

The content of this file is similar to test.html from the weather application. The only difference is that you're loading different spec files here: application.spec, stars.spec, and product-service.spec.

### 9.5.1 Testing ApplicationComponent

Create an application.spec.ts file in the client/app/components/application directory to test that ApplicationComponent is successfully instantiated. This isn't an overly useful test, but it can serve as an illustration of testing whether an instance of a TypeScript class (not even one related to Angular) was successfully created.

#### **Listing 9.13 application.spec.ts**

```

import ApplicationComponent from './application';

describe('ApplicationComponent', () => {
    it('is successfully instantiated', () => {
        const app = new ApplicationComponent();
        expect(app instanceof ApplicationComponent).toEqual(true);
    });
});

```

### 9.5.2 Testing ProductService

To test ProductService, create a product-service.spec.ts file in the app/services directory. In this spec, you'll test the HTTP service, and although the it () function is rather small, there will be lots of preparation before the test runs.

**Listing 9.14 product-service.spec.ts**

```
import {async, getTestBed, TestBed, inject, Injector} from '@angular/core/
  ↪ testing';
import {Response, RequestOptions, HttpModule, XHRBackend} from '@angular/
  ↪ http';
import {MockBackend, MockConnection} from '@angular/http/testing';
import {ProductService} from './product-service';

describe('ProductService', () => {
  let mockBackend: MockBackend;
  let service: ProductService;
  let injector: Injector;

  beforeEach(() => {
    TestBed.configureTestingModule({
      imports: [HttpModule],
      providers: [
        { provide: XHRBackend, useClass: MockBackend },
        ProductService
      ]
    });
    injector = getTestBed();
  });

  beforeEach(inject([XHRBackend, ProductService], (_mockBackend,
  ↪ _service) => {
    mockBackend = _mockBackend;
    service = _service;
  )));

  it('getProductById() should return Product with ID=1', async(() => {
    let mockProduct = {id: 1};
    mockBackend.connections.subscribe((connection: MockConnection) => {
      let responseOpts = new RequestOptions({body:
        ↪ JSON.stringify(mockProduct)}));
      connection.mockRespond(new Response(responseOpts));
    });

    service.getProductById(1).subscribe(p => {
      expect(p.id).toBe(1);
    });
  }));
});
```

**MockBackend serves as an implementation of the HTTP service. MockConnection represents the connection.**

**Keeps references to the injected services so the test can use them**

**Overrides the default implementation of Http by explicitly instantiating this object and passing it the MockBackend as an argument. You don't change the BaseRequestOption, but it's a required argument.**

**Prepares the fake data to be returned by the MockBackend**

**Configures the mock back end**

**Invoking getProductById() on the service should return the object with ID equal to 1.**

First you create an object literal, `mockProduct = { id: 1 }`, which is used to emulate the data that could come from the server as an HTTP response. You want `mockBackend` to mock and return an object with hardcoded values for each HTTP request. You could have created an instance of `Product` with more properties, but for this simple test, having just the ID suffices.

### 9.5.3 Testing StarsComponent

For the last test, we picked `StarsComponent` because it demonstrates how you can test a component's properties and the event emitter. `StarsComponent` loads its HTML from a file that requires special processing during testing. Angular loads the files specified in `templateUrl` asynchronously and performs just-in-time compilation on them. You'll need to do the same in the test spec by invoking `TestBed.compileComponents()`. This step is required for any component that uses the `templateUrl` property. In the client/app/components/stars directory, create a `stars.spec.ts` file with the following content.

**Listing 9.15 stars.spec.ts**

```
import { TestBed, async, fakeAsync, inject } from '@angular/core/testing';
import StarsComponent from './stars';

describe('StarsComponent', () => {
  beforeEach(() => {
    TestBed.configureTestingModule({
      declarations: [ StarsComponent ]
    });
  });

  beforeEach(async(() => {
    TestBed.compileComponents();
  }));

  it('is successfully injected', () => {
    let component = TestBed.createComponent(StarsComponent).componentInstance;
    expect(component instanceof StarsComponent).toEqual(true);
  });

  it('readonly property is true by default', () => {
    let component = TestBed.createComponent(StarsComponent).componentInstance;
    expect(component.readonly).toEqual(true);
  });

  it('all stars are empty', () => {
    let fixture = TestBed.createComponent(StarsComponent);
    let element = fixture.nativeElement;
    let cmp = fixture.componentInstance;
    cmp.rating = 0;
  });
}

Check that all empty stars are rendered if the rating is equal to 0
```

Compiles the content of the file used in `templateUrl`

Checks that the instance was injected (compare with listing 9.13)

Creates a fixture, and gets the reference to the component's instance

Checks that the readonly input property of `StarsComponent` is true by default. The user should be able to click stars only in Leave Review mode.

```

fixture.detectChanges();

let selector = '.glyphicon-star-empty';
expect(element.querySelectorAll(selector).length).toBe(5);
});

it('all stars are filled', () => {
  let fixture = TestBed.createComponent(StarsComponent);
  let element = fixture.nativeElement;
  let cmp = fixture.componentInstance;
  cmp.rating = 5;

  fixture.detectChanges();

  let selector = '.glyphicon-star:not(.glyphicon-star-empty)';
  expect(element.querySelectorAll(selector).length).toBe(5);
};

it('emits rating change event when readonly is false', async(() => {
  let component = TestBed.createComponent(StarsComponent).componentInstance;
  component.ratingChange.subscribe(r => {
    expect(r).toBe(3);
  });
  component.readonly = false;
  component.fillStarsWithColor(2);
}));
});
}

```

Checks that all filled stars are rendered if the rating is equal to 5

Checks that EventEmitter works

TestBed creates a new instance of StarsComponent (you don't use the injected one here) and gives you a fixture with references to the component and the native element. To test that all the stars are empty, you assign 0 to the input rating property on the component instance. The rating property is actually a setter on StarsComponent that modifies both rating and the stars array:

```

set rating(value: number) {
  this._rating = value || 0;
  this.stars = Array(this.maxStars).fill(true, 0, this.rating);
}

```

Then you start the change-detection cycle, which forces the \*ngFor loop to re-render the star images in the template of the StarsComponent:

```

<p>
  <span *ngFor="let star of stars; let i = index"
        class="starrating glyphicon glyphicon-star"
        [class.glyphicon-star-empty]="!star"
        (click)="fillStarsWithColor(i)">
  </span>
  <span *ngIf="rating">{{rating | number:'0-2'}} stars</span>
</p>

```

The CSS for the filled stars is `starrating glyphicon glyphicon-star`. The empty stars have an additional CSS class, `glyphicon-star-empty`. The test 'all stars are empty' uses the `glyphicon-star-empty` selector and expects that there are exactly five native elements with this class.

The test 'all stars are filled' assigns the rating 5. It uses the CSS selector `.glyphicon-star:not(.glyphicon-star-empty)`, which uses the `not` operator to ensure that the stars aren't empty.

The test 'emits rating change event when readonly is false' uses the injected component. There you subscribe to the `ratingChange` event, expecting the values of the rating to be 3. When a user wants to change the rating, they click the third star (while leaving a review), which invokes the `fillStarsWithColor` method on the component, passing 3 as the `index` argument:

```
fillStarsWithColor(index) {
  if (!this.readonly) {
    this.rating = index + 1; // to prevent zero rating
    this.ratingChange.emit(this.rating);
  }
}
```

Because there's no user to do the clicking during the unit testing, you invoke this method programmatically:

```
component.readonly = false;
component.fillStarsWithColor(2);
```

If you want to see how this test fails, change the argument of `fillStarsWithColor()` to any number other than 2.

### Order of operations in testing events

The code of the test 'emits rating change event when readonly is false' may make you wonder why you write the preceding two lines at the end of the test after `subscribe()` is invoked. The subscription to `Observable` is lazy, and it'll receive the next element only after the `fillStarsWithColor(2)` method is invoked, emitting the event. If you move the `subscribe()` method down, the event will be emitted before the subscriber is created, and the test will fail on timeout because the `done()` method will never be invoked.

#### 9.5.4 Running the tests

To run the tests, first recompile the server's code by running `npm run tsc`. Then start the auction application by entering `npm start` on the console. It'll start the Node server on port 8000. Enter `http://localhost:8000/auction-unit-tests.html` in the browser, and the tests should run, producing the output shown in figure 9.7.

**Figure 9.7** Testing the online auction with the HTML-based runner

To run the same tests using Karma, copy the files karma.conf and karma-test-runner from chapter 9's auction directory into the root directory of your project. (These files were explained in section 9.4.) Run `npm test`, and you should see the output shown in figure 9.8.

```

Yakov-2:auction yfain11$ npm test
`--> auction-ch9@ test /Users/yfain11/Documents/core-angular2/code/chapter9/auction
`--> karma start karma.conf.js
`--> 28 08 2016 07:48:18.873:INFO [karma]: Karma v1.2.0 server started at http://localhost:9876/
`--> 28 08 2016 07:48:18.876:INFO [launcher]: Launching browsers Chrome, Firefox with
`--> unlimited concurrency
`--> 28 08 2016 07:48:18.882:INFO [launcher]: Starting browser Chrome
`--> 28 08 2016 07:48:18.890:INFO [launcher]: Starting browser Firefox
`--> 28 08 2016 07:48:20.263:INFO [Chrome 52.0.2743 (Mac OS X 10.11.5)]: Connected on
`--> socket /#J8HNgz33bUxTWNjMAAAA with id 91422044
`--> 28 08 2016 07:48:22.341:INFO [Firefox 48.0.0 (Mac OS X 10.11.0)]: Connected on
`--> socket /#mk0_GoH7B179oDzHAAAB with id 19867000
`--> ..... .
`--> Chrome 52.0.2743 (Mac OS X 10.11.5): Executed 7 of 7 SUCCESS (0.573 secs / 0.564
`--> secs)
`--> ..... .
`--> Firefox 48.0.0 (Mac OS X 10.11.0): Executed 7 of 7 SUCCESS (0.561 secs / 0.552 s
`--> secs)
`--> TOTAL: 14 SUCCESS

```

**Figure 9.8** Testing the auction with Karma

## 9.6 Summary

We can't overstate the importance of running unit tests in your Angular applications. Unit tests let you ensure that each component or service of your application works as expected. In this chapter, we've demonstrated how to write unit tests using the Jasmine framework and how to run them with either Jasmine or Karma. These are the main takeaways for this chapter:

- A component or a service is a good candidate for writing a test suite.
- Although you can keep all test files separate from your application, it's more convenient to keep them next to the components they test.
- Unit tests run quickly, and most application business logic should be tested with unit tests.
- While you're writing tests, make them fail to see that their failure report is easy to understand.
- If you decide to implement end-to-end testing, don't rerun unit tests during this process.
- Running unit tests should be part of your automated build process. We'll show you how to do that in chapter 10.

# *Bundling and deploying applications with Webpack*



## **This chapter covers**

- Bundling apps for deployment using Webpack
- Configuring Webpack for bundling Angular apps in dev and prod
- Integrating the Karma test runner into the automated build process
- Creating a prod build for the online auction
- Automating project generation and bundling with Anguar CLI

Over the course of this book, you've written and deployed multiple versions of the online auction and lots of smaller applications. Web servers properly served your applications to the user. So why not just copy all the application files to the production server, run `npm install`, and be done with deployment?

No matter which programming language or framework you use, you'll want to achieve two goals:

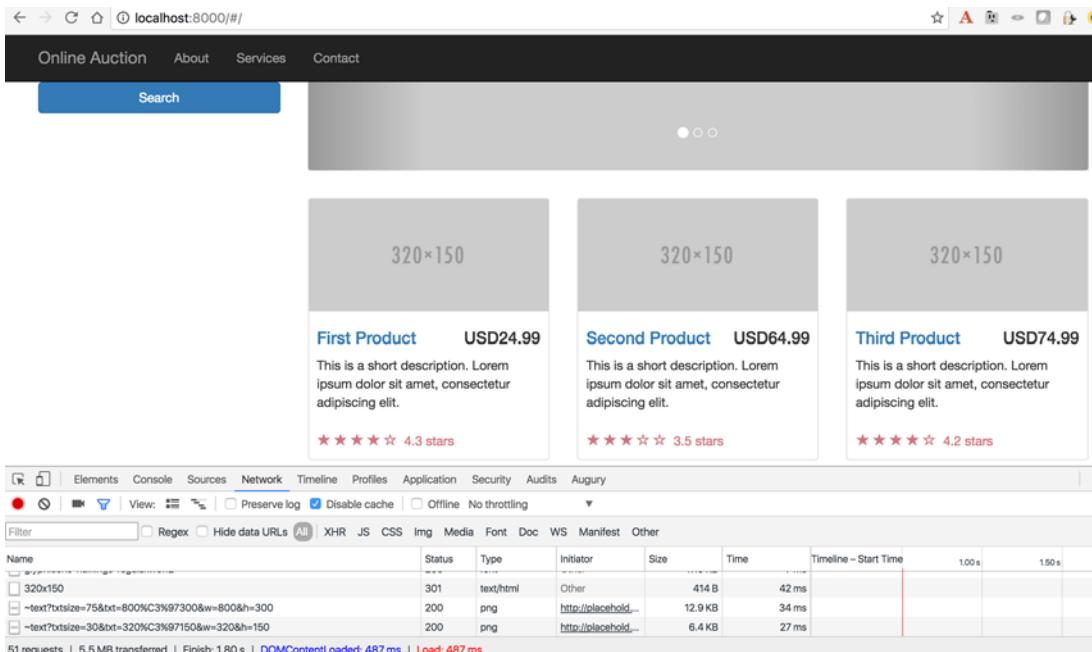
- The deployed web application should be small in size (so it can load faster).
- The browser should make a minimal number of requests to the server on startup (so it can load faster).

When a browser makes requests to the server, it gets HTML documents, which may include additional files like CSS, images, videos, and so on. Let's take the online auction application as an example. On startup, it makes hundreds of requests to the server just to load Angular with its dependencies and the TypeScript compiler, which weigh 5.5 MB combined. Add to this the code you wrote, which is a couple of dozen HTML, TypeScript, and CSS files, let alone images! It's a lot of code to download, and way too many server requests for such a small application. Look at figure 10.1, which shows the content of the Network tab in Chrome Developer Tools after the auction was loaded into our browser: there are lots of network requests, and the app size is huge.

Real-world applications consist of hundreds or even thousands of files, and you want to minimize, optimize, and bundle them together during deployment. In addition, for production, you can precompile the code into JavaScript, so you don't need to load the 3 MB TypeScript compiler in the browser.

Several popular tools are used to deploy JavaScript web applications. All of them run using Node and are available as npm packages. These tools fit into two main categories:

- Task runners
- Module loaders and bundlers



**Figure 10.1 Monitoring the development version of the online auction application**

Grunt (<http://gruntjs.com>) and Gulp (<http://gulpjs.com>) are widely used general-purpose task runners. They know nothing about JavaScript applications, but they allow you to configure and run the tasks required for deploying the applications. Grunt and Gulp aren't easy to maintain for build processes, because their configuration files are several hundred lines long.

In this book, you used npm scripts for running tasks, and a task is a script or a binary file that can be executed from a command line. Configuring npm scripts is simpler than using Grunt and Gulp, and you'll continue using them in this chapter. If the complexity of your project increases and the number of npm scripts becomes unmanageable, consider using Grunt or Gulp to run builds.

So far you've used SystemJS to load modules. Browserify (<http://browserify.org>), Webpack (<http://webpack.github.io>), Broccoli ([www.npmjs.com/package/broccoli-system-builder](http://www.npmjs.com/package/broccoli-system-builder)), and Rollup (<http://rollupjs.org>) are all popular bundlers. Each of them can create code bundles to be consumed by the browsers. The simplest is Webpack, which allows you to convert and combine all your application assets into bundles with minimal configuration. A concise comparison of various bundlers is available on the Webpack site: <http://mng.bz/136m>.

The Webpack bundler was created specifically for web applications running in a browser, and many typical tasks required for preparing web application builds are supported out of the box with minimal configuration and without the need to install additional plugins. This chapter starts by introducing Webpack, and then you'll prepare two separate builds (dev and prod) for the online auction. Finally, you'll run an optimized version of the online auction and compare the size of the application with what's shown in figure 10.1.

You won't use SystemJS in this chapter—Webpack will invoke the TypeScript compiler while bundling the apps. The compilation will be controlled by a special loader that uses tsc internally to transpile TypeScript into JavaScript.

**NOTE** The Angular team has created Angular CLI (<https://github.com/angular/angular-cli>), which is a command-line interface for automating an application's creation, testing, and deployment. Angular CLI uses the Webpack bundler internally. We'll introduce Angular CLI later in this chapter.

## 10.1 Getting to know Webpack

While preparing for a trip, you may pack dozens of items into a couple of suitcases. Savvy travelers use special vacuum-seal bags that allow them to squeeze even more clothes into the same suitcase. Webpack is an equivalent tool. It's a module loader and a bundler that lets you group your application files into bundles; you can also optimize their sizes to fit more into the same bundle.

For example, you can prepare two bundles for deployment: all your application files are merged into one bundle, and all required third-party frameworks and libraries are in another. With Webpack, you can prepare separate bundles for development and production deployment, as shown in figure 10.2. In dev mode, you'll create the bundles in memory, whereas in production mode Webpack will generate actual files on disk.

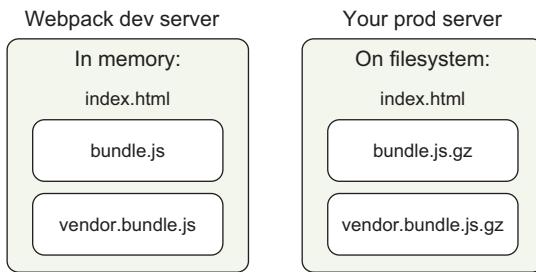


Figure 10.2 Dev and prod deployments

It's convenient to write an application as a set of small modules where one file is one module, but for deployment you'll need a tool to pack all of these files into a small number of bundles. This tool should know how to build the module dependencies tree, sparing you from manually maintaining the order of the loaded modules. Webpack is such a tool, and in the Webpack philosophy, everything can be a module, including CSS, images, and HTML.

The process of deployment with Webpack consists of two major steps:

- 1 Build the bundles (this step can include code optimization).
- 2 Copy the bundles to the desired server.

Webpack is distributed as an npm package, and, like all tools, you can install it either globally or locally. Let's start by installing Webpack globally:

```
npm install webpack -g
```

**NOTE** This chapter uses Webpack 2.1.0, which at the time of this writing is in beta. To install it globally, we used the command `npm i webpack@2.1.0-beta.25 -g`.

A bit later, you'll install Webpack locally by adding it into the `devDependencies` section of the `package.json` file. But installing it globally will let you quickly see the process of turning an application into a bundle.

**TIP** A curated list of Webpack resources (documentation, videos, libraries, and so on) is available on GitHub. Take a look at `awesome-webpack`: <https://github.com/d3viant0ne/awesome-webpack>.

### 10.1.1 Hello World with Webpack

Let's get familiar with Webpack via a very basic Hello World example consisting of two files: `index.html` and `main.js`. Here's the `index.html` file.

#### Listing 10.1 index.html

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<body>
  <script src="main.js"></script>
</body>
</html>
```

The main.js file is even shorter.

#### Listing 10.2 main.js

```
document.write('Hello World!');
```

Open a command-prompt window in the directory where these file are located, and run the following command:

```
webpack main.js bundle.js
```

The main.js file is a source file, and bundle.js is the output file in the same directory. We usually include the word *bundle* in the output filename. Figure 10.3 shows the result of running the preceding command.

Asset	Size	Chunks	Chunk Names
bundle.js	2.46 kB	0	[emitted] main
		[0]	./main.js 31 bytes {0} [built]

**Figure 10.3** Creating the first bundle

Note that the size of the generated bundle.js is larger than that of main.js because Webpack didn't just copy one file into another but added other code required by this bundler. Creating a bundle from a single file isn't overly useful, because it increases the file size; but in a multi-file application, bundling files together makes sense. You'll see this as you read this chapter.

Now you need to modify the `<script>` tag in the HTML file to include bundle.js instead of main.js. This tiny application will render the same "Hello World!" message as the original.

Webpack allows you to specify various options on the command line, but it's better to configure the Webpack bundling process in `webpack.config.js`, which is a JavaScript file. A simple configuration file is shown here.

#### Listing 10.3 webpack.config.js

```
const path = require('path');

module.exports = {
  entry: "./main",
  output: {
    path: './dist',
    filename: 'bundle.js'
  }
};
```

To create a bundle, Webpack needs to know the main module (the *entry point*) of your application, which may have dependencies on other modules or third-party libraries (other entry points). By default, Webpack adds the .js extension to the name of the entry point specified in the `entry` property. Webpack loads the entry-point module and builds a memory tree of all dependent modules. By reading the configuration file in listing 10.3, Webpack will know that the application entry is located in the `./main.js` file and that the resulting `bundle.js` file has to be saved in the `./dist` directory, which is a common name for the distribution bundles.

**TIP** Storing the output files in a separate directory will allow you to configure your version-control system to exclude the generated files. If you use a Git version-control system, add the `dist` directory to the `.gitignore` file.

You could specify more than one entry point by providing an array as a value for the `entry` property:

```
entry: ["./other-module", "./main"]
```

In this case, each of these modules will be loaded on startup.

**NOTE** To create multiple bundles, you need to specify the values of the `entry` property not as strings, but as objects. You'll see such an example later in this chapter, when you instruct Webpack to put the Angular code in one bundle and the application code in another.

If the Webpack configuration file is present in the current directory, you don't need to provide any command-line parameters; you can run the `webpack` command to create your bundles. The other choice is to run Webpack in watch mode using the `--watch` or `-w` command-line option, so whenever you make a change to your application files, Webpack will automatically rebuild the bundle:

```
webpack --watch
```

You can also instruct Webpack to run in watch mode by adding the following entry to `webpack.config.js`:

```
watch: true
```

#### USING WEBPACK-DEV-SERVER

In previous chapters, you used `live-server` to serve your applications, but Webpack comes with its own `webpack-dev-server` that has to be installed separately. Usually you add Webpack to the existing npm project and install both Webpack and its development server locally by running the following command:

```
npm install webpack webpack-dev-server --save-dev
```

This command will install all required files in the node\_modules subdirectory and will add webpack and webpack-dev-server to the devDependencies section of package.json.

The next version of Hello World is located in the directory hello-world-devserver and includes the index.html file shown next.

#### Listing 10.4 hello-world-devserver/index.html

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<body>
  <script src="/bundle.js"></script>
</body>
</html>
```

The main.js JavaScript file remains the same:

```
document.write('Hello World!');
```

The package.json file in the hello-world-devserver project looks like this.

#### Listing 10.5 hello-world-devserver/package.json

```
{
  "name": "first-project",
  "version": "1.0.0",
  "description": "",
  "main": "main.js",
  "scripts": {
    "start": "webpack-dev-server"
  },
  "keywords": [],
  "author": "",
  "license": "ISC",
  "devDependencies": {
    "webpack": "^2.1.0-beta.25",
    "webpack-dev-server": "^2.1.0-beta.0"
  }
}
```

Note that you've configured the `npm start` command for running the local webpack-dev-server.

**NOTE** When you serve your application with webpack-dev-server, it'll run on the default port 8080 and will generate the bundles in memory without saving them in a file. Then webpack-dev-server will recompile and serve the new versions of the bundles every time you modify the code.

You can add the configuration section of webpack-dev-server in the `devServer` section of the `webpack.config.js` file. There you can put any options that webpack-dev-server

allows on the command line (see the Webpack product documentation at <http://mng.bz/gn4r>). This is how you could specify that the files should be served from the current directory:

```
devServer: {  
  contentBase: '.'  
}
```

The complete configuration file for the hello-world-devserver project is shown here and can be reused by both the `webpack` and `webpack-dev-server` commands.

#### Listing 10.6 hello-world-devserver/webpack.config.js

```
const path = require('path');  
  
module.exports = {  
  entry: {  
    'main': './main.js'  
  },  
  output: {  
    path: './dist',  
    filename: 'bundle.js'  
  },  
  watch: true,  
  devServer: {  
    contentBase: '.'  
  }  
};
```

In listing 10.6, two of the options are needed only if you're planning to run the `webpack` command in watch mode and generate output files on disk:

- The Node module path resolves relative paths in your project (in this case, it specifies the `./dist` directory).
- `watch: true` starts Webpack in watch mode.

If you run the `webpack-dev-server` command, the preceding two options aren't used. `webpack-dev-server` always runs in watch mode, doesn't output files on disk, and builds bundles in memory. The `contentBase` property lets `webpack-dev-server` know where your `index.html` file is located.

Let's try to run the Hello World application by serving the application with `webpack-dev-server`. In the command window, run `npm start` to start `webpack-dev-server`. On the console, `webpack-dev-server` will log the output, which starts with the URL you can use with the browser, which by default is `http://localhost:8080`.

Open your browser to this URL, and you'll see a window that displays the message "Hello World". Modify the text of the message in `main.js`: Webpack will automatically rebuild the bundle, and the server will reload the fresh content.

## RESOLVING FILENAMES

This is all good, but you've been writing code in TypeScript, which means you need to let Webpack know that your modules can be located not only in .js files, but in .ts files as well. In the webpack.config.js file in listing 10.6, you specified the filename with the extension: main.js. But you can specify just the filenames without any extensions as long webpack.config.js has the `resolve` section. The following code snippet shows how you can let Webpack know that your modules can be located in files with extension .js or .ts:

```
resolve: {
  extensions: ['.js', '.ts']
}
```

The TypeScript files also have to be preprocessed (transpiled). You need to tell Webpack to transpile your application's .ts files into .js files before creating bundles; you'll see how to do that in the next section.

Usually, build-automation tools provide you with a way to specify additional tasks that need to be performed during the build process. Webpack offers *loaders* and *plugins* that allow you to customize builds.

### 10.1.2 How to use loaders

*Loaders* are transformers that take a source file as input and produce another file as output (in memory or on disk), one at a time. A loader is a small JavaScript module with an exported function that performs a certain transformation. For example, `json-loader` takes an input file and parses it as JSON. `base64-loader` converts its input into a base64-encoded string. Loaders play a role similar to *tasks* in other build tools. Some loaders are included with Webpack so you don't need to install them separately; others can be installed from public repositories. Check the list of loaders in the Webpack docs on GitHub (<http://mng.bz/U0Yv>) to see how to install and use the loaders you need.

In essence, a loader is a function written in Node-compatible JavaScript. To use a loader that's not included with the Webpack distribution, you'll need to install it using npm and include it in your project's package.json file. You can either manually add the required loader to the `devDependencies` section of package.json or run the `npm install` command with the `--save-dev` option. In the case of `ts-loader`, the command would look like this:

```
npm install ts-loader --save-dev
```

Loaders are listed in the webpack.config.js file in the `module` section. For example, you can add the `ts-loader` as follows:

```
module: {
  loaders: [
    {
      test: /\.js$/,
      loader: 'ts-loader',
      exclude: /node_modules/
    }
  ]
}
```

```

    test: /\.ts$/,
    exclude: /node_modules/,
    loader: 'ts-loader'
  },
]
}

```

This configuration tells Webpack to check (test) each filename and, if it matches the regular expression `\.ts$`, to preprocess it with ts-loader. In the syntax of regular expressions, the dollar sign at the end indicates that you're interested only in files having names that end with `.ts`. Because you don't want to include Angular's `.ts` files in the bundle, you exclude the `node_modules` directory. You can either reference loaders by their full name (such as `ts-loader`), or by their shorthand name, omitting the `-loader` suffix (for example, `ts`). If you use relative paths in your templates (for example, `template: "./home.html"`), you need to use `angular2-template-loader`.

**NOTE** The SystemJS loader isn't used in any of the projects presented in this chapter. Webpack loads and transforms all project files using one or more loaders configured in `webpack.config.js` based on the file type.

#### USING LOADERS FOR HTML AND CSS FILES

In the previous chapters, Angular components that stored HTML and CSS in separate files were specified in the `@Component` annotation as `templateUrl` and `styleUrls`, respectively. Here's an example:

```

@Component({
  selector: 'my-home',
  styleUrls: ['app/components/home.css'],
  templateUrl: 'app/components/home.html'
})

```

We usually keep the HTML and CSS files in the same directory where the component code is located. Can you specify the path relative to the current directory?

Webpack allows you to do this:

```

@Component({
  selector: 'my-home',
  styles: [home.css],
  templateUrl: 'home.html'
})

```

While creating bundles, Webpack automatically adds the `require()` statements for loading CSS and HTML files, replacing the preceding code with the following:

```

@Component({
  selector: 'my-home',
  styles: [require('./home.css')],
  templateUrl: require('./home.html')
})

```

Then Webpack checks every `require()` statement and replaces it with the content of the required file, applying the loaders specified for the respective file types. The `require()` statement used here isn't the one from CommonJS: it's the internal Webpack function that makes Webpack aware that these files are dependencies. Webpack's `require()` not only loads the files, but also can reload them when modified (if you run it in watch mode or use `webpack-dev-server`).

### Relative paths in templates with SystemJS

It's great that Webpack supports relative paths. But what if you want to be able to load the same app with either SystemJS or Webpack?

By default, in Angular you have to use the full path to external files, starting from the app root directory. This would require code changes if you decided to move the component into a different directory.

But if you use SystemJS and keep the component's code and its HTML and CSS files in the same directory, you can use a special `moduleId` property. If you assign to this property a special `__moduleName` binding, SystemJS will load files relative to the current module without the need to specify the full path:

```
declare var __moduleName: string;
@Component({
  selector: 'my-home',
  moduleId: __moduleName,
  templateUrl: './home.html',
  styleUrls: ['./home.css']
})
```

You can read more about relative paths in the Angular documentation in the “Component-Relative Paths” section at <http://mng.bz/47w0>.

In dev mode, for HTML processing, you'll use `raw-loader`, which transforms `.html` files into strings. To install this loader and save it in the `devDependencies` section of `package.json`, run the following command:

```
npm install raw-loader --save-dev
```

In prod, you'll use `html-loader`, which removes extra spaces, newline characters, and comments from HTML files:

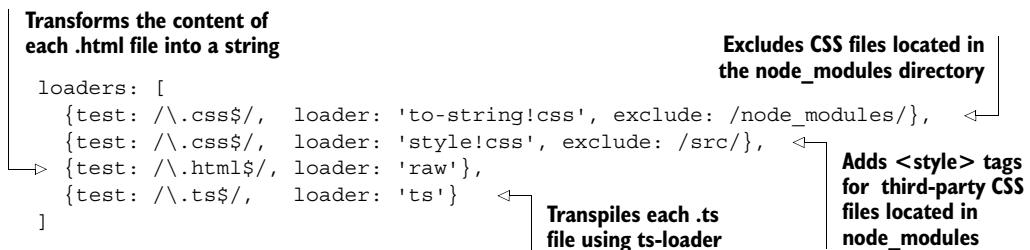
```
npm install html-loader --save-dev
```

For CSS processing, you use the loaders `css-loader` and `style-loader`; during the building process, all related CSS files will be inlined. `css-loader` parses CSS files and minifies the styles. `style-loader` inserts CSS as a `<style>` tag on the page; it does so

dynamically in the runtime. To install these loaders and save them in the `devDependencies` section of `package.json`, run the following command:

```
npm install css-loader style-loader --save-dev
```

You can chain loaders using an exclamation point as a piping symbol. The following fragment is from a `webpack-config.js` file that includes an array of loaders. When loaders are specified as an array, they're executed from the bottom to the top (so the `ts` loader will be executed first in this example). This extract is from a sample project in the next section, where CSS files are located in two folders (`src` and `node_modules`):



First you exclude the CSS files located in the `node_modules` directory, so this transformation will apply only to application components. You chain the `to-string` and `css` loaders here. The `css` loader is executed first, turning the CSS into a JavaScript module, and then its output is piped to the `to-string` loader to extract the string from the generated JavaScript. The resulting string is inlined into the corresponding components in the `@Component` annotation, in place of `require()`, so Angular can apply the proper `ViewEncapsulation` strategy.

Then you want Webpack to inline the third-party CSS files located in `node_modules` (not in `src`). `css-loader` reads the CSS, generates a JavaScript module, and passes it to `style-loader`, which generates `<style>` tags with the loaded CSS and inserts them into the `<head>` section of the HTML document. Finally, you turn the HTML files into strings and transpile the TypeScript code.

**TIP** In Angular, you want the CSS to be encapsulated in the components to gain the benefits of `ViewEncapsulation`, as explained in chapter 6. That's why you inline CSS into the JavaScript code. But there's a way to build a separate bundle that contains just the CSS by using the `ExtractTextPlugin` plugin. If you use CSS preprocessors, install and use the `sass-loader` or `less-loader`.

#### WHAT PRELOADERS AND POSTLOADERS ARE FOR

Sometimes you may want to perform additional file processing even before the loaders start their transformations. For example, you may want to run your TypeScript files through a `TSLint` tool to check the code for readability, maintainability, and

functional errors. For that, you need to add the `preLoaders` section in the Webpack configuration file:

```
preLoaders: [
  {
    test: /\.ts$/,
    exclude: /node_modules/,
    loader: "tslint"
  }
]
```

Preloaders always run before loaders; and if they run into any errors, those are reported on the command line. You can also configure some postprocessing by adding a `postLoaders` section to `webpack.config.js`.

### 10.1.3 How to use plugins

If Webpack loaders transform files one at a time, plugins have access to all files, and they can process them before or after the loaders kick in. For example, the `CommonsChunkPlugin` plugin allows you to create a separate bundle for common modules required by various scripts in your application. The `CopyWebpackPlugin` plugin can copy either individual files or entire directories to the build directory. The `UglifyJSPlugin` plugin performs code minification of all transpiled files.

Say you want to split your application code into two bundles, `main` and `admin`, and each of these modules uses the Angular framework. If you just specify two entry points (`main` and `admin`), each bundle will include the application code as well as its own copy of Angular. To prevent this from happening, you can process the code with the `CommonsChunkPlugin`. With this plugin, Webpack won't include any of the Angular code in the `main` and `admin` bundles; it will create a separate shareable bundle with the Angular code only. This will lower the total size of your application because it includes only one copy of Angular shared between two application modules. In this case, the HTML file should include the vendor bundle first, followed by the application bundle.

`UglifyJSPlugin` is a wrapper for the `UglifyJS` minifier, which takes the JavaScript code and performs various optimizations. For example, it compresses the code by joining consecutive `var` statements, removes unused variables and unreachable code, and optimizes `if` statements. Its mangle tool renames local variables to single letters. For a full description of `UglifyJS`, visit its GitHub page (<https://github.com/mishoo/UglifyJS>). You'll use these and other plugins in the following sections.

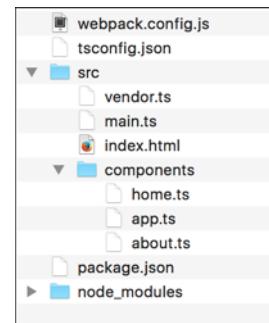
## 10.2 Creating a basic Webpack configuration for Angular

Now that we've covered the Webpack basics, let's see how to bundle a simple Angular application written in TypeScript. We've created a small application that consists of Home and About components and doesn't use external templates or CSS files. This

project is located in the basic-webpack-starter directory, and its structure is shown in figure 10.4.

The main.ts script bootstraps the AppModule and MyApp components, which configure the router and have two links for navigating to either HomeComponent or AboutComponent. Each of these components displays a simple message—the actual functionality is irrelevant in the context of this chapter. You'll focus on creating two bundles: one for Angular and its dependencies, and the other for the application code.

The vendor.ts file is small—it just uses the import statements required by Angular. We did this to create a situation where there are two entry points (main.ts and vendor.ts) that contain common Angular code, which you'll put into a separate bundle.



**Figure 10.4** The basic-webpack-starter project

#### Listing 10.7 basic-webpack-starter/vendor.ts

```

import 'zone.js/dist/zone';
import 'reflect-metadata/Reflect.js';
import '@angular/http';
import '@angular/router';
import '@angular/core';
import '@angular/common';

```

Because these import statements can also be used in main.ts, you'll use the CommonsChunkPlugin to avoid including Angular code in both bundles. Instead, you'll build a separate Angular bundle that's shared by the main entry point and any other entry point if you decide to split the application code into smaller chunks.

**NOTE** The vendor.ts file should import all the modules that you want included in the common bundle and removed from the application code. Webpack will inline into the common bundle all the code required for the imported modules.

The content of the webpack.config.js configuration file is shown here.

#### Listing 10.8 basic-webpack-starter/webpack.config.js

You use require to bring the path modules in to resolve the paths to files. Then you require two plugins: CommonsChunkPlugin and copy-webpack-plugin.

```

const path          = require('path');
const CommonsChunkPlugin = require('webpack/lib/optimize/
  ↵ CommonsChunkPlugin');
const CopyWebpackPlugin = require('copy-webpack-plugin');

module.exports = {
  entry: {
    'main' : './src/main.ts',
  }
}

```

The value for the entry property is specified as an object, which tells Webpack to build two bundles: one for the main.ts entry and another for vendor.ts.

```

    'vendor': './src/vendor.ts'
},
output: {
  path      : './dist',
  filename: 'bundle.js'
},
plugins: [
  new CommonsChunkPlugin({ name: 'vendor', filename: 'vendor.bundle.js' }),
  new CopyWebpackPlugin([{from: './src/index.html', to: 'index.html'}])
],
resolve: {
  extensions: ['', '.ts', '.js']
},
module: {
  loaders: [
    {test: /\.ts$/, loader: 'ts-loader'}
  ],
  noParse: [path.join(__dirname, 'node_modules', 'angular2', 'bundles')]
},
devServer: {
  contentBase: 'src',
  historyApiFallback: true
},
devtool: 'source-map'
};

```

The output bundles will be saved in the dist directory, and the name of the main entry point will go to the bundle.js file. The output for the second entry point will be configured in the plugins section.

Instructs Webpack to create a common vendor.bundle.js bundle with the content that can be shared by all application bundles

Copies the index.html file into the dist directory

To speed up the build process, you don't parse Angular minified files located in the node\_modules/angular2/bundles directory.

Lets the dev server know that the application code is located in the src directory

Generates source maps

Because CommonsChunkPlugin comes with Webpack, there's no need to install it separately. After you install copy-webpack-plugin, Webpack will find it in the node\_modules directory.

Listing 10.8 has two entry points: main.ts contains the app code plus Angular, and vendor.ts has only the Angular code. So the Angular code is common to both of these entry points, and this plugin will extract it from main and will keep it only in vendor.bundle.js.

Although it's nice to bundle all of your app code into one JavaScript file for deployment, it's easier to debug code in its original form of separate files. By adding source-map to webpack.config.js, you tell Webpack to generate source maps so you can see the sources of the JavaScript, CSS, and HTML files, even though the browser executes the code from bundle.js.

You use the option "sourceMap": true in the tsconfig.json file so the TypeScript source maps are generated. Web browsers load the source map files only if you have the developer console open, so generating source maps is a good idea even for production deployments. Keep in mind that ts-loader will perform the code transpilation, so you turn off tsc code generation by setting "noEmit": true in tsconfig.json.

Now let's see how npm's package.json file will change to include the Webpack-related content. In the basic version of package.json, you'll add two lines in the scripts section.

The devDependencies section will include webpack, webpack-dev-server, and the required loaders and plugins.

#### Listing 10.9 basic-webpack-starter/package.json

```
{
  "name": "basic-webpack-starter",
  "version": "1.0.0",
  "description": "A basic Webpack-based starter project for an Angular 2 application",
  "homepage": "https://www.manning.com/books/angular-2-development-with-typescript",
  "private": true,
  "scripts": {
    "build": "webpack",
    "start": "webpack-dev-server --inline --progress --port 8080"
  },
  "dependencies": {
    "@angular/common": "^2.1.0",
    "@angular/compiler": "^2.1.0",
    "@angular/core": "^2.1.0",
    "@angular/http": "^2.1.0",
    "@angular/platform-browser": "^2.1.0",
    "@angular/platform-browser-dynamic": "^2.1.0",
    "@angular/router": "^3.0.0",
    "rxjs": "5.0.0-beta.12",
    "systemjs": "^0.19.37",
    "zone.js": "0.6.21"
  },
  "devDependencies": {
    "@types/es6-shim": "0.0.31",
    "copy-webpack-plugin": "^3.0.1",
    "ts-loader": "^0.8.2",
    "typescript": "^2.0.0",
    "webpack": "^2.1.0-beta.25",
    "webpack-dev-server": "^2.1.0-beta.0"
  }
}

Includes Webpack as a development dependency
```

- Causes Webpack to write the bundles in the dist output directory**: Points to the "build" script entry.
- Creates the bundles in memory, and will serve them to the browser using webpack-dev-server**: Points to the "start" script entry.
- Installs type definitions to support ES6 features. You'll also add the compiler option "types": ["es6-shim"] in tsconfig.json.**: Points to the "@types/es6-shim" dependency.
- Adds copy-webpack-plugin as a development dependency**: Points to the "copy-webpack-plugin" dependency.
- Adds the loaded ts-loader as a development dependency**: Points to the "ts-loader" dependency.
- Adds Webpack development server as a development dependency**: Points to the "webpack-dev-server" dependency.

**NOTE** We use NPM packages from the `@types` namespace and the TypeScript compiler option `@types` to handle type-definition files. You need TypeScript 2.0 or later installed to use the `@types` option.

Both the start and build scripts use the same Webpack configuration from the `webpack.config.js` file. Let's see how these scripts differ.

#### 10.2.1 npm run build

After running `npm run build`, the command window looks like what you see in figure 10.5. The application weighs 2.5 MB and makes just three network requests to load.

```

basic-webpack-starter -- bash -- 80x24
Yakov-2:basic-webpack-starter yfain11$ npm run build

> basic-webpack-starter@1.0.0 build /Users/yfain11/Documents/core-angular2/code/chapter10/basic-webpack-starter
> webpack

ts-loader: Using typescript@2.0.2 and /Users/yfain11/Documents/core-angular2/code/chapter10/basic-webpack-starter/tsconfig.json
Hash: e66e00092da0a25822b9
Version: webpack 2.1.0-beta.21
Time: 5677ms

           Asset      Size  Chunks             Chunk Names
bundle.js       6.34 kB    0  [emitted]  main
vendor.bundle.js  2.56 MB    1  [emitted]  vendor
bundle.js.map   3.93 kB    0  [emitted]  main
vendor.bundle.js.map 2.5 MB    1  [emitted]  vendor
index.html     250 bytes          [emitted]
+ 358 hidden modules

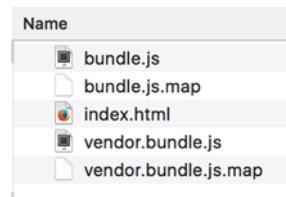
Yakov-2:basic-webpack-starter yfain11$ 

```

**Figure 10.5** Running `npm run build`

Webpack built two bundles (`bundle.js` and `vendor.bundle.js`) and two corresponding source map files (`bundle.js.map` and `vendor.bundle.js.map`), and it copied `index.html` into the `dist` output directory shown in figure 10.6.

The `index.html` file doesn't include any `<script>` tags for loading Angular. Everything the application needs is located in two bundles included in two `<script>` tags.



**Figure 10.6** The content of the `dist` directory

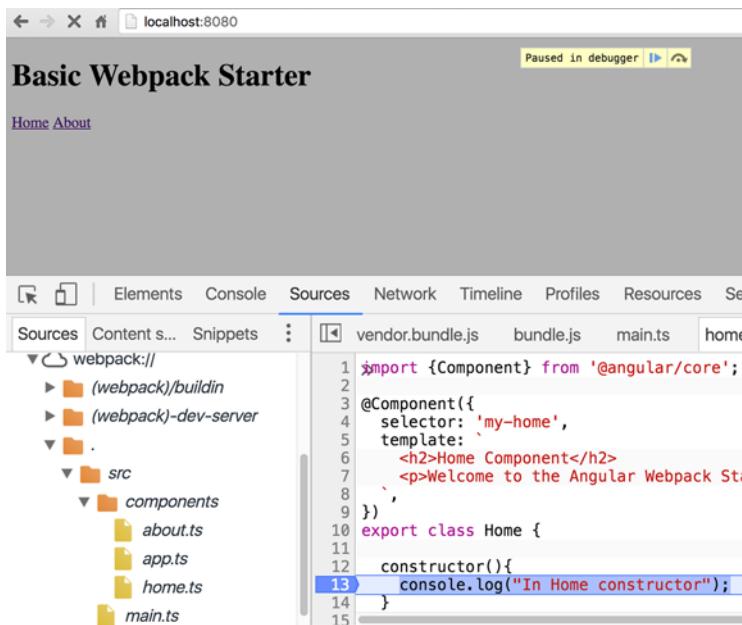
#### Listing 10.10 basic-webpack-starter/index.html

```

<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
  <meta charset=UTF-8>
  <title>Basic Webpack Starter</title>
  <base href="/">
</head>
<body>
  <my-app>Loading...</my-app>
  <script src="vendor.bundle.js"></script>
  <script src="bundle.js"></script>
</body>
</html>

```

You can open the command window in the `dist` directory and run the familiar live-server from there to see this simple application running. We took the screenshot in figure 10.7 after the application stopped at the breakpoint in `main.ts` to illustrate source maps in action. Even though the browser executes code from JavaScript bundles, you can still debug the code of the specific TypeScript module thanks to generated source maps.



**Figure 10.7** Placing a breakpoint in the TypeScript module

### 10.2.2 `npm start`

If instead of `npm run build` you run the `npm start` command, the `dist` directory won't be created, and `webpack-dev-server` will do the build (including source map generation) and serve the application from memory. Just open your browser to `localhost://8080`, and your app will be served. The application weighs 2.7 MB, but you'll do a lot better by the end of this chapter.

The basic Webpack project presented in this section is good for demo purposes. But real-world applications require more advanced work with Webpack, which we'll discuss in the next section.

## 10.3 *Creating development and production configurations*

In this section, we'll show you two versions of Webpack configuration files (one for development and one for production) that you can use as a starting point in your real-world Angular projects. All the code shown in this section is located in the `angular2-webpack-starter` directory. The application is the same as in the previous section and consists of two components: `Home` and `About`.

This project has more `npm` scripts in `package.json` and includes two configuration files: `webpack.config.js` for the development build and `webpack.prod.config.js` for production.

### **10.3.1 Development configuration**

Let's start with the development configuration file, `webpack.config.js`, which gets some minor additions compared to the file in the previous section. You add one new plugin, `DefinePlugin`, that allows you to create variables that are visible from your application code and can be used by Webpack during the build.

### **Listing 10.11 angular2-webpack-starter/webpack.config.js**

```
const path = require('path');
const CommonsChunkPlugin = require('webpack/lib/optimize/CommonsChunkPlugin');
const CopyWebpackPlugin = require('copy-webpack-plugin');
const DefinePlugin = require('webpack/lib/DefinePlugin');

const ENV = process.env.NODE_ENV = 'development';
const HOST = process.env.HOST || 'localhost';
const PORT = process.env.PORT || 8080;

const metadata = {
  env: ENV,
  host: HOST,
  port: PORT
};

module.exports = {
  devServer: {
    contentBase: 'src',
    historyApiFallback: true,
    host: metadata.host,
    port: metadata.port
  },
  devtool: 'source-map',
  entry: {
    'main': './src/main.ts',
    'vendor': './src/vendor.ts'
  },
  module: {
    loaders: [
      {test: /\.css$/, loader: 'raw', exclude: /node_modules/},
      {test: /\.css$/, loader: 'style!css?-minimize', exclude: /src/},
      {test: /\.html$/, loader: 'raw'},
      {test: /\.ts$/, loader: 'ts'}
    ],
    noParse: [path.join(__dirname, 'node_modules', 'angular2', 'bundles')]
  },
  output: {
    path: './dist',
    filename: 'bundle.js'
  },
  plugins: [
    new CommonsChunkPlugin({name: 'vendor', filename: 'vendor.bundle.js'})
  ]
};
```

Loads the **DefinePlugin** that allows you to define variables

Node.js uses a **NODE\_ENV** environment variable, which you can set on your server: for example, export **NODE\_ENV=production** on Linux.

The dev server will start on the specified host and port. The metadata constant is visible from index.html as well, so you can define the baseURL property there if your application isn't deployed in the root directory of your web server.

The raw-loader doesn't transform the files but inlines them as strings in the templates. You use it for CSS and HTML files.

```

    ↵ minChunks: Infinity),
  new CopyWebpackPlugin([{from: './src/index.html', to: 'index.html'}]),
  new DefinePlugin({'webpack': { 'ENV': JSON.stringify(metadata.env) }})  ←
],
resolve: { extensions: ['.ts', '.js']}
};

Defines the ENV variable to be used in the application code

```

The `NODE_ENV` variable is used by Node.js. To access the value of `NODE_ENV` from JavaScript, you use a special `process.env.NODE_ENV` variable. In listing 10.11, you set the value of the `ENV` constant to the value of the `NODE_ENV` environment variable if defined, or to `development` if not. The use of the constants `HOST` and `PORT` is similar, and the `metadata` object will store all these values.

The `ENV` variable is used in `main.ts` to invoke the Angular function `if (webpack.ENV === 'production') enableProdMode();`. When production mode is enabled, Angular's change-detection module doesn't perform an additional pass to ensure that the UI isn't modified in the lifecycle hooks of the components.

**NOTE** Even if you don't set the Node environment variable in the command window, it has a default value of `development`, set in the `webpack.config.js` file.

### 10.3.2 Production configuration

Now let's take a look at the `webpack.prod.config.js` production configuration file, which uses additional plugins: `CompressionPlugin`, `DedupePlugin`, `OccurrenceOrderPlugin`, and `UglifyJsPlugin`.

**Listing 10.12 angular2-webpack-starter/webpack.prod.config.js**

```

const path = require('path');

const CommonsChunkPlugin = require('webpack/lib/optimize/
↳ CommonsChunkPlugin');
const CompressionPlugin = require('compression-webpack-plugin');
const CopyWebpackPlugin = require('copy-webpack-plugin');
const DedupePlugin = require('webpack/lib/optimize/DedupePlugin');
const DefinePlugin = require('webpack/lib/DefinePlugin');
const OccurrenceOrderPlugin = require('webpack/lib/optimize/
↳ OccurrenceOrderPlugin');
const UglifyJsPlugin = require('webpack/lib/optimize/UglifyJsPlugin');

const ENV = process.env.NODE_ENV = 'production'; ←
const metadata = {env: ENV};

module.exports = {
  devtool: 'source-map',
  entry: {
    'main' : './src/main.ts',
    'vendor': './src/vendor.ts'
};

Sets the value of the ENV constant to the value of the NODE_ENV environment variable if defined, or to "production" if not

```

```

},
module: {
  loaders: [
    {test: /\.css$/, loader: 'to-string!css', exclude: /node_modules/},
    {test: /\.css$/, loader: 'style!css', exclude: /src/},
    {test: /\.html$/, loader: 'html?caseSensitive=true'},
    {test: /\.ts$/, loader: 'ts'}
  ],
  noParse: [path.join(__dirname, 'node_modules', 'angular2', 'bundles')]
},
output: {
  path      : './dist',
  filename: 'bundle.js'
},
plugins: [
  new CommonsChunkPlugin({name: 'vendor', filename: 'vendor.bundle.js',
    minChunks: Infinity}),
  new CompressionPlugin({regExp: /\.css$|\.html$|\.js$|\.map$/}),
  new CopyWebpackPlugin([{from: './src/index.html', to: 'index.html'}]),
  new DedupePlugin(),
  new DefinePlugin({'webpack': {'ENV': JSON.stringify(metadata.env)}}),
  new OccurrenceOrderPlugin(true),
  new UglifyJsPlugin({
    compress: {screw_ie8 : true},
    mangle: {screw_ie8 : true}
  })
],
resolve: { extensions: ['.ts', '.js']}
};

UglifyJsPlugin minifies the JavaScript and uses the mangle tool to rename local variables into single letters.

```

**The html-loader turns the HTML file into a string replacing the corresponding require() call.**

**CompressionPlugin uses the gzip utility to prepare compressed versions of assets that match this regular expression.**

**DedupePlugin searches for equal or similar files and deduplicates them in the output.**

**For optimization reasons, Webpack replaces the names of the modules with numeric IDs, and OccurrenceOrderPlugin gives the shortest IDs to the most frequently used modules.**

You'll start the build process using the npm script commands included in the package.json file, which has more commands than those we discussed in section 10.2. Note that the build command explicitly specifies the webpack.prod.config.js file with the production configuration, and the start command will use the development configuration from webpack.config.js, which is a default name used by the Webpack development server.

#### Listing 10.13 angular2-webpack-starter/package.json

**Removes all the content from the dist directory. You use an npm package, rimraf, which is the equivalent of the rm -rf Linux command but works on all platforms.**

```

"scripts": {
  "clean": "rimraf dist",
  "prebuild": "npm run clean && npm run test",
  "build": "webpack --config webpack.prod.config.js --progress --profile
    --colors",
}

```

**npm automatically runs the prebuild command (if present) right before the npm run build command; this is the right time to clean the dist directory and run tests.**

**The npm run build command runs the Webpack build with the specified command-line options and configuration file. In this case, you use the file webpack.prod.config.js.**

The npm start command performs the build in memory and serves the application using webpack-dev-server.

The preserve command runs before serve and creates the build.

```
  "start": "webpack-dev-server --inline --progress --port 8080",
  "preserve:dist": "npm run build",
  "serve:dist": "static dist -H '{\"Cache-Control\": \"no-cache,
    ↪ must-revalidate\"}' -z",
  "test": "karma start karma.conf.js"
  "prebuild:aot": "npm run clean",
    "build:aot": "ngc -p tsconfig.aot.json && webpack --config
      ↪ webpack.prod.config.aot.js --progress --profile --colors",
    "preserve:dist:aot": "npm run build:aot",
    "serve:dist:aot": "static dist -H '{\"Cache-Control\": \"no-cache,
      ↪ must-revalidate\"}' -z"
}
```

This is a command for running tests with Karma.

The serve:dist command serves the bundled app using the static web server.

Typically, after running `npm install`, you'll use the following two commands (you won't set the `NODE_ENV` environment variable in the command line):

- `npm start`—Starts the Webpack development server in development mode, and serves a non-optimized application. If you open the Developer Tools in the browser, you'll see that the application started in development mode because the variable `ENV` has the value `development`, as set in `webpack.config.js`.
- `npm run serve:dist`—Runs `npm run build` to create optimized bundles in the `dist` directory, and starts a static web server and serves the optimized version of the application. If you open the Developer Tools in the browser, you won't see a message saying that the application started in development mode, because it runs in production mode; the `ENV` variable has the value `production`, as set in `webpack.prod.config.js`.
- `npm run serve:dist:aot`—Invokes the Angular `ngc` compiler for ahead-of-time (AoT) compilation before building the bundles. This removes the need to include `ngc` in the application code and further optimizes the bundle size.

**TIP** We keep development and production scripts in separate files, even though it's possible to reuse the same file by selectively applying certain sections of the configuration based on the value of the environment variable. Some people define two files and reuse the development configuration in the production one (for example, `var devWebpackConfig = require('./webpack.config.js');`). In our experience, this hurts the readability of the configuration script, so we keep complete build configurations in the separate files.

**NOTE** The example `webpack.config.js` and `webpack.prod.config.js` have less than 60 lines each. If you were to use Gulp to prepare a similar build configuration, it would include a couple of hundred lines of code.

### 10.3.3 A custom type-definition file

You need to add a custom type-definition file to the app to prevent tsc compiler errors. There are two reasons you may get compilation errors in the app:

- Webpack will load and transform all of your CSS and HTML files. During the transformation, Webpack will replace all occurrences like the following:

```
styles: ['home.css'],
template: require('./home.html')
```

with the transformed content:

```
styles: [require('./home.css')],
template: require('./home.html')
```

This is Webpack's own `require()` function, not the one from Node.js. If you'll be running the `tsc` compiler, the preceding code will result in compilation errors because it doesn't recognize `require()` with such a signature.

- The app uses the `ENV` constant defined in the Webpack configuration files:

```
if (webpack.ENV === 'production') {
  enableProdMode();
}
```

To make sure the compiler won't complain about this variable, create a custom `typings.d.ts` type definitions file with the following content.

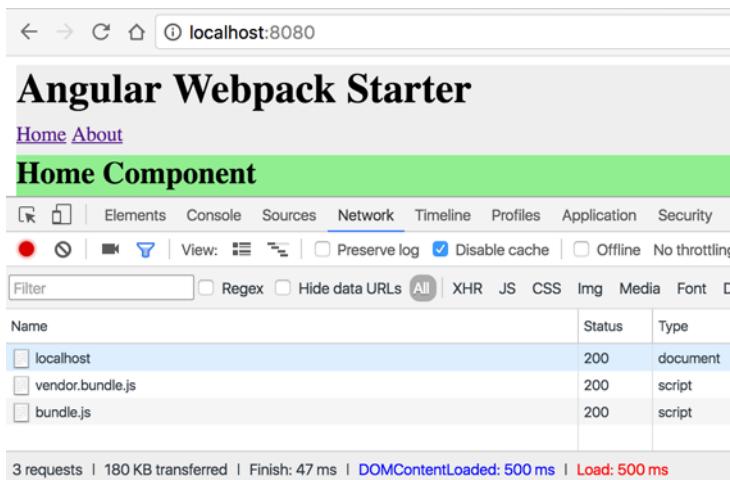
#### **Listing 10.14 angular2-webpack-starter/typings.d.ts**

```
declare function require(path: string);

declare const webpack: {
  ENV: string
};
```

Type definitions that start with the `declare` keyword don't have a direct link to the actual implementations of the variables (such as the `require()` function and the `ENV` constant), and it's your responsibility to update the preceding file if the code changes (for example, if you decide to rename `ENV` as `ENVIRONMENT`).

Figure 10.8 shows a screenshot taken after we ran the command `npm run serve:dist` and opened the app in the browser. Note that this version of the application made just three requests to the server, and the total size of the application is 180 KB. This application is a little smaller than the auction, but you can still compare the number of the server requests and the size shown in figure 10.1 to see the difference and appreciate the job done by Webpack.



**Figure 10.8** After running `npm run serve:dist`

Now let's see how ahead-of-time compilation will affect the size of the app. Run the command `npm run serve:dist:aot`. The app size is only 100 KB! This is pretty impressive, isn't it?

**NOTE** At the time of this writing (Angular 2.1.0), AoT compilation produces footprints smaller than JIT only for small applications.

### Establishing continuity

If you're a project manager, you need to make sure the main processes of your project are automated. The biggest mistake a project manager can make is to allow John Smith, an expert developer, to manually build and deploy applications on request. John is a human being, and he can get sick, take a vacation, or even quit one day. Automating the build and deployment processes serves as a guarantee of continuity for the business of software development. The following processes have to be established during the early stages of your project:

- *Continuous integration (CI)*—This is an established process that runs build scripts multiple times a day, such as after each code merge in the source code repository. The build scripts include unit tests, minification, and bundling. You need to install and configure a CI server to guarantee that the master branch of the application code is always in a working condition, and you'll never hear the question, "Who broke the build?"
- *Continuous delivery (CD)*—This is a process that prepares your application for deployment. CD is about offering your users additional features and bug fixes.
- *Continuous deployment*—This is the process of deploying the new version of an application that was prepared during the CD phase. Continuous deployment allows you to get frequent feedback from your users, ensuring that your team is working on something that users really need.

Front-end developers often work in collaboration with a team that works on the server side of the application. That team may already have CI and CD processes in place, and you'll need to learn how to integrate your build with whatever tools are used for the server side.

**(continued)**

If you still believe that manual deployment isn't a crime, read about what happened to Knight Capital Group, which went bankrupt in 45 minutes because of a human error during deployment. In 2014, Doug Seven wrote an article, "Knightmare: A DevOps Cautionary Tale," describing this incident (<http://mng.bz/1kDr>). The bottom line is that the build and deployment process should be automated and repeatable, and it can't depend on any single technician.

**TIP** If you're building a large application with megabytes of JavaScript code, you may want to split your application code into multiple modules (entry points) and turn each of them into a bundle. Say your web application has a user-profile module that's not used very often. Removing the code that implements the user profile will lower the initial size of the home page of your app, and the code for the user profile will be loaded only when needed. A popular Instagram web application defines more than a dozen entry points.

## 10.4 What's Angular CLI?

Initially the entry barrier into the world of Angular development was pretty high because of the need to learn and manually configure multiple tools. Even to get started with a simple application, you needed to know and use the TypeScript language, the TypeScript compiler, ES6 modules, SystemJS, npm, and a development web server. To work on a real-world project, you also needed to learn how to test and bundle your app.

To jump-start the development process, the Angular team created a tool called Angular CLI (<https://github.com/angular/angular-cli>), which is a command-line tool that covers all the stages of the Angular application lifecycle, from scaffolding and generating an initial app to generating boilerplate for your components, modules, services, and so on. The generated code also includes preconfigured files for unit tests and bundling with Webpack.

You can install Angular CLI globally by using following command:

```
npm install -g angular-cli
```

### Angular CLI and Webpack

Angular CLI is powered by Webpack. Internally, the CLI-generated project includes Webpack configuration files similar to the ones discussed in this chapter.

Even though Angular CLI uses Webpack internally, it doesn't allow you to modify the Webpack configuration, which may prevent you from implementing specific build requirements (such as a custom bundling strategy) using CLI. In that case, you can configure your project manually (without CLI) using the knowledge gained in this chapter.

#### 10.4.1 Starting a new project with Angular CLI

After CLI is installed, the executable binary `ng` becomes available on your PATH. You'll use the `ng` command to invoke Angular CLI commands.

To create an Angular application, use the `new` command:

```
ng new basic-cli
```

CLI will generate a new directory called `basic-cli`, which will include all the files required for a simple app. To run this app, enter the command `ng serve`, and open your browser at `http://localhost:4200`. You'll see a page that renders the message "app works!". CLI automatically installs all the required dependencies and creates a local git repository in the folder. Figure 10.9 shows the generated project structure.

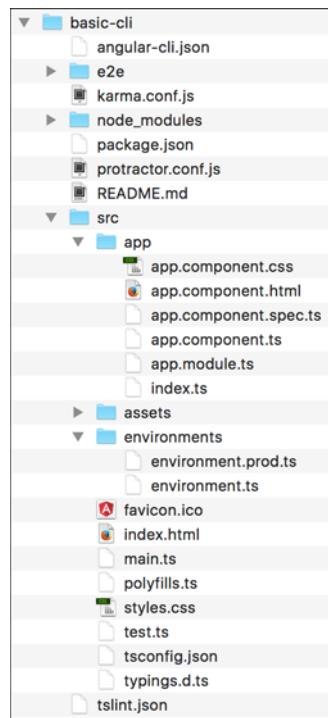
Let's take a quick look at the main project files and directories:

- `e2e`—The directory for end-to-end tests.
- `src/app`—The main directory for the application code. For routes and child components, you usually create subdirectories here, but the CLI doesn't mandate this.
- `src/assets`—Everything in this folder will be copied as is in the `dist` directory during the build process.
- `src/environments`—Here you specify environment-specific settings. You can create an arbitrary number of custom environments, such as `QA`, `staging`, and `production`.
- `angular-cli.json`—The main Angular CLI configuration file. Here you can customize the locations for files and directories that CLI relies on, such as global CSS files and assets.

#### 10.4.2 CLI commands

CLI provides a few commands you can use to manage an Angular application. Table 10.1 lists the most commonly used commands that come in handy while developing and preparing a production version of an application.

Typically, you'll run the `ng build` command with the options `-prod --aot` to build an optimized version of your app. Without these options, the size of the generated bundle of a basic generated app is about 2.5 MB. Creating bundles using `ng build -prod` reduces the bundle size to 800 KB and also generates the gzipped version of the bundle (190 KB).



**Figure 10.9** CLI project structure

**Table 10.1** Frequently used CLI commands

Command	Description
ng serve	Builds the bundles in memory and starts the included webpack-dev-server, which will run and rebuild the bundles each time you make changes in your app code.
ng generate	Generates various artifacts for your project. You can also use a shorter version of this command: ng g. To list all the available options, invoke ng help generate. Examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ng g c &lt;component-name&gt;—Generates four files for the component: a TypeScript file for the source code, a TypeScript file for the component unit tests, an HTML file for the template, and the CSS file for styling the component's view. If you want to keep CSS and templates inline in the generated component, run this command with options: for example, ng g c product --inline-styles --inline-template. If you don't want to generate the spec file, use the option --spec=false.</li> <li>■ ng g s &lt;service-name&gt;—Generates two TypeScript files: one for the source code and another one for the unit tests.</li> </ul>
ng test	Runs unit tests using the Karma test runner.
ng build	Produces JavaScript bundles with the transpiled application code and all the dependencies inlined. Saves the bundles in the dist directory.

To optimize the bundle for production deployment, turn on ahead-of-time compilation by running ng build --prod --aot. Now the size of the bundle is about 450 KB, and its gzipped version is as small as 100 KB. Figure 10.10 shows the content of the dist directory of the basic-cli app after running this command.

**NOTE** To see this 100 KB bundle loaded in the browser, you need to use a web server that supports serving prebuilt gzipped files. For example, you can use the static node server that you used in section 10.3.2.

This concludes our brief overview of Angular CLI, which eliminates the need to manually create multiple configuration files and produces highly optimized production builds. You can find a description of all the Angular CLI commands at <https://cli.angular.io/reference.pdf>.

 0.688d48f52a362bd543fc.bundle.map	Today, 10:05 PM	3 KB	Document
 favicon.ico	Today, 10:05 PM	5 KB	Windows icon image
 index.html	Today, 10:05 PM	517 bytes	HTML document
 inline.d41d8cd98f00b204e980.bundle.map	Today, 10:05 PM	13 KB	Document
 inline.js	Today, 10:05 PM	1 KB	JavaScript
 main.1ba1f6138d72e2f7118a.bundle.js	Today, 10:05 PM	445 KB	JavaScript
 main.1ba1f6138d72e2f7118a.bundle.js.gz	Today, 10:05 PM	100 KB	gzip compressed archive
 main.1ba1f6138d72e2f7118a.bundle.map	Today, 10:05 PM	3.3 MB	Document
 styles.defd4e11283d3aa66903.bundle.js	Today, 10:05 PM	4 KB	JavaScript
 styles.defd4e11283d3aa66903.bundle.map	Today, 10:05 PM	30 KB	Document

**Figure 10.10** The dist directory after production build

You may ask, “Why did we have to learn the internals of Webpack if Angular CLI will configure Webpack for us?” We wanted you to know how things work under the hood in case you decide to manually create and fine-tune your builds without Angular CLI. Also, in the future Angular CLI may allow you to change the autogenerated config files of Webpack, and it’s good to know how to do this.

**TIP** To speed up installing dependencies of Angular CLI projects, use the Yarn package manager instead of npm. See <https://yarnpkg.com> for details.

## 10.5 Hands-on: deploying the online auction with Webpack

In this exercise, you won’t be developing any new application code. The goal is to use Webpack to build and deploy an optimized version of the online auction. You’ll also integrate the Karma test runner into the build process.

For this chapter, we refactored the auction project from chapter 8, which used the same package.json file between the client and server portions of the application. Now the client and server will be separate applications with their own package.json files. Keeping the client and the server code separate simplifies build automation.

### Angular and security

Angular has built-in protection against common web application vulnerabilities and attacks. In particular, to prevent cross-site scripting attacks, it blocks malicious code from entering the DOM. With images, an attacker can replace the image with malicious code in the `src` attribute of an `<img>` tag.

The auction application uses images from the <http://placehold.it> website, which will be blocked during bundling unless you specifically write that you trust this site. This chapter’s auction adds code stating that you trust the images from <http://placehold.it> and they don’t need to be blocked.

That’s why you add the code to prevent image-sanitizing in the auction components that use images coming from a third-party server. For example, a constructor for `ProductItemComponent` looks like this:

```
constructor(private sanitizer: DomSanitizer) {
  this.imgHtml = sanitizer.bypassSecurityTrustHtml(``);
}
```

You can find more details about Angular security in the Angular documentation at <http://mng.bz/pk57>.

The package.json file from the client directory has the npm scripts required to build the production bundle as well as run webpack-dev-server in development mode. The server directory has its own package.json file with npm scripts to start the auction’s Node server—no bundling is needed there. Technically, you have two independent

applications with their own dependencies configured separately. You'll start this hands-on project using the source code located in the auction directory from chapter 10.

### 10.5.1 Starting the Node server

The server's package.json file looks like this.

**Listing 10.15 auction/package.json**

```
{
  "name": "ng2-webpack-starter",
  "description": "Angular 2 Webpack starter project suitable for a production
    ↪ grade application",
  "homepage": "https://www.manning.com/books/angular-2-development-with-
    ↪ typescript",
  "private": true,
  "scripts": {
    "tsc": "tsc",
    "startServer": "node build/auction.js",
    "dev": "nodemon build/auction.js"
  },
  "dependencies": {
    "express": "^4.13.3",
    "ws": "^1.0.1"
  },
  "devDependencies": {
    "@types/compression": "0.0.29",
    "@types/es6-shim": "0.0.27-alpha",
    "@types/express": "^4.0.28-alpha",
    "@types/ws": "0.0.26-alpha",
    "compression": "^1.6.1",
    "nodemon": "^1.8.1",
    "typescript": "^2.0.0"
  }
}
```

Note that you define the `tsc` script here to ensure that the local version of TypeScript 2.0 will be used even if you have an older version of the compiler installed globally. In the command line, change to the server directory and run `npm install` to get all the required dependencies for the server's portion of the application.

To use the local compiler, run the command `npm run tsc`, which will transpile the server's code and create `auction.js` and `model.js` (and their source maps) in the `build` directory, as configured in `tsconfig.json`. This is the code for the auction's server.

Start the server by running the command `npm run startServer`. It'll print the message “Listening on 127.0.0.1:8000” on the console.

### 10.5.2 Starting the auction client

You can start the auction client in either development or production mode using different npm script commands. The npm scripts section of the client's package.json has the following commands:

```

"scripts": {
  "clean": "rimraf dist",
  "prebuild": "npm run clean && npm run test",
  "build": "webpack --config webpack.prod.config.js --progress --profile",
  "startWebpackDevServer": "webpack-dev-server --inline --progress --
    port 8080",
  "test": "karma start karma.conf.js",
  "predeploy": "npm run build && rimraf ../server/build/public && mkdirp
    ↵ ../server/build/public",
  "deploy": "copyup dist/* ../server/build/public"
}

```

Most of the commands should look familiar to you, because you used them in webpack.prod.config.js in listing 10.12. You add a new deploy command, which uses the copyup command to copy files from the client's dist directory to the server's build/public directory. Here you use the copyup command from the copyfiles npm package (<https://www.npmjs.com/package/copyfiles>). You use this package for cross-platform compatibility when it comes to copying files. You also add the test command to run tests with Karma (see section 10.5.3).

Because there's a predeploy command, it'll run automatically each time you run npm run deploy. In turn, predeploy will run the build command, which will automatically run prebuild. The latter will run clean and test, and only after all these commands succeed will the build command do the build. Finally, the copyup command will copy the bundles from the dist directory into the server/build/public directory.

Before starting the client portion of the auction, you need to open a separate command window, change to the client directory, and run the command npm install. Then start the auction app in development mode by running npm run startWebpackDevServer. webpack-dev-server will bundle your Angular app and begin listening for the browser's requests on port 8080. Enter <http://localhost:8080> in your browser, and you'll see the familiar UI of the auction app.

**NOTE** The development build is done in memory, and the auction application is available on port 8080, which is the port configured in the webpack.config.js file.

Open the Network tab in Chrome Developer Tools. You'll see the application load the freshly built bundles—and the size of the application is pretty large.

Check Webpack's log on the console, and you'll see which files went to which bundle (or *chunk*). In this case, you built two chunks: bundle.js and vendor.js. Figure 10.11 shows a small fragment of the Webpack log, but you can see the size of each file. The bundled application (bundle.js) weighs 285 KB, whereas the vendor code (vendor.bundle.js) is 3.81 MB.

Version: webpack 2.1.0-beta.21			
Time: 25082ms			
Asset	Size	Chunks	Chunk Names
f4769f9bdb7466be65088239c12046d1.eot	20.1 kB	[emitted]	
fa2772327f55d8198301fdb8bcfc8158.woff	23.4 kB	[emitted]	
448c34a56d699c29117adc64c43affeb.woff2	18 kB	[emitted]	
e18bbf611f2a2e43afc071aa2f4e1512.ttf	45.4 kB	[emitted]	
89889688147bd7575d6327160d64e760.svg	109 kB	[emitted]	
bundle.js	285 kB	0 [emitted]	main
vendor.bundle.js	3.81 MB	1 [emitted]	vendor
bundle.js.map	275 kB	0 [emitted]	main
vendor.bundle.js.map	4.05 MB	1 [emitted]	vendor
index.html	315 bytes	[emitted]	

Figure 10.11 Console output fragment

At the top, you'll see some font files that weren't bundled, because in the webpack.config.js file you specified the limit parameters to avoid inlining large fonts into the bundle:

```
{test: /\.woff$/, loader: "url?limit=10000&minetype=application/font-woff"},  
{test: /\.woff2$/, loader: "url?limit=10000&minetype=application/font-woff"},  
{test: /\.ttf$/, loader: "url?limit=10000&minetype=application/  
➥ octet-stream"},  
{test: /\.svg$/, loader: "url?limit=10000&minetype=image/svg+xml"},  
{test: /\.eot$/, loader: "file"}}
```

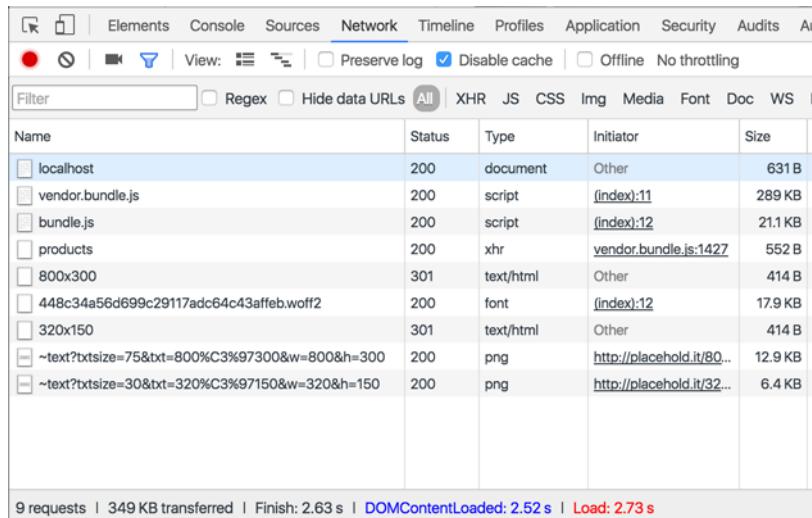
The last line instructs the file-loader to copy fonts with a .eot extension into the build directory. If you scroll the console output, you'll see that all the application code went to chunk {0}, and vendor-related code went to chunk {1}.

**NOTE** In development mode, you didn't deploy the Angular app under the Node server. The Node server ran on port 8000, and the auction client was served on port 8080 and communicated with the Node server using the HTTP and WebSocket protocols. You'll deploy the Angular app under the Node server next.

Now, stop the webpack-dev-server (not the Node server) by pressing Ctrl-C in the command window from which you started the client. Start the *production build* by running the command `npm run deploy`. This command will prepare the optimized build and copy its files into the `../server/build/public` directory, which is where all the static content of the Node server belongs.

There's no need to restart the Node server, because you only deployed the static code there. But to see the production version of the auction, you need to use port 8000, where the Node server runs.

Open your browser to the URL `http://localhost:8000`. You'll see the auction application served by the Node server. Open the Chrome Developer Tools panel in the Network tab, and refresh the application. You'll see that the size of the optimized



**Figure 10.12** What's loaded in the prod version of the auction

application is drastically smaller. Figure 10.12 shows that the total size of the application is 349 KB (compared with 5.5 MB in the unbundled version shown earlier in figure 10.1).

The browser made nine requests to the server to load index.html, two bundles, and the gray images that represent products. You can also see the request for data about products that the client made using Angular's `Http` request. The line that ends with `.woff2` is the font loaded by Twitter's Bootstrap framework.

`url-loader` works like `file-loader`, but it can inline files smaller than the specified limit into the CSS where they're defined. You specified 10,000 bytes as a limit for the files with names ending with `.woff`, `.woff2`, `.ttf`, and `.svg`. One larger file (17.9 KB) wasn't inlined.

Each font is represented in multiple formats, such as `.eot`, `.woff`, `.woff2`, `.ttf`, and `.svg`, and there are several non-exclusive options for dealing with fonts:

- Inline all of them into the bundle, and let the browser choose which one it wants to use.
- Inline the font format supported by the oldest browser you want your app to support. This means newer browsers will download files two to three times larger than they need to.
- Inline none of them, and let the browser choose and download the one it supports best.

The strategy here was to inline only the selected fonts that meet certain criteria and to copy the others into the build folder, which can be considered a combination of the first and last options.

### 10.5.3 Running tests with Karma

In chapter 9, you developed three specs for unit testing `AppComponent`, `StarsComponent`, and `ProductService`. You'll reuse the same specs here, but you'll run them with Karma as a part of the building process.

Because the client and server are separate npm projects now, the Karma configuration files `karma.conf.js` and `karma-test-runner.js` are located in the client directory.

#### **Listing 10.16 auction/client/karma.conf.js**

**In chapter 9, you used dots to report progress, but here you use the more descriptive mocha reporter that prints messages from specs rather than dots (see figure 10.13).**

```
module.exports = function (config) {
  config.set({
    browsers      : ['Chrome', 'Firefox'],
    frameworks   : ['jasmine'],
    reporters    : ['mocha'],           ←
    singleRun     : true,
    preprocessors: {'./karma-test-runner.js': ['webpack']},          ←
    files         : [{pattern: './karma-test-runner.js', watched: false}], ←
    webpack       : require('./webpack.test.config.js'),                 ←
    webpackServer: {noInfo: true}           ←
  });
};
```

The diagram shows several annotations pointing to specific parts of the code:

- A callout points to the `reporters` key with the text: "Specifies when the script to run Karma tests should be preprocessed by the karma-webpack plugin".
- A callout points to the `files` key with the text: "Loads the test specs included in the karma-test-runner.js file".
- A callout points to the `webpackServer` key with the text: "Turns off Webpack logging so its messages won't clutter Karma's output".
- A callout points to the entire `webpack` object with the text: "Specifies the Webpack config file that Karma should use".

The `karma.conf.js` file is a lot shorter than the one from chapter 9, because you don't need to configure files for SystemJS anymore—Webpack is the loader now, and the files are already configured in `webpack.test.config.js`. Following is the `karma-test-runner.js` script for running Karma.

#### **Listing 10.17 auction/client/karma-test-runner.js**

```
Error.stackTraceLimit = Infinity;

require('reflect-metadata/Reflect.js');
require('zone.js/dist/zone.js');
require('zone.js/dist/long-stack-trace-zone.js');
require('zone.js/dist/proxy.js');
require('zone.js/dist/sync-test.js');
require('zone.js/dist/jasmine-patch.js');
require('zone.js/dist/async-test.js');
require('zone.js/dist/fake-async-test.js');

var testing = require('@angular/core/testing');
var browser = require('@angular/platform-browser-dynamic/testing');
```

```

testing.TestBed.initTestEnvironment(
  browser.BrowserDynamicTestingModule,
  browser.platformBrowserDynamicTesting());
Object.assign(global, testing);

var testContext = require.context('./src', true, /\.spec\.ts/);

function requireAll(requireContext) {
  return requireContext.keys().map(requireContext);
}

var modules = requireAll(testContext);

```

The webpack.test.config.js file is shown next. It's simplified for testing because you don't need to create bundles during testing. The Webpack dev server isn't needed because Karma acts as a server.

#### Listing 10.18 auction/client/webpack.test.config.js

```

const path          = require('path');
const DefinePlugin = require('webpack/lib/DefinePlugin');

const ENV  = process.env.NODE_ENV = 'development';
const HOST = process.env.HOST || 'localhost';
const PORT = process.env.PORT || 8080;

const metadata = {
  env : ENV,
  host: HOST,
  port: PORT
};

module.exports = {
  debug: true,
  devtool: 'source-map',
  module: {
    loaders: [
      {test: /\.css$/, loader: 'raw', exclude: /node_modules/},
      {test: /\.css$/, loader: 'style!css?minimize', exclude: /src/},
      {test: /\.html$/, loader: 'raw'},
      {test: /\.ts$/, loaders: [
        {loader: 'ts', query: {compilerOptions: {noEmit: false}}},
        {loader: 'angular2-template'}
      ]}
    ],
  },
  plugins: [
    new DefinePlugin({'webpack': {'ENV': JSON.stringify(metadata.env)}})
  ],
  resolve: { extensions: ['.ts', '.js']}
};

```

The client/package.json file has the following Karma-related content.

**Listing 10.19 auction/client/package.json**

```
"scripts": {
  ...
  "test": "karma start karma.conf.js"
}
...
"devDependencies": {
  ...
  "karma": "^1.2.0",
  "karma-chrome-launcher": "^2.0.0",
  "karma-firefox-launcher": "^1.0.0",
  "karma-jasmine": "^1.0.2",
  "karma-mocha-reporter": "^2.1.0",
  "karma-webpack": "^1.8.0",
}
}
```

To run the tests manually, run the `npm test` command in the command window from the client directory. You'll see output like that shown in figure 10.13.

```
START:
ts-loader: Using typescript@2.0.2 and /Users/yfain11/Documents/core-angular2/code/chapter10/auction/client/tsconfig.json
02 09 2016 14:55:30.472:INFO [karma]: Karma v1.2.0 server started at http://localhost:9876/
02 09 2016 14:55:30.474:INFO [launcher]: Launching browsers Chrome, Firefox with unlimited concurrency
02 09 2016 14:55:30.480:INFO [launcher]: Starting browser Chrome
02 09 2016 14:55:30.494:INFO [launcher]: Starting browser Firefox
02 09 2016 14:55:31.925:INFO [Chrome 52.0.2743 (Mac OS X 10.11.5)]: Connected on socket /#mK-QDpNhQ2ySM8DpAAAA with id 79472394
02 09 2016 14:55:34.325:INFO [Firefox 48.0.0 (Mac OS X 10.11.0)]: Connected on socket /#zIgegGsuW02MlVyiAAAB with id 7680185
  ApplicationComponent
    ✓ is successfully instantiated
  StarsComponent
    ✓ is successfully injected
    ✓ readonly property is true by default
    ✓ all stars are empty
    ✓ all stars are filled
    ✓ emits rating change event when readonly is false
  ProductService
    ✓ getProductId() should return Product with ID=1
Finished in 0.844 secs / 0.821 secs
```

**Figure 10.13** Running Karma

To integrate the Karma run into the build process, you can modify the npm prebuild command to look like this:

```
"prebuild": "npm run clean && npm run test"  
"build": "webpack ...",
```

Now, if you run the command `npm run build`, it'll run `prebuild`, which will clean the output directory, run the tests, and then do the build. If any of the tests fail, the `build` command won't run.

You're done with the final hands-on project for this book. If this was a real-world application, you'd continue fine-tuning the build configuration, cherry-picking the files you want to include or exclude from the build. Webpack is a sophisticated tool, and it offers endless possibilities for optimizing the bundles. The Angular team is working on an optimization of the Angular code using the ahead-of-time compilation, and we wouldn't be surprised if the Angular framework will add only 50 KB to your application's code.

**NOTE** The source code that comes with this chapter includes a directory called `extras` that contains another implementation of the auction in which the Angular portion has been generated with Angular CLI. Check the `scripts` section in `angular-clijson` to see how to add third-party libraries to an Angular CLI project.

## 10.6 Summary

This chapter wasn't about writing code. The goal was to optimize and bundle code for deployment. The JavaScript community has a few popular tools for build automation and bundling of web applications; our choice is the combination of Webpack and npm scripts.

Webpack is an intelligent and sophisticated tool, but we presented a small combination of loaders and plugins that work for us. If you're looking for a more complete Webpack configuration, try `angular2-webpack-starter` (<http://mng.bz/fS4T>).

These are the main takeaways from this chapter:

- The process of preparing deployment bundles and running builds should be automated in the early phases of development.
- To minimize the number of requests the browser makes to load your application, combine the code into a small number of bundles for deployment.
- Avoid packaging the same code into more than one bundle. Keep third-party frameworks in a separate bundle so other bundles of your application can share them.
- Always generate source maps, because they allow you to debug the source code in TypeScript. Source maps don't increase the size of the application code and are generated only if your browser has the Developer Tools open, so using source maps even for production builds is encouraged.

- To run build and deployment tasks, use npm scripts, because they're simple to write and you already have npm installed. If you're working on preparing a build for a large and complex project, and you feel the need for a scripting language to describe various build scenarios, introduce Gulp into your project workflow.
- To quickly start your development in Angular and TypeScript, generate your first projects with Angular CLI.

# *appendix A*

## *An overview of ECMAScript 6*

---

ECMAScript is a standard for client-side scripting languages. The first edition of the ECMAScript specification was released in 1997, and the sixth edition was finalized in 2015. The seventh edition is already in the works. The ECMAScript standard is implemented in several languages, and the most popular implementation is JavaScript. In this appendix, we'll look at the JavaScript implementation of ECMAScript 6 (ES6), also known as ECMAScript 2015.

At the time of writing, not all web browsers fully support the ES6 specification; you can visit the ECMAScript compatibility site at <http://mng.bz/ao59> to see the current state of ES6 support. The good news is that you can and should develop in ES6 today and use a transpiler like Traceur (<https://github.com/google/traceur-compiler>) or Babel (<https://babeljs.io>) to turn the ES6 code into an ES5 version supported by all web browsers.

**NOTE** If you'd like to test your ES6 code in upcoming versions of popular web browsers, download the latest nightly build of Firefox at <https://nightly.mozilla.org> or use the remote version of Internet Explorer at <https://remote.modern.ie>. You can also get the Canary build of Chrome at <http://mng.bz/9rub>. You may need to enable experimental JavaScript features by visiting the URL chrome://flags (for Chrome) or about://flags (for IE).

We assume you're familiar with the ES5 syntax and APIs, and we'll cover only selected new features introduced in ES6. If your JavaScript skills are a little rusty, read the online appendix from *Enterprise Web Development* by Yakov Fain et al. (O'Reilly, 2014), which is available on GitHub at <http://mng.bz/EIII>. The specification for ES7 (a.k.a.

ES 2016) was released in 2016. It's a small release. The ECMAScript 2017 language specification is published at <https://tc39.github.io/ecma262>.

In this appendix, we'll often show code snippets in ES5 and their ES6 equivalents. But ES6 doesn't deprecate any old syntax, so you'll be able to safely run legacy ES5 or ES3 code in future web browsers or standalone JavaScript engines.

## A.1 How to run the code samples

The code samples for this appendix come in the form of simple HTML files that include scripts in ES6, so you can run and debug them in your browser's developer tools if your browser fully supports ES6. What if it doesn't? There are several options:

- Use the ES6 Fiddle website ([www.es6fiddle.net](http://www.es6fiddle.net)), which allows you to copy and paste a fragment of ES6 code into the field on the left, click Play, and see the console output on the right, as shown in figure A.1.

The screenshot shows the ES6 Fiddle interface. On the left, under 'CODE', there is a text area containing ES6 code. On the right, under 'CONSOLE', there is a text area showing the output of the code execution. The code is as follows:

```

1 "use strict";
2
3 class Person{
4     constructor(name){
5         console.log(`The name is ${name}`);
6     }
7 }
8
9 let person = new Person("Alex");

```

The console output is: The name is Alex

**Figure A.1** Using ES6 Fiddle

- Use the Traceur or Babel transpiler to convert your code from ES6 to ES5. Interactive tools that allow you to quickly run code fragments are called Read-Eval-Print-Loop (REPLs). You can use a REPL from Traceur (<http://mng.bz/bI91>) or Babel (<http://babeljs.io/repl>). Figure A.2 shows Babel's REPL. At left you can see the code written in ES6; the right side shows the generated ES5 equivalent. The console output produced by the code sample (if any) is shown at lower right.

## A.2 Template literals

ES6 introduces a new syntax for working with string literals, which can contain embedded expressions. This feature is known as *string interpolation*.

In ES5, you'd use concatenation to create a string that contains string literals mixed in with the values of variables:

```
var customerName = "John Smith";
console.log("Hello" + customerName);
```

The screenshot shows the Babel REPL interface. The top bar has tabs for 'Experimental' (checked), 'Loose mode' (unchecked), and 'Evaluate' (checked). The code editor contains two columns of code. The left column shows ES6 code:

```

1 "use strict";
2
3 class Person{
4   constructor(name){
5     console.log(`The name is ${name}`);
6   }
7 }
8
9 let person = new Person("Alex");
10

```

The right column shows the equivalent ES5 code generated by Babel:

```

1 "use strict";
2
3 function _classCallCheck(instance, Constructor) {
4   var Person = function Person(name) {
5     _classCallCheck(this, Person);
6     console.log("The name is " + name);
7   };
8
9 var person = new Person("Alex");
10

```

At the bottom of the interface, the output window displays the result of the console.log statement: "The name is Alex".

**Figure A.2** Using the Babel REPL

In ES6, template literals are surrounded with back-tick symbols. You can embed expressions inside the literal by placing them between curly braces prefixed with a dollar sign. In the next code snippet, the value of the variable `customerName` is embedded in the string literal:

```

var customerName = "John Smith";
console.log(`Hello ${customerName}`);

function getCustomer(){
  return "Allan Lou";
}
console.log(`Hello ${getCustomer()}`);

```

The output of this code is

```

Hello John Smith
Hello Allan Lou

```

This example embeds the value of the `customerName` variable into the template literal and then embeds the value returned by the `getCustomer()` function. You can use any valid JavaScript expression between the curly braces.

### A.2.1 Multiline strings

Strings can span multiple lines in your code. Using back-ticks, you can write multiline strings without needing to concatenate them or use the backslash character:

```
var message = `Please enter a password that
    has at least 8 characters and
    includes a capital letter`;

console.log(message);
```

The resulting string treats all spaces as part of the string, so the output looks like this:

```
Please enter a password that
    has at least 8 characters and
    includes a capital letter
```

### A.2.2 Tagged template strings

If a template string is preceded by a function name, the string is evaluated first and then passed to the function for further processing. The string parts of a template are given as an array, and all the expressions that were evaluated in the template are passed as separate arguments. The syntax looks a little unusual, because you don't use parentheses as in regular function calls:

```
mytag`Hello ${name}`;
```

Let's see how it works by printing an amount with a currency sign that depends on the region variable. If the value of the region is 1, you keep the amount unchanged and prepend it with a dollar sign. If the value of region is 2, you need to convert the amount, applying 0.9 as an exchange rate, and prepend it with a euro sign. The template string looks like this:

```
`You've earned ${region} ${amount}!`
```

Let's call the tag function currencyAdjustment. The tagged template string looks like this:

```
currencyAdjustment`You've earned ${region} ${amount}!`
```

The currencyAdjustment function takes three arguments: the first represents all string parts from the template string, the second gets the region, and the third is for the amount. You can add any number of arguments after the first one. The complete example is shown in the following listing.

#### **Listing A.1** Printing a currency amount

```
function currencyAdjustment(stringParts, region, amount) {
    console.log( stringParts );
    console.log( region );
    console.log( amount );

    var sign;
    if (region==1){
        sign="$"
    }
}
```

```

} else{
    sign='"\u20AC';
    amount=0.9*amount;
}
return `${stringParts[0]}${sign}${amount}${stringParts[2]}`;
}

var amount = 100;
var region = 2;           ←———— Europe: 2, USA: 1

var message = currencyAdjustment`You've earned ${region} ${amount}!`;
console.log(message);

```

←———— Euro sign  
Converts to Euros using 0.9 as the exchange rate

The `currencyAdjustment` function gets a string with embedded `region` and `amount` and parses the template, separating the string parts from these values (blank spaces are also considered string parts). Let's print these values first for illustration. Then this function will check the region, apply the conversion, and return a new string template. Running listing A.1 produces the following output:

```

["You've earned ", " ", "!"]
2
100
You've earned €90!

```

For more details on tagged templates, refer to the “Template Literals” chapter in *Exploring ES6* by Axel Rauschmayer, available at <http://exploringjs.com>.

### A.3 Optional parameters and default values

In ES6, you can specify default values for function parameters (arguments) that will be used if no value is provided during function invocation. Say you're writing a function to calculate tax that takes two arguments: the annual income and the state where the person lives. If the state value isn't provided, you want to use Florida.

In ES5, you'd need to start the function body by checking whether the state value was provided, and otherwise use Florida:

```

function calcTaxES5(income, state){

    state = state || "Florida";

    console.log("ES5. Calculating tax for the resident of " + state +
               " with the income " + income);
}

calcTaxES5(50000);

```

Here's what this code prints:

```
"ES5. Calculating tax for the resident of Florida with the income 50000"
```

In ES6, you can specify the default value right in the function signature:

```
function calcTaxES6(income, state = "Florida") {
    console.log("ES6. Calculating tax for the resident of " + state +
        " with the income " + income);
}

calcTaxES6(50000);
```

The output looks similar:

```
"ES6. Calculating tax for the resident of Florida with the income 50000"
```

Rather than provide a hardcoded value for an optional parameter, you can even invoke a function that returns one:

```
function calcTaxES6(income, state = getDefaultState()) {
    console.log("ES6. Calculating tax for the resident of " + state +
        " with the income " + income);
}

function getDefaultState() {
    return "Florida";
}
```

Just keep in mind that the `getDefaultState()` function will be invoked each time you invoke `calcTaxES6()`, which may have performance consequences. This new syntax for optional parameters allows you to write less code and makes the code easier to understand.

## A.4 Scope of variables

The scoping mechanism in ES5 is rather confusing. Regardless of where you declare a variable with the keyword `var`, the declaration is moved to the top of the scope. This is called *hoisting*. The use of the `this` keyword also isn't as straightforward as in languages like Java or C#.

ES6 eliminates this hoisting confusion (discussed in the next section) by introducing the keyword `let`, and the `this` confusion is cured by using arrow functions. Let's look closer at the hoisting and `this` problems.

### A.4.1 Variable hoisting

In JavaScript, all variable declarations are moved to the top, and there's no block scope. Look at the following simple example that declares the variable `i` inside the `for` loop but uses it outside as well:

```
function foo() {
    for (var i=0; i<10; i++) {
```

```
    }

    console.log("i=" + i);
}

foo();
```

Running this code will print `i=10`. The variable `i` is still available outside the loop, even though it seems as though it was meant to be used only inside. JavaScript automatically hoists the variable declaration to the top.

In this example, hoisting doesn't cause any harm, because there's only one variable named `i`. If two variables with the same name are declared inside and outside the function, however, this may result in confusing behavior. Consider listing A.2, which declares the variable `customer` on the global scope. A bit later, we'll introduce another `customer` variable in the local scope, but for now it's commented out.

#### Listing A.2 Hoisting a variable declaration

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <title>hoisting.html</title>
</head>
<body>

<script>
    "use strict";

    var customer = "Joe";

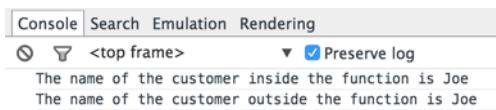
    (function () {
        console.log("The name of the customer inside the function is " +
        ↪ customer);

        /* if (2 > 1) {
            var customer = "Mary";
        }*/
    })();

    console.log("The name of the customer outside the function is " +
    ↪ customer);
</script>

</body>
</html>
```

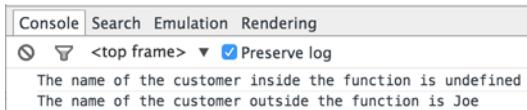
Open this file in the Chrome browser, and look at the console output in Chrome Developer Tools. As expected, the global variable `customer` is visible inside and outside the function, as shown in figure A.3.



The screenshot shows a browser's developer tools console tab. The status bar at the top says "Console Search Emulation Rendering". Below it, there are two log entries: "The name of the customer inside the function is Joe" and "The name of the customer outside the function is Joe". There are also some UI elements like a trash bin icon and a "Preserve log" checkbox.

Figure A.3 Variable declaration is hoisted.

Uncomment the if statement that declares and initializes the customer variable inside the curly braces. Now you have two variables with the same name—one on the global scope and another on the function scope. Refresh the page in the web browser. The console output is different—the function’s customer variable has the value undefined, as shown in figure A.4.



The screenshot shows a browser's developer tools console tab. The status bar at the top says "Console Search Emulation Rendering". Below it, there are two log entries: "The name of the customer inside the function is undefined" and "The name of the customer outside the function is Joe". There are also some UI elements like a trash bin icon and a "Preserve log" checkbox.

Figure A.4 Variable initialization isn't hoisted.

The reason for this behavior is that in ES5, variable declarations are hoisted to the top of the scope, but variable initializations aren’t. So the declaration of the second uninitialized customer variable was hoisted to the top of the function, and `console.log()` printed the value defined inside the function, which shadows the value of the global variable `customer`.

Function declarations are hoisted too, so you can invoke a function before it’s declared:

```
doSomething();

function doSomething() {
    console.log("I'm doing something");
}
```

On the other hand, function expressions are considered variable initializations, so they aren’t hoisted. The following code snippet will produce `undefined` for the `doSomething` variable:

```
doSomething();

var doSomething = function() {
    console.log("I'm doing something");
}
```

Let’s see what ES6 changes in terms of scoping.

#### A.4.2 Block scoping with `let` and `const`

Declaring variables with the ES6 keyword `let` instead of `var` allows variables to have block scoping. Here’s an example.

**Listing A.3 Variables with block scoping**

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <title>let.html</title>
</head>
<body>

<script>
    "use strict";

    let customer = "Joe";

    (function () {
        console.log("The name of the customer inside the function is " +
        ↪ customer);

        if (2 > 1) {
            let customer = "Mary";
            console.log("The name of the customer inside the block is " +
            ↪ customer);
        }
    })();

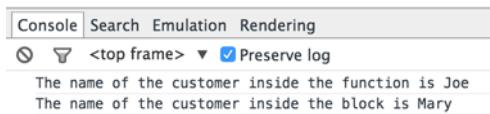
    for (let i=0; i<5; i++) {
        console.log("i=" + i);
    }

    console.log("i=" + i);    // prints Uncaught ReferenceError: i is not defined
}

</script>

</body>
</html>
```

Now the two `customer` variables have different scopes and values, as shown in figure A.5.



The screenshot shows a browser's developer tools console tab. The tabs at the top are 'Console', 'Search', 'Emulation', and 'Rendering'. Below the tabs, there are filter and search controls. The main area displays two log entries:

```
The name of the customer inside the function is Joe
The name of the customer inside the block is Mary
```

**Figure A.5 Block scoping with `let`**

If you declare a variable with `let` in a loop, it'll be available only inside the loop:

```
for (let i=0; i<5; i++) {
    console.log("i=" + i);
}

console.log("i=" + i);    // ReferenceError: i is not defined
```

## Testing the let keyword in the Traceur REPL

To get an idea what the transpiled code looks like, visit Traceur’s Transcoding Demo web page (<http://mng.bz/bl91>), which allows you to enter ES6 syntax and convert (transcode) it into ES5 in interactive mode. Paste the code from listing A.3 into the text box at left, and you’ll see its ES5 version on the right, as shown here.

```

Source
Traceur Transcoding Demo
Options

1 let customer = "Joe";
2 (function () {
3   console.log("The name of the customer inside the function is " + customer);
4   if (2 > 1) {
5     let customer = "Mary";
6     console.log("The name of the customer inside the block is " + customer);
7   }
8 })();
9
10
11
12
13 //## sourceURL=traceured.js
14
1 traceurRuntime.ModuleStore.getAnonymousModule(function() {
2   PushContext();
3   var customer = "Joe";
4   (function() {
5     console.log("The name of the customer inside the function is " + customer);
6     if (2 > 1) {
7       var customer$_0 = "Mary";
8       console.log("The name of the customer inside the block is " + customer$_0);
9     }
10   });
11   return {};
12 });
13 //## sourceURL=traceured.js
14

```

### Transpiling ES6 to ES5 with the Traceur REPL

As you can see, Traceur introduces a separate `customer$0` variable to distinguish it from the `customer` variable. Open the web console in your browser while working with the Traceur REPL, and you’ll see the results of your code execution immediately.

To put it simply, if you’re developing a new application, don’t use `var`. Use `let` instead. The `let` keyword allows you to assign and reassign a value to a variable as many times as you want.

If you want to declare a variable that can’t change its value after it’s assigned, declare it with the `const` keyword. Constants also support block scope.

**NOTE** The only difference between `let` and `const` is that the latter won’t allow the assigned value to be changed. The best practice is to use `const` in your programs; if you see that this value needs to change, replace `const` with `let`.

### A.4.3 Block scope for functions

If you declare a function inside a block (within curly braces), it won’t be visible from outside the block. The following code will throw an error saying “`doSomething` is not defined”:

```

{
  function doSomething(){
    console.log("In doSomething");
  }
}

doSomething();

```

In ES5, the `doSomething()` declaration would be hoisted, and it would print "In `doSomething`". Declaring a function inside a block wasn't recommended in ES5 (see "ES5 Implementation Best Practice" at <http://mng.bz/Bvym>), because doing so may produce inconsistent results across browsers, which may parse this syntax differently.

## A.5 Arrow function expressions, this, and that

ES6 introduced arrow function expressions, which provide a shorter notation for anonymous functions and add lexical scope for the `this` variable. In some other programming languages (such as C# and Java), a similar syntax is called *lambda expressions*.

The syntax of arrow function expressions consists of arguments, the fat arrow sign (`=>`), and the function body. If the function body is just one expression, you don't even need curly braces. If a single-expression function returns a value, there's no need to write the `return` statement—the result is returned implicitly:

```
let sum = (arg1, arg2) => arg1 + arg2;
```

The body of a multiline arrow function expression should be enclosed in curly braces and use the explicit `return` statement:

```
(arg1, arg2) => {
  // do something
  return someResult;
}
```

If an arrow function doesn't have any arguments, use empty parentheses:

```
() => {
  // do something
  return someResult;
}
```

If the function has just one argument, no parentheses are required:

```
arg1 => {
  // do something
}
```

The following code snippet passes arrow function expressions as arguments to the array's `reduce()` method to calculate a sum, and to `filter()` to print the even numbers:

```
var myArray = [1,2,3,4,5];
console.log( "The sum of myArray elements is " +
            myArray.reduce((a,b) => a+b)); // prints 15
console.log( "The even numbers in myArray are " +
            myArray.filter( value => value % 2 == 0)); // prints 2 4
```

Now that you’re familiar with the syntax of arrow functions, let’s see how they streamline working with the `this` object.

In ES5, figuring out which object is referred to by the `this` keyword isn’t always a simple task. Search online for “JavaScript this and that,” and you’ll find multiple posts where people complain about `this` pointing to the “wrong” object. The `this` reference can have different values depending on how the function is invoked and on whether strict mode was used (see the documentation for “Strict Mode” on the Mozilla Developer Network at <http://mng.bz/VNVL>). We’ll illustrate the problem first, and then we’ll show you the solution offered by ES6.

Consider the code in the `thisAndThat.html` file, which invokes the `getQuote()` function every second. The `getQuote()` function prints random generated prices for the stock symbol provided to the `StockQuoteGenerator()` constructor function.

#### **Listing A.4 thisAndThat.html**

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <title>thisAndThat.html</title>
</head>
<body>

<script>

    function StockQuoteGenerator(symbol) {

        // this.symbol = symbol;      // is undefined inside getQuote()

        var that = this;
        that.symbol = symbol;

        setInterval(function getQuote(){
            console.log("The price quote for " + that.symbol
                + " is " + Math.random());
        }, 1000);
    }

    var stockQuoteGenerator = new StockQuoteGenerator("IBM");

</script>

</body>
</html>
```

The line that’s commented out illustrates the wrong ways of using `this` when a value is needed in a function that seemingly has the same `this` reference but doesn’t. If you hadn’t saved the value of the `this` variable in `that`, the value of `this.symbol` would be `undefined` in the `getQuote()` function invoked in `setInterval()` or as a callback. In `getQuote()`, `this` points at the global object, which is not the same as `this` defined by the `StockQuoteGenerator()` constructor function.

The other possible solution for ensuring that a function runs in a particular `this` object is to use the JavaScript `call()`, `apply()`, or `bind()` function.

**NOTE** If you're not familiar with the `this` problem in JavaScript, see Richard Bovell's article "Understand JavaScript's 'this' with Clarity and Master It" (<http://mng.bz/ZQfz>).

The `fatArrow.html` file illustrates the arrow function solution that eliminates the need to store `this` in `that` as you did in `thisAndThat.html`.

#### Listing A.5 fatArrow.html

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <title>fatArrow.html</title>
</head>
<body>

<script>

    "use strict";

    function StockQuoteGenerator(symbol){

        this.symbol = symbol;

        setInterval(() => {
            console.log("The price quote for " + this.symbol
                + " is " + Math.random());
        }, 1000);
    }

    var stockQuoteGenerator = new StockQuoteGenerator("IBM");

</script>

</body>
</html>
```

The arrow function that's given as an argument to `setInterval()` uses the `this` value of the enclosing context, so it will recognize IBM as the value of `this.symbol`.

#### A.5.1 Rest and spread operators

In ES5, writing a function with a variable number of parameters requires using a special `arguments` object. This object is *similar* to an array, and it contains values corresponding to the arguments passed to a function. The `implicit arguments` variable can be treated as a local variable in any function.

ES6 has rest and spread operators, and both are represented by three dots (...). The rest operator is used to pass a variable number of arguments to a function, and it

has to be the last one in the arguments list. If the name of the function argument starts with the three dots, the function will get the rest of the arguments in an array.

For example, you can pass multiple customers to a function using a single variable name with a rest operator:

```
function processCustomers(...customers) {
    // implementation of the function goes here
}
```

In this function, you can handle the `customers` data the same way you'd handle any array. Imagine that you need to write a function to calculate taxes that must be invoked with the first argument, `income`, followed by any number of arguments representing the names of the customers. Listing A.6 shows how you can process a variable number of arguments using first the old and then the new syntax. The `calcTaxES5()` function uses the object named `arguments`, and the `calcTaxES6()` function uses the ES6 rest operator.

#### Listing A.6 rest.html

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <title>rest.html</title>
</head>
<body>

<script>

    "use strict";

    // ES5 and arguments object
    function calcTaxES5() {

        console.log("ES5. Calculating tax for customers with the income ",
                    arguments[0]); ←

        var customers = [].slice.call(arguments, 1); ←
        customers.forEach(function (customer) {
            console.log("Processing ", customer);
        });
    }

    calcTaxES5(50000, "Smith", "Johnson", "McDonald");
    calcTaxES5(750000, "Olson", "Clinton");

    // ES6 and rest operator
    function calcTaxES6(income, ...customers) {
        console.log("ES6. Calculating tax for customers with the income ",
                    income); ←
    }

```

**income is the  
first element.**

**Extracts an array  
starting from the  
second element**

```

        customers.forEach(function (customer) {
            console.log("Processing ", customer);
        });
    }

    calcTaxES6(50000, "Smith", "Johnson", "McDonald");
    calcTaxES6(750000, "Olson", "Clinton");

</script>

</body>
</html>

```

Both functions, `calcTaxES5()` and `calcTaxES6()`, produce the same results:

```

ES5. Calculating tax for customers with the income 50000
Processing Smith
Processing Johnson
Processing McDonald
ES5. Calculating tax for customers with the income 750000
Processing Olson
Processing Clinton
ES6. Calculating tax for customers with the income 50000
Processing Smith
Processing Johnson
Processing McDonald
ES6. Calculating tax for customers with the income 750000
Processing Olson
Processing Clinton

```

There's a difference in handling customers, though. Because the `arguments` object isn't a real array, you have to create an array in the ES5 version by using the `slice()` and `call()` methods to extract the names of the customers starting from the second element in `arguments`. The ES6 version doesn't require you to use these tricks, because the rest operator gives you a regular array of customers. Using the rest arguments makes the code simpler and more readable.

If the rest operator can turn a variable number of parameters into an array, the spread operator can do the opposite: turn an array into a list of arguments. Say you need to write a function that will calculate tax for three customers with a given income. This time, the number of arguments is fixed, but the customers are located in an array. You can use the spread operator, the three dots (...), to turn the array into a list of separate arguments.

#### **Listing A.7 spread.html**

```

<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <title>spread.html</title>
</head>
<body>

```

```

<script>

    "use strict";

    function calcTaxSpread( customer1, customer2, customer3, income) {
        console.log("ES6. Calculating tax for customers with the income ",
        ↪ income);

        console.log("Processing ", customer1, customer2, customer3);
    }

    var customers = ["Smith", "Johnson", "McDonald"];

    calcTaxSpread(...customers, 50000);           ←—— Spread operator

</script>

</body>
</html>

```

In this example, instead of extracting the values from the `customers` array and then providing these values as function arguments, you use an array with the spread operator, as if you're saying to the function, "You need three arguments, but I'm giving you an array. Spread it out." Note that as opposed to the rest operator, the spread operator doesn't have to be the last one in the argument list.

### A.5.2 Generators

When a browser executes a regular JavaScript function, it runs without interrupting its own flow to the end. But the execution of a *generator function* can be paused and resumed multiple times. A generator function can yield control to the calling script, which runs on the same thread. As soon as the code in a generator function reaches the keyword `yield`, it gets suspended, and the calling script can resume the function's execution by calling `next()` on the generator.

To turn a regular function into a generator, you need to place an asterisk between the keyword `function` and the function name. Here's an example:

```

function* doSomething() {

    console.log("Started processing");

    yield;

    console.log("Resumed processing");
}

```

When you invoke this function, it doesn't immediately execute the function code but returns a special Generator object, which serves as an iterator. The following line won't print anything:

```
var iterator = doSomething();
```

To start executing the body of the function, you need to call the `next()` method on the generator:

```
iterator.next();
```

After this line, the `doSomething()` function will print “Started processing” and will be suspended because of the `yield` operator. Calling `next()` again will print “Resumed processing”.

Generator functions are useful when you need to write a function that produces a stream of data. Imagine that you need a function to retrieve and produce stock prices for a specified symbol (IBM, MSFT, and so on). If a stock price falls below a specified value (the limit price) you want to purchase this stock.

The following generator function, `getStockPrice()`, emulates this scenario. For simplicity, it doesn’t retrieve prices from the stock exchange, but instead generates random numbers using `Math.random()`.

#### **Listing A.8 getStockPrice()**

```
function* getStockPrice(symbol) {
  while(true) {
    yield Math.random()*100;
    console.log(`resuming for ${symbol}`);
  }
}
```

If there’s a value after `yield`, it’s returned to the caller, but the function isn’t completed yet. Even though `getStockPrice()` has an infinite loop, it will yield (return) the price only if the script that invoked `getStockPrice()` calls `next()` on this generator, as follows.

#### **Listing A.9 Invoking getStockPrice()**

```
Creates the Generator object but doesn't execute the body of
getStockPrice() that will provide a stream of prices for IBM
let priceGenerator = getStockPrice("IBM"); ← Sets the limit price to $15 and
                                              the initial price to $100
const limitPrice = 15; ← Requests stock prices
let price = 100; ← until they fall below $15
while ( price > limitPrice){ ← Requests the next price,
  price = priceGenerator.next().value; ← and prints it to the console
  console.log (`The generator returned ${price}`);
}
console.log(`buying at ${price} !!!`); ← If the price falls below $15, the loop is
                                              over, and the program prints a message
                                              about buying the stock and its price.
```

Running listing A.9 will print something similar to the following on the browser's console:

```
The generator returned 61.63144460879266
resuming for IBM
The generator returned 96.60782956052572
resuming for IBM
The generator returned 31.16303782444473
resuming for IBM
The generator returned 18.416578718461096
resuming for IBM
The generator returned 55.80756475683302
resuming for IBM
The generator returned 14.203652134165168
buying at 14.203652134165168 !!!
```

Note the order of the messages. When you call the `next()` method on `priceGenerator`, the execution of the suspended `getStockPrice()` method resumes at the line below `yield`, which prints "resuming for IBM". Even though the control flow went outside the function and then came back, `getStockPrice()` remembers that the value of `symbol` was "IBM". When the `yield` operator returns control to the outside script, it creates a snapshot of the stack so it can remember all the values of the local variables. When execution of the generator function is resumed, these values haven't been lost.

With generators, you can separate the implementation of certain operations (such as getting a price quote) and the consumption of the data produced by these operations. The consumer of the data lazily evaluates the results and decides whether requesting more data is necessary.

### A.5.3 Destructuring

Creating instances of objects means constructing them in memory. *Destructuring* means taking objects apart. In ES5, you could deconstruct any object or a collection by writing a function to do it. ES6 introduces the destructuring assignment syntax that allows you to extract data from an object's properties or an array in a simple expression by specifying a *matching pattern*.

A destructuring expression consists of a matching pattern, the equal sign, and the object or array that you want to pull apart. It's easier to explain by example, which we'll do next.

#### DESTRUCTURING OBJECTS

Let's say that a `getStock()` function returns a `Stock` object that has the attributes `symbol` and `price`. In ES5, if you wanted to assign the values of these attributes to separate variables, you'd need to create a variable to store the `Stock` object first, and then write two statements assigning the object attributes to corresponding variables:

```
var stock = getStock();
var symbol = stock.symbol;
var price = stock.price;
```

In ES6, you just need to write a matching pattern on the left and assign the `Stock` object to it:

```
let {symbol, price} = getStock();
```

It's a little unusual to see curly braces on the left of the equal sign, but this is part of the syntax of a matching expression. When you see curly braces on the left, think of them as a block of code and not the object literal.

The following script demonstrates getting the `Stock` object from the `getStock()` function and destructuring it into two variables.

#### **Listing A.10 Destructuring an object**

```
function getStock() {  
  return {  
    symbol: "IBM",  
    price: 100.00  
  };  
}  
  
let {symbol, price} = getStock();  
  
console.log(`The price of ${symbol} is ${price}`);
```

Running this script will print the following:

```
The price of IBM is 100
```

In other words, you bind a set of data (object attributes, in this case) to a set of variables (`symbol` and `price`) in one assignment expression. Even if the `Stock` object had more than two attributes, this destructuring expression would still work, because `symbol` and `price` would match the pattern. The matching expression lists only the variables for the object attributes you're interested in.

Listing A.10 works because the names of the variables are the same as the names of the `Stock` attributes. Let's change `symbol` to `sym`:

```
let {sym, price} = getStock();
```

Now the output will change because JavaScript doesn't know that the object's `symbol` attribute should be assigned to the `sym` variable:

```
The price of undefined is 100
```

This is an example of a wrong matching pattern. If you really want to map the variable named `sym` to the `symbol` attribute, introduce an alias name for `symbol`:

```
let {symbol: sym, price} = getStock();
```

If you provide more variables on the left than the number of attributes the object has, the extra variables will get the value `undefined`. If you add a `stockExchange` variable on the left, it will be initialized with `undefined`, because there's no such attribute in the object returned by `getStock()`:

```
let {sym, price, stockExchange} = getStock();
console.log(`The price of ${symbol} is ${price} ${stockExchange}`);
```

If you apply the preceding destructuring assignment to the same `Stock` object, the console output will look like this:

```
The price of IBM is 100 undefined
```

If you want the `stockExchange` variable to have a default value, such as “NASDAQ”, you can rewrite the destructuring expression like this:

```
let {sym, price, stockExchange="NASDAQ"} = getStock();
```

You can also destructure nested objects. Listing A.11 creates a nested object that represents the Microsoft stock and passes it to the `printStockInfo()` function, which pulls the stock symbol and name of the stock exchange from this object.

#### **Listing A.11 Destructuring a nested object**

```
let msft = {symbol: "MSFT",
            lastPrice: 50.00,
            exchange: {
                name: "NASDAQ",
                tradingHours: "9:30am-4pm"
            }
};

function printStockInfo(stock) {
    let {symbol, exchange:{name}} = stock;
    console.log(`The ${symbol} stock is traded at ${name}`);
}

printStockInfo(msft);
```

Running this script will print the following:

```
The MSFT stock is traded at NASDAQ
```

#### **DESTRUCTURING ARRAYS**

Array destructuring works much like object destructuring, but instead of curly brackets, you use square ones. Whereas when destructuring objects you need to specify variables that match attributes, with arrays you specify variables that match indexes. The following code extracts the values of two array elements into two variables:

```
let [name1, name2] = ["Smith", "Clinton"];
console.log(`name1 = ${name1}, name2 = ${name2}`);
```

The output looks like this:

```
name1 = Smith, name2 = Clinton
```

If you just want to extract the second element of this array, the matching pattern looks like this:

```
let [, name2] = ["Smith", "Clinton"];
```

If a function returns an array, the destructuring syntax turns it into a function with a multiple-value return, as shown in the `getCustomers()` function:

```
function getCustomers() {
    return ["Smith", , , "Gonzales"];
}

let [firstCustomer,,,lastCustomer] = getCustomers();
console.log(`The first customer is ${firstCustomer} and the last one is
➥ ${lastCustomer}`);
```

Now let's combine array destructuring with rest parameters. Let's say you have an array of multiple customers, but you want to process only the first two. The following code snippet shows how to do it:

```
let customers = ["Smith", "Clinton", "Lou", "Gonzales"];

let [firstCust, secondCust, ...otherCust] = customers;

console.log(`The first customer is ${firstCust} and the second one is
➥ ${secondCust}`);
console.log(`Other customers are ${otherCust}`);
```

Here's the console output produced by this code:

```
The first customer is Smith and the second one is Clinton
Other customers are Lou,Gonzales
```

On a similar note, you can pass the matching pattern with a rest parameter to a function:

```
var customers = ["Smith", "Clinton", "Lou", "Gonzales"];

function processFirstTwoCustomers([firstCust, secondCust, ...otherCust]) {

    console.log(`The first customer is ${firstCust} and the second one is
➥ ${secondCust}`);
    console.log(`Other customers are ${otherCust}`);

}

processFirstTwoCustomers(customers);
```

The output is the same:

```
The first customer is Smith and the second one is Clinton  
Other customers are Lou,Gonzales
```

To summarize, the benefit of destructuring is that you can write less code when you need to initialize some variables with data that's located in object properties or arrays.

## A.6 Iterating with `forEach()`, `for-in`, and `for-of`

Looping through a collection of objects can be done using different JavaScript keywords and APIs. In this section, we'll show you how to use the new `for-of` loop. We'll compare it with `for-in` loops and the `forEach()` function.

### A.6.1 Using the `forEach()` method

Consider the following code, which iterates through an array of four numbers. This array also has an additional `description` property, which is ignored by `forEach()`:

```
var numbersArray = [1, 2, 3, 4];  
numbersArray.description = "four numbers";  
  
numbersArray.forEach((n) => console.log(n));
```

The output of the script looks like this:

```
1  
2  
3  
4
```

The `forEach()` method takes a function as an argument and properly prints four numbers from the array, ignoring the `description` property. Another limitation of `forEach()` is that it doesn't allow you to break the loop prematurely. You'd need to use the `every()` method instead of `forEach()` or come up with some other hack to do that. Let's see how the `for-in` loop can help.

### A.6.2 Using the `for-in` loop

The `for-in` loop iterates over the *property names* of objects and data collections. In JavaScript, any object is a collection of key-value pairs, where a key is a property name and a value is the property value. The array has five properties: four for the numbers and `description`. Let's iterate through the properties of this array:

```
var numbersArray = [1, 2, 3, 4];  
numbersArray.description = "four numbers";  
  
for (let n in numbersArray) {  
    console.log(n);  
}
```

The output of the preceding code looks like this:

```
0  
1  
2  
3  
description
```

Running this code through a debugger shows that each of these properties is a string. To see the actual values of the properties, you should print the array elements using the `numbersArray[n]` notation:

```
var numbersArray = [1, 2, 3, 4];  
numbersArray.description = "four numbers";  
  
for (let n in numbersArray) {  
    console.log(numbersArray[n]);  
}
```

Now the output looks like this:

```
1  
2  
3  
4  
four numbers
```

As you can see, the `for-in` loop iterated through all the properties, not only the data, which may not be what you need. Let's try the new `for-of` syntax.

### A.6.3 Using `for-of`

ES6 introduced the `for-of` loop, which allows you to iterate over data regardless of what other properties the data collection has. You can break out of this loop if needed by using the `break` keyword:

```
var numbersArray = [1, 2, 3, 4];  
numbersArray.description = "four numbers";  
  
console.log("Running for of for the entire array");  
for (let n of numbersArray) {  
    console.log(n);  
}  
  
console.log("Running for of with a break");  
for (let n of numbersArray) {  
    if (n > 2) break;  
  
    console.log(n);  
}
```

This script produces the following output:

```
Running for of for the entire array
1
2
3
4
Running for of with a break
1
2
```

The `for-of` loop works with any iterable object, including `Array`, `Map`, `Set`, and others. Strings are iterable as well. The following code prints the content of the string “John”, one character at a time:

```
for (let char of "John") {
  console.log(char);
}
```

## A.7 Classes and inheritance

Both ES3 and ES5 support object-oriented programming and inheritance. But with ES6 classes, the code is easier to read and write.

In ES5, objects can be created either from scratch or by inheriting from other objects. By default, all JavaScript objects are inherited from `Object`. This object inheritance is implemented via a special property called `prototype`, which points at this object’s ancestor. This is called *prototypal inheritance*. For example, to create an `NJTax` object that inherits from the object `Tax`, you can write something like this:

```
function Tax() {
  // The code of the tax object goes here
}

function NJTax() {
  // The code of New Jersey tax object goes here
}

NJTax.prototype = new Tax();           ← Inherits NJTax
var njTax = new NJTax();               from Tax
```

ES6 introduced the keywords `class` and `extends` to bring the syntax in line with other object-oriented languages such as Java and C#. The ES6 equivalent of the preceding code is shown next:

```
class Tax {
  // The code of the tax class goes here
}
```

```
class NJTax extends Tax {
    // The code of New Jersey tax object goes here
}

var njTax = new NJTax();
```

The Tax class is an ancestor or *superclass*, and NJTax is a descendant or *subclass*. You can also say that the NJTax class has the “is a” relation with the class Tax. In other words, NJTax is a Tax. You can implement additional functionality in NJTax, but NJTax still “is a” or “is a kind of” Tax. Similarly, if you create an Employee class that inherits from Person, you can say that Employee is a Person.

You can create one or more instances of the objects, like this:

```
var tax1 = new Tax();
var tax2 = new Tax();
```

**NOTE** Class declarations aren’t hoisted. You need to declare the class first and then work with it.

Each of these objects will have properties and methods that exist in the Tax class, but they will have different *state*; for example, the first instance could be created for a customer with an annual income of \$50,000 and the second for a customer who earned \$75,000. Each instance would share the same copy of the methods declared in the Tax class, so there’s no duplication of code.

In ES5, you can also avoid code duplication by declaring methods not inside the objects, but on their prototypes:

```
function Tax() {
    // The code of the tax object goes here
}

Tax.prototype = {
    calcTax: function() {
        // code to calculate tax goes here
    }
}
```

JavaScript remains the language with prototypal inheritance, but ES6 allows you to write more elegant code:

```
class Tax(){

    calcTax(){
        // code to calculate tax goes here
    }
}
```

### Class member variables aren't supported

The ES6 syntax doesn't allow you to declare class member variables as in Java, C#, or TypeScript. The following syntax is *not* supported:

```
class Tax {
  var income;
}
```

#### A.7.1 Constructors

During instantiation, classes execute the code placed in special methods called *constructors*. In languages such as Java and C#, the name of the constructor must be the same as the name of the class; but in ES6, you specify the class's constructor by using the `constructor` keyword:

```
class Tax{
  constructor (income){
    this.income = income;
  }
}

var myTax = new Tax(50000);
```

A constructor is a special method that's executed only once: when the object is created. If you're familiar with the syntax of Java or C#, the preceding code still may look a little unusual: it doesn't declare a separate class-level `income` variable, but creates it dynamically on the `this` object, initializing `this.income` with the values of the constructor's argument. The `this` variable points at the instance of the current object.

The next example shows how you can create an instance of an `NJTax` subclass, providing the income of 50,000 to its constructor:

```
class Tax{
  constructor(income){
    this.income = income;
  }
}

class NJTax extends Tax{
  // The code of New Jersey tax object goes here
}

var njTax = new NJTax(50000);

console.log(`The income in njTax instance is ${njTax.income}`);
```

The output of this code snippet is as follows:

```
The income in njTax instance is 50000
```

Because the NJTax subclass doesn't define its own constructor, the one from the Tax superclass is automatically invoked during the instantiation of NJTax. This wouldn't be the case if a subclass defined its own constructor. You'll see such an example in section A.7.4.

Note that you can access the value of income from outside of the class via the njTax reference variable. Can you hide income so it's not visible from outside the object? We'll discuss this in section A.9.

### A.7.2 Static variables

If you need a class property that's shared by multiple instances of the object, you need to create it outside of the class declaration. In the following example, the counter variable is shared by both instances of the object A:

```
class A{  
}  
  
A.counter = 0;  
  
var a1 = new A();  
A.counter++;  
console.log(A.counter);  
  
var a2 = new A();  
A.counter++;  
console.log(A.counter);
```

The code produces this output:

```
1  
2
```

### A.7.3 Getters, setters, and method definitions

The syntax for the object's getter and setter methods isn't new in ES6, but let's review it before going on to the new syntax for defining methods. Setters and getters bind functions to object properties. Consider the declaration and the use of the object literal Tax:

```
var Tax = {  
  taxableIncome:0,  
  get income() {return this.taxableIncome;},  
  set income(value){ this.taxableIncome=value}  
};  
  
Tax.income=50000;  
console.log("Income: " + Tax.income); // prints Income: 50000
```

Note that you assign and retrieve the value of income using dot notation, as if it were a declared property of the Tax object.

In ES5, you'd need to use the `function` keyword, such as `calculateTax = function() {...}`. ES6 allows you to skip the `function` keyword in any method definition:

```
var Tax = {
  taxableIncome:0,
  get income() {return this.taxableIncome;},
  set income(value) { this.taxableIncome=value},
  calculateTax() { return this.taxableIncome*0.13}
};

Tax.income=50000;
console.log(`For the income ${Tax.income} your tax is ${Tax.calculateTax()}`);
```

The output of this code comes next:

```
For the income 50000 your tax is 6500
```

Getters and setters offer a convenient syntax for working with properties. For example, if you decide to add some validation code to the `income` getter, the scripts using the `Tax.income` notation won't need to be changed. The bad part is that ES6 doesn't support private variables in classes, so nothing stops programmers from accessing the variable used in a getter or setter (such as `taxableIncome`) directly. We'll talk about hiding (encapsulating) variables in section A.9.

#### A.7.4 *The super keyword and the super function*

The `super()` function allows a subclass (descendant) to invoke a constructor from a superclass (ancestor). The `super` keyword is used to call a method defined in a superclass. Listing A.12 illustrates both `super()` and `super`. The `Tax` class has a `calculateFederalTax()` method, and its `NJTax` subclass adds the `calculateStateTax()` method. Both of these classes have their own versions of the `calcMinTax()` method.

##### **Listing A.12 `super()` and `super`**

```
"use strict";

class Tax{
  constructor(income){
    this.income = income;
  }

  calculateFederalTax(){
    console.log(`Calculating federal tax for income ${this.income}`);
  }

  calcMinTax(){
    console.log("In Tax. Calculating min tax");
    return 123;
  }
}
```

```
class NJTax extends Tax{
    constructor(income, stateTaxPercent) {
        super(income);
        this.stateTaxPercent=stateTaxPercent;
    }

    calculateStateTax(){
        console.log(`Calculating state tax for income ${this.income}`);
    }

    calcMinTax(){
        super.calcMinTax();
        console.log("In NJTax. Adjusting min tax");
    }
}

var theTax = new NJTax(50000, 6);

theTax.calculateFederalTax();
theTax.calculateStateTax();

theTax.calcMinTax();
```

Running this code produces the following output:

```
Calculating federal tax for income 50000
Calculating state tax for income 50000
In Tax. Calculating min tax
In NJTax. Adjusting min tax
```

The `NJTax` class has its own explicitly defined constructor with two arguments, `income` and `stateTaxPercent`, which you provide while instantiating `NJTax`. To make sure the constructor of `Tax` is invoked (it sets the `income` attribute on the object), you explicitly call it from the subclass's constructor: `super("50000")`. Without this line, listing A.12 would report an error; and even if it didn't, the code in `Tax` wouldn't see the value of `income`.

If you need to invoke the constructor of a superclass, it has to be done in the subclass's constructor by calling the function `super()`. The other way of invoking code in superclasses is by using the `super` keyword. Both `Tax` and `NJTax` have a `calcMinTax()` method. The one in the `Tax` superclass calculates the base minimum amount according to federal tax laws, whereas the subclass's version of this method uses the base value and adjusts it. Both methods have the same signature, so you have a case for *method overriding*.

By calling `super.calcMinTax()`, you ensure that the base federal tax is taken into account for calculating state tax. If you didn't call `super.calcMinTax()`, the method-overriding would kick in, and the subclass's version of the `calcMinTax()` method would apply. Method overriding is often used to replace the functionality of the method in the superclass without changing its code.

### A warning about classes and inheritance

ES6 classes are just syntactic sugar that increases code readability. Under the hood, JavaScript still uses prototypal inheritance, which allows you to replace the ancestor dynamically at runtime, whereas a class can have only one ancestor. Try to avoid creating deep inheritance hierarchies, because they reduce the flexibility of your code and complicate refactoring if it's needed.

Although using the `super` keyword or `super()` function lets you invoke code in the ancestor, you should try to avoid using them, because they introduce tight coupling between the descendant and ancestor objects. The less the descendant knows about its ancestor, the better. If the ancestor of the object changes, the new one may not have the method you're trying to invoke with `super()`.

## A.8 Asynchronous processing with promises

To arrange asynchronous processing in previous implementations of ECMAScript, you had to use *callbacks*, which are functions that are given as arguments to another function for invocation. Callbacks can be called synchronously or asynchronously.

In section A.6, you passed a callback to the `forEach()` function for synchronous invocation. In making AJAX requests to the server, you pass a callback function to be invoked asynchronously, when the result arrives from the server.

### A.8.1 A callback hell

Let's consider an example of getting data about some ordered products from the server. It starts with an asynchronous call to the server to get the information about the customers, and then for each customer you'll need to make another call to get the orders. For each order, you need to get products. The final call will get the products' details.

In asynchronous processing, you don't know when each of these operations will complete, so you need to write callback functions that are invoked when the previous one is complete. Let's use the `setTimeout()` function to emulate delays, as if each operation requires one second to complete.

#### Listing A.13 Nested callback functions

```
function getProductDetails() {  
  
    setTimeout(function () {  
        console.log('Getting customers');  
        setTimeout(function () {  
            console.log('Getting orders');  
            setTimeout(function () {  
                console.log('Getting products');  
                setTimeout(function () {  
                    console.log('Getting product details')  
                }, 1000);  
            }, 1000);  
        }, 1000);  
    }, 1000);  
}
```

```

        }, 1000);
    }, 1000);
}, 1000);
};

getProductDetails();

```

Running this code will print the following messages with one-second delays:

```

Getting customers
Getting orders
Getting products
Getting product details

```

The level of nesting in listing A.13 already makes it difficult to read. Now imagine if you were to add application logic and error processing to it. Writing code this way is often referred to as *callback hell* or a *triangle of doom* (the empty spaces in the code take the shape of a triangle).

## A.8.2 ES6 promises

ES6 introduced *promises*, which allow you to eliminate this nesting and make the code more readable, while maintaining the same functionality as with callbacks. The `Promise` object waits and listens for the result of an asynchronous operation and lets you know if it succeeded or failed so you can proceed with the next steps accordingly. The `Promise` object represents the future result of an operation, and it can be in one of these states:

- *Fulfilled*—The operation successfully completed.
- *Rejected*—The operation failed and returned an error.
- *Pending*—The operation is in progress, neither fulfilled nor rejected.

You instantiate a `Promise` object by providing two functions to its constructor: the function to call if the operation is fulfilled, and the function to call if the operation is rejected. Consider a script with a `getCustomers()` function.

### **Listing A.14 Using a promise**

```

function getCustomers() {

    return new Promise(
        function (resolve, reject) {

            console.log("Getting customers");
            // Emulate an async server call here
            setTimeout(function(){
                var success = true;
                if (success){
                    resolve( "John Smith");           ← Got the customer
                }else{

```

```

        reject("Can't get customers");
    }
},1000);

}
);
}

let promise = getCustomers()
.then((cust) => console.log(cust))
.catch((err) => console.log(err));
console.log("Invoked getCustomers. Waiting for results");

```

The `getCustomers()` function returns a `Promise` object, which is instantiated with a function that has `resolve` and `reject` as the constructor's arguments. In the code, you invoke `resolve()` if you receive the customer information. For simplicity, `setTimeout()` emulates an asynchronous call that lasts 1 second. You also hardcode the success flag to be true. In a real-world scenario, you could make a request with the `XMLHttpRequest` object and invoke `resolve()` if the result was successfully retrieved or `reject()` if an error occurred.

At the bottom of listing A.14, you attach `then()` and `catch()` methods to the `Promise()` instance. Only one of these two will be invoked. When you call `resolve("John Smith")` from inside the function, it results in the invocation of the `then()` that received "John Smith" as its argument. If you changed the value of `success` to `false`, the `catch()` method would be called with the argument "Can't get customers".

Running listing A.14 prints the following messages on the console:

```

Getting customers
Invoked getCustomers. Waiting for results
John Smith

```

Note that the message "Invoked `getCustomers`. Waiting for results" is printed before "John Smith". This proves that the `getCustomers()` function worked asynchronously.

Each promise represents one asynchronous operation, and you can chain them to guarantee a particular order of execution. Let's add a `getOrders()` function that can find the orders for a specific customer, and chain it with `getCustomers()`.

### **Listing A.15 Chaining promises**

```

'use strict';

function getCustomers(){

let promise = new Promise(
    function (resolve, reject){

        console.log("Getting customers");
        // Emulate an async server call here
        setTimeout(function(){

```

```

        let success = true;
        if (success){
            resolve( "John Smith");           ←———— Got the customer
        }else{
            reject("Can't get customers");
        }
    },1000);

}
);
return promise;
}

function getOrders(customer) {

let promise = new Promise(
function (resolve, reject){

// Emulate an async server call here
setTimeout(function(){
let success = true;
if (success){
    resolve(`Found the order 123 for ${customer}`);   ←———— Got the order
}else{
    reject("Can't get orders");
}
},1000);

}
);
return promise;
}

getCustomers()
.then((cust) => {console.log(cust);return cust;})
.then((cust) => getOrders(cust))
.then((order) => console.log(order))
.catch((err) => console.error(err));
console.log("Chained getCustomers and getOrders. Waiting for results");

```

This code not only declares and chains two functions, but also demonstrates how you can print intermediate results on the console. The output of listing A.15 follows (note that the customer returned from `getCustomers()` was properly passed to `getOrders()`):

```

Getting customers
Chained getCustomers and getOrders. Waiting for results
John Smith
Found the order 123 for John Smith

```

You can chain multiple function calls using `then()` and have just one error-handling script for all chained invocations. If an error occurs, it will be propagated through the entire chain of thens until it finds an error handler. No thens will be invoked after the error.

Changing the value of the `success` variable to `false` will result in listing A.15 printing the message “Can’t get customers”, and the `getOrders()` method won’t be called. If you remove these console prints, the code that retrieves customers and orders looks clean and is easy to understand:

```
getCustomers()
  .then((cust) => getOrders(cust))
  .catch((err) => console.error(err));
```

Adding more thens doesn’t make this code less readable (compare it with the triangle of doom from listing A.13).

### A.8.3 Resolving several promises at once

Another case to consider is asynchronous functions that don’t depend on each other. Say you need to invoke two functions in no particular order, but you need to perform some action only *after* both of them are complete. Promise has an `all()` method that takes an iterable collection of promises and executes (resolves) all of them. Because the `all()` method returns a `Promise` object, you can add `then()` or `catch()` (or both) to the result.

Let’s see what happens if you use `all()` with the `getCustomers()` and `getOrders()` functions:

```
Promise.all([getCustomers(), getOrders()])
  .then((order) => console.log(order));
```

This code produces the following output:

```
Getting customers
Getting orders for undefined
["John Smith", "Order 123"]
```

Note the “Getting orders for undefined” message. This happens because you haven’t resolved the promises in an orderly fashion, so `getOrders()` hasn’t received the customer as its argument. Certainly, using `Promise.all()` isn’t a good idea in this scenario, but there are situations when it makes perfect sense. Imagine a web portal that needs to make several asynchronous calls to get the weather, stock market news, and traffic information. If you want to display the portal page when all of these calls have completed, `Promise.all()` is what you need:

```
Promise.all([getWeather(), getStockMarketNews(), getTraffic()])
  .then(renderGUI);
```

Compared to callbacks, promises make your code more linear and easier to read, and they represent multiple states of an application. On the negative side, promises can’t be canceled. Imagine an impatient user who clicks a button several times to get some data from the server. Each click creates a promise and initiates an HTTP request. There’s no

way to keep only the last request and cancel the uncompleted ones. The next step in the evolution of a `Promise` object is an `Observable` object, which may be introduced in future ECMAScript specifications; in chapter 5, we explain how to use it today.

**NOTE** The new Fetch API for getting resources over the network may soon become a replacement for the `XMLHttpRequest` object. The Fetch API is based on promises—see the Mozilla Developer Network documentation for the API for details (<http://mng.bz/mbMe>).

## A.9 Modules

In any programming language, splitting code into modules helps organize the application into logical and possibly reusable units. Modularized applications allow programming tasks to be split between software developers more efficiently. Developers get to decide which API should be exposed by the module for external use and which should be used internally.

ES5 doesn't have language constructs for creating modules, so we have to resort to one of these options:

- Manually implement a module design pattern as an immediately initialized function (see Todd Motto's article "Mastering the Module Pattern" at <https://toddmotto.com/mastering-the-module-pattern/>).
- Use third-party implementations of the AMD (<http://mng.bz/JKvC>) or CommonJS (<http://mng.bz/7Lld>) standard.

CommonJS was created for modularizing JavaScript applications that run outside the web browser (such as those written in Node.js and deployed under Google's V8 engine). AMD is primarily used for applications that run in a web browser.

In any decent-sized web application, you should minimize the amount of JavaScript code loaded to the client. Imagine a typical online store. Do you need to load the code for processing payments when users open the application's home page? What if they never click the Place Order button? It would be nice to modularize the application so the code is loaded on an as-needed basis. RequireJS is probably the most popular third-party library that implements the AMD standard; it lets you define dependencies between modules and load them into the browser on demand.

Starting with ES6, modules have become part of the language, which means developers will stop using third-party libraries to implement various standards. Even though web browsers don't support ES6 modules natively, there are polyfills that let you start using JavaScript modules today. We use the polyfill called SystemJS in this book.

### A.9.1 Imports and exports

Typically, a module is just a file with JavaScript code that implements certain functionality and provides a public API so other JavaScript programs can use it. There's no special keyword to declare that the code in a particular file is a module. But in the script, you can use the keywords `import` and `export`, which turn the script into an ES6 module.

The `import` keyword allows one script to declare that it needs to use variables or functions defined in another script file. Similarly, the `export` keyword lets you declare variables, functions, or classes that the module should expose to other scripts. In other words, by using the `export` keyword, you can make selected APIs available to other modules. The module's functions, variables, and classes that aren't explicitly exported remain encapsulated in the module.

**NOTE** The main difference between a module and a regular JavaScript file is that when you add a file to a page with a `<script>` tag, it becomes part of a global context, whereas the declarations in modules are local and never become part of the global namespace. Even exported members are available only to those modules that import them.

ES6 offers two types of `export` usage: named and default. With named exports, you can use the `export` keyword in front of multiple members of the module (such as classes, functions, and variables). The code in the following file (`tax.js`) exports the variable `taxCode` and the function `calcTaxes()`, but the `doSomethingElse()` function remains hidden to external scripts:

```
export var taxCode;

export function calcTaxes() { // the code goes here }

function doSomethingElse() { // the code goes here}
```

When a script imports named exported module members, their names must be placed in curly braces. The `main.js` file illustrates this:

```
import {taxCode, calcTaxes} from 'tax';

if (taxCode === 1) { // do something }

calcTaxes();
```

Here, `tax` refers to the filename of the module, minus the file extension.

One of the exported module members can be marked as `default`, which means this is an anonymous export, and another module can give it any name in its `import` statement. The `my_module.js` file that exports a function may look like this:

```
export default function() { // do something }           ← No semicolon
export var taxCode;
```

The `main.js` file imports both named and default exports while assigning the name `coolFunction` to the default one:

```
import coolFunction, {taxCode} from 'my_module';
coolFunction();
```

Note that you don't use curly braces around `coolFunction` but you do around `taxCode`. The script that imports a class, variable, or function that was exported with the `default` keyword can give them new names without using any special keywords:

```
import aVeryCoolFunction, {taxCode} from 'my_module';

aVeryCoolFunction();
```

But to give an alias name to a named export, you need to write something like this:

```
import coolFunction, {taxCode as taxCode2016} from 'my_module';
```

The `import` statements don't result in copying the exported code. Imports serve as references. The script that imports modules or members can't modify them, and if the values in the imported modules change, the new values are immediately reflected in all places where they were imported.

### A.9.2 Loading modules dynamically with the ES6 module loader

The early drafts of the ES6 specification defined a dynamic module loader named `System`, but it didn't make it into the final version of the spec. In the future, the `System` object will be natively implemented by browsers as a promise-based loader that can be used as follows:

```
System.import('someModule')
  .then(function(module) {
    module.doSomething();
  })
  .catch(function(error) {
    // handle error here
  })
;
```

Because no browsers implement the `System` object yet, we use polyfills. One of the `System` polyfills is the ES6 Module Loader, and another is SystemJS.

**NOTE** Although `es6-module-loader.js` is a polyfill for the `System` object that loads *only* ES6 modules, the universal SystemJS loader supports not only ES6 modules, but AMD and CommonJS modules as well. We use SystemJS throughout this book (except chapter 10, which uses a loader from Webpack), starting in chapter 3. With SystemJS, you can dynamically download JavaScript code along with CSS and HTML files.

The polyfill for the ES6 Module Loader is available on GitHub at <http://mng.bz/MD8w>. You can download and unzip this loader, copy the `es6-module-loader.js` file to your project directory, and include it in your HTML file before your application scripts:

```
<script src="es6-module-loader.js"></script>
<script src="my_app.js"></script>
```

To make sure your ES6 script works in all browsers, you'll need to transpile it to ES5. This can be done either up front as a part of your build process or on the fly in a browser. We'll show you the latter scenario using the Traceur compiler.

You'll need to include the transpiler, the module loader, and your script(s) in the HTML file. You can either download the Traceur script to your local directory or provide a direct link to it, like this:

```
<script src="https://google.github.io/traceur-compiler/bin/traceur.js">
</script>
<script src="es6-module-loader.js"></script>
<script src="my-es6-app.js"></script>
```

Let's consider a simple application for an online store that has shipping and billing modules loaded on demand. The application consists of one HTML file and two modules. The HTML file has one button labeled Load the Shipping Module. When the user clicks this button, the application should load and use the shipping module, which in turn depends on the billing module. The shipping module is as follows.

#### **Listing A.16 shipping.js**

```
import {processPayment} from 'billing';

export function ship() {
    processPayment();
    console.log("Shipping products...");
}

function calculateShippingCost(){
    console.log("Calculating shipping cost");
}
```

The `ship()` function can be invoked by external scripts, and `calculateShippingCost()` is private. The shipping module starts with the `import` statement so it can invoke the `processPayment()` function from the billing module that's shown next.

#### **Listing A.17 billing.js**

```
function validateBillingInfo() {
    console.log("Validating billing info...");
}

export function processPayment(){
    console.log("processing payment...");
}
```

The billing module also has a public `processPayment()` function and a private one called `validateBillingInfo()`.

The HTML file includes one button with a click event handler that loads the shipping module using `System.import()` from `es6-module-loader`.

**Listing A.18 moduleLoader.html**

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <title>modules.html</title>
    <script src="https://google.github.io/traceur-compiler/bin/traceur.js">
    </script>
    <script src="es6-module-loader.js"></script>
</head>
<body>

    <button id="shippingBtn">Load the Shipping Module</button>

    <script type="module">

        let btn = document.querySelector('#shippingBtn');
        btn.addEventListener('click', () => {

            System.import('shipping')
                .then(function(module) {
                    console.log("Shipping module Loaded. ", module);

                    module.ship();

                    module.calculateShippingCost();           ←———— Throws an error
                })
                .catch(function(err) {
                    console.log("In error handler", err);
                });
        });

    </script>

</body>
</html>
```

`System.import()` returns an ES6 Promise object; when the module is loaded, the function specified in `then()` is executed. In case of an error, control goes to the `catch()` function.

In the `then()`, you print the message to the console and invoke the `ship()` function from the shipping module, which invokes `processPayment()` from `billing`. After that, you try to invoke the module's `calculateShippingCost()` function, which results in an error because this function wasn't exported and remains private.

**TIP** If you use Traceur and have an inline script in the HTML file, use `type="module"` to make sure Traceur transpiles it to ES5. Without it, this script won't work in browsers that don't support the `let` keyword and arrow functions.

To run this example on your computer, you'll need to have node.js with npm installed. Then download and install es6-module loader in any directory by running the following npm command:

```
npm install es6-module-loader
```

After that, create an application folder, and copy the es6-module-loader.js file there (this is a minimized version of the loader that was downloaded by npm). The sample application has three additional files, shown in listings A.16–A.18. For simplicity, keep all these files in the same folder.

**NOTE** To see this code in action, you need to serve it using a web server. You can install a basic HTTP server like live-server as explained in section 2.1.4.

We ran moduleLoader.html in Google Chrome and opened Chrome Developer Tools. Figure A.6 shows what the Chrome browser looks like after clicking the Load the Shipping Module button.

Look at the XHR tab in the middle of the window. The HTML page loads shipping.js and billing.js only after the user clicks the button. These files are small (440 and 387 bytes, including HTTP response objects), and making an additional network call to get them seems like overkill. But if the application consists of 10 modules of 500 KB each, modularization with lazy loading makes sense.

The screenshot shows two instances of the Chrome Developer Tools interface. The top instance is focused on the Network tab, which displays two XHR requests. The first request is for 'shipping.js' from 'es6-module-loader.js:7' with a size of 537 B and a time of 7 ms. The second request is for 'billing.js' from 'es6-module-loader.js:7' with a size of 484 B and a time of 13 ms. The bottom instance is focused on the Console tab, showing the following log output:

```
Shipping module Loaded. > y {}
processing payment...
Shipping products...
In error handler TypeError: module.calculateShippingCost is not a function(...)
```

**Figure A.6** Using es6-module-loader

At the bottom of the figure, on the Console tab, you can see the message from the script in `moduleLoader` indicating that the shipping module was loaded. Then it calls the function from `ship()` from the shipping module and generates an error trying to call the `calculateShippingCost()` function, as expected.

**NOTE** The goal of this appendix was to get you familiar with the ES6 syntax. For in-depth coverage, read the book *Exploring ES6* by Axel Rauschmayer (<http://exploringjs.com/es6/>). Eric Douglas maintains a compilation of various ES6 learning resources on GitHub at <http://mng.bz/cZfX>.

# *appendix B*

## *TypeScript as a language for Angular applications*

---

You may be wondering, why not just develop in JavaScript? Why do we need to use other programming languages if JavaScript is already a language? You wouldn't find articles about languages for developing Java or C# applications, would you?

The reason is that developing in JavaScript isn't overly productive. Say a function expects a string value as an argument, but the developer mistakenly invokes it by passing a numeric value. With JavaScript, this error can be caught only at runtime. Java or C# compilers won't even compile code that has mismatching types, but JavaScript is forgiving because it's a dynamically typed language.

Although JavaScript engines do a good job of guessing the types of variables by their values, development tools have a limited ability to help you without knowing the types. In mid- and large-size applications, this JavaScript shortcoming lowers the productivity of software developers.

On larger projects, good IDE context-sensitive help and support for refactoring are important. Renaming all occurrences of a variable or function name in statically typed languages is done by IDEs in a split second, even in projects that have thousands of lines of code; but this isn't the case in JavaScript, which doesn't support types. IDEs can help with refactoring much better when the types of the variables are known.

To be more productive, you may consider developing in a statically typed language and then convert the code to JavaScript for deployment. Currently there are dozens of languages that compile to JavaScript (see the list of languages that compile to JS on GitHub at <http://mng.bz/vjzi>). The most popular are TypeScript ([www.typescriptlang.org](http://www.typescriptlang.org)), CoffeeScript (<http://coffeescript.org>), and Dart ([www.dartlang.org](http://www.dartlang.org)).

### Why not use the Dart language?

We spent quite a bit of time working with Dart, and we like the language, but it has some drawbacks:

- Interoperability with third-party JavaScript libraries isn't that great.
- Development in Dart can be done only in a specialized version of the Chrome browser (Dartium) that comes with the Dart VM. No other web browsers have it.
- The generated JavaScript isn't easily readable by a human.
- The community of Dart developers is rather small.

The Angular framework is written in TypeScript, and in this appendix we'll cover its syntax. All the code samples in this book are written in TypeScript. We'll also show you how to turn TypeScript code into its JavaScript version so it can be executed by any web browser or a standalone JavaScript engine.

## B.1 Why write Angular apps in TypeScript?

You can write applications in ES6 (and even in ES5), but we use TypeScript as a substantially more productive way for writing JavaScript. Here's why:

- TypeScript supports types. This allows the TypeScript compiler to help you find and fix lots of errors during development before even running the app.
- Great IDE support is one of TypeScript's main advantages. If you make a mistake in a function or a variable name, it's displayed in red. If you pass the wrong number of parameters (or wrong types) to a function, the wrong ones show in red. IDEs also offer great context-sensitive help. TypeScript code can be refactored by IDEs, whereas JavaScript has to be refactored manually. If you need to explore a new library, just install its type-definitions file, and the IDE will prompt you with available APIs so you don't need to read its documentation elsewhere.
- Angular is bundled with type definitions files, so IDEs perform type checking while using the Angular API and offer context-sensitive help right out of the box.
- TypeScript follows the ECMAScript 6 and 7 specifications and adds to them types, interfaces, decorators, class member variables (fields), generics, and the keywords `public` and `private`. Future releases of TypeScript will support the missing ES6 features and implement the features of ES7 (see the TypeScript "Roadmap" on GitHub at <http://mng.bz/Ri29>).
- TypeScript interfaces allow you to declare custom types that will be used in your application. Interfaces help prevent compile-time errors caused by using objects of the wrong types in your application.
- The generated JavaScript code is easy to read, and it looks like hand-written code.
- Most of the code samples in the Angular documentation, articles, and blogs are given in TypeScript (see <https://angular.io/docs>).

## B.2 The role of transpilers

Web browsers don't understand any language but JavaScript. If the source code is written in TypeScript, it has to be *transpiled* into JavaScript before you can run it in the browser's or a standalone JavaScript engine.

*Transpiling* means converting the source code of a program in one language into source code in another language. Many developers prefer to use the word *compiling*, so phrases like "TypeScript compiler" and "compile TypeScript into JavaScript" are also valid.

Figure B.1 shows a screenshot with TypeScript code on the left and its equivalent in an ES5 version of JavaScript generated by the TypeScript transpiler. In TypeScript, we declared a variable `foo` of type `string`, but the transpiled version doesn't have the type information. In TypeScript, we declared a class `Bar`, which was transpiled in a class-like pattern in the ES5 syntax. If we had specified ES6 as a target for transpiling, the generated JavaScript code would look different.

```

1 var foo: string;
2
3 class Bar{
4
5 }

```

```

1 var foo;
2 var Bar = (function () {
3     function Bar() {
4     }
5     return Bar;
6 })();
7

```

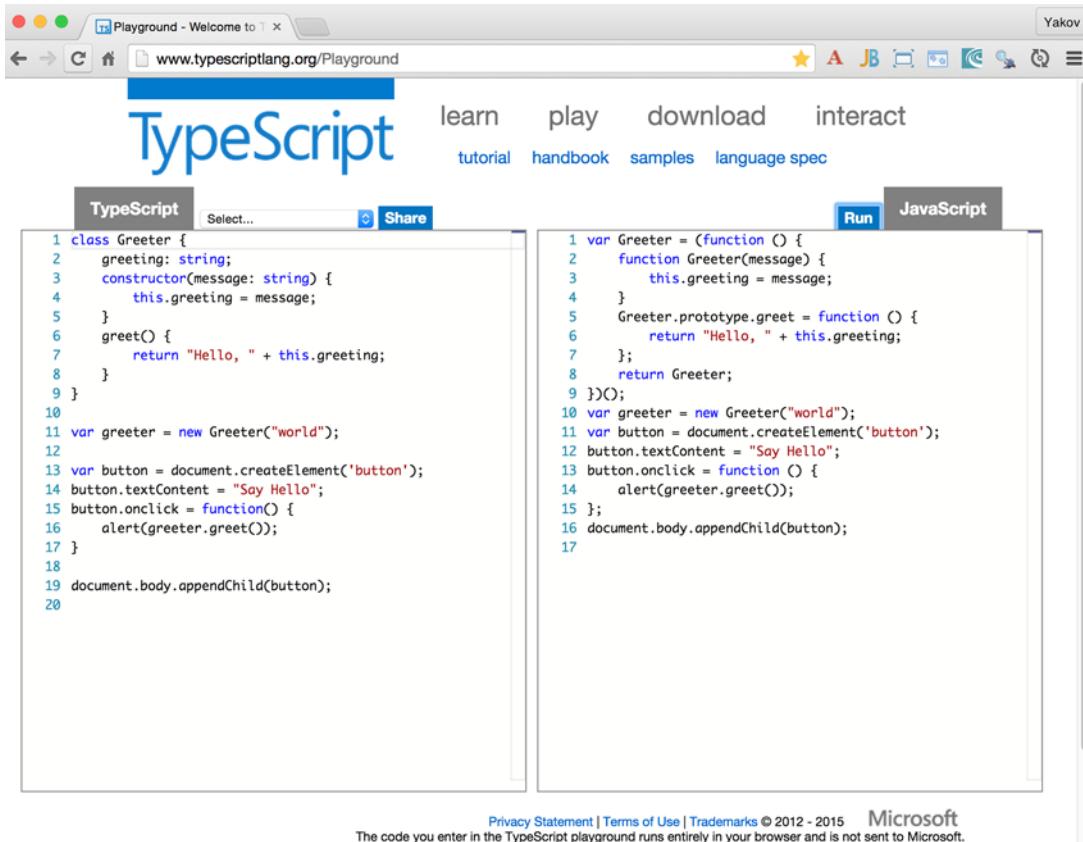
Figure B.1 Transpiling TypeScript into ES5

A combination of Angular with statically typed TypeScript simplifies the development of medium and large web applications. Good tooling and the static type analyzer substantially decrease the number of runtime errors and will shorten the time to market. When complete, your Angular application will have lots of JavaScript code; and although developing in TypeScript will require you to write more code, you'll reap the benefits by saving time on testing and refactoring and minimizing the number of runtime errors.

## B.3 Getting started with TypeScript

Microsoft has open-sourced TypeScript, and it hosts the TypeScript repository on GitHub at <http://mng.bz/Ri29>. You can install the TypeScript compiler using npm or download it from [www.typescriptlang.org](http://www.typescriptlang.org). The TypeScript site also has a web-hosted TypeScript compiler (a playground), where you can enter TypeScript code and compile it to JavaScript interactively, as shown in figure B.2.

In the TypeScript playground, you enter TypeScript code on the left, and its JavaScript version is displayed on the right. Click the Run button to execute the transpiled code (open the browser's Developer Tools to see the console output produced by your code, if any).



**Figure B.2** Using the TypeScript playground

Interactive tools will suffice for learning the language's syntax, but for real-world development you'll need to use the right tooling to be productive. You may decide to use an IDE or a text editor, but having the TypeScript compiler installed locally is a must for development.

### B.3.1 Installing and using the TypeScript compiler

The TypeScript compiler is itself written in TypeScript. You'll use Node.js's npm package manager to install the compiler. If you don't have Node, download and install it from <http://nodejs.org>. Node.js comes with npm, which you'll use to install not only the TypeScript compiler, but also many other development tools throughout the book.

To install the TypeScript compiler globally, run the following npm command in the command or terminal window:

```
npm install -g typescript
```

The `-g` option installs the TypeScript compiler globally on your computer, so it's available from the command prompt for all of your projects. To develop Angular 2 applications,

download the latest version of the TypeScript compiler (we use version 2.0 in this book). To check the version of your TypeScript compiler, run the following command:

```
tsc --version
```

Code written in TypeScript has to be transpiled into JavaScript so web browsers can execute it. TypeScript code is saved in files with the .ts extension. Say you wrote a script and saved it in the file main.ts. The following command will transpile main.ts into main.js.

```
tsc main.ts
```

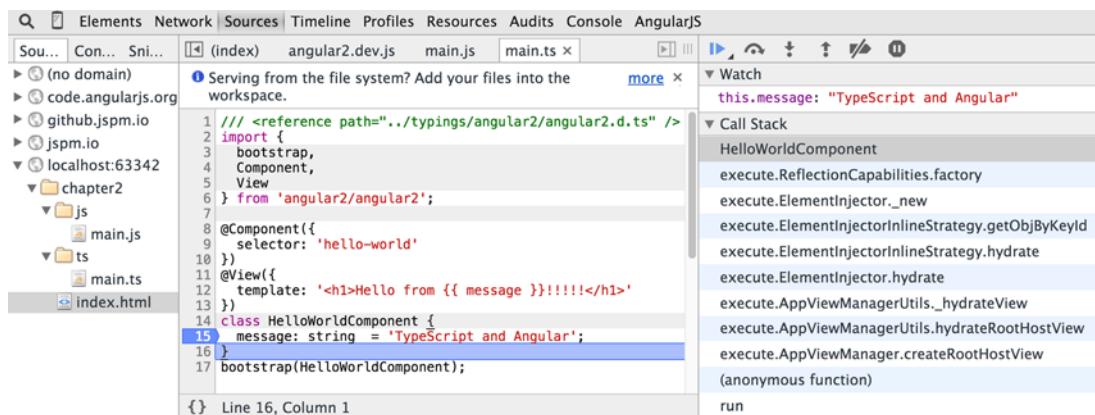
You can also generate source map files that map the source code in TypeScript to the generated JavaScript. With source maps, you can place breakpoints in your TypeScript code while running it in the browser, even though it executes JavaScript. To compile main.ts into main.js while also generating the main.map source map file, you run the following command:

```
tsc --sourcemap main.ts
```

Figure B.3 shows a screenshot we took while debugging in Chrome Developer Tools. Note the breakpoint at line 15. You can find your TypeScript file in the Sources tab of the Developer Tools panel, place a breakpoint in the code, and watch the values of the variables on the right.

During compilation, TypeScript's compiler removes all TypeScript types, interfaces, and keywords from the generated code to produce valid JavaScript. By providing compiler options, you can generate JavaScript compliant with ES3, ES5, or ES6 syntax. Currently ES3 is the default. Here's how to transpile the code to ES5-compatible syntax:

```
tsc --t ES5 main.ts
```



**Figure B.3** Debugging TypeScript in Chrome Developer Tools

### Transpiling TypeScript in a web browser

During development, we use tsc installed locally, but transpiling can also be done either on the server during deployment or on the fly when the web browser loads your application. In this book, we use the SystemJS library, which internally uses tsc to transpile and dynamically load app modules.

Keep in mind that transpiling on the fly in the browser may introduce delays in displaying your app's content on the user's device. If you use SystemJS to load and transpile your code in the browser, source maps will be generated by default.

If you want to compile your code in memory without generating output .js files, run tsc with the `--noEmit` option. We often use this option in development mode because we just need to have executable JavaScript code in the browser's memory.

You can start your TypeScript compiler in watch mode by providing the `-w` option. In this mode, whenever you modify and save your code, it's automatically transpiled into the corresponding JavaScript files. To compile and watch all .ts files, run the following command:

```
tsc -w *.ts
```

The compiler will compile all the TypeScript files, print error messages (if any) on the console, and continue watching the files for changes. As soon as a file changes, tsc will immediately recompile it.

**NOTE** Typically, we don't use the IDE to compile TypeScript. We use either SystemJS with its in-browser compiler or a bundler (Webpack) that uses a special TypeScript loader for compilation. We use the TypeScript code analyzer provided by the IDEs to highlight errors, and the browser to debug TypeScript.

The TypeScript compiler allows you to preconfigure the process of compilation (specifying the source and destination directories, source map generation, and so on). The presence of the `tsconfig.json` configuration file in the project directory means you can enter `tsc` on the command line, and the compiler will read all the options from `tsconfig.json`. A sample `tsconfig.json` file is shown here.

**Listing B.1 tsconfig.json**

```
{
  "compilerOptions": {
    "target": "es5",
    "module": "commonjs",
    "emitDecoratorMetadata": true,
    "experimentalDecorators": true,
    "rootDir": ".",
    "outDir": "./js"
  }
}
```

This config file instructs tsc to transpile the code into ES5 syntax. The generated JavaScript files will be located in the js directory. The tsconfig.json file may include the files section that lists the files that have to be compiled by TypeScript. Listing B.1 doesn't include this list because you use the rootDir option to request the compilation of all files starting from the root directory of the project.

If you want to exclude some of your project's files from compilation, add the exclude property to tsconfig.json. This is how you can exclude the entire content of the node\_modules directory:

```
"exclude": [  
    "node_modules"  
]
```

You can read more about configuring the compilation process and the TypeScript compiler's options at in the TypeScript documentation (<http://mng.bz/rf14>).

**NOTE** Most of the Angular examples in this book use *annotations* (a.k.a. *decorators*) with classes or class members (such as @Component and @Input). Annotations are a way to add metadata to the annotated classes or their members. See the “What’s metadata?” sidebar in section 2.1.1 for more details.

## B.4 *TypeScript as a superset of JavaScript*

TypeScript fully supports ES5 and most of the ES6 syntax. Just change the name extension of a file with JavaScript code from .js to .ts, and it'll become valid TypeScript code. The only two exceptions we've seen so far are handling optional function parameters and assigning a value to an object literal.

In JavaScript, even if a function is declared with two parameters, you can invoke it by providing only one, whereas in TypeScript you need to append a question mark to the parameter name to make it optional. In JavaScript, you can initialize a variable with an empty object literal and immediately attach a property using dot notation, whereas in TypeScript you'd need to use square brackets.

But these differences are minor. What's more important is that because it's a superset of JavaScript, TypeScript adds a number of useful features to JavaScript. We'll review them next.

**TIP** If you're in the middle of converting a JavaScript project to TypeScript, you can use the tsc compiler's --allowJs option. The TypeScript compiler will check the input .js files for syntax errors and emit valid output based on the --target and --module options of tsc. The output can be combined with other .ts files as well. Source maps are still generated for .js files, just as with .ts files.

## B.5 *Optional types*

You can declare variables and provide types for all or some of them. The following two lines are valid TypeScript syntax:

```
var name1 = 'John Smith';

var name2: string = 'John Smith';
```

If you use types, TypeScript's transpiler can detect mismatched types during development, and IDEs will offer code completion and refactoring support. This will increase your productivity on any decent-sized project. Even if you don't use types in declarations, TypeScript will guess the type based on the assigned value and will still do type checking afterward. This is called *type inference*.

The following fragment of TypeScript code shows that you can't assign a numeric value to a name1 variable that was meant to be a string, even though it was initially declared without a type (JavaScript syntax). After initializing this variable with a string value, the inferred typing won't let you assign the numeric value to name1. The same rule applies to the variable name2, which is declared with an explicit type:

```
var name1 = 'John Smith';
name1 = 123;                                ← Assigning a value of a different type to a
                                              variable is valid in JavaScript but invalid in
                                              TypeScript because of the inferred type.

var name2: string = 'John Smith';
name2 = 123;                                ← Assigning a value of a different type to a variable
                                              is valid in JavaScript but invalid in TypeScript
                                              because of the explicitly declared type.
```

In TypeScript, you can declare typed variables, function parameters, and return values. There are four keywords for declaring basic types: number, boolean, string, and void. The latter indicates the absence of a return value in a function declaration. A variable can have a value of type null or undefined, similar to JavaScript.

Here are some examples of variables declared with explicit types:

```
var salary: number;
var name: string = "Alex";
var isValid: boolean;
var customerName: string = null;
```

All of these types are subtypes of the any type. If you don't specify a type while declaring a variable or a function argument, TypeScript's compiler will assume that it has the type any, which will allow you to assign any value to this variable or function argument. You may as well explicitly declare a variable, specifying any as its type. In this case, inferred typing isn't applied. Both of these declarations are valid:

```
var name2: any = 'John Smith';
name2 = 123;
```

If variables are declared with explicit types, the compiler will check their values to ensure that they match the declarations. TypeScript includes other types that are used in interactions with the web browser, such as HTMLElement and Document.

If you define a class or an interface, it can be used as a custom type in variable declarations. We'll introduce classes and interfaces later, but first let's get familiar with TypeScript functions, which are the most-used constructs in JavaScript.

### B.5.1 Functions

TypeScript functions (and function expressions) are similar to JavaScript functions, but you can explicitly declare parameter types and return values. Let's write a JavaScript function that calculates tax. It'll have three parameters and will calculate tax based on the state, income, and number of dependents. For each dependent, the person is entitled to a \$500 or \$300 tax deduction, depending on the state the person lives in.

#### **Listing B.2 Calculating tax in JavaScript**

```
function calcTax(state, income, dependents) {
    if (state == 'NY') {
        return income * 0.06 - dependents * 500;
    } else if (state == 'NJ') {
        return income * 0.05 - dependents * 300;
    }
}
```

Say a person with an income of \$50,000 lives in the state of New Jersey and has two dependents. Let's invoke `calcTax()`:

```
var tax = calcTax('NJ', 50000, 2);
```

The `tax` variable gets the value of 1,900, which is correct. Even though `calcTax()` doesn't declare any types for the function parameters, you can guess them based on the parameter names.

Now let's invoke it the wrong way, passing a string value for a number of dependents:

```
var tax = calcTax('NJ', 50000, 'two');
```

You won't know there's a problem until you invoke this function. The `tax` variable will have a `Nan` value (not a number). A bug sneaked in just because you didn't have a chance to explicitly specify the types of the parameters. Let's rewrite this function in TypeScript, declaring types for parameters and the return value.

#### **Listing B.3 Calculating tax in TypeScript**

```
function calcTax(state: string, income: number, dependents: number): number{

    if (state == 'NY'){
        return income*0.06 - dependents*500;
    } else if (state=='NJ'){
        return income*0.05 - dependents*300;
    }
}
```

Now there's no way to make the same mistake and pass a string value for the number of dependents:

```
var tax: number = calcTax('NJ', 50000, 'two');
```

The TypeScript compiler will display an error saying, “Argument of type ‘string’ is not assignable to parameter of type ‘number’.” Moreover, the return value of the function is declared as number, which stops you from making another mistake and assigning the result of the tax calculations to a non-numeric variable:

```
var tax: string = calcTax('NJ', 50000, 'two');
```

The compiler will catch this, producing the error “The type ‘number’ is not assignable to type ‘string’: var tax: string.” This kind of type-checking during compilation can save you a lot of time on any project.

### B.5.2 Default parameters

While declaring a function, you can specify default parameter values. The only limitation is that parameters with default values can't be followed by required parameters. In listing B.3, to provide NY as a default value for the state parameter, you *can't* declare it as follows:

```
function calcTax(state: string = 'NY', income: number, dependents: number):  
  => number{  
    // the code goes here  
  }
```

You need to change the order of the parameters to ensure that there are no required parameters after the default one:

```
function calcTax(income: number, dependents: number, state: string = 'NY'):  
  => number{  
    // the code goes here  
  }
```

There's no need to change even one line of code in the body of calcTax(). You now have the freedom to invoke it with either two or three parameters:

```
var tax: number = calcTax(50000, 2);  
// or  
var tax: number = calcTax(50000, 2, 'NY');
```

The results of both invocations will be the same.

### B.5.3 Optional parameters

In TypeScript, you can easily mark function parameters as optional by appending a question mark to the parameter name. The only restriction is that optional parameters must

come last in the function declaration. When you write code for functions with optional parameters, you need to provide application logic that handles the cases when the optional parameters aren't provided.

Let's modify the tax-calculation function: if no dependents are specified, it won't apply any deduction to the calculated tax.

#### Listing B.4 Calculating tax in TypeScript, modified

```
function calcTax(income: number, state: string = 'NY', dependents?: number): number{
    var deduction: number;

    if (dependents) { ←———— Handles the optional value in dependents
        deduction = dependents*500;
    } else {
        deduction = 0;
    }

    if (state == 'NY') {
        return income*0.06 - deduction;
    } else if (state=='NJ'){
        return income*0.05 - deduction;
    }
}

var tax: number = calcTax(50000, 'NJ', 3);
console.log("Your tax is " + tax);

var tax: number = calcTax(50000);
console.log("Your tax is " + tax);
```

Note the question mark in `dependents?: number`. Now the function checks whether the value for `dependents` was provided. If it wasn't, you assign 0 to the `deduction` variable; otherwise, you deduct 500 for each dependent.

Running listing B.4 will produce the following output:

```
Your tax is 1000
Your tax is 3000
```

#### B.5.4 Arrow-function expressions

TypeScript supports simplified syntax for using anonymous functions in expressions. There's no need to use the `function` keyword, and the fat-arrow symbol (`=>`) is used to separate function parameters from the body. TypeScript supports the ES6 syntax for arrow functions (appendix A has more details on arrow functions). In some other programming languages, arrow functions are known as *lambda expressions*.

Let's look at the simplest example of an arrow function with a single-line body:

```
var getName = () => 'John Smith';
console.log(getName());
```

The empty parentheses denote that the preceding arrow function has no parameters. A single-line arrow expression doesn't need curly braces or an explicit return statement, and the preceding code fragment will print "John Smith" on the console. If you try that code in TypeScript's playground, it'll convert it to the following ES5 code:

```
var getName = function () { return 'John Smith'; };
console.log(getName());
```

If the body of your arrow function consists of multiple lines, you'll have to enclose it in curly braces and use the `return` statement. The following code snippet converts a hardcoded string value to uppercase and prints "PETER LUGER" on the console:

```
var getNameUpper = () => {
    var name = 'Peter Luger'.toUpperCase();
    return name;
}
console.log(getNameUpper());
```

In addition to providing a shorter syntax, arrow-function expressions remove the infamous confusion with the `this` keyword. In JavaScript, if you use the `this` keyword in a function, it may not point at the object where the function is being invoked. That can result in runtime bugs and require additional time for debugging. Let's look at an example.

Listing B.5 has two functions: `StockQuoteGeneratorArrow()` and `StockQuoteGeneratorAnonymous()`. Each second, both of these functions invoke `Math.random()` to generate a random price for the stock symbol provided as a parameter. Internally, `StockQuoteGeneratorArrow()` uses the arrow-function syntax, providing the argument for `setInterval()`, whereas `StockQuoteGeneratorAnonymous()` uses the anonymous function.

#### Listing B.5 Using an arrow-function expression

**Assigns the stock symbol to `this.symbol`**

```
function StockQuoteGeneratorArrow(symbol: string) {
    this.symbol = symbol;

    setInterval(() => {
        console.log("StockQuoteGeneratorArrow. The price quote for " +
            this.symbol
            + " is " + Math.random());
    }, 1000);
}

var stockQuoteGeneratorArrow = new StockQuoteGeneratorArrow("IBM");

function StockQuoteGeneratorAnonymous(symbol: string) {
```

**Uses the arrow function as the argument of `setInterval()` to invoke it every second (1,000 milliseconds)**

```

Assigns the stock symbol  
to this.symbol
this.symbol = symbol; ←

Uses the anonymous function as  
the argument of setInterval()
setInterval(function () { ←
    console.log(" StockQuoteGeneratorAnonymous.The price quote for " + ←
        this.symbol ←
        + " is " + Math.random()); ←
}, 1000); ←
}

var stockQuoteGeneratorAnonymous = new StockQuoteGeneratorAnonymous("IBM");

```

In both cases, you assign the stock symbol (“IBM”) to the `symbol` variable on the `this` object. But with the arrow function, the reference to the instance of the `StockQuoteGeneratorArrow()` constructor function is automatically saved in a separate variable; when you refer to `this.symbol` from the arrow function, it properly finds it and uses “IBM” in the console output.

But when the anonymous function is invoked in the browser, `this` points at the global `Window` object, which doesn’t have the `symbol` property. Running this code in the web browser will print something like this every second:

```

StockQuoteGeneratorArrow. The price quote for IBM is 0.2998261866159737
StockQuoteGeneratorAnonymous.The price quote for undefined is
➥ 0.9333276399411261

```

As you see, when you use the arrow function, it recognizes IBM as the stock symbol, but it’s `undefined` in the anonymous function.

**NOTE** TypeScript replaces the `this` in the arrow function expression with a reference to the outer scope’s `this` by passing in the reference. This is why the code in the arrow in `StockQuoteGeneratorArrow()` properly sees `this.symbol` from the outer scope.

Our next topic is TypeScript classes, but let’s take a brief pause and summarize what we’ve covered so far:

- Typescript code is compiled into JavaScript using the `tsc` compiler.
- TypeScript allows you to declare the types of variables, function parameters, and return values.
- Functions can have parameters with default values and optional parameters.
- Arrow-function expressions offer a shorter syntax for declaring anonymous functions.
- Arrow-function expressions eliminate the uncertainty in using the `this` object reference.

### Function overloading

JavaScript doesn't support function overloading, so having several functions with the same name but different lists of arguments isn't possible. The TypeScript creators introduced function overloading, but because the code has to be transpiled into a single JavaScript function, the syntax for overloading isn't elegant.

You can declare several signatures of a function with one and only one body, where you need to check the number and types of the arguments and execute the appropriate portion of the code:

```
function attr(name: string): string;
function attr(name: string, value: string): void;
function attr(map: any): void;
function attr(nameOrMap: any, value?: string): any {
    if (nameOrMap && typeof nameOrMap === "string") {
        // handle string case
    } else {
        // handle map case
    }

    // handle value here
}
```

## B.6 Classes

If you have Java or C# experience, you'll be familiar with the concepts of classes and inheritance in their classical form. In those languages, the definition of a class is loaded in memory as a separate entity (like a blueprint) and is shared by all instances of this class. If a class is inherited from another one, the object is instantiated using the combined blueprint of both classes.

TypeScript is a superset of JavaScript, which only supports *prototypal inheritance*, where you can create an inheritance hierarchy by attaching one object to the *prototype* property of another. In this case, an inheritance (or rather, a linkage) of *objects* is created dynamically.

In TypeScript, the `class` keyword is syntactic sugar to simplify coding. In the end, your classes will be transpiled into JavaScript objects with prototypal inheritance. In JavaScript, you can declare a constructor function and instantiate it with the `new` keyword. In TypeScript, you can also declare a class and instantiate it with the `new` operator.

A class can include a constructor, fields (a.k.a. properties), and methods. Properties and methods declared are often referred as *class members*. We'll illustrate the syntax of TypeScript classes by showing you a series of code samples and comparing them with the equivalent ES5 syntax.

Let's create a simple `Person` class that contains four properties to store the first and last name, age, and Social Security number (a unique identifier assigned to every legal resident of the United States). At left in figure B.4 you can see the TypeScript

```

1 class Person {
2   firstName: string;
3   lastName: string;
4   age: number;
5   ssn: string;
6 }
7
8 var p = new Person();
9
10 p.firstName = "John";
11 p.lastName = "Smith";
12 p.age = 29;
13 p.ssn = "123-90-4567";

```

```

1 var Person = (function () {
2   function Person() {
3   }
4   return Person;
5 })();
6 var p = new Person();
7 p.firstName = "John";
8 p.lastName = "Smith";
9 p.age = 29;
10 p.ssn = "123-90-4567";
11

```

**Figure B.4** Transpiling a TypeScript class into a JavaScript closure

code that declares and instantiates the `Person` class; on the right is a JavaScript closure generated by the `tsc` compiler. By creating a closure for the `Person` function, the TypeScript compiler enables the mechanism for exposing and hiding the elements of the `Person` object.

TypeScript also supports class constructors that allow you to initialize object variables while instantiating the object. A class constructor is invoked only once during object creation. The left side of figure B.5 shows the next version of the `Person` class, which uses the `constructor` keyword that initializes the fields of the class with the values given to the constructor. The generated ES5 version is shown on the right.

Some JavaScript developers may see little value in using classes, because they can easily program the same functionality using constructor functions and closures. But people who are just starting with JavaScript will find the syntax of classes easier to read and write, compared to constructor functions and closures.

```

1 class Person {
2   firstName: string;
3   lastName: string;
4   age: number;
5   ssn: string;
6
7   constructor(firstName:string, lastName: string,
8             age: number, ssn: string) {
9
10     this.firstName = firstName;
11     this.lastName;
12     this.age = age;
13     this.ssn = ssn;
14   }
15 }
16
17 var p = new Person("John", "Smith", 29, "123-90-4567");

```

```

1 var Person = (function () {
2   function Person(firstName, lastName, age, ssn) {
3     this.firstName = firstName;
4     this.lastName;
5     this.age = age;
6     this.ssn = ssn;
7   }
8   return Person;
9 })();
10 var p = new Person("John", "Smith", 29, "123-90-4567");
11

```

**Figure B.5** Transpiling a TypeScript class with constructor

### B.6.1 Access modifiers

JavaScript doesn't have a way to declare a variable or a method as *private* (hidden from external code). To hide a property (or a method) in an object, you need to create a closure that neither attaches this property to the `this` variable nor returns it in the closure's return statement.

TypeScript provides `public`, `protected`, and `private` keywords to help you control access to the object's members during the development phase. By default, all class members have `public` access, and they're visible from outside the class. If a member is declared with the `protected` modifier, it's visible in the class and its subclasses. Class members declared as `private` are visible only in the class.

Let's use the `private` keyword to hide the value of the `ssn` property so it can't be directly accessed from outside of the `Person` object. We'll show you two versions of declaring a class with properties that use access modifiers. The longer version of the class looks like this.

#### Listing B.6 Using a private property

```
class Person {  
    public firstName: string;  
    public lastName: string;  
    public age: number;  
    private _ssn: string;  
  
    constructor(firstName:string, lastName: string, age: number, ssn: string) {  
        this.firstName = firstName;  
        this.lastName = lastName;  
        this.age = age;  
        this._ssn = ssn;  
    }  
}  
  
var p = new Person("John", "Smith", 29, "123-90-4567");  
console.log("Last name: " + p.lastName + " SSN: " + p._ssn);
```

Note that the name of the private variable starts with an underscore: `_ssn`. This is just a naming convention for private properties.

The last line of listing B.6 attempts to access the `_ssn` private property from outside, so the TypeScript code analyzer will give you a compilation error: “Property ‘ssn’ is private and is only accessible in class ‘Person’”. But unless you use the `--noEmitOnError` compiler option, the erroneous code will still transpile into JavaScript:

```
var Person = (function () {  
    function Person(firstName, lastName, age, _ssn) {  
        this.firstName = firstName;  
        this.lastName = lastName;  
        this.age = age;  
        this._ssn = _ssn;  
    }  
}
```

```

        return Person;
})();

var p = new Person("John", "Smith", 29, "123-90-4567");
console.log("Last name: " + p.lastName + " SSN: " + p._ssn);

```

The keyword `private` only makes it private in the TypeScript code. IDEs won't show private members in the context-sensitive help when you try to access properties of an object from outside, but the production JavaScript code will treat all properties and methods of the class as public anyway.

TypeScript allows you to provide access modifiers with the constructor's arguments, as shown in the following short version of the `Person` class.

#### **Listing B.7 Using access modifiers**

```

class Person {

    constructor(public firstName: string,
                public lastName: string, public age: number, private _ssn: string) {
    }
}

var p = new Person("John", "Smith", 29, "123-90-4567");

```

When you use a constructor with access modifiers, the TypeScript compiler takes it as an instruction to create and retain the class properties matching the constructor's arguments. You don't need to explicitly declare and initialize them. Both the short and long versions of the `Person` class generate the same JavaScript.

### **B.6.2 Methods**

When a function is declared in a class, it's called a *method*. In JavaScript, you need to declare methods on the prototype of an object; but with a class you declare a method by specifying a name followed by parentheses and curly braces, as you would in other object-oriented languages.

The next code snippet shows how you can declare and use a `MyClass` class with a `doSomething()` method that has one argument and no return value.

#### **Listing B.8 Creating a method**

```

class MyClass{

    doSomething(howManyTimes: number): void{
        // do something here
    }
}

var mc = new MyClass();
mc.doSomething(5);

```

### Static and instance members

The code of listing B.8, as well as the class shown in figure B.4, creates an instance of the class first and then accesses its members using a reference variable that points at this instance:

```
mc.doSomething(5);
```

If a class property or method were declared with the keyword `static`, its values would be shared between all instances of the class, and you wouldn't need to create an instance to access static members. Instead of using a reference variable (such as `mc`), you'd use the name of the class:

```
class MyClass{

    static doSomething(howManyTimes: number): void{
        // do something here
    }
}

MyClass.doSomething(5);
```

If you instantiate a class and need to invoke a class method from within another method declared in the same class, you must use the `this` keyword (for example, `this.doSomething(5)`). In other programming languages, using `this` in the class code is optional, but the TypeScript compiler will complain that it can't find the method if `this` isn't explicitly used.

Let's add public setter and getter methods to the `Person` class to set and get the value of `_ssn`.

#### Listing B.9 Adding a setter and a getter

```
class Person {
    constructor(public firstName: string,
                public lastName: string, public age: number, private _ssn?: string) { ←
    }

    get ssn(): string{           ←— Getter method
        return this._ssn;
    }

    set ssn(value: string){     ←— Setter method
        this._ssn = value;
    }
}

var p = new Person("John", "Smith", 29);
p.ssn = "456-70-1234";           ←— Assigns the value to _ssn after
                                creating the instance of the Person
                                object using the ssn setter

console.log("Last name: " + p.lastName + " SSN: " + p.ssn);
```

In listing B.9, the getter and setter don't contain any application logic; but in real-world applications, these methods would perform validation. For example, the code in the getter and setter may check whether the caller is authorized to get or set the value of `_ssn`.

**NOTE** Getters and setters are supported in JavaScript as well, starting with the ES5 specification.

Note that in the methods, you use the `this` keyword to access the property of the object. It's mandatory in TypeScript.

### B.6.3 Inheritance

JavaScript supports prototypal *object-based* inheritance, where one object can use another object as a prototype. TypeScript has the keyword `extends` for inheritance of classes, like ES6 and other object-oriented languages. But during transpiling to JavaScript, the generated code uses the syntax of the prototypal inheritance.

Figure B.6 shows how to create an `Employee` class (line 9) that extends the class `Person` (shown in a screenshot from the TypeScript playground). On the right, you can see the transpiled JavaScript version, which uses prototypal inheritance. The TypeScript version of the code is more concise and easier to read.

```

TypeScript Select... Share Run JavaScript
1 class Person {
2
3   constructor(public firstName: string,
4     public lastName: string, public age: number,
5     private _ssn: string) {
6   }
7 }
8
9 class Employee extends Person{
10
11 }

```

```

1 var __extends = this.__extends || function (d, b) {
2   for (var p in b) if (b.hasOwnProperty(p)) d[p] = b[p];
3   function __() { this.constructor = d; }
4   __.prototype = b.prototype;
5   d.prototype = new __();
6 };
7 var Person = (function () {
8   function Person(firstName, lastName, age, _ssn) {
9     this.firstName = firstName;
10    this.lastName = lastName;
11    this.age = age;
12    this._ssn = _ssn;
13  }
14  return Person;
15 })();
16 var Employee = (function (_super) {
17   __extends(Employee, _super);
18   function Employee() {
19     _super.apply(this, arguments);
20   }
21   return Employee;
22 })(Person);

```

Figure B.6 Class inheritance in TypeScript

Let's add a constructor and a `department` property to the `Employee` class.

#### Listing B.10 Using inheritance

```
class Employee extends Person{
  department: string;
```

← Declares a property `department`

```
constructor(firstName: string, lastName: string,
            age: number, _ssn: string, department: string) {
    super(firstName, lastName, age, _ssn); ←
    this.department = department;
}

} A subclass that declares a
constructor must invoke the
constructor of the superclass.
```

**Creates a constructor that has an additional department argument**

If you invoke a method declared in a superclass on the object of the subclass type, you can use the name of this method as if it were declared in the subclass. But sometimes you want to specifically call the method of the superclass, and this is when you should use the `super` keyword.

The `super` keyword can be used two ways. In the constructor of a derived class, you invoke it as a method. You can also use the `super` keyword to specifically call a method of the superclass. It's typically used with method overriding. For example, if both a superclass and its descendant have a `doSomething()` method, the descendant can reuse the functionality programmed in the superclass and add other functionality as well:

```
doSomething() {
    super.doSomething();

    // Add more functionality here
}
```

You can read more about the `super` keyword in section A.7.4. We're halfway through this appendix, so let's take a breather and review what you've learned so far:

- Even though you can write Angular applications using JavaScript's ES5 or ES6 syntax, using TypeScript has benefits during the development stage of your project.
- TypeScript allows you to declare the types of the primitive variables as well as to develop custom types. Transpilers erase the information about types, so your applications can be deployed in any browser that supports the syntax of ECMAScript 3, 5, or 6.
- The TypeScript compiler turns `.ts` files into their `.js` counterparts. You can start the compiler in watch mode so this transformation will be initiated on any change in any `.ts` file.
- TypeScript classes make the code more declarative. The concept of classes and inheritance is well known to developers who use other object-oriented languages.
- Access modifiers help control access to class members during development, but they aren't as strict as they are in languages such as Java and C#.

We'll continue introducing more TypeScript syntax constructs starting in the next section; but if you're eager to see how TypeScript and Angular work together, feel free to jump to section B.9.

## B.7 Generics

TypeScript supports parameterized types, also known as *generics*, which can be used in a variety of scenarios. For example, you can create a function that can take values of any type, but during its invocation in a particular context you can explicitly specify a concrete type.

Take another example: an array can hold objects of any type, but you can specify which particular object types (for example, instances of `Person`) are allowed in an array. If you (or someone else) were to try to add an object of a different type, the TypeScript compiler would generate an error.

The following code snippet declares a `Person` class, creates two instances of it, and stores them in the `workers` array declared with the generic type. Generic types are denoted by placing them in the angle brackets (for example, `<Person>`).

### Listing B.11 Using a generic type

```
class Person {
    name: string;
}

class Employee extends Person{
    department: number;
}

class Animal {
    breed: string;
}

var workers: Array<Person> = [] ;

workers[0] = new Person();
workers[1] = new Employee();
workers[2] = new Animal(); // compile-time error
```

In this code snippet, you declare the `Person`, `Employee`, and `Animal` classes and a `workers` array with the generic type `<Person>`. By doing this, you announce your plans to store only instances of the class `Person` or its descendants. An attempt to store an instance of an `Animal` in the same array will result in a compile-time error.

If you work in an organization that allows animal workers (such as police dogs), you can change the declaration of `workers` as follows:

```
var workers: Array<any> = [] ;
```

**NOTE** You'll see another example of using generics in section B.8. There you'll declare a `workers` array of the interface type.

Can you use generic types with any object or a function? No. The creator of the object or function has to allow this feature. If you open TypeScript's type definition file (lib.d.ts) on GitHub at <http://mng.bz/I3V7> and search for "interface Array," you'll see the declaration of the `Array`, as shown in figure B.7. (Type definition files are explained in section B.10.)

The `<T>` in line 1008 means TypeScript allows you to declare a type parameter with `Array` and the compiler will check for the specific type provided in your program. Listing B.11 specifies this generic `<T>` parameter as `<Person>`. But because generics aren't supported in ES6, you won't see them in the code generated by the transpiler. It's just an additional safety net for developers at compile time.

You can see another `T` in line 1022 in figure B.7. When generic types are specified with function arguments, no angle brackets are needed. But there's no actual `T` type in TypeScript. The `T` here means the `push` method lets you push objects of a specific type into an array, as in the following example:

```
workers.push(new Person());
```

In this section, we've illustrated just one use case for working with generic types with an array that already supports generics. You can create your own classes or functions

```
1004 //////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////
1005 /// ECMAScript Array API (specially handled by compiler)
1006 //////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////
1007
1008 interface Array<T> {
1009   /**
1010    * Gets or sets the length of the array. This is a number one higher than the last index.
1011    */
1012   length: number;
1013   /**
1014    * Returns a string representation of an array.
1015    */
1016   toString(): string;
1017  toLocaleString(): string;
1018   /**
1019    * Appends new elements to an array, and returns the new length of the array.
1020    * @param items New elements of the Array.
1021    */
1022   push(...items: T[]): number;
1023   /**
1024    * Removes the last element from an array and returns it.
1025    */
1026   pop(): T;
1027   /**
1028    * Combines two or more arrays.
1029    * @param items Additional items to add to the end of array1.
1030    */
```

**Figure B.7** The fragment of lib.d.ts describing the `Array` API

that support generics as well. If somewhere in the code you try to invoke the function `saySomething()` and provide a wrong argument type, the TypeScript compiler will give you an error:

```
function saySomething<T>(data: T) {
}
saySomething<string>("Hello");
saySomething<string>(123);
```

**Replaces T with a string**

**Produces a compiler error because 123 isn't a string**

The generated JavaScript won't include any generic information, and the preceding code snippet will be transpiled into the following code:

```
function saySomething(data) {
}
saySomething("Hello");
saySomething(123);
```

If you'd like to learn about generics in depth, refer to the "Generics" section in the TypeScript Handbook (<http://mng.bz/447K>).

## B.8 Interfaces

JavaScript doesn't support the concept of interfaces, which in other object-oriented languages are used to introduce a *code contract* that an API has to abide by. An example of a contact can be class X declaring that it implements interface Y. If class X won't include an implementation of the methods declared in interface Y, it's considered a violation of the contract and won't compile.

TypeScript includes the keywords `interface` and `implements` to support interfaces, but interfaces aren't transpiled into JavaScript code. They just help you avoid using the wrong types during development.

In TypeScript, there are two patterns for using interfaces:

- Declare an interface that defines a custom type containing a number of properties. Then declare a method that has an argument of such a type. The compiler will check when this method is invoked that the object given as an argument includes all the properties declared in the interface.
- Declare an interface that includes abstract (non-implemented) methods. When a class declares that it `implements` this interface, the class must provide an implementation for all the abstract methods.

Let's consider these two patterns by example.

### B.8.1 Declaring custom types with interfaces

When you use JavaScript frameworks, you may run into an API that requires some sort of configuration object as a function parameter. To figure out which properties must

be provided in this configuration object, you need to either open the documentation for the API or read the source code of the framework. In TypeScript, you can declare an interface that includes all the properties, and their types, that must be present in a configuration object.

Let's see how this can be done in the `Person` class, which contains a constructor with four arguments: `firstName`, `lastName`, `age`, and `ssn`. This time, you'll declare an `IPerson` interface that contains the four members, and you'll modify the constructor of the `Person` class to use an object of this custom type as an argument.

#### Listing B.12 Declaring an interface

```
interface IPerson {
    firstName: string;
    lastName: string;
    age: number;
    ssn?: string;
}

class Person {
    constructor(public config: IPerson) {}
}

var aPerson: IPerson = {
    firstName: "John",
    lastName: "Smith",
    age: 29
}

var p = new Person(aPerson);
console.log("Last name: " + p.config.lastName);
```

The code in Listing B.12 illustrates the declaration of an `IPerson` interface and its use in a `Person` class. Annotations explain the following parts:

- IPerson Interface Declaration:** The first part of the code defines an `IPerson` interface with three required properties: `firstName`, `lastName`, and `age`, and one optional property `ssn` marked with a question mark. A callout points to this section with the text: "Declares an `IPerson` interface with `ssn` as an optional member (note the question mark)".
- Person Class Construction:** The `Person` class has a constructor that takes a single argument of type `IPerson`. A callout points to this section with the text: "The class `Person` has a constructor with one argument of type `IPerson`".
- aPerson Object Literal:** An `aPerson` variable is declared as an object literal with properties `firstName`, `lastName`, and `age`. A callout points to this section with the text: "Creates an `aPerson` object literal with members compatible with `IPerson`".
- Person Object Instantiation:** The `aPerson` object is passed as an argument to the `Person` constructor to create a new `p` object. A callout points to this section with the text: "Instantiates the `Person` object, providing an object of type `IPerson` as an argument".

TypeScript has a structural type system, which means if two different types include the same members, the types are considered compatible. Having the same members means the members have the same names and types. In listing B.12, even if you didn't specify the type of the `aPerson` variable, it still would be considered compatible with `IPerson` and could be used as a constructor argument while instantiating the `Person` object.

If you change the name or type of one of the members of `IPerson`, the TypeScript compiler will report an error. On the other hand, if you try to instantiate a `Person` that contains an object with all the required members of `IPerson` and some other members, it won't raise a red flag. You could use the following object as a constructor argument for a `Person`:

```
var anEmployee: IPerson = {
    firstName: "John",
    lastName: "Smith",
```

```
    age: 29,
    department: "HR"
}
```

The department member wasn't defined in the `IPerson` interface, but as long as the object has all other members listed in the interface, the contract terms are fulfilled.

The `IPerson` interface didn't define any methods, but TypeScript interfaces can include method signatures without implementations.

### B.8.2 Using the `implements` keyword

The `implements` keyword can be used with a class declaration to announce that the class will implement a particular interface. Say you have an `IPayable` interface that's declared as follows:

```
interface IPayable{
  increase_cap:number;

  increasePay(percent: number): boolean
}
```

Now the `Employee` class can declare that it implements `IPayable`:

```
class Employee implements IPayable{

  // The implementation goes here
}
```

Before going into implementation details, let's answer this question: "Why not just write all required code in the class rather than separating a portion of the code into an interface?" Let's say you need to write an application that lets you increase salaries for the employees of your organization. You can create an `Employee` class (that extends `Person`) and include the `increaseSalary()` method there. Then the business analysts may ask you to add the ability to increase pay to contractors who work for your firm. But contractors are represented by their company names and IDs; they have no notion of salary and are paid on an hourly basis.

You can create another class, `Contractor` (not inherited from `Person`), that includes some properties and an `increaseHourlyRate()` method. Now you have two different APIs: one for increasing the salary of employees, and another for increasing the pay for contractors. A better solution is to create a common `IPayable` interface and have `Employee` and `Contractor` classes provide *different implementations* of `IPayable` for these classes, as illustrated next.

#### **Listing B.13 Using multiple interface implementations**

```
interface IPayable{
  increasePay(percent: number): boolean
}
```

The `IPayable` interface includes the signature of the `increasePay()` method that will be implemented by the `Employee` and `Contractor` classes.

```

class Person {
    // properties are omitted for brevity

    constructor() {
    }
}

class Employee extends Person implements IPayable {
    increasePay(percent: number): boolean {
        console.log("Increasing salary by " + percent)
        return true;
    }
}

class Contractor implements IPayable {
    increaseCap: number = 20;

    increasePay(percent: number): boolean {
        if (percent < this.increaseCap) {
            console.log("Increasing hourly rate by " + percent)
            return true;
        } else {
            console.log("Sorry, the increase cap for contractors is",
                this.increaseCap);
            return false;
        }
    }
}

var workers: Array<IPayable> = [];
workers[0] = new Employee();
workers[1] = new Contractor();

workers.forEach(worker => worker.increasePay(30));

```

**The Person class serves as a base class for Employee.**

**The Employee class inherits from Person and implements the IPayable interface. A class can implement multiple interfaces.**

**The Employee class implements the increasePay() method. The salary of an employee can be increased by any amount, so the method just prints the message on the console and returns true (allowing the increase).**

**The Contractor class includes a property that places a cap of 20% on pay increases.**

**The implementation of increasePay() in the Contractor class is different. Invoking increasePay() with an argument that's more than 20 results in the "Sorry" message and a return value of false.**

**Declaring the array with the <IPayable> generic lets you place any objects of the IPayable type there (but see the following annotation).**

**Now you can invoke the increasePay() method on any object in the workers array. Note that you don't use parentheses with the arrow-function expression that has a single worker argument.**

Running listing B.13 produces the following output on the browser's console:

```

Increasing salary by 30
Sorry, the increase cap for contractors is 20

```

### Why declare classes with the implements keyword?

Listing B.13 illustrates the structural subtyping of TypeScript. If you remove implements Payable from the declaration of either Employee or Contractor, the code will still work, and the compiler won't complain about lines that add these objects to the workers array. The compiler is smart enough to see that even if the class doesn't explicitly declare implements IPayable, it implements increasePay() properly.

**(continued)**

But if you remove `implements IPayable` and try to change the signature of the `increasePay()` method from any of the classes, you won't be able to place such an object into the `workers` array, because that object would no longer be of the `IPayable` type. Also, without the `implements` keyword, IDE support (such as for refactoring) will be broken.

### B.8.3 Using callable interfaces

TypeScript has an interesting feature known as a *callable interface* that contains a *bare* function signature (a signature without a function name). The following example shows a bare function signature that takes one parameter of type `number` and returns a `boolean`:

```
(percent: number): boolean;
```

The bare function signature indicates that the instance of the interface is callable. In listing B.14, we'll show you a different version of declaring `IPayable`, which contains a bare function signature. For brevity, we've removed the inheritance in this example. You'll declare separate functions that implement rules for pay increase for employees and contractors. These functions will be passed as arguments and invoked by the constructor of the `Person` class.

**Listing B.14 Callable interface with a bare function**

```
interface IPayable {
    (percent: number): boolean;           ← Callable interface that includes
}                                         a bare function signature

class Person {
    constructor(private validator: IPayable) { ← The constructor of the Person class
        }                                         takes an implementation of the callable
                                                interface IPayable as an argument.

    increasePay(percent: number): boolean { ← The increasePay() method invokes the
        return this.validator(percent);       bare function on the passed
    }                                         implementation of IPayable, supplying
                                                the pay increase value for validation.

    var forEmployees: IPayable = (percent) => { ← The rules for salary
        console.log("Increasing salary by ", percent);
        return true;
    };

    var forContractors: IPayable = (percent) => { ← The rules for pay increases for
        var increaseCap: number = 20;
        if (percent < increaseCap) {           contractors are implemented using
            console.log("Increasing hourly rate by", percent);
            return true;
        }
    };
}
```

```

    } else {
        console.log("Sorry, the increase cap for contractors is ",
        ↪ increaseCap);
        return false;
    }
}

var workers: Array<Person> = [];
workers[0] = new Person(forEmployees);
workers[1] = new Person(forContractors);
workers.forEach(worker => worker.increasePay(30));

```

↳ Instantiates two Person objects, passing different rules for pay increases

↳ Invokes increasePay() on each instance, validating the 30% pay increase

Running listing B.14 will generate the following output on the browser's console:

```

Increasing salary by 30
Sorry, the increase cap for contractors is 20

```

Interfaces support inheritance with the `extends` keyword. If a class implements interface A that's extended from interface B, the class must implement all members from A and B.

### Treating classes as interfaces

In TypeScript, you can think of any class as an interface. If you declare `class A {}` and `class B {}`, it's perfectly legal to write `class A implements B {}`. You can see an example of this syntax in section 4.4.

TypeScript interfaces don't generate any output when transpiled to JavaScript, and if you place just an interface declaration into a separate file (such as `ipayable.ts`) and compile it with `tsc`, it will generate an empty `ipayable.js` file. If you load the code that imports the interface from a file (such as from `ipayable.js`) using SystemJS, you'll get an error because you can't import an empty file. You need to let SystemJS know that it has to treat `IPayable` as a module and register it in the global System registry. This can be done while configuring SystemJS by using the `meta` annotation, as shown here:

```

System.config({
    transpiler: 'typescript',
    typescriptOptions: {emitDecoratorMetadata: true},
    packages: {app: {defaultExtension: 'ts'}},
    meta: {
        'app/ipayable.ts': {
            format: 'es6'
        }
    }
}

```

In addition to providing a way to create custom types and minimize the number of type-related errors, the mechanism of interfaces greatly simplifies the implementation of the Dependency Injection design pattern explained in chapter 4.

This concludes our brief introduction to interfaces. You can find more details in the “Interfaces” section of the TypeScript Handbook (<http://mng.bz/spm7>).

**NOTE** The TypeDoc utility is a convenient tool for generating program documentation based on the comments in your TypeScript code. You can get it at [www.npmjs.com/package/typedoc](http://www.npmjs.com/package/typedoc).

We’re almost done with this TypeScript syntax overview. It’s time to bring TypeScript and Angular together.

## B.9 *Adding class metadata with annotations*

There are different definitions of the term *metadata*. The popular definition is that metadata is data about data. We think of metadata as data that describes code. TypeScript decorators provide a way to add metadata to your code. In particular, to turn a TypeScript class into an Angular component, you can *annotate* it with metadata. Annotations start with an @ sign.

To turn a TypeScript class into an Angular UI component, you need to decorate it with the @Component annotation. Angular will internally parse your annotations and generate code that adds the requested behavior to the TypeScript class:

```
@Component({
  // Include here the selector (the name) to identify
  // the component in the HTML document.

  // Provide the template property with the
  // HTML fragment to render the component.
  // Component styling also goes here.
})
class HelloWorldComponent {
  // The code implementing the component's
  // application logic goes here.
}
```

When you use annotations, there should be an annotation processor that can parse the annotation content and turn it into code that the runtime (the browser’s JavaScript engine) understands. In the context of this book, Angular’s compiler ngc performs the duties of the annotation processor.

To use the annotations supported by Angular, you need to import their implementation in your application code. For example, you need to import the @Component annotation from the Angular module:

```
import { Component } from 'angular2/core';
```

Although the implementation of these annotations is done in Angular, you may want a standardized mechanism for creating your own annotations. This is what TypeScript *decorators* are for. Think of it this way: Angular offers you its annotations that let you decorate your code, but TypeScript allows you to create your own annotations with the support of decorators.

## B.10 Type-definition files

For several years, a large repository of TypeScript definition files called *DefinitelyTyped* was the only source of TypeScript type definitions for the new ECMAScript API and for hundreds of popular frameworks and libraries written in JavaScript. The purpose of these files is to let the TypeScript compiler know the types expected by the APIs of these libraries. Although the <http://definitelytyped.org> repository still exists, [npmjs.org](https://npmjs.org) became a new repository for type-definition files, and we use it in all the code samples in this book.

The suffix of any definition filename is *.d.ts*, and you can find the definition files in Angular modules in the subfolders of the `node_modules/@angular` folder after running `npm install` as explained in chapter 2. All required *\*.d.ts* files are bundled with Angular npm packages, and there's no need to install them separately. The presence of the definition files in your project will allow the TypeScript compiler to ensure that your code uses the correct types while invoking the Angular API.

For example, Angular applications are launched by invoking the `bootstrapModule()` method, giving it the root module for your application as an argument. The `application_ref.d.ts` file includes the following definition for this function:

```
bootstrapModule<M>(moduleType: ConcreteType<M>,
compilerOptions?: CompilerOptions | CompilerOptions[]):
Promise<NgModuleRef<M>>;
```

By reading this definition, you (and the `tsc` compiler) know that this function can be invoked with one mandatory parameter of type `ConcreteType` and an optional array of compiler options. If the `application_ref.d.ts` file wasn't a part of your project, TypeScript's compiler would let you invoke the `bootstrapModule` function with a wrong parameter type, or without any parameters at all, which would result in a runtime error. But `application_ref.d.ts` is present, so TypeScript would generate a compile-time error reading "Supplied parameters do not match any signature of call target." Type-definition files also allow IDEs to show context-sensitive help when you're writing code that invokes Angular functions or assigns values to objects' properties.

### B.10.1 Installing type-definition files

To install TypeScript type-definition files for a library or framework written in JavaScript, developers have used type-definition managers: `tsd` and `Typings`. The former was deprecated because it only let us get *\*.d.ts* files from [definitelytyped.org](http://definitelytyped.org). Prior to the release of TypeScript 2.0, we used `Typings` (<https://github.com/typings/typings>), which allowed us to bring in type definitions from an arbitrary repository.

With the release of TypeScript 2.0, there's no need to use type-definition managers for npm-based projects. Now the [npmjs.org](https://npmjs.org) npm repository includes a `@types` organization that stores type definitions for the popular JavaScript libraries. All libraries from [definitelytyped.org](http://definitelytyped.org) are published there.

Let's say you need to install a type-definition file for jQuery. Running the following command will install the type definitions in the node\_modules/@types directory and save this dependency in the package.json file of your project:

```
npm install @types/jquery --save-dev
```

In this book, you'll install type definitions using similar commands in many sample projects. For example, ES6 has introduced the `find()` method for arrays, but if your TypeScript project is configured to use ES5 as a target for compilation, your IDE will highlight the `find()` method in red because ES5 doesn't support it. Installing the type-definition file for `es6-shim` will get rid of the redness in your IDE:

```
npm i @types/es6-shim --save-dev
```

### What if tsc can't find the type-definition file?

At the time of writing (TypeScript 2.0), there's a chance tsc won't find type-definition files located in the node\_modules/@types directory. If you run into this issue, add the required files to the `types` section of `tsconfig.json`. Here's an example:

```
"compilerOptions": {  
    ...  
    "types": ["es6-shim", "jasmine"],  
}
```

### Module resolution and the reference tag

Unless you use CommonJS modules, you'll need to explicitly add a reference to your TypeScript code, pointing at the required type definitions, like this:

```
/// <reference types="typings/jquery.d.ts" />
```

You use CommonJS modules as a tsc option, and each project includes the following option in the `tsconfig.json` file:

```
"module": "commonjs"
```

When tsc sees an `import` statement referring to a module, it automatically tries to find the `<module-name>.d.ts` file in the `node_modules` directory. If that's not found, it goes up one level and repeats the process. You can read more about this in the "Typings for npm Modules" section in the TypeScript Handbook (<http://mng.bz/ih4z>). In upcoming releases of tsc, the same strategy will be implemented for AMD module resolution.

Angular includes all required definition files, and you don't need to use a type-definition manager unless your application uses other third-party JavaScript libraries. In this case, you need to install their definition files manually to get context-sensitive help in your IDE.

Angular uses the ES6 syntax in its d.ts files, and for most modules you can use the following import syntax: `import {Component} from 'angular2/core';`. The definition of the Component class will be found. You'll be importing all other Angular modules and components.

#### CONTROLLING CODE STYLE WITH TSLINT

TSLint is a tool you can use to ensure that your programs are written according to specified rules and coding styles. You can configure TSLint to check that the TypeScript code in your project is properly aligned and indented, that the names of all interfaces start with a capital *I*, that class names use CamelCase notation, and so on.

You can install TSLint globally using the following command:

```
npm install tslint -g
```

To install the TSLint node module in your project directory, run the following command:

```
npm install tslint
```

The rules you want to apply to your code are specified in a `tslint.json` configuration file. A sample rules file comes with TSLint. The file's name is `sample tslint.json`, and it's located in the docs directory. You can turn specific rules on or off as needed.

For details on using TSLint, visit [www.npmjs.com/package/tslint](http://www.npmjs.com/package/tslint). Your IDE may support linting with TSLint out of the box.

#### IDEs

We want to make the content of this book IDE-agnostic, and we don't include instructions specific to any IDE. But several IDEs support TypeScript. The most popular are WebStorm, Visual Studio Code, Sublime Text, and Atom. All of these IDEs and editors work under Windows, Mac OS, and Linux. If you develop your TypeScript/Angular applications on a Windows computer, you can use Visual Studio 2015.

## B.11 An overview of the TypeScript/Angular development process

The process of developing and deploying TypeScript/Angular applications consists of multiple steps, which should be automated as much as possible. There are multiple ways to do that. The following is a sample list of steps that could be performed to create an Angular application:

- 1 Create a directory for your project.
- 2 Create a package.json file that lists all of your application dependencies, such as Angular packages, Jasmine testing frameworks, and so on.

- 3 Install all the packages and libraries listed in package.json using the command `npm install`.
- 4 Write the application code.
- 5 Load your application into the browser with the help of the SystemJS loader, which not only loads, but also transpiles TypeScript into JavaScript in the browser.
- 6 Minimize and bundle your code and resources with the help of Webpack and its plugins.
- 7 Copy all the files into the distribution directory using the npm scripts.

Chapter 2 explains how to start a new Angular project and work with the npm package manager and the SystemJS module loader.

**NOTE** Angular-CLI is a command-line utility that can scaffold your project, generate components and services, and prepare builds. We introduce Angular CLI in chapter 10.

**NOTE** We haven't mentioned the subject of error handling in this appendix, but because TypeScript is a superset of JavaScript, error handling is done the same way as in JavaScript. You can read about different types of errors in the JavaScript Reference article on the `Error` constructor, on the Mozilla Developer Network (<http://mng.bz/FwfO>).

# *index*

---

## Numerics

---

404 errors 76

## A

---

a tag, property binding 72  
AbstractControl class 223, 225  
access modifiers 403–404  
ActivatedRoute object  
  69, 77–79, 134  
ActivatedRouteSnapshot 90  
Adam Abronsa 5  
Adobe Flex, moving to  
  Angular 4  
afterAll() function 281  
afterEach() function 281  
ahead-of-time compilation 50  
all() method 380  
Angular 3  
  and Internet Explorer 25  
  and Node 248–257  
  Angular CLI 334  
  app tag 8  
  AsyncPipe class 252–254  
  basic tasks 18  
  code simplification 8–13  
  CommonJS 8  
  data binding 14  
  dependency injection 13  
  developing in  
    TypeScript 388–420  
  development process 419  
  ECMAScript 6 8  
  Forms API 209–210

generics 12  
import statements 8  
launching applications 31  
moving from Adobe Flex 4  
overview 8–15  
performance  
  improvements 14–15  
security 337  
talking to WebSockets  
  264–268  
template property 9  
templateURL property 9  
testing library 283–287  
tools 15–17  
TypeScript 10  
version used in examples 24  
vs. AngularJS 2–3, 14  
Angular CLI 15, 334–336  
  commands 335  
  files and directories 335  
  ng build 336  
  ng command 335  
  ng generate 336  
  ng serve 336  
  ng test 336  
  starting a new project 335  
  Webpack 334  
Angular testing library 283–287  
  testing components 286  
  testing navigation 285  
  testing services 285  
AngularJS  
  configurable router 5  
  controllers 5  
  custom HTML tags 5  
  data binding 5  
data flow 5  
deep linking 8  
dependency injection 5, 7  
directives 5  
hierarchy of scopes 5  
mapping URL patterns to  
  components 5  
module objects 7  
ng-route 7  
overview 5–8  
sample workflow 5  
single-page web  
  applications 7  
two-way data binding 140  
unintrusive 5  
views 5  
vs. Angular 2–3, 14  
annotations 416  
  @Component 10, 14, 18, 25,  
    27, 33, 59, 85, 111, 113, 123,  
    164, 256, 319  
  @Directive 19, 35, 211  
  @Inject 114, 123  
  @Injectable 10, 256  
  @Input 19, 27, 171–174  
  @NgModule 10, 32, 51,  
    67, 69, 95, 113, 128, 133,  
    257, 290  
  @Output 19, 171, 174–177  
  @pipe 163  
  @ViewChild 196  
  metadata 10  
anonymous functions, fat arrow  
  functions 125  
app tag 8  
APP\_BASE\_HREF constant 68

AppComponent 254, 265  
 applications  
   components 33–34  
   developing in  
     TypeScript 388–420  
   directives 35–36  
   Hello World 24–32  
   launching 31  
   modules 32–33  
   running sample code 73  
   splitting into modules 95–97  
   Universal Module Definition  
     format 28  
 AppModule 57, 120  
 arrays  
   destructuring 366–368  
   methods for working with 154  
 arrow function  
   expressions 357–368,  
   398–400  
   this keyword 399  
 assertions 280  
 async() function 284  
 AsyncPipe 162, 252–254, 269  
   and observables 253  
   and promises 253  
 Atom 17  
 attr prefix 144  
 attributes  
   attr prefix 144  
   data binding 143–146  
   form validation  
     attributes 208–209  
   hidden 143  
   max 208  
   maxlength 208  
   min 208  
   pattern 208  
   required 208  
   step 208  
 Augury 62  
 auxiliary outlets 92

**B**

Babel 15, 348  
 bare function signatures 414  
 base tag 68  
 base64-loader 318  
 baseURL option 41  
 beforeAll() function 281  
 beforeEach() function  
   281, 283, 285  
 behavior-driven  
   development 279

binding expressions 5  
 block scope 354–357  
   functions 356  
 Bootstrap 3  
 bootstrap() method 192  
 Bower 16  
 break keyword 369  
 BrowserModule 69, 95  
 build command 339, 345  
 bundling applications 310–346  
   Angular CLI 334–336  
   basic Webpack  
     configuration 322–327  
   build processes 333  
   continuous delivery 333  
   continuous deployment 333  
   continuous integration 333  
   CSS 321  
   custom type definitions  
     332–334  
   development  
     configuration 328–329  
   entry points 315, 322  
   entry property 315  
   loaders 318–322  
   multiple bundles  
     315–316, 319  
   npm start 327  
   popular bundlers 312  
   production  
     configuration 329–331  
   Webpack 312  
 business logic 18

---

**C**

callable interfaces 414–416  
 callbacks 187, 376  
   method names 188  
   naming conventions 189  
   *See also* lifecycle hooks  
 canActivate property 88  
 canActivate() method 88  
 canDeactivate property 88  
 canDeactivate() method 91  
 catch() method 378, 380  
 change detection 194–196  
   and data binding 194  
   Default strategy 194  
   one-directional 194  
   OnPush strategy 194  
   strategies 194  
 Change suffix 151  
 child routes 80–84  
 children property 80

Chrome Developer Tools  
   17, 261  
 chunks 339  
 class keyword 370  
 classes  
   AbstractControl 223, 225  
   as interfaces 415  
   class member variables 372  
   constructors 372  
   declaration 94  
   FormArray 210, 215–216,  
   219, 228  
   FormBuilder 221–222, 227  
   FormControl 210, 212, 215,  
   219, 222, 228  
   FormGroup 210–212,  
   215–218, 224, 228  
   FormsModule 210, 231  
   hoisting 94, 123  
   Http 119  
   implements keyword  
     121, 410, 412–414  
   in ECMAScript 6 370–376  
   in TypeScript 401–408  
   Location 74  
   MockBackend 293–305  
   NgForm 210  
   NgModel 210  
   NgModelGroup 210  
   OpaqueToken 115, 126  
   ReactiveFormsModule  
     210, 216, 232  
   state 371  
   subclasses 371  
   superclasses 371, 374–376  
    TestBed 283, 306  
 clean command 339  
 client-server 257–268  
   Node 258–261  
 client-side navigation 68–74  
 code contract 410  
 code simplification 8–13  
 cold observables 152  
 command line, Angular  
   CLI 334  
 commands  
   Angular CLI 335  
   new 335  
   ng 335  
 commands API 286  
 CommonJS 8, 381, 418  
 CommonJS format 45  
 CommonModule 69, 95  
 CommonsChunkPlugin  
   322–323

compiling, just-in-time vs. ahead-of-time 50  
 @Component annotation 10, 14, 18, 25, 59, 113, 123, 256  
 and metadata 27  
 and Webpack 319  
 AppModule 57  
 encapsulation property 85  
 pipes property 164  
 providers property 111, 113  
 require() statements 319  
 root component 33  
 selector 10  
 selector property 27, 33  
 styles property 34  
 styleUrls property 34  
 template property 33, 85  
 templateUrl property 85  
 components 18, 33–34  
 AppComponent 254, 265  
 AppModule 57  
 change detection 194–196  
 changing templates at runtime 182  
 child components 80  
 communicating between 171–187  
 containers 171–187  
 data binding, to innerHTML 187  
 declaring 10, 94  
 exposing child component's API 196–198  
 input properties 172–174  
 lifecycle 187–194  
 loose coupling 178  
 MdDialog 91  
 Mediator pattern 178–182  
 mediators 271  
 output properties 174–177  
 projecting into multiple areas 185  
 projection 182–187  
 responsive 53  
 reusing in other applications 111  
 root component 33, 127  
 selectors 27  
 self-contained 178  
 templateUrl property 305  
 testing 282, 286  
 TypeScript 10  
*See also* @Component annotation  
 CompressionPlugin 329

config() method 38, 41  
 configuration, package.json file 43  
 configureTestingModule() function 283  
 configuring, SystemJS 41–43  
 const keyword 356  
 constants, APP\_BASE\_HREF 68  
 constructors 161–162, 166, 372 and dependency injection 113  
 containers 171–187 emitting events 171  
 content delivery networks 24–25 unpkg 25  
 continuous delivery 333  
 continuous deployment 333  
 continuous integration 333  
 controllers 5  
 ControlValueAccessor interface 150  
 copy-webpack-plugin 324  
 copyup command 339  
 CopyWebpackPlugin 322  
 createComponent() method 283, 286  
 cross-site scripting 337  
 CSS bundling applications 321 loaders 319–321  
 css-loader 320–321  
 CurrencyPipe 162  
 custom events 174–177 changing the name of 176

**D**


---

Dart 389  
 data binding 5, 36, 118, 140–151 and change detection 194 and properties 142 and type 173  
 Angular 14 attr prefix 144 attributes 143–146 binding expressions 5 binding to events 141 one-way 140 one-way vs. two-way 14 properties 142 property binding 72, 174 one-way 173 shorthand syntax 217 target 141

templates 140, 142, 146–149, 151–153 to innerHTML 187 two-way 6, 19, 140, 149–151  
 data property 79 vs. path property 80 DatePipe 162, 263 debounceTime 156, 161 declare keyword 332 DedupePlugin 329 deep linking 8, 84 Default change-detection strategy 194 default keyword 99 default values 351–352 defaultJSExceptions option 41 DefinePlugin 328 DefinitelyTyped 15, 417 dependencies decoupling 120–127 dependency injection 108–138 flat 45 nested 45 peer dependencies 53 routing 68 *See also* dependency injection dependency injection 108–138, 256 and constructors 113 and HTTP 254–257 AngularJS 5 benefits 110–112 design pattern 109–110 ECMAScript 6 114 in Angular 13 in AngularJS 7 injector hierarchy 127–130 loose coupling 110–111 OpaqueToken class 126 reusability 110–111 testability 111–112 TypeScript 114 useFactory 123–126 useValue 123–126  
 deploy command 339  
 deploying applications 310–346 Angular CLI 334–336 automated deployment 333 basic Webpack configuration 322–327 build processes 333 continuous delivery 333 continuous deployment 333 continuous integration 333

- deploying applications (*continued*)
  - custom type definitions 332–334
  - development
    - configuration 328–329
    - entry points 315, 322
    - entry property 315
    - keeping configurations separate 331, 334
    - loaders 318–322
    - manual deployment 333
    - Node 311
    - Node.js 338
    - npm run build 325
    - npm start 327
    - production
      - configuration 329–331
      - small size 311
      - Webpack 312
  - describe() function 280, 283
  - design patterns
    - dependency injection 109–110
    - benefits 110–112
    - inversion of control 109–110
    - Mediator 178–182
    - Observer/Observable 152
  - destructuring 146, 364–368
    - arrays 366–368
    - objects 364–366
  - detectChanges() method 286, 296
  - DI. *See* dependency injection
  - @Directive annotation 19, 35, 211
  - directives 5, 35–36
    - and HTML templates 147
    - formArrayName 219
    - FormControl 218
    - FormGroup 216
    - FormGroupName 217–218
    - forms 216
    - minLength 231
    - NgFor 146, 219
    - ngForm 211–212, 228
    - NgIf 146
    - NgModel 150, 212, 228
    - ngModelGroup 212, 228
    - NgSwitch 146
    - required 231
    - RouterLink 69, 77, 103
    - RouterOutlet 68
    - shortcut syntax 147
    - structural 146
    - template-driven forms 211–212
  - DoCheck() callback 188
    - logging 188
  - Document Object Model. *See* DOM
  - DOM
    - Shadow DOM 85, 183
    - slowing down performance 7
  - DOM objects 142
    - event bubbling 176
  - DOMRenderer 14

**E**

- ECMAScript 5 (ES5) 15, 244
  - converting from ES6 348, 356
  - Hello World 28–29
  - transpiling to 392
- Universal Module Definition 28
  - using ES6 API when compiling ES5 syntax 137
  - vs. ES6 348, 351, 354, 358–359, 364, 370, 381
- ECMAScript 6 (ES6) 8, 15, 347–387
  - and TypeScript 389
  - arrow function expressions 357–368
  - block scope 354–357
  - browser testing 347, 356, 359, 371, 381–383
  - class keyword 370
  - class member variables 372
  - classes 370–376
  - compatibility 347
  - constructors 372
  - converting to ES5 348, 356
  - default values 351–352
  - dependency injection 114
  - destructuring 146, 364–368
  - ES6 Fiddle 348
  - ES6 Module Loader 383
  - export keyword 381–383
  - extends keyword 370
  - for-in loops 368
  - for-of loops 369
  - forEach() method 368
  - generators 362–364
  - getters and setters 373
  - import keyword 381–383
  - inheritance 370–376
  - iterators 154
  - let keyword 354–356
  - method definitions 373
  - module loaders 383–387
  - modules 381–387
  - optional parameters 351–352
  - promises 377
  - rest operator 359–362
  - running code examples 348
  - shims 199
  - spread operator 359–362
  - static variables 373
  - string literals 348–351
  - super() function 374–376
  - System object 36, 383
  - tagged template strings 350–351
  - templates 348–351
  - using ES6 API when compiling ES5 syntax 137
  - variable hoisting 352–354
  - variable scope 352–357
  - vs. TypeScript 389
- Elvis (safe navigation) operator 296
- email input element 209
- Ember.js 3
- emit() method 174
- enableProdMode() method 192
- encapsulation property 85
- end-to-end testing 279
- entry points 315, 322
  - for multiple bundles 315–316, 319
- ENV variable 329
- error object 223
- errors
  - noEmitOnError option 403
  - observer.error() 264
  - Webpack 332
- ES6 Fiddle 348
- ES6 Module Loader 383
- ES6. *See* ECMAScript 6 (ES6)
- ESLint 16
- \$event argument 141
- event bubbling 176
- event handlers 154
  - data binding 141
- Event object 155
- \$event parameter 155
- event streams, observable 154–158
- EventEmitter object 19, 174–177
  - no support for event bubbling 176
- events
  - component lifecycle 187
  - custom 155, 174–177

events (*continued*)  
 data binding 141  
 emitting 155, 171, 178  
 event bubbling 176  
 Event object 155  
 event streams 154–158  
 keyUp 156  
 order of operations 307  
 target property 141  
 triggering streams 158  
 valueChanges 156  
 expect() function 280, 287  
 export keyword 39, 117,  
 381–383  
 Express 243–245, 248  
 extends keyword 370, 415

**F**

factories, useFactory 123  
 fakeAsync() function 283, 285–286  
 fat arrow. *See* arrow function  
 expressions  
 feature modules 95  
 Fetch API 240, 381  
 fetch() method 240  
 file-loader 341  
 fill() method 199  
 filter() method 154  
 flat dependencies 45  
 Flex, moving to Angular 4  
 fonts 341  
 for-in loops 368  
 for-of loop 369  
 forChild() method 69, 96  
 forEach() method 368  
 form element 211, 213, 216  
 ngNoForm attribute 211  
 form models 209, 215–216  
 creating 233  
 FormArray class 210, 215–216  
 and FormControl 219  
 and ngFor directive 219  
 formArrayName directive 219  
 properties 228  
 formArrayName directive 219  
 and formGroup 219  
 FormBuilder class 221–222  
 and FormControl class 222  
 configuring validators 227  
 formControl attribute 156  
 FormControl class 210, 212, 215  
 and FormArray 219  
 and FormBuilder class 222

formControl directive 219  
 formControlName  
 directive 219  
 properties 228  
 formControl directive 218  
 FormControl object 156  
 formControlName directive  
 and formGroup 218  
 FormGroup class 210–212,  
 215, 224  
 formControl directive 218  
 formGroup directive 216  
 formGroupName  
 directive 217  
 properties 228  
 value property 225  
 formGroup directive 216  
 and formArrayName 219  
 and formControlName 218  
 formGroupName directive  
 217–218  
 forms 206–236  
 Angular Forms API 209–210  
 checking field status 228–229  
 directives 216  
 fields 228–229  
 form element 211, 213, 216  
 form models  
 209, 215–216, 233  
 FormArray class 215  
 formArrayName directive 219  
 FormBuilder class 221–222  
 FormControl class 215  
 formControl directive 218  
 formControlName  
 directive 218  
 FormGroup class 215  
 formGroup directive 216  
 formGroupName  
 directive 217  
 Forms API 232  
 HTML forms 207–210,  
 213–215  
 input elements 209  
 novalidate attribute 231  
 overview 207–210  
 pristine and dirty  
 properties 229  
 reactive 156, 215–222  
 asynchronous  
 validators 227  
 custom validators 224  
 group validators 224  
 validating 222–229  
 vs. template-driven 207, 209  
 refactoring 220–221  
 standard browser  
 features 207–210  
 statusChanges property 229  
 template-driven 156, 210–215  
 directives 211–212  
 refactoring 234  
 validating 229–231  
 vs. reactive 207, 209  
 touched and untouched  
 properties 228  
 validating 222–231  
 asynchronous  
 validators 227  
 checking fields 228–229  
 custom validators 224  
 group validators 224  
 reactive forms 222–229  
 template-driven forms  
 229–231  
 validation attributes 208–209  
 Forms API 209–210, 232  
 asynchronous validators 227  
 enabling support for 210  
 FormsModule class 210  
 required directive 231  
 forRoot() method 69, 78, 96  
 forwardRef() function 123  
 frameworks 2–3  
 Angular 3  
 Ember.js 3  
 Ext JS 2  
 Google Polymer 144  
 Jasmine 3, 279–283  
 lightweight 2  
 NativeScript 14  
 Node.js 4  
 pros and cons 2  
 React Native 14  
 Sencha Touch 2  
 fromEvent() 158  
 function expressions 396–397  
 arrow function  
 expressions 398–400  
*See also* functions  
 function overloading 401  
 functional testing 279  
 functions  
 afterAll() 281  
 afterEach() 281  
 anonymous 125  
 arrow function  
 expressions 357–368,  
 398–400  
 async() 284

functions (*continued*)  
 bare function signatures 414  
 beforeAll() 281  
 beforeEach() 281, 283, 285  
 block scope 356  
 configureTestingModule()  
   283  
 createComponent() 283  
 describe() 280, 283  
 expect() 280, 287  
 fakeAsync() 283, 285–286  
 fat arrows 125  
 forwardRef() 123  
 generators 362–364  
 in TypeScript 396–397  
 inject() 283, 285  
 it() 280, 283, 285, 304  
 overloading 401  
 passing template strings 350  
 super() 374–376  
 testing 282  
 tick() 285–286  
 toBe() 280  
 toEqual() 280  
 validators 222  
 xit() 283

**G**

generators 362–364  
 generics 12  
   creating classes that  
 support 410  
   in TypeScript 408–410  
 get() method 239  
 getters 373  
 Google Chrome  
   Augury extension 62  
   Developer Tools 74  
 Google Material Design 3  
 Google Polymer framework 144  
 Grunt 16, 312  
 Gulp 16, 312

**H**

hash-based navigation 67  
 HashLocationStrategy 67  
 Hello World example 24–32  
   ECMAScript 5 28–29  
   ECMAScript 6 29–31  
   TypeScript 24–27  
   Webpack 313–318  
 hidden attribute 143

History API-based navigation 67  
 hoisting 94, 123, 352–354  
 HomeComponent 55  
 :host selector 84  
 hot observables 152  
 HTML  
   custom tags 5  
   documents 142  
   loaders 319–321  
 HTML documents 142  
 HTML forms 207–210, 213–215  
   validation 208  
 html-loader 320  
 HTMLInputElement object 142  
 HTTP  
   API 238–241  
   GET 251–252  
   Http object 238–241  
   injecting 254–257  
   subscribe() method 252  
   vs. WebSockets 257  
 Http class 119  
   *See also* Http object  
 Http object 19  
   and TypeScript 239  
   API 238–241  
   GET requests 251–252  
   injecting 254, 256–257  
   subscribe() method 252  
 HTTP servers 31  
 http-server 31  
 HttpClientModule 119

**I**

IDEs 53, 419  
   support in TypeScript 389  
 immediately invoked function  
   expression 29  
 immutable objects, vs. mutable  
   objects 189  
 implements keyword 121, 410,  
   412–414  
 import keyword 8, 39, 45, 59,  
   117, 323, 381–383  
 import() method 38  
   and map option 43  
   and paths option 43  
   ES5 vs. ES6 39  
 inheritance  
   extends keyword 415  
   in ECMAScript 6 370–376  
   in TypeScript 406–408  
   object-based 406  
   prototypal 370, 376, 401

**J**

Jasmine 3, 17, 279–283  
 afterAll() function 281  
 afterEach() 281  
 assertions 280  
 beforeAll() function 281  
 beforeEach() 281  
 describe() function 280, 283  
 expect() function 280

Jasmine (*continued*)  
 HTML-based test runner 282, 297  
 installing 282–283  
 it() function 280, 283, 285, 304  
 matchers 280  
 specs 280  
 standalone distribution 283  
 suites 280  
 toBe() function 280  
 toEqual() function 280  
 what to test 282  
 where to store test files 281  
 xit() function 283

JavaScript 15  
 –allowJs option 394  
 and TypeScript 394  
 Dart 389  
 mutable vs. immutable 189  
 objects 190  
 strings 189  
 vs. TypeScript 388

jQuery 3

JSLint 16

json-loader 318

JSON, serving 243–245

jspm 16, 44  
 flat dependencies 45  
 import statements 45  
 lack of bundles 45  
 need for additional configuration 46  
 registries 45  
 vs. npm 45–46

JSX format 3

just-in-time compilation 50

**K**

Karma 3, 16, 298–301  
 and Webpack 342  
 ng test command 336  
 npm prebuild command 345

keyUp event 156

**L**

lambda expressions. *See* arrow function expressions  
 launching applications 31  
 lazy loading 97–99, 112, 128  
 default keyword 99  
 let keyword 354–356

libraries 3–4  
 Angular testing library 283–287  
 Bootstrap 3  
 bundles 45  
 jQuery 3  
 Material Design 3, 91  
 packages 24  
 Polymer 4  
 React 3  
 RxJS 4  
 lifecycle hooks 187–194  
 DoCheck 188  
 method names 188  
 naming conventions 189  
 ngAfterContentChecked() 188  
 ngAfterContentInit() 188  
 ngAfterViewChecked() 188  
 ngAfterViewInit() 188, 198  
 ngFor 306  
 ngOnChanges()  
 188–194, 200  
 ngOnDestroy() 189  
 ngOnInit() 188  
 updating UI from 198  
 limit parameters 340  
 live recompilation 245–246  
 live-server 31  
 load testing 279  
 loadChildren property 98  
 loaders 318–322  
 base64-loader 318  
 css 321  
 css-loader 320  
 file-loader 341  
 for HTML and CSS 319–321  
 html-loader 320  
 json-loader 318  
 postloaders 321  
 preloaders 321  
 raw-loader 320  
 referencing 319  
 style-loader 320  
 to-string 321  
 ts-loader 324  
 url-loader 341  
 Location class 74  
 location services, client-side  
 navigation 68–74  
 location strategies 66–68  
 hash-based navigation 67  
 HashLocationStrategy 67  
 History API-based  
 navigation 67  
 PathLocationStrategy 67

loops  
 break keyword 369  
 for-in 368  
 for-of 369  
 forEach() method 368

loose coupling 110–111, 178

---

**M**

map option 41  
 vs. paths option 42  
 map() method 154  
 marble diagrams 153  
 matchers  
 toBeAnInstanceOf() 284  
 toBePromise() 284  
 toContainAnError() 284  
 toHaveCssClass() 284  
 toHaveCssStyle() 284  
 toHaveText() 284  
 toImplement() 284  
 toThrowErrorsWith() 284

Material Design 3, 54  
 MdDialog 91  
 version 2 54

max attribute 208  
 maxlength attribute 208  
 maxLength validator 223  
 MdDialog component 91  
 Mediator design pattern  
 178–182  
 alternative  
 implementation 182  
 identifying mediators  
 early 182  
 mediators 271  
 metadata 27, 416  
 metadata annotations 10  
 methods  
 all() 380  
 bootstrap() 192  
 canActivate() 88  
 canDeactivate() 91  
 catch() 378, 380  
 config() 38, 41  
 createComponent() 286  
 detectChanges() 286, 296  
 emit() 174  
 enableProdMode() 192  
 fetch() 240  
 fill() 199  
 filter() 154  
 for arrays 154  
 forChild() 69, 96  
 forEach() 368

methods (*continued*)  
 forRoot() 69, 78, 96  
 get() 239  
 import() 38  
 in TypeScript 404–406  
 invoking with ngOnInit() 189  
 isFirstChange() 191  
 isRouteActive() 76  
 map() 154  
 method definitions 373  
 navigate() 68, 75–76, 94,  
 285–286, 292  
 navigateByUrl()  
 68, 285–286, 292  
 next() 362  
 ngOnInit() 61  
 onSubmit() 213  
 pushState() 68  
 reduce() 154  
 reject() 378  
 resolve() 91, 378  
 setInterval() 263  
 setTimeout() 198  
 stringify() 191  
 subscribe() 152, 156, 159,  
 174, 251  
 text() 240  
 then() 38, 153, 378, 380  
 unsubscribe() 152  
 min attribute 208  
 minifiers 16  
 minLength directive 231  
 minLength validator 223  
 Misko Hevery 5  
 mock objects 112  
 MockBackend class 293, 305  
 mocking services 297  
 Model-View-Controller  
 pattern 2, 5  
 used in AngularJS but not in  
 Angular 3  
 module loaders 36–38  
 benefits 37  
 SystemJS 38–43  
 vs. script tags 37–38  
 module objects 7  
 modules 32–33, 381–387  
 Angular modules vs. ES6  
 modules 32  
 AppModule 120  
 baseURL option 41  
 BrowerModule 69, 95  
 CommonModule 69, 95  
 default keyword 99

defaultJSExtensions  
 option 41  
 feature modules 95  
 HttpModule 119  
 importing and  
 exporting 381–383  
 lazy loading 97–99, 112, 128  
 map option 41  
 module loaders 36–38,  
 383–387  
 packages option 42  
 paths option 42  
 providers property 73, 115  
 RouterModule 68, 105  
 splitting applications into  
 95–97  
 transpiler option 43  
 typescriptOptions option 43  
 mutable objects, vs. immutable  
 objects 189  
 MVC pattern 2, 5  
 used in AngularJS but not in  
 Angular 3

---

**N**

NativeScript framework 14  
 navigate() method 68, 75–76,  
 94, 285–286, 292  
 navigateByUrl() method  
 68, 285–286, 292  
 navigation, testing 285  
 nested dependencies 45  
 new command 335  
 new operator 13, 18, 110  
 next() method 362  
 ng command 335  
 ng build 336  
 ng generate 336  
 ng serve 336  
 ng test 336  
 NG\_VALIDATORS token 230  
 ng-app attribute 5  
 ng-content tag 19, 185  
 select attribute 185  
 ng-forward 15  
 ng-route component 7  
 ng-upgrade 15  
 ngAfterContentChecked()  
 callback 188  
 ngAfterContentInit()  
 callback 188  
 ngAfterViewChecked()  
 callback 188

ngAfterViewInit() callback  
 188, 198  
 ngContent directive 182–187  
 vs. innerHTML 187  
 @ngFor 19  
 ngFor directive 59, 132,  
 146, 306  
 and AsyncPipe 253  
 and FormArray class 219  
 NgForm class 210  
 value property 212  
 ngForm directive 211–212  
 exportAs property 211  
 properties 228  
 @ngIf 19  
 NgIf directive 146  
 NgMatchers interface 284  
 NgModel class 210  
 ngModel directive 150, 212  
 exportAs property 212  
 properties 228  
 NgModelGroup class 210  
 ngModelGroup directive 212  
 properties 228  
 @NgModule annotation 10, 32,  
 51, 69, 95, 113, 128, 133,  
 257, 290  
 hash-based navigation 67  
 providers option 67  
 ngNoForm attribute 211  
 ngOnChanges() callback  
 188–194, 200  
 ng OnDestroy() callback 189  
 ngOnInit() callback 188  
 method invocation 189  
 ngOnInit() method 61  
 NgSwitch directive 146  
 Node 241–248  
 and Angular 248–257  
 common configuration files  
 vs. separate files 250  
 configuring npm 249–251  
 creating a simple web  
 server 241–243  
 deploying applications 311  
 Express 243–245, 248  
 GET requests 251–252  
 path.join 248  
 recompiling code 245  
 REST API 246–248  
 serving JSON 243–245  
 static resources 248–251  
 type definition files 243  
 WebSockets 258–261  
 NODE\_ENV variable 329

Node.js 4, 15  
 CommonJS format 45  
 deploying applications 338  
 ENV variable 329  
 NODE\_ENV variable 329  
 runtime environment 4  
 Nodemon 245–246  
 npm 16, 46–51  
   -w option 245  
   -y option 242  
   build command 339, 345  
   clean command 339  
   common configuration files  
     vs. separate files 250  
   configuration file 249–251  
   copyup command 339  
   deploy command 339  
   installing TypeScript 391  
   nested dependencies 45  
   Nodemon 246  
   npm build 250, 330  
   npm init 46  
   npm install 48, 53, 131,  
     318, 420  
   npm run 47  
   npm run build 325  
   npm run deploy 340  
   npm run serve, dist 331  
   npm run tsc 260, 338  
   npm start 62, 106, 119, 137,  
     327, 330  
   npm test 47, 308  
   post prefix 250  
   pre prefix 250  
   prebuild command 339, 345  
   predeploy command 339  
   scripts property 250  
   starting a new project 46  
   test command 339  
   unpkg 25  
   vs. Grunt and Gulp 312  
   vs. jspm 45–46  
   ws 258  
 null, Elvis operator 296  
 number input element 209

**O**

object-based inheritance 406  
 objects, destructuring 364–366  
 observables 152–162, 251–254  
   and AsyncPipe 253  
   cancelling 158–162  
   cold 152

converting WebSockets  
   to 261–268  
 creating subscribers  
   262, 268–269, 276  
 event streams 154–158  
 hot observables 152  
 push model 152  
 vs. promises 158, 238  
 wrapping services in  
   streams 262–264  
 observers 152–162  
   callbacks 152  
   event streams 154–158  
   *See also* observables  
 OccurrenceOrderPlugin 329  
 one-way data binding 140  
 online auction example  
   19–22, 52  
   broadcasting bids 273  
   configuration 43  
   dependency injection  
     130–137  
   directory structure 54  
   filtering 165–168  
   home page 54–62  
   HTTP 269–273  
   Karma 342  
   launching 62  
   moving review data to  
     server 269  
   navigation 99–106  
   Node.js 338  
   notifications 268–276  
   rating feature 198–204  
   search 268–276  
   search limitations 272  
   search results 271  
   setup 53–54  
   starting the client 338  
   testing 301–308  
   validation 231–236  
   Webpack 337–345  
   WebSockets 273–276  
 OnPush change detection  
   strategy 194  
 onSubmit() method 213  
 OpaqueToken class  
   115, 126, 293  
 operators  
   Elvis operator 296  
   new 13, 110  
   pipe 135  
   rest operator 359–362  
   spread operator 359–362  
 optional parameters 351–352, 397  
 optional types 394–400  
 @Output annotation 19, 171,  
   174–177  
 output properties 174–177

**P**


---

package managers 43–51  
   jspm 44  
   jspm 45  
   npm 46–51  
     vs. jspm 45–46  
 package.json file 24, 43  
 packages 24  
 packages option 42  
 packaging applications  
   automatic deployment 333  
   npm run build 325  
 parameterized types. *See* generics  
 parameters  
   TypeScript default  
     parameters 397  
   TypeScript optional  
     parameters 397  
 path property 81  
   vs. data property 80  
 path.join 248  
 PathLocationStrategy 67  
 paths option 42  
   vs. map option 42  
 pattern attribute 208  
 pattern validator 223  
 peer dependencies 53  
 @Pipe annotation 163  
 pipe operator 135  
 pipes 162–165  
   @Pipe annotation 163  
   AsyncPipe 162, 252–254, 269  
   CurrencyPipe 162  
   custom 163–165  
   DatePipe 162, 263  
   lack of browser support 163  
   PipeTransform interface 163  
   UpperCasePipe 162  
     workarounds 163  
 pipes property 164  
 PipeTransform interface 163  
 Placeholder.it 52  
 polyfills 383  
 Polymer 4  
 postloaders 321  
 prebuild command 339, 345  
 predeploy command 339  
 preloaders 321

primary outlets 92  
 private keyword 403  
 projection 182–187  
   projecting into multiple areas 185  
 promises 38, 40, 376  
   all() method 380  
   and AsyncPipe 253  
   catch() method 378, 380  
   drawbacks of 238  
   fulfilled 377  
   pending 377  
   reject() method 378  
   rejected 377  
   resolve() method 378  
   resolving multiple promises simultaneously 380  
   then() method 378, 380  
   vs. observables 158  
 properties  
   data binding 142, 173–174  
     to innerHTML 187  
   input properties 172–174  
   output properties 174–177  
   template 9–10  
   templateURL 9  
   value 145  
 property binding 72  
 protected keyword 403  
 prototypal inheritance 370, 376, 401  
 provide property 111, 115  
 providers 111  
   declaring 115  
   useFactory 123–126  
   useValue 123–126  
 providers property 111, 113, 115, 122  
   viewProviders property 129  
 pseudoclasses, :host 84  
 public keyword 403  
 pull model 152  
 push model 152  
 pushState() method 68

**R**


---

raw-loader 320  
 React 3  
   JSX format 3  
 React Native framework 14  
 reactive forms 156, 209,  
   215–222  
   validating 222–229  
     asynchronous  
       validators 227

custom validators 224  
 group validators 224  
   vs. template-driven 207  
 reactive programming 152–162  
 ReactiveFormsModule class 210, 216, 232  
 ReactiveX. *See RxJS*  
 reduce() method 154  
 refactoring  
   forms 220–221  
   templates 234  
 registries 45  
 regular expressions 208  
 reject() method 378  
 renderers, DOMRenderer 14  
 Request object 239  
 RequestOptionsArgs class 239, 252  
 require() 332  
   statements 319  
 required attribute 208  
 required directive 231  
 required property 142  
 required validator 223  
 Resolve interface 91  
 resolve property 91  
 resolve() method 91, 378  
 Response object, and Fetch API 240  
 responsive components 53  
 REST API 246–248  
 rest operator 359–362  
 reusability 110–111  
 root components 33, 127  
 Route interface 87  
   canActivate property 88  
   canDeactivate property 88  
   canDeactivate() method 91  
   children property 80  
   component property 72  
 Route object, path property 72  
 Router object 68, 75  
   navigate() method 94  
 router-outlet tag 68, 81, 101  
   auxiliary outlets 92  
   primary outlets 92  
 routerLink directive 69, 77, 103, 133  
   declaring components 94  
 RouterModule 68, 105  
 RouterOutlet directive 68  
 RouterStateSnapshot 90  
 routes 64–107  
   404 errors 76  
   ActivatedRoute object 69, 77–79, 134  
 auxiliary outlets 92  
 basics 65–76  
 child routes 80–84  
 client-side navigation 68–74  
 dependencies 68  
 guarding 87–91  
 hash-based navigation 67  
 History API-based  
   navigation 67  
 isRouteActive() 76  
 location strategies 66–68  
 multiple outlets 91–94  
 navigate() method 75–76  
 passing data to 76–80  
   static routes 79  
 primary outlets 92  
 Router object 68, 75  
 routerLink directive 69, 77, 103, 133  
 RouterOutlet 68  
 Routes array 68, 87  
 sibling routes 92  
 static 79  
 Routes array 68, 87  
 Routes interface, loadChildren  
   property 98  
 routing 64–107  
   404 errors 76  
 ActivatedRoute object 69, 77–79, 134  
 auxiliary outlets 92  
 basics 65–76  
 child routes 80–84  
 client-side navigation 68–74  
 dependencies 68  
 guarding routes 87–91  
 hash-based navigation 67  
 History API-based  
   navigation 67  
 isRouteActive() method 76  
 location strategies 66–68  
 multiple outlets 91–94  
 navigate() method 75–76  
 passing data 76–80  
   to static routes 79  
 primary outlets 92  
 Route interface 87  
 Router object 68, 75  
 routerLink directive 69, 77, 103, 133  
 RouterOutlet 68  
 Routes array 68, 87  
 sibling routes 92  
 RxJS 4, 152, 156

**S**

scope 352–357  
 block scope 354–357  
 hierarchy in AngularJS 5  
 script tags  
 drawbacks 37  
 vs. module loaders 37–38  
 security 337  
 cross-site scripting 337  
 select attribute 185  
 selector property 33  
 selectors 27  
 servers, webpack-dev-server 315–317, 325  
 services  
 mocking 297  
 testing 285  
 wrapping in streams 262–264  
 setInterval() method 263  
 setters 173, 373  
 setTimeout() method 198  
 Shadow DOM 85, 183  
 #shadow-root 184  
 shims 199  
 shortcut syntax 147  
 sibling routes 92  
 SimpleChange class 191  
 single-page web applications 7, 19, 91–94  
 state 65  
 spread operator 359–362  
 state 65, 371  
 pushState() method 68  
 static keyword 405  
 static variables 373  
 step attribute 208  
 streams, triggered by events 158  
 string interpolation 348  
 string literals 348–351  
 interpolation 348  
 multiline 349  
 tagged template strings 350–351  
 stringify() method 191  
 structural directives 146  
 style-loader 320  
 styles property 34  
 styleUrls property 34, 103  
 subclasses 371  
 converting to  
 superclasses 374–376  
 Subject class 174  
 Sublime Text 17

subscribe() method 19, 152, 156, 159, 174, 251  
 and GET 252  
 super keyword 374–376, 407  
 super() function 374–376  
 superclasses 371  
 converting from  
 subclasses 374–376  
 switchMap() operator 159  
 System object 36, 38, 383  
 SystemJS 15, 38–43, 179, 312  
 baseURL option 41  
 configuring 41–43  
 defaultJSExtensions option 41  
 demo application 39–41  
 jspm 44–45  
 map option 41  
 module loader 383  
 packages option 42  
 paths option 42  
 transpiler option 43  
 typescriptOptions option 43

**T**

tagging, template strings 350  
 target property 141  
 task runners 16  
 Grunt 312  
 Gulp 312  
 template local variable 155  
 template property 9–10, 18, 33, 85  
 template-driven forms 156  
 templates 18  
 async 253  
 changing at runtime 182  
 data binding 140, 142, 146–149, 151–153  
 HTML templates 147  
 projection 182–187  
 refactoring 234  
 string literals 348–351  
 tagged strings 350–351  
 template-driven forms 209–215  
 directives 211–212  
 validating 229–231  
 templateUrl property 305  
 templateUrl property 9, 18, 85, 103, 305  
 test command 339

TestBed class 283, 306  
 createComponent()  
 method 286  
 testing 111–112  
 Angular testing library 283–287  
 assertions 280  
 beforeEach() function 283, 285  
 classes 282  
 commands API 286  
 components 282, 286  
 createComponent()  
 method 286  
 describe() function 283  
 detectChanges()  
 method 286, 296  
 end-to-end 279  
 expect() function 287  
 fail first 280  
 fakeAsync() function 283, 285–286  
 functional 279  
 functions 282  
 HTML-based test runner 282, 289, 297  
 inject() function 285  
 integration 279  
 it() function 283, 285, 304  
 Jasmine 279–283  
 Karma 298–301  
 load testing 279  
 matchers 284  
 mock objects 112  
 MockBackend class 293, 305  
 natural language 279  
 navigate() method 285–286, 292  
 navigateByUrl() method 285–286, 292  
 navigation 285  
 order of operation 307  
 self-descriptive 281  
 services 285  
 TestBed class 283, 306  
 third-party code 291, 293, 297  
 tick() function 285–286  
 unit testing 278–309  
 what to test 282  
 where to store test files 281  
 xit() function 283

text input element 209  
 text() method 240  
 then() method 38, 153, 378, 380

this keyword 13, 19, 357–368, 399–400, 405–406, 408, 416, 420  
 tick() function 285–286  
 tight coupling 110  
 to-string loader 321  
 toBe() function 280  
 toBeAnInstanceOf()  
     matcher 284  
 toBePromise() matcher 284  
 toContainAnError()  
     matcher 284  
 toEqual() function 280  
 toHaveCssClass() matcher 284  
 toHaveCssStyle() matcher 284  
 toHaveText() matcher 284  
 toImplement() matcher 284  
 tokens 111  
 tools 15–17  
 toThrowErrorsWith()  
     matcher 284  
 Traceur 15, 29, 348, 356  
     inline scripts 385  
 transclusion. *See* projection  
 transpiler option 43  
 transpilers 242, 390  
     Babel 348  
     Chrome Developer Tools 74  
     recompiling  
         automatically 245  
     Traceur 29, 348, 356  
     transpiler option 43  
     transpiling in a browser 393  
     transpiling on the fly 74  
     transpiling to ES5 syntax 392  
 transpiling 15  
     SystemJS 179  
 ts-loader 324  
 tsc 50, 391  
     –allowJs option 394  
 TSLint 16, 419  
 two-way data binding 6, 19, 140, 149–151  
 type inference 395  
 type property 142  
 type-definition files 389, 417–419  
     installing 417  
     when tsc can't find 418  
 TypeDoc 416  
 types  
     and data binding 173  
     custom 410–412  
     custom type definitions 332–334

declare keyword 332  
 DefinitelyTyped 417  
 in JavaScript 388  
 Node type-definition files 243  
 OpaqueToken 293  
 optional 394–400  
 parameterized. *See* generics support in TypeScript 389  
 type definitions 332  
 type inference 395  
 type-definition files 389, 417–419  
 TypeScript structural type system 192  
 TypeScript 10, 15, 241–248, 388–420  
     –allowJs option 394  
     –notEmitOnError option 403  
     –w option 245  
     @NgModule annotation 10  
     @types packages 243  
     access modifiers 403–404  
     and Http object 239  
     and Webpack 322  
     annotations 416  
     arrow function  
         expressions 398–400  
     callable interfaces 414–416  
     checking for errors 322  
     classes 401–408  
     creating a simple web server 241–243  
     custom types 410–412  
     default parameters 397  
     DefinitelyTyped 417  
     dependency injection 114  
     development process 419  
     ES6 standard 389  
     function overloading 401  
     functions 396–397  
     generics 408–410  
     getting started 390–394  
     Hello World 24–27  
     HTML file 24  
     IDE support 389  
     inheritance 406–408  
     installing 391  
     interfaces 121, 389, 410–416  
     legibility of generated code 389  
     live recompile 245–246  
     loading Angular 24  
     main.ts file 26  
     methods 404–406  
     optional parameters 397  
 optional types 394–400  
 public, protected, and private keywords 403  
 reasons to use 389  
 recompiling  
     automatically 245  
     referencing 418  
     static keyword 405  
     structural types 192  
     super keyword 407  
     superset of JavaScript 394  
     support for types 389  
     this keyword 399–400, 405–406, 408, 416, 420  
 transpilers 390  
 transpiling 179, 242  
 transpiling in a browser 393  
 transpiling to ES5 syntax 392  
 tsc 50  
 TSLint 419  
 type inference 395  
 type-definition files 389, 417–419  
 TypeDoc 416  
 typescriptOptions option 43  
 using child component's API 196  
 version 2.0 243  
 vs. Dart 389  
 vs. ES6 389  
 vs. JavaScript 388  
 typescriptOptions option 43  
 Typings 15

**U**


---

UglifyJS 16  
 UglifyJsPlugin 322, 329  
 uniform resource locators 66  
     hash-based navigation 67  
     History API-based navigation 68  
     parameters 67  
 unit testing 278–309  
     Angular testing library 283–287  
     classes 282  
     components 282, 286  
     functions 282  
     Jasmine 279–283  
     Karma 298–301  
     navigation 285  
     services 285  
     third-party code 291, 293, 297  
     what to test 282  
     where to store test files 281

Universal Module Definition 28  
 unpkg 25  
 unsubscribe() method 152  
 UpperCasePipe 162  
 url input element 209  
 URL parameters 67  
 url-loader 341  
 URLs 66  
   hash-based navigation 67  
   History API-based  
     navigation 68  
     parameters 67  
 URLSearchParams object 252  
 useClass property 115  
 useFactory property 115, 123–126  
 useValue property 115, 123–126

**V**

validation, forms 208, 222–231  
   asynchronous 227  
   custom validators 224  
   fields 228–229  
   group validators 224  
   template-driven 229–231  
 ValidatorFn interface 222, 225  
 validators  
   and FormBuilder 227  
   asynchronous 227  
   custom 224  
   error object 223  
   group validators 224  
   maxLength 223  
   minLength 223  
   novalidate attribute 231  
   pattern 223  
   pending property 229  
   pristine and dirty  
     properties 229  
   required 223  
   statusChanges property 229  
   touched and untouched  
     properties 228  
 ValidatorFn interface  
   222, 225  
*See also* validation, forms  
 value property 142, 145, 155  
 valueChanges event 156  
 values, useValue 123  
 variables  
   class member variables 372  
   hoisting 352–354  
   scope 352–357

static 373  
 template local variable 155  
 vendor.ts file 323, 325, 329, 331  
 @ViewChild annotation 196  
 ViewEncapsulation 183  
   Emulated 184  
   None 184  
 viewEncapsulation option 58  
 ViewEncapsulation strategy 321  
 ViewEncapsulation.Emulated  
   85  
 ViewEncapsulation.Native  
   85–86, 184  
 ViewEncapsulation.None 85–86  
 viewProviders property 113, 129  
 views  
   replacing 65  
   viewProviders property 129  
 Visual Studio 17  
 Visual Studio Code 17, 53

**W**

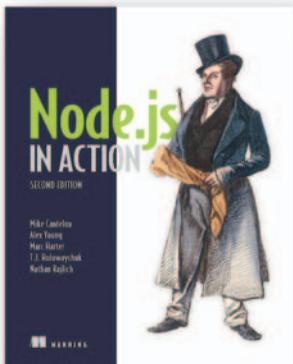
web browsers, developer  
   tools 17  
 web servers 241–248  
   creating 241–243  
   injecting HTTP 254–257  
   JSON 243–245  
   recompiling 260  
   REST API 246–248  
   simple 241–243  
   static resources 248–251  
   two-way 266  
   WebSockets 257–268  
 Webpack 16, 310–346  
   and Karma 342  
   Angular CLI 334  
   base64-loader 318  
   basics 312–322  
   chunks 339  
   configuring 322–327  
   contentBase property 317  
   css-loader 320  
   custom type definitions  
     332–334  
   development  
     configuration 328–329  
   entry points 315  
   entry property 315  
   ENV variable 329  
   errors 332  
   html-loader 320

installing 313  
 json-loader 318  
 limit parameters 340  
 loaders 318–322  
 NODE\_ENV variable 329  
 npm run build 325  
 npm start 327  
 path option 317  
 plugins 322  
   CommonsChunkPlugin  
     322–323  
   CompressionPlugin 329  
   copy-webpack-plugin 324  
   CopyWebpackPlugin 322  
   DedupePlugin 329  
   DefinePlugin 328  
   OccurrenceOrderPlugin  
     329  
   UglifyJsPlugin 322, 329  
 production  
   configuration 329–331  
 raw-loader 320  
 require() function 332  
 resolving filenames 318  
 resources 313, 315  
 simple configuration file 314  
 style-loader 320  
 to-string loader 321  
 vendor.ts file 323, 325,  
   329, 331  
 watch option 317  
 webpack-dev-server 315–317  
 webpack-dev-server 315, 325  
   contentBase property 317  
   path option 317  
   watch option 317  
 WebSockets 257–268  
   converting to  
     observables 261–268  
   monitoring traffic 261  
   npm ws package 258  
   talking to Angular 264–268  
   two-way server 266  
   vs. HTTP 257  
 WebStorm 17, 53

**X**

xit() function 283  
 XMLHttpRequest object  
   Fetch API 240

## MORE TITLES FROM MANNING



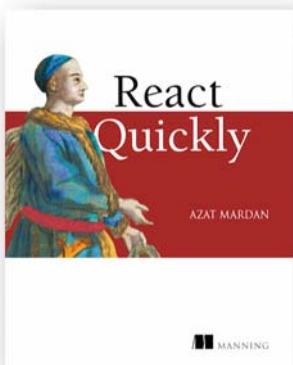
*Node.js in Action, Second Edition*  
by Mike Cantelon, Alex Young, Marc Harter,  
T.J. Holowaychuk, and Nathan Rajlich

ISBN: 9781617292576

450 pages

\$49.99

February 2017



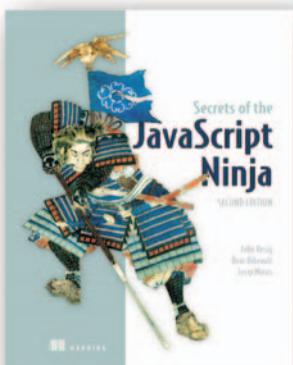
*React Quickly*  
by Azat Mardan

ISBN: 9781617293344

400 pages

\$44.99

March 2017



*Secrets of the JavaScript Ninja,  
Second Edition*  
by John Resig, Bear Bibeault, and Josip Maras

ISBN: 9781617292859

464 pages

\$44.99

August 2016

For ordering information go to [www.manning.com](http://www.manning.com)

# Angular 2 Development with TypeScript

Fain • Moiseev

**W**hether you're building web clients or full-featured SPAs, using the Angular 2 web framework is a liberating experience. Its declarative style makes it easy to define and add features without a lot of manually written boilerplate, and the fully integrated TypeScript language gives you the benefits of a statically typed language within the JavaScript ecosystem. Not to mention that adding Angular 2 and TypeScript to your skill set makes you a hot commodity.

**Angular 2 Development with TypeScript** introduces Angular 2 to developers comfortable using AngularJS v1 or other web frameworks. You'll start by exploring how Angular 2 works in an online auction application. Along the way, you'll learn to use TypeScript to write type-aware classes, interfaces, and generics. This is a practical book that covers real-world development concerns like data and views, user interaction with forms, and communicating with servers, as well as testing and deploying your Angular 2 applications.

## What's Inside

- Design and build modular applications
- Transpile TypeScript into today's JavaScript
- Use modern JavaScript workflow tools like npm, Karma, and Webpack

This book is for intermediate web developers with a working knowledge of JavaScript. No TypeScript or AngularJS experience needed.

**Yakov Fain** and **Anton Moiseev** are experienced web application developers. Yakov has written several books on software development.

To download their free eBook in PDF, ePUB, and Kindle formats, owners of this book should visit  
[www.manning.com/books/angular-2-development-with-typescript](http://www.manning.com/books/angular-2-development-with-typescript)



MANNING

\$44.99 / Can \$51.99 [INCLUDING eBOOK]



SEE INSERT

“An enjoyable and important read.

Highly recommended!”

—David Barkol, Microsoft

“An instant classic!

The only book you need to learn and master Angular 2 and TypeScript.”

—David DiMaria, MapQuest

“Excellent! The purpose of this book is not knowledge but *action*. ”

—Irach Ilish Ramos Hernandez  
Groupaxis

“Shows you how to leverage the combined power of TypeScript and Angular 2, with all the best practices baked in.”

—Sébastien Nichèle, Pacifica

ISBN-13: 978-1-61729-312-2  
ISBN-10: 1-61729-312-1

5 4 4 9 9



9 7 8 1 6 1 7 2 9 3 1 2 2